

**NON-RAMSEYER VERSION OF H.R. 1**

Strike all after the enacting clause and insert the following:

**1 SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE.**

2 This Act may be cited as the “No Child Left Behind  
3 Act of 2001”.

**4 SEC. 2. REFERENCES.**

5 Except as otherwise specifically provided in this Act,  
6 whenever in this Act an amendment or repeal is expressed  
7 as the amendment or repeal of a section or other provision,  
8 the reference shall be considered to be made to a section  
9 or other provision of the Elementary and Secondary Edu-  
10 cation Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.).

**11 SEC. 3. TRANSITION.**

12 Except as otherwise specifically provided in this Act,  
13 or any amendment made by this Act, any person or agency  
14 that was awarded a grant under the Elementary and Sec-  
15 ondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.)  
16 prior to the date of the enactment of this Act shall con-  
17 tinue to receive funds in accordance with the terms of such  
18 award, except that such funds may not be provided after  
19 the date that is one year after the effective date of this  
20 Act.



1 **SEC. 4. TABLE OF CONTENTS.**

2 The table of contents for this Act is as follows:

- Sec. 1. Short title.
- Sec. 2. References.
- Sec. 3. Transition.
- Sec. 4. Table of contents.
- Sec. 5. Effective date.

TITLE I—IMPROVING THE ACADEMIC PERFORMANCE OF THE DISADVANTAGED

PART A—BASIC PROGRAM

- Sec. 101. Disadvantaged children meet high academic standards.
- Sec. 102. Authorization of appropriations.
- Sec. 103. Reservation for school improvement.
- Sec. 104. Basic programs.
- Sec. 105. School choice.
- Sec. 106. Academic assessment and local educational agency and school improvement.
- Sec. 107. State assistance for school support and improvement.
- Sec. 108. Academic achievement awards program.

PART B—STUDENT READING SKILLS IMPROVEMENT GRANTS

- Sec. 111. Reading first; early reading first.
- Sec. 112. Amendments to Even Start.
- Sec. 113. Inexpensive book distribution program.

PART C—EDUCATION OF MIGRATORY CHILDREN

- Sec. 121. State allocations.
- Sec. 122. State applications; services.
- Sec. 123. Authorized activities.
- Sec. 124. Coordination of migrant education activities.

PART D—NEGLECTED OR DELINQUENT YOUTH

- Sec. 131. Neglected or delinquent youth.
- Sec. 132. Findings.
- Sec. 133. Allocation of funds.
- Sec. 134. State plan and State agency applications.
- Sec. 135. Use of funds.
- Sec. 136. Transition services.
- Sec. 137. Purpose.
- Sec. 138. Programs operated by local educational agencies.
- Sec. 139. Local educational agency applications.
- Sec. 140. Uses of funds.
- Sec. 141. Program requirements.
- Sec. 142. Program evaluations.

PART E—FEDERAL EVALUATIONS AND DEMONSTRATIONS

- Sec. 151. Evaluations.
- Sec. 152. Demonstrations of innovative practices.
- Sec. 153. Ellender-close up fellowship program; dropout reporting.



PART F—COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM

Sec. 161. School reform.

PART G—RURAL EDUCATION FLEXIBILITY AND ASSISTANCE

Sec. 171. Rural education.

PART H—GENERAL PROVISIONS OF TITLE I

Sec. 181. General provisions.

TITLE II—PREPARING, TRAINING, AND RECRUITING QUALITY TEACHERS

Sec. 201. Teacher quality training and recruiting fund.

Sec. 202. National writing project.

Sec. 203. Civic education; teacher liability protection.

TITLE III—EDUCATION OF LIMITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT AND IMMIGRANT CHILDREN; INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE EDUCATION

PART A—EDUCATION OF LIMITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT AND IMMIGRANT CHILDREN

Sec. 301. Programs authorized.

Sec. 302. Conforming amendment to Department of Education Organization Act.

PART B—INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE EDUCATION

Sec. 311. Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965.

Sec. 312. Alaska Native education.

Sec. 313. Amendments to the education amendments of 1978.

Sec. 314. Tribally Controlled Schools Act of 1988.

TITLE IV—PROMOTING INFORMED PARENTAL CHOICE AND INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS

Sec. 401. Promoting informed parental choice and innovative programs.

Sec. 402. Continuation of awards.

PART B—PUBLIC CHARTER SCHOOLS

Sec. 411. Public charter schools.

Sec. 412. Continuation of awards.

PART C—MAGNET SCHOOLS ASSISTANCE; WOMEN’S EDUCATIONAL EQUITY

Sec. 421. Magnet schools assistance.

Sec. 422. Women’s educational equity.

Sec. 423. Continuation of awards.

TITLE V—21ST CENTURY SCHOOLS

Sec. 501. Safe schools.

TITLE VI—IMPACT AID PROGRAM



- Sec. 601. Payments under section 8002 with respect to fiscal years in which insufficient funds are appropriated.
- Sec. 602. Calculation of payment under section 8003 for small local educational agencies.
- Sec. 603. Construction.
- Sec. 604. State consideration of payments in providing State aid.
- Sec. 605. Authorization of appropriations.
- Sec. 606. Redesignation of program.

TITLE VII—ACCOUNTABILITY

- Sec. 701. Flexibility and accountability.

TITLE VIII—GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Sec. 801. General provisions.
- Sec. 802. Comprehensive regional assistance centers.
- Sec. 803. National diffusion network.
- Sec. 804. Eisenhower regional mathematics and science education consortia.
- Sec. 805. Technology-based technical assistance.
- Sec. 806. Regional technical support and professional development.

TITLE IX—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

PART A—AMENDMENTS TO OTHER ACTS

SUBPART 1—NATIONAL EDUCATION STATISTICS ACT

- Sec. 901. Amendment to NESA.

SUBPART 2—HOMELESS EDUCATION

- Sec. 911. Short title.
- Sec. 912. Findings.
- Sec. 913. Purpose.
- Sec. 914. Education for homeless children and youth.
- Sec. 915. Technical amendment.

PART B—REPEALS

- Sec. 921. Repeals.

**1 SEC. 5. EFFECTIVE DATE.**

2       Except as otherwise specifically provided in this Act,  
3 this Act, and the amendments made by this Act, shall take  
4 effect on October 1, 2001, or on the date of the enactment  
5 of this Act, whichever occurs later.



1 **TITLE I—IMPROVING THE ACA-**  
2 **DEMIC PERFORMANCE OF**  
3 **THE DISADVANTAGED**

4 **PART A—BASIC PROGRAM**

5 **SEC. 101. DISADVANTAGED CHILDREN MEET HIGH ACA-**  
6 **DEMIC STANDARDS.**

7 Section 1001 is amended to read as follows:

8 **“SEC. 1001. FINDINGS; STATEMENT OF PURPOSE; AND REC-**  
9 **OGNITION OF NEED.**

10 “(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds the following:

11 “(1) The Constitution of the United States re-  
12 serves to the States and to the people the responsi-  
13 bility for the general supervision of public education  
14 in kindergarten through the twelfth grade.

15 “(2) States, local educational agencies and  
16 schools should be given maximum flexibility in ex-  
17 change for greater academic accountability, and be  
18 given greater freedom to build upon existing innova-  
19 tive approaches for education reform.

20 “(3) The best education decisions are made by  
21 those who know the students and who are respon-  
22 sible for implementing the decisions.

23 “(4) Educators and parents should retain the  
24 right and responsibility to educate their pupils and



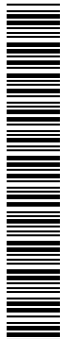
1 children free of excessive regulation by the Federal  
2 Government.

3 “(5) The Supreme Court has regarded the right  
4 of parents to direct the upbringing of their children  
5 as a fundamental right implicit in the concept of or-  
6 dered liberty within the 14th Amendment to the  
7 Constitution, as specified in *Meyer v. Nebraska*, 262  
8 U.S. 390 (1923), and *Pierce v. Society of Sisters*,  
9 268 U.S. 510 (1925).

10 “(6) Schools that enroll high concentrations of  
11 children living in poverty face the greatest chal-  
12 lenges, but effective educational strategies based on  
13 scientifically based research can succeed in edu-  
14 cating children to high academic standards.

15 “(7) High-poverty schools are much more likely  
16 to be identified as failing to meet State academic  
17 standards for satisfactory progress. As a result,  
18 these schools are generally the most in need of addi-  
19 tional resources and technical assistance to build the  
20 capacity of these schools to address the many needs  
21 of their students.

22 “(8) The educational progress of children par-  
23 ticipating in programs under this title is closely as-  
24 sociated with their being taught by a highly qualified  
25 staff, particularly in schools with the highest con-



1        concentrations of poverty, where paraprofessionals,  
2        uncertified teachers, and teachers teaching out of  
3        field frequently provide instructional services.

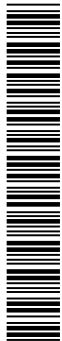
4            “(9) Congress and the public would benefit  
5        from additional data evaluating the efficacy of the  
6        Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965.

7            “(10) Schools operating programs assisted  
8        under this part must be held accountable for the  
9        educational achievement of their students, when  
10       those students fail to demonstrate progress in  
11       achieving high academic standards, local educational  
12       agencies and States must take significant actions to  
13       improve the educational opportunities available to  
14       them.

15        “(b) PURPOSE AND INTENT.—The purpose and in-  
16       tent of this title are to ensure that all children have a  
17       fair and equal opportunity to obtain a high-quality edu-  
18       cation.

19        “(c) RECOGNITION OF NEED.—The Congress recog-  
20       nizes the following:

21            “(1) Educational needs are particularly great  
22        for low-achieving children in our Nation’s highest-  
23        poverty schools, children with limited English pro-  
24        ficiency, children of migrant workers, children with  
25        disabilities, Indian children, children who are ne-



1       glected or delinquent, and young children who are in  
2       need of reading assistance and family literacy assist-  
3       ance.

4               “(2) Despite more than 3 decades of Federal  
5       assistance, a sizable achievement gap remains be-  
6       tween minority and nonminority students, and be-  
7       tween disadvantaged students and their more advan-  
8       taged peers.

9               “(3) Too many students attend local schools  
10      that fail to provide them with a quality education,  
11      and are given no alternatives to enable them to re-  
12      ceive a quality education.

13              “(4) States, local educational agencies, and  
14      schools need to be held accountable for improving  
15      the academic achievement of all students, and for  
16      identifying and turning around low-performing  
17      schools.

18              “(5) States and local educational agencies need  
19      to ensure that high quality academic assessments,  
20      accountability systems, teacher preparation and  
21      training, curriculum, and instructional materials are  
22      aligned with challenging State academic standards  
23      so that students, teachers, parents, and administra-  
24      tors can measure progress against common expecta-  
25      tions for student academic achievement.





1           “(6) Federal education assistance is intended  
2           not only to increase pupil achievement overall, but  
3           also more specifically and importantly, to help en-  
4           sure that all students, especially the disadvantaged,  
5           meet challenging academic achievement standards. It  
6           can only be determined if schools, local educational  
7           agencies, and States are reaching this goal if stu-  
8           dent achievement results are reported specifically by  
9           disadvantaged and minority status.”.

10 **SEC. 102. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

11           Section 1002 is amended to read as follows:

12 **“SEC. 1002. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

13           “(a) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY GRANTS.—For  
14 the purpose of carrying out part A, other than section  
15 1120(e), there are authorized to be appropriated  
16 \$11,500,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, \$13,000,000,000  
17 for fiscal year 2003, \$14,500,000,000 for fiscal year 2004,  
18 \$16,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2005, and  
19 \$17,200,000,000 for fiscal year 2006.

20           “(b) STUDENT READING SKILLS IMPROVEMENT  
21 GRANTS.—

22           “(1) READING FIRST.—For the purpose of car-  
23 rying out subpart 1 of part B, there are authorized  
24 to be appropriated \$900,000,000 for fiscal year



1 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for each  
2 of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

3 “(2) EARLY READING FIRST.—For the purpose  
4 of carrying out subpart 2 of part B, there are au-  
5 thORIZED to be appropriated \$75,000,000 for fiscal  
6 year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for  
7 each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

8 “(3) EVEN START.—For the purpose of car-  
9 rying out subpart 3 of part B, there are authorized  
10 to be appropriated \$275,000,000 for fiscal year  
11 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for each  
12 of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

13 “(4) INEXPENSIVE BOOK DISTRIBUTION PRO-  
14 GRAM.—For the purpose of carrying out subpart 4  
15 of part B, there are authorized to be appropriated  
16 such sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 2002  
17 and each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

18 “(c) EDUCATION OF MIGRATORY CHILDREN.—For  
19 the purpose of carrying out part C, there are authorized  
20 to be appropriated \$420,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and  
21 such sums as may be necessary for each of the 4 suc-  
22 ceeding fiscal years.

23 “(d) PREVENTION AND INTERVENTION PROGRAMS  
24 FOR YOUTH WHO ARE NEGLECTED, DELINQUENT, OR AT  
25 RISK OF DROPPING OUT.—For the purpose of carrying



1 out part D, there are authorized to be appropriated  
2 \$50,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may  
3 be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

4 “(e) COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM.—For the  
5 purpose of carrying out part F, there are authorized to  
6 be appropriated \$260,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and  
7 such sums as may be necessary for each of the 4 suc-  
8 ceeding fiscal years.

9 “(f) RURAL EDUCATION.—For the purpose of car-  
10 rying out part G, there are authorized to be appropriated  
11 \$300,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may  
12 be necessary for each of 4 succeeding fiscal years to be  
13 distributed equally between subparts 1 and 2.

14 “(g) CAPITAL EXPENSES.—For the purpose of car-  
15 rying out section 1120(e), there are authorized to be ap-  
16 propriated \$6,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and such sums  
17 as may be necessary for fiscal year 2003.

18 “(h) FEDERAL ACTIVITIES.—

19 “(1) SECTIONS 1501 AND 1502.—(A) For the  
20 purpose of carrying out section 1501, there are au-  
21 thorized to be appropriated \$9,000,000 for fiscal  
22 year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for  
23 each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

24 “(B) For the purpose of carrying out section  
25 1502, there are authorized to be appropriated such



1 sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 2002 and  
2 for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

3 “(2) SECTION 1503.—For the purpose of car-  
4 rying out section 1503, there are authorized to be  
5 appropriated such sums as may be necessary for fis-  
6 cal year 2002 and for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal  
7 years.

8 “(i) STATE ADMINISTRATION.—

9 “(1) STATE RESERVATION.—Each State may  
10 reserve, from the sum of the amounts it receives  
11 under parts A, C, and D of this title, an amount  
12 equal to the greater of 1 percent of the amount it  
13 received under such parts for fiscal year 2001, or  
14 \$400,000 (\$50,000 for each outlying area), includ-  
15 ing any funds it receives under paragraph (2), to  
16 carry out administrative duties assigned under parts  
17 A, C, and D.

18 “(2) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—  
19 There are authorized to be appropriated  
20 \$10,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as  
21 may be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal  
22 years for additional State administration grants.  
23 Any such additional grants shall be allocated among  
24 the States in proportion to the sum of the amounts

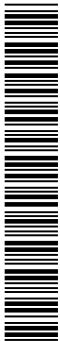


1 received by each State for that fiscal year under  
2 parts A, C, and D of this title.

3 “(3) SPECIAL RULE.—The amount received by  
4 each State under paragraphs (1) and (2) may not  
5 exceed the amount of State funds expended by the  
6 State educational agency to administer elementary  
7 and secondary education programs in such State.

8 “(j) ASSISTANCE FOR LOCAL SCHOOL IMPROVE-  
9 MENT.—

10 “(1) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary  
11 shall award grants to States to provide subgrants to  
12 local educational agencies for the purpose of pro-  
13 viding assistance for school improvement consistent  
14 with section 1116. Such grants shall be allocated  
15 among States, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, and the  
16 outlying areas, in proportion to the grants received  
17 by the State, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, and the  
18 outlying areas for the fiscal year under parts A, C,  
19 and D of this title. The Secretary shall expeditiously  
20 allocate a portion of such funds to States for the  
21 purpose of assisting local educational agencies and  
22 schools that were in school improvement status on  
23 the date preceding the date of the enactment of the  
24 No Child Left Behind Act of 2001.



1           “(2) REALLOCATIONS.—If a State does not  
2           apply for funds under this subsection, the Secretary  
3           shall reallocate such funds to other States in the  
4           same proportion funds are allocated under para-  
5           graph (1).

6           “(3) STATE APPLICATIONS.—Each State edu-  
7           cational agency that desires to receive funds under  
8           this subsection shall submit an application to the  
9           Secretary at such time, and containing such infor-  
10          mation as the Secretary shall reasonably require, ex-  
11          cept that such requirement shall be waived if a State  
12          educational agency has submitted such information  
13          as part of its State plan under this part. Each State  
14          plan shall describe how such funds will be allocated  
15          to ensure that the State educational agency and  
16          local educational agencies comply with school im-  
17          provement, corrective action, and restructuring re-  
18          quirements of section 1116.

19          “(4) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY GRANTS.—  
20          A grant to a local educational agency under this  
21          subsection shall be—

22                  “(A) of sufficient size and scope to support  
23                  the activities required under sections 1116 and  
24                  1117, but not less than \$50,000 and not more  
25                  than \$500,000 to each participating school;



1           “(B) integrated with funds awarded by the  
2           State under this Act; and

3           “(C) renewable for 2 additional 1-year pe-  
4           riods if schools are making yearly progress con-  
5           sistent with State and local educational agency  
6           plans developed under section 1116.

7           “(5) PRIORITY.—The State, in awarding such  
8           grants, shall give priority to local educational agen-  
9           cies with the lowest achieving schools, that dem-  
10          onstrate the greatest need for such funds, and that  
11          demonstrate the strongest commitment to making  
12          sure such funds are used to provide adequate re-  
13          sources to enable the lowest achieving schools to  
14          meet the yearly progress goals under State and local  
15          school improvement, corrective action, and restruc-  
16          turing plans under section 1116.

17          “(6) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—A State edu-  
18          cational agency that receives a grant award under  
19          this subsection may reserve not more than 5 percent  
20          of such award for administration, evaluation, and  
21          technical assistance expenses.

22          “(7) LOCAL AWARDS.—Each local educational  
23          agency that applies for assistance under this sub-  
24          section shall describe how it will provide the lowest  
25          achieving schools the resources necessary to meet



1 yearly progress goals under State and local school  
2 improvement, corrective action, and restructuring  
3 plans under section 1116.

4 “(8) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—  
5 For the purpose of carrying out this subsection,  
6 there are authorized to be appropriated  
7 \$500,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as  
8 may be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal  
9 years.”.

10 **SEC. 103. RESERVATION FOR SCHOOL IMPROVEMENT.**

11 Section 1003 is amended to read as follows:

12 **“SEC. 1003. RESERVATION FOR SCHOOL IMPROVEMENT.**

13 “(a) STATE RESERVATIONS.—Each State shall re-  
14 serve 1 percent of the amount it receives under subpart  
15 2 of part A for fiscal years 2002 and 2003, and 3 percent  
16 of the amount received under such subpart for fiscal years  
17 2004 through 2006, to carry out subsection (b) and to  
18 carry out the State’s responsibilities under sections 1116  
19 and 1117, including carrying out the State educational  
20 agency’s statewide system of technical assistance and sup-  
21 port for local educational agencies.

22 “(b) USES.—Of the amount reserved under sub-  
23 section (a) for any fiscal year, the State educational agen-  
24 cy shall allocate at least 95 percent of that amount directly  
25 to local educational agencies for schools identified for





1 school improvement, corrective action, and restructuring  
2 under section 1116(c) that have the greatest need for that  
3 assistance in amounts sufficient to have a significant im-  
4 pact in improving those schools.

5 “(c) PRIORITY.—The State educational agency, in al-  
6 locating funds to local educational agencies under this sec-  
7 tion, shall give priority to local educational agencies  
8 that—

9 “(1) have the lowest achieving schools;

10 “(2) demonstrate the greatest need for such  
11 funds; and

12 “(3) demonstrate the strongest commitment to  
13 ensuring that such funds are used to enable the low-  
14 est achieving schools to meet the yearly progress  
15 goals under section 1116(b)(3)(A)(v).

16 “(d) UNUSED FUNDS.—If, after consultation with  
17 local educational agencies in the State, the State edu-  
18 cational agency determines that the amount of funds re-  
19 served to carry out subsection (b) is greater than the  
20 amount needed to provide the assistance described in that  
21 subsection, it may allocate the excess amount to local edu-  
22 cational agencies in accordance with either or both—

23 “(1) the relative allocations it made to those  
24 agencies for that fiscal year under subpart 2 of part  
25 A; or



1           “(2) section 1126(c).

2           “(e) SPECIAL RULE.—Notwithstanding any other  
3 provision of this section, the amount of funds reserved by  
4 the State under subsection (a) in any given fiscal year  
5 shall not decrease the amount of State funds each local  
6 educational agency receives below the amount received by  
7 such agency under subpart 2 in the preceding fiscal  
8 year.”.

9 **SEC. 104. BASIC PROGRAMS.**

10           The heading for part A of title I and sections 1111  
11 through 1115 are amended to read as follows:

12           **“PART A—IMPROVING BASIC PROGRAMS**

13           **OPERATED BY LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES**

14           **“Subpart 1—Basic Program Requirements**

15           **“SEC. 1111. STATE PLANS.**

16           “(a) PLANS REQUIRED.—

17           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Any State desiring to re-  
18 ceive a grant under this part shall submit to the  
19 Secretary, by March 1, 2002, a plan, developed in  
20 consultation with local educational agencies, teach-  
21 ers, principals, pupil services personnel, administra-  
22 tors (including administrators of programs described  
23 in other parts of this title), other staff, and parents,  
24 that satisfies the requirements of this section and  
25 that is coordinated with other programs under this



1 Act, the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act  
2 (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.), the Carl D. Perkins Voca-  
3 tional and Technical Education Act of 1998 (20  
4 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.), the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C.  
5 9831 et seq.), and the McKinney-Vento Homeless  
6 Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 11431 et seq.).

7 “(2) CONSOLIDATED PLAN.—A State plan sub-  
8 mitted under paragraph (1) may be submitted as  
9 part of a consolidated plan under section 8302.

10 “(b) ACADEMIC STANDARDS, ACADEMIC ASSESS-  
11 MENTS, AND ACCOUNTABILITY.—

12 “(1) CHALLENGING ACADEMIC STANDARDS.—

13 “(A) Each State plan shall demonstrate  
14 that the State has adopted challenging aca-  
15 demic content standards and challenging stu-  
16 dent academic achievement standards that will  
17 be used by the State, its local educational agen-  
18 cies, and its schools to carry out this part, ex-  
19 cept that a State shall not be required to sub-  
20 mit such standards to the Secretary.

21 “(B) The academic standards required by  
22 subparagraph (A) shall be the same academic  
23 standards that the State applies to all schools  
24 and children in the State.



1           “(C) The State shall have such academic  
2 standards for all public elementary and sec-  
3 ondary school children, including children  
4 served under this part, in subjects determined  
5 by the State, but including at least mathe-  
6 matics, reading or language arts, and science  
7 (beginning in the 2005–2006 school year),  
8 which shall include the same knowledge, skills,  
9 and levels of achievement expected of all chil-  
10 dren.

11           “(D) Academic standards under this para-  
12 graph shall include—

13                   “(i) challenging academic content  
14 standards in academic subjects that—

15                           “(I) specify what children are ex-  
16 pected to know and be able to do;

17                           “(II) contain coherent and rig-  
18 orous content; and

19                           “(III) encourage the teaching of  
20 advanced skills; and

21                   “(ii) challenging student academic  
22 achievement standards that—

23                           “(I) are aligned with the State’s  
24 academic content standards;



1                   “(II) describe 2 levels of high  
2                   performance (proficient and advanced)  
3                   that determine how well children are  
4                   mastering the material in the State  
5                   academic content standards; and

6                   “(III) describe a third level of  
7                   performance (basic) to provide com-  
8                   plete information about the progress  
9                   of the lower performing children to-  
10                  ward achieving to the proficient and  
11                  advanced levels of performance.

12                  “(E) For the subjects in which students  
13                  will be served under this part, but for which a  
14                  State is not required by subparagraphs (A),  
15                  (B), and (C) to develop, and has not otherwise  
16                  developed such academic standards, the State  
17                  plan shall describe a strategy for ensuring that  
18                  students are taught the same knowledge and  
19                  skills in such subjects and held to the same ex-  
20                  pectations as are all children.

21                  “(F) Nothing in this part shall prohibit a  
22                  State from revising any standard adopted under  
23                  this part before or after the date of enactment  
24                  of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001.”.

25                  “(2) ACCOUNTABILITY.—

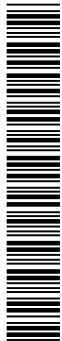


1           “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each State plan shall  
2 demonstrate that the State has developed and is  
3 implementing a statewide State accountability  
4 system that has been or will be effective in en-  
5 suring that all local educational agencies, public  
6 elementary schools, and public secondary  
7 schools make adequate yearly progress as de-  
8 fined under subparagraph (B). Each State ac-  
9 countability system shall—

10           “(i) be based on the academic stand-  
11 ards and academic assessments adopted  
12 under paragraphs (1) and (4) and take  
13 into account the performance of all public  
14 school students;

15           “(ii) be the same as the accountability  
16 system the State uses for all public schools  
17 or all local educational agencies in the  
18 State, except that public schools and local  
19 educational agencies not participating  
20 under this part are not subject to the re-  
21 quirements of section 1116; and

22           “(iii) include rewards and sanctions  
23 the State will use to hold local educational  
24 agencies and public schools accountable for  
25 student achievement and for ensuring that



1           they make adequate yearly progress in ac-  
2           cordance with the State's definition under  
3           subparagraph (B).

4           “(B) ADEQUATE YEARLY PROGRESS.—  
5           Each State plan shall demonstrate, based on  
6           academic assessments described under para-  
7           graph (4), what constitutes adequate yearly  
8           progress of the State, and of public schools and  
9           local educational agencies in the State, toward  
10          enabling all public school students to meet the  
11          State's student academic achievement stand-  
12          ards, while working toward the goal of nar-  
13          rowing the achievement gaps in the State, local  
14          educational agency, and school.

15          “(C) DEFINITION.—‘Adequate yearly  
16          progress’ shall be defined by the State in a  
17          manner that—

18                 “(i) applies the same high academic  
19                 standards of academic performance to all  
20                 public school students in the State;

21                 “(ii) measures the progress of public  
22                 schools and local educational agencies  
23                 based primarily on the academic assess-  
24                 ments described in paragraph (4);



1           “(iii) measures the student dropout  
2 rate, as defined for the Common Core of  
3 Data maintained by the National Center  
4 for Education Statistics established under  
5 section 403 of the National Education Sta-  
6 tistics Act of 1994 (20 U.S.C. 9002);

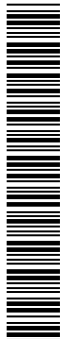
7           “(iv) includes separate annual numer-  
8 ical objectives for continuing and signifi-  
9 cant improvement in each of the following  
10 (except that disaggregation of data under  
11 subclauses (II) and (III) shall not be re-  
12 quired in a case in which the number of  
13 students in a category is insufficient to  
14 yield statistically reliable information or  
15 the results would reveal individually identi-  
16 fiable information about an individual stu-  
17 dent):

18           “(I) The achievement of all public  
19 school students.

20           “(II) The achievement of—

21                   “(aa) economically disadvan-  
22 taged students;

23                   “(bb) students from major  
24 racial and ethnic groups;





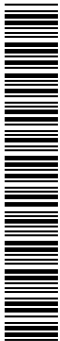
1                   “(cc) students with disabil-  
2                   ities; and

3                   “(dd) students with limited  
4                   English proficiency;

5                   “(III) solely for the purpose of deter-  
6                   mining adequate yearly progress of the  
7                   State, the acquisition of English language  
8                   proficiency by children with limited  
9                   English proficiency;

10                  “(v) at the State’s discretion, may  
11                  also include other academic measures such  
12                  as promotion, completion of college pre-  
13                  paratory courses, and high school comple-  
14                  tion (and for individual local educational  
15                  agencies and schools, the acquisition of  
16                  English language proficiency by children  
17                  with limited English proficiency), except  
18                  that inclusion of such other measures may  
19                  not change which schools or local edu-  
20                  cational agencies would otherwise be sub-  
21                  ject to improvement or corrective action  
22                  under section 1116 if the discretionary in-  
23                  dicators were not included; and

24                  “(vi) includes a timeline that—



1                   “(I) uses as a baseline year the  
2 year following the date of enactment  
3 of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
4 2001;

5                   “(II) establishes a target year by  
6 which all members of each group of  
7 students described in subclauses (I)  
8 and (II) of clause (iii) shall meet or  
9 exceed the State’s proficient level of  
10 academic performance on the State  
11 academic assessment used for the pur-  
12 poses of this section and section 1116,  
13 except that the target year shall not  
14 be more than 12 years from the base-  
15 line year; and

16                   “(III) for each year until and in-  
17 cluding the target year, establishes  
18 annual goals for the academic per-  
19 formance of each group of students  
20 described in subclauses (I) and (II) of  
21 clause (iii) on the State academic as-  
22 sessment that—

23                   “(aa) indicates a minimum  
24 percentage of students who must  
25 meet the proficient level on the



1 academic assessment, such that  
2 the minimum percentage is the  
3 same for each group of students  
4 described in subclauses (I) and  
5 (II) of clause (iii); or

6 “(bb) indicates an annual  
7 minimum amount by which the  
8 percentage of students who meet  
9 the proficient level among each  
10 group of students described in  
11 subclauses (I) and (II) of clause  
12 (iii) shall increase, such that the  
13 minimum increase for each group  
14 is equal to or greater than 100  
15 percent minus the percentage of  
16 the group meeting the proficient  
17 level in the baseline year divided  
18 by the number of years from the  
19 baseline year to the target year  
20 established under clause (I).

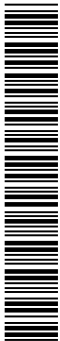
21 “(D) ANNUAL IMPROVEMENT FOR  
22 SCHOOLS.—For a school to make adequate  
23 yearly progress under subparagraph (A), not  
24 less than 95 percent of each group of students  
25 described in subparagraph (C)(iii)(II) who are



1 enrolled in the school are required to take the  
2 academic assessments, consistent with section  
3 612(a)(17)(A) of the Individuals with Disabil-  
4 ities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(17)(A))  
5 and paragraph (4)(G)(ii), on which adequate  
6 yearly progress is based.

7 “(E) PUBLIC NOTICE AND COMMENT.—  
8 Each State shall ensure that in developing its  
9 plan, it diligently seeks public comment from a  
10 range of institutions and individuals in the  
11 State with an interest in improved student  
12 achievement and that the State makes and will  
13 continue to make a substantial effort to ensure  
14 that information under this part is widely  
15 known and understood by the public, parents,  
16 teachers, and school administrators throughout  
17 the State. Such efforts shall include, at a min-  
18 imum, publication of such information and ex-  
19 planatory text, broadly to the public through  
20 such means as the Internet, the media, and  
21 public agencies.

22 “(3) STATE AUTHORITY.—If a State edu-  
23 cational agency provides evidence, which is satisfac-  
24 tory to the Secretary, that neither the State edu-  
25 cational agency nor any other State government offi-



1 cial, agency, or entity has sufficient authority, under  
2 State law, to adopt curriculum content and student  
3 academic achievement standards, and academic as-  
4 sements aligned with such academic standards,  
5 which will be applicable to all students enrolled in  
6 the State's public schools, then the State educational  
7 agency may meet the requirements of this subsection  
8 by—

9 “(A) adopting academic standards and  
10 academic assessments that meet the require-  
11 ments of this subsection, on a statewide basis,  
12 limiting their applicability to students served  
13 under this part; or

14 “(B) adopting and implementing policies  
15 that ensure that each local educational agency  
16 in the State which receives grants under this  
17 part will adopt curriculum content and student  
18 academic achievement standards, and academic  
19 assessments aligned with such standards, which  
20 meet all of the criteria in this subsection and  
21 any regulations regarding such standards and  
22 assessments which the Secretary may publish,  
23 and which are applicable to all students served  
24 by each such local educational agency.



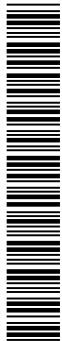
1           “(4) ACADEMIC ASSESSMENTS.—Each State  
2 plan shall demonstrate that the State has imple-  
3 mented a set of high-quality, yearly student aca-  
4 demic assessments that include, at a minimum, aca-  
5 demic assessments in mathematics, and reading or  
6 language arts, that will be used as the primary  
7 means of determining the yearly performance of the  
8 State and of each local educational agency and  
9 school in enabling all children to meet the State’s  
10 challenging student academic achievement stand-  
11 ards. Such assessments shall—

12                   “(A) be the same academic assessments  
13 used to measure the performance of all chil-  
14 dren;

15                   “(B) be aligned with the State’s chal-  
16 lenging content and student academic achieve-  
17 ment standards and provide coherent informa-  
18 tion about student attainment of such stand-  
19 ards;

20                   “(C) be used for purposes for which such  
21 assessments are valid and reliable, and be con-  
22 sistent with relevant, recognized professional  
23 and technical standards for such assessments;

24                   “(D) for the purposes of this part, be  
25 scored to ensure the performance of each stu-



1           dent is evaluated solely against the State’s chal-  
2           lenging academic content standards and not rel-  
3           ative to the score of other students;

4           “(E) except as otherwise provided for  
5           grades 3 through 8 under subparagraph (G),  
6           measure the proficiency of students in, at a  
7           minimum, mathematics and reading or lan-  
8           guage arts, and be administered not less than  
9           once during—

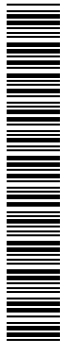
10                   “(i) grades 3 through 5;

11                   “(ii) grades 6 through 9; and

12                   “(iii) grades 10 through 12;

13           “(F) involve multiple up-to-date measures  
14           of student achievement, including measures that  
15           assess critical thinking skills and under-  
16           standing;

17           “(G) beginning not later than school year  
18           2004-2005, measure the performance of stu-  
19           dents against the challenging State content and  
20           student academic achievement standards in  
21           each of grades 3 through 8 in, at a minimum,  
22           mathematics, and reading or language arts, ex-  
23           cept that the Secretary may provide the State  
24           1 additional year if the State demonstrates that  
25           exceptional or uncontrollable circumstances,



1 such as a natural disaster or a precipitous and  
2 unforeseen decline in the financial resources of  
3 the State, prevented full implementation of the  
4 academic assessments by that deadline and that  
5 it will complete implementation within the addi-  
6 tional 1-year period;

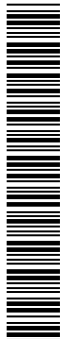
7 “(H) provide for—

8 “(i) the participation in such assess-  
9 ments of all students;

10 “(ii) the reasonable adaptations and  
11 accommodations for students with disabil-  
12 ities defined under 602(3) of the Individ-  
13 uals with Disabilities Education Act (20  
14 U.S.C. 1401(3)) necessary to measure the  
15 achievement of such students relative to  
16 State content and State student academic  
17 achievement standards;

18 “(iii) the inclusion of limited English  
19 proficient students who shall be assessed,  
20 to the extent practicable, in the language  
21 and form most likely to yield accurate and  
22 reliable information on what such students  
23 know and can do in content areas;

24 “(iv) notwithstanding clause (iii), the  
25 academic assessment (using tests written





1 in English) of reading or language arts of  
2 any student who has attended school in the  
3 United States (not including Puerto Rico)  
4 for 3 or more consecutive school years, ex-  
5 cept if the local educational agency deter-  
6 mines, on a case-by-case individual basis,  
7 that academic assessments in another lan-  
8 guage and form would likely yield more ac-  
9 curate and reliable information on what  
10 such students know and can do, the local  
11 educational agency may assess such stu-  
12 dents in the appropriate language other  
13 than English for 1 additional year;

14 “(I) include students who have attended  
15 schools in a local educational agency for a full  
16 academic year but have not attended a single  
17 school for a full academic year, except that the  
18 performance of students who have attended  
19 more than 1 school in the local educational  
20 agency in any academic year shall be used only  
21 in determining the progress of the local edu-  
22 cational agency;

23 “(J) produce individual student reports to  
24 be provided to parents, which include academic  
25 assessment scores, or other information on the

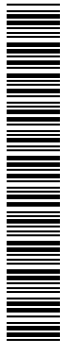


1 attainment of student academic achievement  
2 standards; and

3 “(K) enable results to be disaggregated  
4 within each State, local educational agency, and  
5 school by gender, by each major racial and eth-  
6 nic group, by English proficiency status, by mi-  
7 grant status, by students with disabilities as  
8 compared to nondisabled students, and by eco-  
9 nomically disadvantaged students as compared  
10 to students who are not economically disadvan-  
11 taged.

12 “(5) SPECIAL RULE.—Academic assessment  
13 measures in addition to those in paragraph (4) that  
14 do not meet the requirements of such paragraph  
15 may be included as additional measures, but may  
16 not be used in lieu of the academic assessments re-  
17 quired in paragraph (4). Results on any additional  
18 measures under this paragraph shall not change  
19 which schools or local educational agencies would  
20 otherwise be subject to improvement or corrective  
21 action under section 1116 if the additional measures  
22 were not included.

23 “(6) LANGUAGE ASSESSMENTS.—Each State  
24 plan shall identify the languages other than English  
25 that are present in the participating student popu-

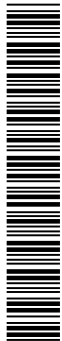


1 lation and indicate the languages for which yearly  
2 student academic assessments are not available and  
3 are needed. The State shall make every effort to de-  
4 velop such assessments and may request assistance  
5 from the Secretary if linguistically accessible aca-  
6 demic assessment measures are needed. Upon re-  
7 quest, the Secretary shall assist with the identifica-  
8 tion of appropriate academic assessment measures in  
9 the needed languages, but shall not mandate a spe-  
10 cific academic assessment or mode of instruction.

11 “(7) ACADEMIC ASSESSMENTS OF ENGLISH  
12 LANGUAGE PROFICIENCY.—Each State plan shall  
13 demonstrate that local educational agencies in the  
14 State will, beginning no later than school year  
15 2002–2003, annually assess the English proficiency  
16 of all students with limited English proficiency in  
17 their schools.

18 “(8) REQUIREMENT.—Each State plan shall  
19 describe—

20 “(A) how the State educational agency will  
21 assist each local educational agency and school  
22 affected by the State plan to develop the capac-  
23 ity to comply with each of the requirements of  
24 sections 1112(c)(1)(D), 1114(c), and 1115(c)  
25 that is applicable to such agency or school;



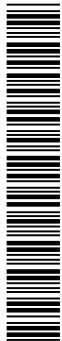
1           “(B) how the State educational agency will  
2 assist each local educational agency and school  
3 affected by the State plan to provide additional  
4 educational assistance to individual students as-  
5 sessed as needing help to achieve the State’s  
6 challenging academic standards.

7           “(C) such other factors as the State con-  
8 siders appropriate to provide students an oppor-  
9 tunity to achieve the knowledge and skills de-  
10 scribed in the challenging academic content  
11 standards adopted by the State.

12           “(9) USE OF ACADEMIC ASSESSMENT RESULTS  
13 TO IMPROVE STUDENT ACHIEVEMENT.—Each State  
14 plan shall describe how the State will ensure that  
15 the results of the State assessments described in  
16 paragraph (4)—

17           “(A) will be provided promptly, but not  
18 later than the end of the school year (consistent  
19 with section 1116, to local educational agencies,  
20 schools, and teachers in a manner that is clear  
21 and easy to understand; and

22           “(B) be used by those local educational  
23 agencies, schools, and teachers to improve the  
24 educational achievement of individual students.



1           “(10) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE ON ACADEMIC  
2 ASSESSMENT REQUIREMENTS.—The Secretary shall  
3 provide technical assistance to interested States re-  
4 garding how to meet the requirements of paragraph  
5 (4).

6           “(c) OTHER PROVISIONS TO SUPPORT TEACHING  
7 AND LEARNING.—Each State plan shall contain assur-  
8 ances that—

9           “(1) the State shall produce, beginning with the  
10 2003–2004 school year, the annual State report  
11 cards described in subsection (h)(1);

12           “(2) the State will participate, beginning in  
13 school year 2002–2003, in annual academic assess-  
14 ments of 4th and 8th grade reading and mathe-  
15 matics under—

16           “(A) the State National Assessment of  
17 Educational Progress carried out under section  
18 411(b)(2) of the National Education Statistics  
19 Act of 1994 (20 U.S.C. 9010(b)(2)); or

20           “(B) another academic assessment selected  
21 by the State which meets the criteria of section  
22 7101(b)(1)(B)(ii) of this Act;

23           “(3) the State educational agency shall work  
24 with other agencies, including educational service  
25 agencies or other local consortia, and institutions to

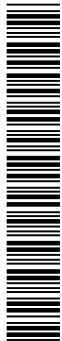


1 provide technical assistance to local educational  
2 agencies and schools to carry out the State edu-  
3 cational agency's responsibilities under this part, in-  
4 cluding technical assistance in providing professional  
5 development under section 1119A and technical as-  
6 sistance under section 1117; and

7       “(4)(A) where educational service agencies  
8 exist, the State educational agency shall consider  
9 providing professional development and technical as-  
10 sistance through such agencies; and

11       “(B) where educational service agencies do not  
12 exist, the State educational agency shall consider  
13 providing professional development and technical as-  
14 sistance through other cooperative agreements such  
15 as through a consortium of local educational agen-  
16 cies;

17       “(5) the State educational agency shall notify  
18 local educational agencies and the public of the con-  
19 tent and student academic achievement standards  
20 and academic assessments developed under this sec-  
21 tion, and of the authority to operate schoolwide pro-  
22 grams, and will fulfill the State educational agency's  
23 responsibilities regarding local educational agency  
24 improvement and school improvement under section



1 1116, including such corrective actions as are nec-  
2 essary;

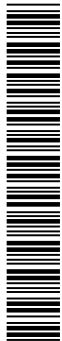
3 “(6) the State educational agency shall provide  
4 the least restrictive and burdensome regulations for  
5 local educational agencies and individual schools par-  
6 ticipating in a program assisted under this part;

7 “(7) the State educational agency shall inform  
8 the Secretary and the public of how Federal laws, if  
9 at all, hinder the ability of States to hold local edu-  
10 cational agencies and schools accountable for stu-  
11 dent academic performance;

12 “(8) the State educational agency will encour-  
13 age schools to consolidate funds from other Federal,  
14 State, and local sources for schoolwide reform in  
15 schoolwide programs under section 1114;

16 “(9) the State educational agency shall modify  
17 or eliminate State fiscal and accounting barriers so  
18 that schools can easily consolidate funds from other  
19 Federal, State, and local sources for schoolwide pro-  
20 grams under section 1114;

21 “(10) the State educational agency has involved  
22 the committee of practitioners established under sec-  
23 tion 1603(b) in developing the plan and monitoring  
24 its implementation;



1           “(11) the State educational agency shall inform  
2 local educational agencies of the local educational  
3 agency’s authority to transfer funds under title VII,  
4 to obtain waivers under title VIII and, if the State  
5 is an Ed-Flex Partnership State, to obtain waivers  
6 under the Education Flexibility Partnership Act of  
7 1999 (20 U.S.C. 5891a et seq.); and

8           “(12) the State educational agency shall en-  
9 courage local educational agencies and individual  
10 schools participating in a program assisted under  
11 this part to offer family literacy services (using  
12 funds under this part), if the agency or school deter-  
13 mines that a substantial number of students served  
14 under this part by the agency or school have parents  
15 who do not have a high school diploma or its recog-  
16 nized equivalent or who have low levels of literacy.

17           “(d) PEER REVIEW AND SECRETARIAL APPROVAL.—  
18 The Secretary shall—

19           “(1) establish a peer review process to assist in  
20 the review of State plans;

21           “(2) approve a State plan within 120 days of  
22 its submission unless the Secretary determines that  
23 the plan does not meet the requirements of this sec-  
24 tion;





1           “(3) if the Secretary determines that the State  
2 plan does not meet the requirements of subsection  
3 (a), (b), or (c), immediately notify the State of such  
4 determination and the reasons for such determina-  
5 tion;

6           “(4) not decline to approve a State’s plan  
7 before—

8           “(A) offering the State an opportunity to  
9 revise its plan;

10           “(B) providing technical assistance in  
11 order to assist the State to meet the require-  
12 ments under subsections (a), (b), and (c); and

13           “(C) providing a hearing; and

14           “(5) have the authority to disapprove a State  
15 plan for not meeting the requirements of this part,  
16 but shall not have the authority to require a State,  
17 as a condition of approval of the State plan, to in-  
18 clude in, or delete from, such plan 1 or more specific  
19 elements of the State’s academic content standards  
20 or to use specific academic assessment instruments  
21 or items.

22           “(e) DURATION OF THE PLAN.—

23           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State plan shall—

24           “(A) be submitted for the first year for  
25 which this part is in effect after the date of the



1 enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
2 2001;

3 “(B) remain in effect for the duration of  
4 the State’s participation under this part; and

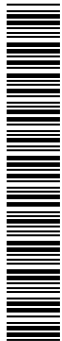
5 “(C) be periodically reviewed and revised  
6 by the State, as necessary, to reflect changes in  
7 the State’s strategies and programs under this  
8 part.

9 “(2) ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—If the State  
10 makes significant changes in its plan, such as the  
11 adoption of new or revised State academic content  
12 standards and State student achievement standards,  
13 new academic assessments, or a new definition of  
14 adequate yearly progress, the State shall submit  
15 such information to the Secretary.

16 “(f) LIMITATION ON CONDITIONS.—Officers and em-  
17 ployees of the Federal Government are prohibited from  
18 mandating, directing, or controlling a State, local edu-  
19 cational agency, or school’s specific instructional content  
20 or student academic achievement standards and academic  
21 assessments, curriculum, or program of instruction, as a  
22 condition of eligibility to receive funds under this part.

23 “(g) PENALTIES.—

24 “(1) FAILURE TO MEET DEADLINES ENACTED  
25 IN 1994.—



1           “(A) IN GENERAL.—If a State fails to  
2 meet the deadlines established by the Improving  
3 America’s Schools Act of 1994 (or under any  
4 waiver granted by the Secretary or under any  
5 compliance agreement with the Secretary) for  
6 demonstrating that it has in place challenging  
7 academic content standards and student  
8 achievement standards, and a system for meas-  
9 uring and monitoring adequate yearly progress,  
10 the Secretary shall withhold 25 percent of the  
11 funds that would otherwise be available for  
12 State administration and activities in each year  
13 until the Secretary determines that the State  
14 meets those requirements;

15           “(B) NO EXTENSION.—The Secretary shall  
16 not grant any additional waivers of, or enter  
17 into any additional compliance agreements to  
18 extend, the deadlines described in subparagraph  
19 (A) for any State.

20           “(2) FAILURE TO MEET REQUIREMENTS EN-  
21 ACTED IN 2001.—If a State fails to meet any of the  
22 requirements of this section, other than the require-  
23 ments described in paragraph (1), the Secretary may  
24 withhold funds for State administration until the



1 Secretary determines that the State has fulfilled  
2 those requirements.

3 “(h) REPORTS.—

4 “(1) ANNUAL STATE REPORT CARD.—

5 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than the be-  
6 ginning of the 2003–2004 school year, a State  
7 that receives assistance under this Act shall  
8 prepare and disseminate an annual State report  
9 card.

10 “(B) IMPLEMENTATION.—The State report  
11 card shall be—

12 “(i) concise; and

13 “(ii) presented in a format and man-  
14 ner that parents can understand, and  
15 which, to the extent practicable, shall be in  
16 a language the parents can understand.

17 “(C) PUBLIC DISSEMINATION.—The State  
18 shall widely disseminate the information de-  
19 scribed in subparagraph (D) to all schools and  
20 local educational agencies in the State and  
21 make the information broadly available through  
22 public means, such as posting on the Internet,  
23 distribution to the media, and distribution  
24 through public agencies.



1           “(D) REQUIRED INFORMATION.—The  
2 State shall include in its annual State report  
3 card—

4           “(i) information, in the aggregate, on  
5 student achievement at each proficiency  
6 level on the State academic assessments  
7 described in subsection (b)(4)(F)  
8 (disaggregated by race, ethnicity, gender,  
9 disability status, migrant status, English  
10 proficiency, and status as economically dis-  
11 advantaged, except that such  
12 disaggregation shall not be required in a  
13 case in which the number of students in a  
14 category is insufficient to yield statistically  
15 reliable information or the results would  
16 reveal individually identifiable information  
17 about an individual student);

18           “(ii) the percentage of students not  
19 tested (disaggregated by the same cat-  
20 egories and subject to the same exception  
21 described in clause (i));

22           “(iii) the percentage of students who  
23 graduate from high school within 4 years  
24 of starting high school;



1           “(iv) the percentage of students who  
 2           take and complete advanced placement  
 3           courses as compared to the population of  
 4           the students eligible to take such courses,  
 5           and the rate of passing of advanced place-  
 6           ment tests;

7           “(v) the professional qualifications of  
 8           teachers in the aggregate, including the  
 9           percentage of teachers teaching with emer-  
 10          gency or provisional qualifications, and the  
 11          percentage of class sections not taught by  
 12          fully qualified teachers; and

13          “(vi) such other information (such as  
 14          dropout and school attendance rates; and  
 15          average class size by grade level) as the  
 16          State believes will best provide parents,  
 17          students, and other members of the public  
 18          with information on the progress of each of  
 19          the State’s public schools.

20               “(2) CONTENT OF LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
 21               CY REPORT CARDS.—

22               “(A) MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS.—The  
 23               State shall ensure that each local educational  
 24               agency collects appropriate data and includes in



1 its annual report for each of its schools, at a  
2 minimum—

3 “(i) the information described in para-  
4 graph (1)(D) for each local educational  
5 agency and school; and

6 “(ii)(I) in the case of a local edu-  
7 cational agency—

8 “(aa) the number and percentage  
9 of schools identified for school im-  
10 provement and how long they have  
11 been so identified, including schools  
12 identified under section 1116(c) of  
13 this Act; and

14 “(bb) information that shows  
15 how students in its schools perform on  
16 the statewide academic assessment  
17 compared to students in the State as  
18 a whole; and

19 “(II) in the case of a school—

20 “(aa) whether it has been identi-  
21 fied for school improvement; and

22 “(bb) information that shows  
23 how its students performed on the  
24 statewide academic assessment com-  
25 pared to students in the local edu-

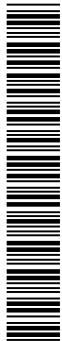


1                   cational agency and the State as a  
2                   whole.

3                   “(B) OTHER INFORMATION.—A local edu-  
4                   cational agency may include in its annual re-  
5                   ports any other appropriate information wheth-  
6                   er or not such information is included in the  
7                   annual State report.

8                   “(C) PUBLIC DISSEMINATION.—The local  
9                   educational agency shall, not later than the be-  
10                  ginning of the 2003–2004 school year, publicly  
11                  disseminate the information described in this  
12                  paragraph to all schools in the district and to  
13                  all parents of students attending those schools  
14                  (to the extent practicable, in a language they  
15                  can understand), and make the information  
16                  broadly available through public means, such as  
17                  posting on the Internet, distribution to the  
18                  media, and distribution through public agencies.

19                  “(3) PRE-EXISTING REPORT CARDS.—A State  
20                  or local educational agency that was providing public  
21                  report cards on the performance of students,  
22                  schools, local educational agencies, or the State prior  
23                  to the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act  
24                  of 2001 may use those reports for the purpose of  
25                  this subsection, so long as any such report is modi-





1       fied, as may be needed, to contain the information  
2       required by this subsection.

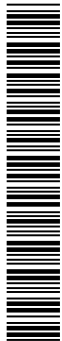
3           “(4) ANNUAL STATE REPORT TO THE SEC-  
4       RETARY.—Each State receiving assistance under  
5       this Act shall report annually to the Secretary, and  
6       make widely available within the State—

7           “(A) beginning with school year 2001–  
8       2002, information on the State’s progress in  
9       developing and implementing the academic as-  
10      sessment system described in subsection (b)(4);

11          “(B) beginning not later than school year  
12      2004–2005, information on the achievement of  
13      students on the academic assessments required  
14      by that subsection, including the disaggregated  
15      results for the categories of students identified  
16      in subsection (b)(2)(C)(iii)(II);

17          “(C) beginning not later than school year  
18      2002–2003, information on the acquisition of  
19      English proficiency by children with limited  
20      English proficiency; and

21          “(D) in any year before the State begins to  
22      provide the information described in subpara-  
23      graph (B), information on the results of stu-  
24      dent academic assessments (including



1 disaggregated results) required under this sec-  
2 tion.

3 “(5) PARENTS RIGHT-TO-KNOW.—

4 “(A) QUALIFICATIONS.—At the beginning  
5 of each school year, a local educational agency  
6 that receives funds under this part shall notify  
7 the parents of each student attending any  
8 school receiving funds under this part that they  
9 may request, and shall provide the parents  
10 upon request (and in a timely manner), infor-  
11 mation regarding the professional qualifications  
12 of the student’s classroom teachers, including,  
13 at a minimum, the following:

14 “(i) Whether the teacher has met  
15 State qualification and licensing criteria  
16 for the grade levels and subject areas in  
17 which the teacher provides instruction.

18 “(ii) Whether the teacher is teaching  
19 under emergency or other provisional sta-  
20 tus through which State qualification or li-  
21 censing criteria have been waived.

22 “(iii) The baccalaureate degree major  
23 of the teacher and any other graduate cer-  
24 tification or degree held by the teacher,



1 and the field of discipline of the certifi-  
2 cation or degree.

3 “(iv) Whether the child is provided  
4 services by paraprofessionals and if so,  
5 their qualifications.

6 “(B) ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—In ad-  
7 dition to the information which parents may re-  
8 quest under subparagraph (A), a school which  
9 receives funds under this part shall provide to  
10 each individual parent—

11 “(i) information on the level of per-  
12 formance of the individual student for  
13 whom they are the parent in each of the  
14 State academic assessments as required  
15 under this part; and

16 “(ii) timely notice that the student for  
17 whom they are the parent has been as-  
18 signed, or has been taught for 4 or more  
19 consecutive weeks by, a teacher who is not  
20 fully qualified.

21 “(C) FORMAT.—The notice and informa-  
22 tion provided to parents under this paragraph  
23 shall be in an understandable and uniform for-  
24 mat and, to the extent practicable, provided in  
25 a language that the parents can understand.



1           “(6) PLAN CONTENT.—A State shall include in  
2           its plan under subsection (b) an assurance that it  
3           has in effect a policy that meets the requirements of  
4           this section.

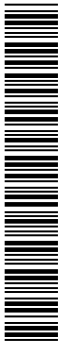
5           “(i) PRIVACY.—Information collected under this sec-  
6           tion shall be collected and disseminated in a manner that  
7           protects the privacy of individuals.

8           **“SEC. 1112. LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY PLANS.**

9           “(a) PLANS REQUIRED.—

10           “(1) SUBGRANTS.—A local educational agency  
11           may receive a subgrant under this part for any fiscal  
12           year only if such agency has on file with the State  
13           educational agency a plan, approved by the State  
14           educational agency, that is coordinated with other  
15           programs under this Act, the Individuals with Dis-  
16           abilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.), the  
17           Carl D. Perkins Vocational and Technical Education  
18           Act of 1998 (20 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.), the Head  
19           Start Act (42 U.S.C. 9831 et seq.), the McKinney-  
20           Vento Homeless Assistance Act, and other Acts, as  
21           appropriate.

22           “(2) CONSOLIDATED APPLICATION.—The plan  
23           may be submitted as part of a consolidated applica-  
24           tion under section 8305.



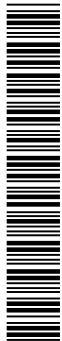
1           “(b) PLAN PROVISIONS.—In order to help low achiev-  
2 ing children achieve high academic standards, each local  
3 educational agency plan shall include—

4           “(1) a description of additional high-quality  
5 student academic assessments, if any, other than the  
6 academic assessments described in the State plan  
7 under section 1111, that the local educational agen-  
8 cy and schools served under this part will use to—

9           “(A) determine the success of children  
10 served under this part in meeting the State’s  
11 student academic achievement standards and  
12 provide information to teachers, parents, and  
13 students on the progress being made toward  
14 meeting the State student academic achieve-  
15 ment standards described in section  
16 1111(b)(1)(D)(ii);

17           “(B) assist in diagnosis, teaching, and  
18 learning in the classroom in ways that best en-  
19 able low-achieving children served under this  
20 title to meet State academic standards and do  
21 well in the local curriculum; and

22           “(C) determine what revisions are needed  
23 to projects under this title so that such children  
24 meet the State’s student academic achievement  
25 standards;



1           “(2) at the local educational agency’s discre-  
2           tion, a description of any other indicators that will  
3           be used in addition to the academic assessments de-  
4           scribed in paragraph (1) for the uses described in  
5           such paragraph, except that results on any discre-  
6           tionary indicators shall not change which schools  
7           would otherwise be subject to improvement of correc-  
8           tive action under section 1118 if the additional  
9           measures are not included;

10           “(3) a description of how the local educational  
11           agency will provide additional educational assistance  
12           to individual students assessed as needing help to  
13           achieve the State’s challenging academic standards;

14           “(4) a description of the strategy the local edu-  
15           cational agency will use to provide professional de-  
16           velopment for teachers, and, if appropriate, pupil  
17           services personnel, administrators, parents and other  
18           staff, including local educational agency level staff in  
19           accordance with section 1119A;

20           “(5) a description of how the local educational  
21           agency will coordinate and integrate services pro-  
22           vided under this part with other educational services  
23           at the local educational agency or individual school  
24           level, such as—



1           “(A) Even Start, Head Start, Reading  
2           First, Early Reading First, and other preschool  
3           programs, including plans for the transition of  
4           participants in such programs to local elemen-  
5           tary school programs; and

6           “(B) services for children with limited  
7           English proficiency or with disabilities, migra-  
8           tory children served under part C, neglected or  
9           delinquent youth, Indian children served under  
10          part B of title III, homeless children, and immi-  
11          grant children in order to increase program ef-  
12          fectiveness, eliminate duplication, and reduce  
13          fragmentation of the instructional program;

14          “(6) an assurance that the local educational  
15          agency will participate, if selected, in the State Na-  
16          tional Assessment of Educational Progress in 4th  
17          and 8th grade reading and mathematics carried out  
18          under section 411(b)(2) of the Education Statistics  
19          Act of 1994 (20 U.S.C. 9010(b)(2)), or in another  
20          academic assessment pursuant to the State decision  
21          under section 7101(b)(1)(B)(ii);

22          “(7) a description of the poverty criteria that  
23          will be used to select school attendance areas under  
24          section 1113;

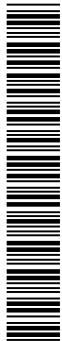


1           “(8) a description of how teachers, in consulta-  
2           tion with parents, administrators, and pupil services  
3           personnel, in targeted assistance schools under sec-  
4           tion 1115, will identify the eligible children most in  
5           need of services under this part;

6           “(9) a general description of the nature of the  
7           programs to be conducted by such agency’s schools  
8           under sections 1114 and 1115 and, where appro-  
9           priate, educational services outside such schools for  
10          children living in local institutions for neglected or  
11          delinquent children, for neglected and delinquent  
12          children in community day school programs, and for  
13          homeless children;

14          “(10) a description of how the local educational  
15          agency will ensure that migratory children and for-  
16          merly migratory children who are eligible to receive  
17          services under this part are selected to receive such  
18          services on the same basis as other children who are  
19          selected to receive services under this part;

20          “(11) if appropriate, a description of how the  
21          local educational agency will use funds under this  
22          part to support preschool programs for children,  
23          particularly children participating in Early Reading  
24          First, or in a Head Start or Even Start program,  
25          which services may be provided directly by the local





1 educational agency or through a subcontract with  
2 the local Head Start agency designated by the Sec-  
3 retary of Health and Human Services under section  
4 641 of the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C. 9836), agen-  
5 cies operating Even Start programs, Early Reading  
6 First, or another comparable public early childhood  
7 development program;

8 “(12) a description of the actions the local edu-  
9 cational agency will take to assist its low-performing  
10 schools, including schools identified under section  
11 1116 as in need of improvement;

12 “(13) a description of the actions the local edu-  
13 cational agency will take to implement public school  
14 choice, consistent with the requirements of section  
15 1116;

16 “(14) a description how the local educational  
17 agency will meet the requirements of section  
18 1119(b)(1); and

19 “(15) a description of the services the local edu-  
20 cational agency will provide homeless children, in-  
21 cluding services provided with funds reserved under  
22 section 1113(f)(3)(A).

23 “(c) ASSURANCES.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
2 agency plan shall provide assurances that the local  
3 educational agency will—

4           “(A) inform eligible schools and parents of  
5 schoolwide program authority and the ability of  
6 such schools to consolidate funds from Federal,  
7 State, and local sources;

8           “(B) provide technical assistance and sup-  
9 port to schoolwide programs;

10           “(C) work in consultation with schools as  
11 the schools develop the schools’ plans pursuant  
12 to section 1114 and assist schools as the  
13 schools implement such plans or undertake ac-  
14 tivities pursuant to section 1115 so that each  
15 school can make adequate yearly progress to-  
16 ward meeting the State student academic  
17 achievement standards;

18           “(D) fulfill such agency’s school improve-  
19 ment responsibilities under section 1116, in-  
20 cluding taking corrective actions under para-  
21 graphs (6) and (7) of section 1116(b);

22           “(E) provide services to eligible children  
23 attending private elementary and secondary  
24 schools in accordance with section 1120, and



1 timely and meaningful consultation with private  
2 school officials regarding such services;

3 “(F) take into account the experience of  
4 model programs for the educationally disadvan-  
5 taged, and the findings of relevant scientifically  
6 based research indicating that services may be  
7 most effective if focused on students in the ear-  
8 liest grades at schools that receive funds under  
9 this part;

10 “(G) in the case of a local educational  
11 agency that chooses to use funds under this  
12 part to provide early childhood development  
13 services to low-income children below the age of  
14 compulsory school attendance, ensure that such  
15 services comply with the academic achievement  
16 standards established under section 641A(a) of  
17 the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C. 9836a(a));

18 “(H) comply with the requirements of sec-  
19 tion 1119 regarding the qualifications of teach-  
20 ers and paraprofessionals;

21 “(I) inform eligible schools of the local  
22 educational agency’s authority to obtain waivers  
23 on the school’s behalf under title VIII of this  
24 Act, and if the State is an Ed-Flex Partnership



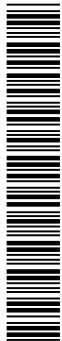
1 State, to obtain waivers under the Education  
2 Flexibility Partnership Act of 1999; and

3 “(J) coordinate and collaborate, to the ex-  
4 tent feasible and necessary as determined by  
5 the local educational agency, with other agen-  
6 cies providing services to children, youth, and  
7 families.

8 “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—In carrying out subpara-  
9 graph (G) of paragraph (1), the Secretary—

10 “(A) shall consult with the Secretary of  
11 Health and Human Services on the implemen-  
12 tation of such subparagraph and shall establish  
13 procedures (taking into consideration existing  
14 State and local laws, and local teacher con-  
15 tracts) to assist local educational agencies to  
16 comply with such subparagraph; and

17 “(B) shall disseminate to local educational  
18 agencies the Head Start academic achievement  
19 standards as in effect under section 641A(a) of  
20 the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C. 9836a(a)), and  
21 such agencies affected by such subparagraph  
22 shall plan for the implementation of such sub-  
23 paragraph (taking into consideration existing  
24 State and local laws, and local teacher con-  
25 tracts), including pursuing the availability of



1 other Federal, State, and local funding sources  
2 to assist in compliance with such subparagraph.

3 “(3) INAPPLICABILITY.—The provisions of this  
4 subsection shall not apply to preschool programs  
5 using the Even Start model or to Even Start pro-  
6 grams which are expanded through the use of funds  
7 under this part.

8 “(d) PLAN DEVELOPMENT AND DURATION.—

9 “(1) CONSULTATION.—Each local educational  
10 agency plan shall be developed in consultation with  
11 teachers, principals, administrators (including ad-  
12 ministrators of programs described in other parts of  
13 this title), and other appropriate school personnel,  
14 and with parents of children in schools served under  
15 this part.

16 “(2) DURATION.—Each such plan shall be sub-  
17 mitted for the first year for which this part is in ef-  
18 fect following the date of the enactment of the No  
19 Child Left Behind Act of 2001 and shall remain in  
20 effect for the duration of the agency’s participation  
21 under this part.

22 “(3) REVIEW.—Each local educational agency  
23 shall periodically review, and as necessary, revise its  
24 plan.

25 “(e) STATE APPROVAL.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
2 agency plan shall be filed according to a schedule es-  
3 tablished by the State educational agency.

4           “(2) APPROVAL.—The State educational agency  
5 shall approve a local educational agency’s plan only  
6 if the State educational agency determines that the  
7 local educational agency’s plan—

8                   “(A) enables schools served under this part  
9 to substantially help children served under this  
10 part meet the academic standards expected of  
11 all children described in section 1111(b)(1); and

12                   “(B) meets the requirements of this sec-  
13 tion.

14           “(f) PROGRAM RESPONSIBILITY.—The local edu-  
15 cational agency plan shall reflect the shared responsibility  
16 of schools, teachers, and the local educational agency in  
17 making decisions regarding activities under sections 1114  
18 and 1115.

19           “(g) PARENTAL NOTIFICATION AND CONSENT FOR  
20 ENGLISH LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION.—

21           “(1) NOTIFICATION.—If a local educational  
22 agency uses funds under this part to provide English  
23 language instruction to limited English proficient  
24 children, the agency shall inform a parent or the  
25 parents of a child participating in an English lan-



1 guage instruction program for limited English pro-  
2 ficient children assisted under this part of—

3 “(A) the reasons for the identification of  
4 the child as being in need of English language  
5 instruction;

6 “(B) the child’s level of English pro-  
7 ficiency, how such level was assessed, and the  
8 status of the child’s academic achievement;

9 “(C) how the English language instruction  
10 program will specifically help the child acquire  
11 English and meet age-appropriate academic  
12 standards for grade promotion and graduation;

13 “(D) what the specific exit requirements  
14 are for the program;

15 “(E) the expected rate of transition from  
16 the program into a classroom that is not tai-  
17 lored for limited English proficient children;  
18 and

19 “(F) the expected rate of graduation from  
20 high school for students in the program if funds  
21 under this part are used for children in sec-  
22 ondary schools.

23 “(2) CONSENT.—

24 “(A) AGENCY REQUIREMENTS.—



1           “(i) INFORMED CONSENT.—For a  
2 child who has been identified as limited  
3 English proficient prior to the beginning of  
4 a school year, each local educational agen-  
5 cy that receives funds under this part shall  
6 make a reasonable and substantial effort  
7 to obtain informed parental consent prior  
8 to the placement of a child in an English  
9 language instruction program for limited  
10 English proficient children funded under  
11 this part if the program does not include  
12 classes which exclusively or almost exclu-  
13 sively use the English language in instruc-  
14 tion.

15           “(ii) WRITTEN CONSENT NOT OB-  
16 TAINED.—If written consent is not ob-  
17 tained, the local educational agency shall  
18 maintain a written record that includes the  
19 date and the manner in which such in-  
20 formed consent was sought, including the  
21 specific efforts made to obtain such con-  
22 sent.

23           “(iii) PROOF OF EFFORT.—Notice, in  
24 an understandable form, of specific efforts  
25 made to obtain written consent and a copy





1 of the written record required in clause (ii)  
2 shall be mailed or delivered in writing to a  
3 parent, parents, or guardian of a child  
4 prior to placing the child in a program de-  
5 scribed in clause (i) and shall include a  
6 final request for parental consent for such  
7 services. After such notice has been mailed  
8 or delivered in writing, the local edu-  
9 cational agency shall provide appropriate  
10 educational services.

11 “(iv) SPECIAL RULE APPLICABLE  
12 DURING SCHOOL YEAR.—For those chil-  
13 dren who have not been identified as lim-  
14 ited English proficient prior to the begin-  
15 ning of the school year, the local edu-  
16 cational agency shall make a reasonable  
17 and substantial effort to obtain parental  
18 consent under this clause. For such chil-  
19 dren, the agency shall document, in writ-  
20 ing, its specific efforts made to obtain such  
21 consent prior to placing the child in a pro-  
22 gram described in clause (i). After such  
23 documentation has been made, the local  
24 educational agency shall provide appro-  
25 priate educational services to such child.



1           The proof of documentation shall be  
 2           mailed or delivered in writing to a parent  
 3           or parents of the child in a timely manner  
 4           and shall include information on how to  
 5           have their child immediately removed from  
 6           the program upon their request. Nothing  
 7           in this clause shall be construed as exempt-  
 8           ing a local educational agency from com-  
 9           plying with the notification requirements of  
 10          subsection (g)(1) and the consent require-  
 11          ments of this paragraph.

12           “(3) PARENTAL RIGHTS.—A parent or the par-  
 13          ents of a child participating in an English language  
 14          instruction program for limited English proficient  
 15          children assisted under this part shall—

16           “(A) select among methods of instruction,  
 17          if more than one method is offered in the pro-  
 18          gram; and

19           “(B) have the right to have their child im-  
 20          mediately removed from the program upon their  
 21          request.

22           “(4) RECEIPT OF INFORMATION.—A parent or  
 23          the parents of a limited English proficient child who  
 24          is identified for participation in an English language  
 25          instruction program for limited English proficient



1 children assisted under this part shall receive, in a  
2 manner and form understandable to the parent or  
3 parents, the information required by this subsection.

4 At a minimum, the parent or parents shall receive—

5 “(A) timely information about English lan-  
6 guage instruction programs for limited English  
7 proficient children assisted under this part;

8 “(B) if a parent or parents of a partici-  
9 pating child so desires, notice of opportunities  
10 for regular meetings for the purpose of formu-  
11 lating and responding to recommendations from  
12 the parent or parents; and

13 “(C) procedural information for removing  
14 a child from a program for limited English pro-  
15 ficient children.

16 “(5) BASIS FOR ADMISSION OR EXCLUSION.—  
17 Students shall not be admitted to, or excluded from,  
18 any federally-assisted education program on the  
19 basis of a surname or language-minority status.

20 **“SEC. 1113. ELIGIBLE SCHOOL ATTENDANCE AREAS.**

21 “(a) DETERMINATION.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency  
23 shall use funds received under this part only in eligi-  
24 ble school attendance areas.



1           “(2) ELIGIBLE SCHOOL ATTENDANCE AREAS.—

2           For the purposes of this part—

3                   “(A) the term ‘school attendance area’  
4                   means, in relation to a particular school, the  
5                   geographical area in which the children who are  
6                   normally served by that school reside; and

7                   “(B) the term ‘eligible school attendance  
8                   area’ means a school attendance area in which  
9                   the percentage of children from low-income  
10                  families is at least as high as the percentage of  
11                  children from low-income families in the local  
12                  educational agency as a whole.

13           “(3) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY DISCRE-  
14           TION.—

15                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding para-  
16                   graph (2), a local educational agency may—

17                           “(i) designate as eligible any school  
18                           attendance area or school in which at least  
19                           35 percent of the children are from low-in-  
20                           come families;

21                           “(ii) use funds received under this  
22                           part in a school that is not in an eligible  
23                           school attendance area, if the percentage  
24                           of children from low-income families en-  
25                           rolled in the school is equal to or greater



1 than the percentage of such children in a  
2 participating school attendance area of  
3 such agency;

4 “(iii) designate and serve a school at-  
5 tendance area or school that is not eligible  
6 under subsection (b), but that was eligible  
7 and that was served in the preceding fiscal  
8 year, but only for 1 additional fiscal year;  
9 and

10 “(iv) elect not to serve an eligible  
11 school attendance area or eligible school  
12 that has a higher percentage of children  
13 from low-income families if—

14 “(I) the school meets the com-  
15 parability requirements of section  
16 1120A(c);

17 “(II) the school is receiving sup-  
18 plemental funds from other State or  
19 local sources that are spent according  
20 to the requirements of section 1114 or  
21 1115; and

22 “(III) the funds expended from  
23 such other sources equal or exceed the  
24 amount that would be provided under  
25 this part.



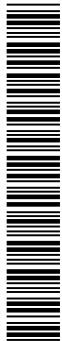
1           “(B) SPECIAL RULE.—Notwithstanding  
2           subparagraph (A)(iv), the number of children  
3           attending private elementary and secondary  
4           schools who are to receive services, and the as-  
5           sistance such children are to receive under this  
6           part, shall be determined without regard to  
7           whether the public school attendance area in  
8           which such children reside is assisted under  
9           subparagraph (A).

10          “(b) RANKING ORDER.—If funds allocated in accord-  
11          ance with subsection (f) are insufficient to serve all eligible  
12          school attendance areas, a local educational agency—

13               “(1) shall annually rank from highest to lowest  
14               according to the percentage of children from low-in-  
15               come families in each agency’s eligible school attend-  
16               ance areas in the following order—

17                       “(A) eligible school attendance areas in  
18                       which the concentration of children from low-in-  
19                       come families exceeds 75 percent; and

20                       “(B) all remaining eligible school attend-  
21                       ance areas in which the concentration of chil-  
22                       dren from low-income families is 75 percent or  
23                       lower either by grade span or for the entire  
24                       local educational agency;



1           “(2) shall, within each category listed in para-  
2           graph (1), serve schools in rank order from highest  
3           to lowest according to the ranking assigned under  
4           paragraph (1);

5           “(3) notwithstanding paragraph (2), may give  
6           priority, within each such category and in rank order  
7           from highest to lowest subject to paragraph (4), to  
8           eligible school attendance areas that serve children  
9           in elementary schools; and

10           “(4) not serve a school described in paragraph  
11           (1)(B) before serving a school described in para-  
12           graph (1)(A).

13           “(c) LOW-INCOME MEASURES.—In determining the  
14           number of children ages 5 through 17 who are from low-  
15           income families, the local educational agency shall apply  
16           the measures described in paragraphs (1) and (2) of this  
17           subsection:

18           “(1) ALLOCATION TO PUBLIC SCHOOL ATTEND-  
19           ANCE AREAS.—The local educational agency shall  
20           use the same measure of poverty, which measure  
21           shall be the number of children ages 5 through 17  
22           in poverty counted in the most recent census data  
23           approved by the Secretary, the number of children  
24           eligible for free and reduced priced lunches under  
25           the Richard B. Russell National School Lunch Act



1 (42 U.S.C. 1751 et seq.), the number of children in  
2 families receiving assistance under the State pro-  
3 gram funded under part A of title IV of the Social  
4 Security Act, or the number of children eligible to  
5 receive medical assistance under the Medicaid pro-  
6 gram, or a composite of such indicators, with respect  
7 to all school attendance areas in the local edu-  
8 cational agency—

9 “(A) to identify eligible school attendance  
10 areas;

11 “(B) to determine the ranking of each  
12 area; and

13 “(C) to determine allocations under sub-  
14 section (f).

15 “(2) ALLOCATION FOR EQUITABLE SERVICE TO  
16 PRIVATE SCHOOL STUDENTS.—

17 “(A) CALCULATION.—A local educational  
18 agency shall have the final authority, consistent  
19 with section 1120 to calculate the number of  
20 private school children, ages 5 through 17, who  
21 are low-income by—

22 “(i) using the same measure of low-in-  
23 come used to count public school children;

24 “(ii) using the results of a survey  
25 that, to the extent possible, protects the





1 identity of families of private school stu-  
2 dents and allowing such survey results to  
3 be extrapolated if complete actual data are  
4 not available; or

5 “(iii) applying the low-income percent-  
6 age of each participating public school at-  
7 tendance area, determined pursuant to this  
8 section, to the number of private school  
9 children who reside in that attendance  
10 area.

11 “(B) COMPLAINT PROCESS.—Any dispute  
12 regarding low-income data on private school  
13 students shall be subject to the complaint pro-  
14 cess authorized in section 8505.

15 “(d) EXCEPTION.—This section (other than sub-  
16 sections (a)(3) and (f)) shall not apply to a local edu-  
17 cational agency with a total enrollment of less than 1,500  
18 children.

19 “(e) WAIVER FOR DESEGREGATION PLANS.—The  
20 Secretary may approve a local educational agency’s writ-  
21 ten request for a waiver of the requirements of subsections  
22 (a) and (f), and permit such agency to treat as eligible,  
23 and serve, any school that children attend under a deseg-  
24regation plan ordered by a State or court or approved by



1 the Secretary, or such a plan that the agency continues  
2 to implement after it has expired, if—

3 “(1) the number of economically disadvantaged  
4 children enrolled in the school is not less than 25  
5 percent of the school’s total enrollment; and

6 “(2) the Secretary determines on the basis of a  
7 written request from such agency and in accordance  
8 with such criteria as the Secretary establishes, that  
9 approval of that request would further the purposes  
10 of this part.

11 “(f) ALLOCATIONS.—

12 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency  
13 shall allocate funds received under this part to eligi-  
14 ble school attendance areas or eligible schools, iden-  
15 tified under subsection (b) in rank order on the  
16 basis of the total number of children from low-in-  
17 come families in each area or school.

18 “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—(A) Except as provided  
19 in subparagraph (B), the per-pupil amount of funds  
20 allocated to each school attendance area or school  
21 under paragraph (1) shall be at least 125 percent of  
22 the per-pupil amount of funds a local educational  
23 agency received for that year under the poverty cri-  
24 teria described by the local educational agency in the  
25 plan submitted under section 1112, except that this



1 paragraph shall not apply to a local educational  
2 agency that only serves schools in which the percent-  
3 age of such children is 35 percent or greater.

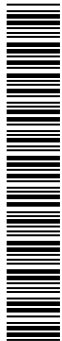
4 “(B) A local educational agency may reduce the  
5 amount of funds allocated under subparagraph (A)  
6 for a school attendance area or school by the amount  
7 of any supplemental State and local funds expended  
8 in that school attendance area or school for pro-  
9 grams that meet the requirements of section 1114 or  
10 1115.

11 “(3) RESERVATION.—A local educational agen-  
12 cy shall reserve such funds as are necessary under  
13 this part to provide services comparable to those  
14 provided to children in schools funded under this  
15 part to serve—

16 “(A) homeless children who do not attend  
17 participating schools, including providing educa-  
18 tionally related support services to children in  
19 shelters and other locations where children may  
20 live;

21 “(B) children in local institutions for ne-  
22 glected children; and

23 “(C) if appropriate, children in local insti-  
24 tutions for delinquent children and neglected or



1 delinquent children in community day school  
2 programs.

3 “(4) SCHOOL IMPROVEMENT RESERVATION.—

4 In addition to the funding a local educational agency  
5 receives under section 1003(b), a local educational  
6 agency may reserve such funds as are necessary  
7 under this part to meet such agency’s school im-  
8 provement responsibilities under section 1116, in-  
9 cluding taking corrective actions under paragraphs  
10 (6) and (7) of section 1116(b).

11 “(5) FINANCIAL INCENTIVES AND REWARDS

12 RESERVATION.—A local educational agency may re-  
13 serve such funds as are necessary under this part to  
14 provide financial incentives and rewards to teachers  
15 who serve in schools eligible under subsection  
16 (b)(1)(A) and identified for improvement under sec-  
17 tion 1116(b)(1) for the purpose of attracting and re-  
18 taining qualified and effective teachers.

19 **“SEC. 1114. SCHOOLWIDE PROGRAMS.**

20 “(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of a schoolwide pro-  
21 gram under this section is—

22 “(1) to enable a local educational agency to  
23 consolidate funds under this part with other Federal,  
24 State, and local funds, to upgrade the entire edu-  
25 cational program in a high poverty school; and



1           “(2) to help ensure that all children in such a  
2 school meet challenging State academic standards  
3 for student achievement, particularly those children  
4 who are most at-risk of not meeting those standards.

5           “(b) USE OF FUNDS FOR SCHOOLWIDE PRO-  
6 GRAMS.—

7           “(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency  
8 may consolidate funds under this part, together with  
9 other Federal, State, and local funds, in order to up-  
10 grade the entire educational program of a school  
11 that serves an eligible school attendance area in  
12 which not less than 40 percent of the children are  
13 from low-income families, or not less than 40 per-  
14 cent of the children enrolled in the school are from  
15 such families.

16           “(2) IDENTIFICATION OF STUDENTS NOT RE-  
17 QUIRED.—

18           “(A) IN GENERAL.—No school partici-  
19 pating in a schoolwide program shall be re-  
20 quired to identify particular children under this  
21 part as eligible to participate in a schoolwide  
22 program or to provide supplemental services to  
23 such children.

24           “(B) SUPPLEMENT FUNDS.—A school par-  
25 ticipating in a schoolwide program shall use



1 funds available to carry out this section only to  
2 supplement the amount of funds that would, in  
3 the absence of funds under this part, be made  
4 available from non-Federal sources for the  
5 school, including funds needed to provide serv-  
6 ices that are required by law for children with  
7 disabilities and children with limited English  
8 proficiency.

9 “(3) EXEMPTION FROM STATUTORY AND REGU-  
10 LATORY REQUIREMENTS.—

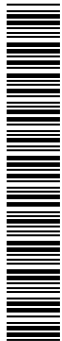
11 “(A) EXEMPTION.—Except as provided in  
12 subsection (c), the Secretary may, through pub-  
13 lication of a notice in the Federal Register, ex-  
14 empt schoolwide programs under this section  
15 from statutory or regulatory provisions of any  
16 other noncompetitive formula grant program  
17 administered by the Secretary (other than for-  
18 mula or discretionary grant programs under the  
19 Individuals with Disabilities Education Act, ex-  
20 cept as provided in section 613(a)(2)(D) of  
21 such Act), or any discretionary grant program  
22 administered by the Secretary, to support  
23 schoolwide programs if the intent and purposes  
24 of such other programs are met.



1           “(B) REQUIREMENTS.—A school that  
2 chooses to use funds from such other programs  
3 shall not be relieved of the requirements relat-  
4 ing to health, safety, civil rights, student and  
5 parental participation and involvement, services  
6 to private school children, maintenance of ef-  
7 fort, uses of Federal funds to supplement, not  
8 supplant non-Federal funds, or the distribution  
9 of funds to State or local educational agencies  
10 that apply to the receipt of funds from such  
11 programs.

12           “(C) RECORDS.—A school that consoli-  
13 dates funds from different Federal programs  
14 under this section shall not be required to  
15 maintain separate fiscal accounting records, by  
16 program, that identify the specific activities  
17 supported by those particular funds as long as  
18 it maintains records that demonstrate that the  
19 schoolwide program, considered as a whole ad-  
20 dresses the intent and purposes of each of the  
21 Federal programs that were consolidated to  
22 support the schoolwide program.

23           “(4) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—Each  
24 school receiving funds under this part for any fiscal  
25 year shall devote sufficient resources to effectively



1 carry out the activities described in subsection  
2 (c)(1)(D) in accordance with section 1119A for such  
3 fiscal year, except that a school may enter into a  
4 consortium with another school to carry out such ac-  
5 tivities.

6 “(c) COMPONENTS OF A SCHOOLWIDE PROGRAM.—

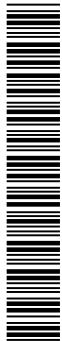
7 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A schoolwide program shall  
8 include the following components:

9 “(A) A comprehensive needs assessment of  
10 the entire school (including taking into account  
11 the needs of migratory children as defined in  
12 section 1309(2)) that is based on information  
13 which includes the performance of children in  
14 relation to the State academic content stand-  
15 ards and the State student academic achieve-  
16 ment standards described in section 1111(b)(1).

17 “(B) Schoolwide reform strategies that—

18 “(i) provide opportunities for all chil-  
19 dren to meet the State’s proficient and ad-  
20 vanced levels of student achievement de-  
21 scribed in section 1111(b)(1)(D);

22 “(ii) use effective methods and in-  
23 structional strategies that are based upon  
24 scientifically based research that—





1                   “(I) strengthen the core aca-  
2                   demic program in the school;

3                   “(II) increase the amount and  
4                   quality of learning time, such as pro-  
5                   viding an extended school year and  
6                   before- and after-school and summer  
7                   programs and opportunities, and help  
8                   provide an enriched and accelerated  
9                   curriculum; and

10                   “(III) include strategies for meet-  
11                   ing the educational needs of histori-  
12                   cally underserved populations;

13                   “(iii)(I) address the needs of all chil-  
14                   dren in the school, but particularly the  
15                   needs of low-achieving children and those  
16                   at risk of not meeting the State student  
17                   academic achievement standards who are  
18                   members of the target population of any  
19                   program that is included in the schoolwide  
20                   program; and

21                   “(II) address how the school will de-  
22                   termine if such needs have been met; and

23                   “(iv) are consistent with, and are de-  
24                   signed to implement, the State and local  
25                   improvement plans, if any.



1           “(C) Instruction by fully qualified (as de-  
2 fined in section 8101) teachers.

3           “(D) In accordance with section 1119A  
4 and subsection (b)(4), high quality and ongoing  
5 professional development for teachers and para-  
6 professionals, and, where appropriate, pupil  
7 services personnel, parents, principals, and  
8 other staff to enable all children in the school  
9 to meet the State’s student academic achieve-  
10 ment standards.

11           “(E) Strategies to attract high quality  
12 teachers to high need schools, such as differen-  
13 tial pay systems or performance based pay.

14           “(F) Strategies to increase parental in-  
15 volvement in accordance with section 1118,  
16 such as family literary services.

17           “(G) Plans for assisting preschool children  
18 in the transition from early childhood programs,  
19 such as Head Start, Even Start, Early Reading  
20 First, or a State-run preschool program, to  
21 local elementary school programs.

22           “(H) Measures to include teachers in the  
23 decisions regarding the use of academic assess-  
24 ments described in section 1111(b)(4) in order  
25 to provide information on, and to improve, the



1 performance of individual students and the  
2 overall instructional program.

3 “(I) Activities to ensure that students who  
4 experience difficulty mastering the proficient or  
5 advanced levels of academic achievement stand-  
6 ards required by section 1111(b) shall be pro-  
7 vided with effective, timely additional assistance  
8 which shall include measures to ensure that stu-  
9 dents’ difficulties are identified on a timely  
10 basis and to provide sufficient information on  
11 which to base effective assistance.

12 “(2) PLAN.—Any eligible school that desires to  
13 operate a schoolwide program shall first develop (or  
14 amend a plan for such a program that was in exist-  
15 ence on the day before the effective date of the No  
16 Child Left Behind Act of 2001), a comprehensive  
17 plan for reforming the total instructional program in  
18 the school that—

19 “(A) incorporates the components de-  
20 scribed in paragraph (1);

21 “(B) describes how the school will use re-  
22 sources under this part and from other sources  
23 to implement those components; and

24 “(C) includes a list of State and local edu-  
25 cational agency programs and other Federal



1 programs under subsection (b)(3) that will be  
2 consolidated in the schoolwide program.

3 “(3) PLAN DEVELOPMENT.—The comprehen-  
4 sive plan shall be—

5 “(A) developed during a 1-year period,  
6 unless—

7 “(i) the local educational agency de-  
8 termines that less time is needed to de-  
9 velop and implement the schoolwide pro-  
10 gram; or

11 “(ii) the school operated a schoolwide  
12 program on the day preceding the effective  
13 date of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
14 2001, in which case such school may con-  
15 tinue to operate such program, but shall  
16 develop amendments to its existing plan  
17 during the first year of assistance after  
18 that date to reflect the provisions of this  
19 section;

20 “(B) developed with the involvement of  
21 parents and other members of the community  
22 to be served and individuals who will carry out  
23 such plan, including teachers, principals, and  
24 administrators (including administrators of pro-  
25 grams described in other parts of this title),



1 and, if appropriate, pupil services personnel,  
2 technical assistance providers, school staff, and,  
3 if the plan relates to a secondary school, stu-  
4 dents from such school;

5 “(C) in effect for the duration of the  
6 school’s participation under this part and re-  
7 viewed and revised, as necessary, by the school;

8 “(D) available to the local educational  
9 agency, parents, and the public, and the infor-  
10 mation contained in such plan shall be provided  
11 in a format, and to the extent practicable, in a  
12 language that they can understand; and

13 “(E) if appropriate, developed in coordina-  
14 tion with programs under Reading First, Early  
15 Reading First, Even Start, Carl D. Perkins Vo-  
16 cational and Technical Education Act of 1998,  
17 and the Head Start Act.

18 “(d) ACCOUNTABILITY.—A schoolwide program  
19 under this section shall be subject to the school improve-  
20 ment provisions of section 1116.

21 “(e) PREKINDERGARTEN PROGRAM.—A school that  
22 is eligible for a schoolwide program under this section may  
23 use funds made available under this title to establish or  
24 enhance prekindergarten programs for 3-, 4-, and 5-year-



1 old children, such as Even Start programs or Early Read-  
2 ing First programs.

3 **“SEC. 1115. TARGETED ASSISTANCE SCHOOLS.**

4 “(a) IN GENERAL.—In all schools selected to receive  
5 funds under section 1113(f) that are ineligible for a  
6 schoolwide program under section 1114, or that choose  
7 not to operate such a schoolwide program, a local edu-  
8 cational agency may use funds received under this part  
9 only for programs that provide services to eligible children  
10 under subsection (b) identified as having the greatest need  
11 for special assistance.

12 “(b) ELIGIBLE CHILDREN.—

13 “(1) ELIGIBLE POPULATION.—(A) The eligible  
14 population for services under this section is—

15 “(i) children not older than age 21 who are  
16 entitled to a free public education through  
17 grade 12; and

18 “(ii) children who are not yet at a grade  
19 level at which the local educational agency pro-  
20 vides a free public education.

21 “(B) From the population described in subpara-  
22 graph (A), eligible children are children identified by  
23 the school as failing, or most at risk of failing, to  
24 meet the State’s challenging student academic  
25 achievement standards on the basis of academic as-



1        assessments under this part, and, as appropriate, on  
2        the basis of multiple, educationally related, objective  
3        criteria established by the local educational agency  
4        and supplemented by the school, except that children  
5        from preschool through grade 2 may be selected  
6        solely on the basis of such criteria as teacher judgment,  
7        interviews with parents, and other appropriate  
8        measures.

9                “(2) CHILDREN INCLUDED.—(A)(i) Children  
10       with disabilities, migrant children, and children with  
11       limited English proficiency are eligible for services  
12       under this part on the same basis as other children.

13                “(ii) Funds received under this part may not be  
14       used to provide services that are otherwise required  
15       by law to be made available to such children but  
16       may be used to coordinate or supplement such services.  
17       ices.

18                “(B) A child who, at any time in the 2 years  
19       preceding the year for which the determination is  
20       made, participated in a Head Start, Even Start, or  
21       Early Reading First program, or in preschool services  
22       under this title, is eligible for services under this  
23       part.

24                “(C)(i) A child who, at any time in the 2 years  
25       preceding the year for which the determination is



1 made, received services under part C is eligible for  
2 services under this part.

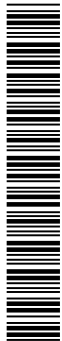
3 “(ii) A child in a local institution for neglected  
4 or delinquent children or attending a community day  
5 program for such children is eligible for services  
6 under this part.

7 “(D) A child who is homeless and attending any  
8 school in the local educational agency is eligible for  
9 services under this part.

10 “(c) COMPONENTS OF A TARGETED ASSISTANCE  
11 SCHOOL PROGRAM.—

12 “(1) IN GENERAL.—To assist targeted assist-  
13 ance schools and local educational agencies to meet  
14 their responsibility to provide for all their students  
15 served under this title the opportunity to meet the  
16 State’s challenging student academic achievement  
17 standards in subjects as determined by the State,  
18 each targeted assistance program under this section  
19 shall—

20 “(A) use such program’s resources under  
21 this part to help participating children meet  
22 such State’s challenging student academic  
23 achievement standards expected for all children;





1           “(B) ensure that planning for students  
2 served under this part is incorporated into ex-  
3 isting school planning;

4           “(C) use effective methods and instruc-  
5 tional strategies that are based upon scientif-  
6 ically based research that strengthens the core  
7 academic program of the school and that—

8                   “(i) give primary consideration to pro-  
9 viding extended learning time such as an  
10 extended school year, before- and after-  
11 school, and summer programs and oppor-  
12 tunities;

13                   “(ii) help provide an accelerated, high-  
14 quality curriculum, including applied learn-  
15 ing; and

16                   “(iii) minimize removing children  
17 from the regular classroom during regular  
18 school hours for instruction provided under  
19 this part;

20           “(D) coordinate with and support the reg-  
21 ular education program, which may include  
22 services to assist preschool children in the tran-  
23 sition from early childhood programs such as  
24 Head Start, Even Start, Early Reading First or



1 State-run preschool programs to elementary  
2 school programs;

3 “(E) provide instruction by fully qualified  
4 teachers as defined in section 8101;

5 “(F) in accordance with subsection (e)(3)  
6 and section 1119A, provide opportunities for  
7 professional development with resources pro-  
8 vided under this part, and, to the extent prac-  
9 ticable, from other sources, for teachers, prin-  
10 cipals, and administrators and other school  
11 staff, including, if appropriate, pupil services  
12 personnel, who work with participating children  
13 in programs under this section or in the regular  
14 education program; and

15 “(G) provide strategies to increase paren-  
16 tal involvement in accordance with section  
17 1118, such as family literacy services.

18 “(2) REQUIREMENTS.—Each school conducting  
19 a program under this section shall assist partici-  
20 pating children selected in accordance with sub-  
21 section (b) to meet the State’s proficient and ad-  
22 vanced levels of achievement by—

23 “(A) the coordination of resources provided  
24 under this part with other resources; and



1           “(B) reviewing, on an ongoing basis, the  
2           progress of participating children and revising  
3           the targeted assistance program, if necessary,  
4           to provide additional assistance to enable such  
5           children to meet the State’s challenging student  
6           academic achievement standards, such as an ex-  
7           tended school year, before- and after-school,  
8           and summer programs and opportunities, train-  
9           ing for teachers regarding how to identify stu-  
10          dents that require additional assistance, and  
11          training for teachers regarding how to imple-  
12          ment student academic achievement standards  
13          in the classroom.

14          “(d) INTEGRATION OF PROFESSIONAL DEVELOP-  
15          MENT.—To promote the integration of staff supported  
16          with funds under this part, public school personnel who  
17          are paid with funds received under this part may partici-  
18          pate in general professional development and school plan-  
19          ning activities.

20          “(e) SPECIAL RULES.—

21                 “(1) SIMULTANEOUS SERVICE.—Nothing in this  
22                 section shall be construed to prohibit a school from  
23                 serving students served under this section simulta-  
24                 neously with students with similar educational



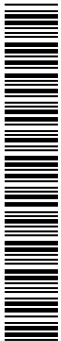
1 needs, in the same educational settings where appro-  
2 priate.

3 “(2) COMPREHENSIVE SERVICES.—If medical,  
4 nutrition, and other social services are not otherwise  
5 available to eligible children in a targeted assistance  
6 school and such school, if appropriate, has engaged  
7 in a comprehensive needs assessment and established  
8 a collaborative partnership with local service pro-  
9 viders, and if funds are not reasonably available  
10 from other public or private sources to provide such  
11 services, then a portion of the funds provided under  
12 this part may be used as a last resort to provide  
13 such services, including—

14 “(A) the provision of basic medical equip-  
15 ment, such as eyeglasses and hearing aids; and

16 “(B) professional development necessary to  
17 assist teachers, pupil services personnel, other  
18 staff, and parents in identifying and meeting  
19 the comprehensive needs of eligible children.

20 “(3) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—Each  
21 school receiving funds under this part for any fiscal  
22 year shall devote sufficient resources to carry out ef-  
23 fectively the professional development activities de-  
24 scribed in subparagraph (F) of subsection (c)(1) in  
25 accordance with section 1119A for such fiscal year,



1       except that a school may enter into a consortium  
2       with another school to carry out such activities.”.

3   **SEC. 105. SCHOOL CHOICE.**

4       Section 1115A is amended to read as follows:

5   **“SEC. 1115A. SCHOOL CHOICE.**

6       “(a) CHOICE PROGRAMS.—A local educational agen-  
7   cy may use funds under this part, in combination with  
8   State, local, and private funds, to develop and implement  
9   public school choice programs, for children eligible for as-  
10   sistance under this part, which permit parents to select  
11   the public school that their child will attend.

12       “(b) CHOICE PLAN.—A local educational agency that  
13   chooses to implement a public school choice program shall  
14   first develop a plan that includes a description of how the  
15   local educational agency will use resources under this part  
16   and from other resources to implement the plan, and as-  
17   surances that—

18           “(1) all eligible students across grade levels  
19   served under this part will have equal access to the  
20   program;

21           “(2) the plan will be developed with the involve-  
22   ment of parents and others in the community to be  
23   served and individuals who will carry out the plan,  
24   including administrators, teachers, principals, and  
25   other staff;



1           “(3) parents of eligible students in the local  
2 educational agency will be given prompt notice of the  
3 existence of the public school choice program and its  
4 availability to them, and a clear explanation of how  
5 the program will operate;

6           “(4) the program will include charter schools  
7 and any other public school and shall not include a  
8 school that is or has been identified as a school in  
9 school improvement or is or has been in corrective  
10 action for the past 2 consecutive years; and

11           “(5) such local educational agency will comply  
12 with the other requirements of this part.

13           “(c) TRANSPORTATION.—Transportation services or  
14 the costs of transportation may be provided by the local  
15 educational agency, except that such agency may not use  
16 more than a total of 15 percent of its allocation under  
17 this part for such purposes.”.

18 **SEC. 106. ACADEMIC ASSESSMENT AND LOCAL EDU-**  
19 **CATIONAL AGENCY AND SCHOOL IMPROVE-**  
20 **MENT.**

21           The section heading and subsections (a) through (d)  
22 of section 1116 are amended to read as follows:



1 **“SEC. 1116. ACADEMIC ASSESSMENT AND LOCAL EDU-**  
2 **CATIONAL AGENCY AND SCHOOL IMPROVE-**  
3 **MENT.**

4 “(a) LOCAL REVIEW.—Each local educational agency  
5 receiving funds under this part shall—

6 “(1) use the State academic assessments de-  
7 scribed in the State plan to review annually the  
8 progress of each school served under this part to de-  
9 termine whether the school is making adequate year-  
10 ly progress as defined in section 1111(b)(2)(B);

11 “(2) publicize and disseminate to teachers and  
12 other staff, parents, students, and the community,  
13 the results of the annual review under paragraph  
14 (2);

15 “(3) review the effectiveness of the actions and  
16 activities the schools are carrying out under this  
17 part with respect to parental involvement assisted  
18 under this Act.

19 “(b) SCHOOL IMPROVEMENT.—

20 “(1) IN GENERAL.—

21 “(A) IDENTIFICATION.—A local edu-  
22 cational agency shall identify for school im-  
23 provement any elementary or secondary school  
24 served under this part that—



1                   “(i) fails, for any year, to make ade-  
2                   quate yearly progress as defined in the  
3                   State’s plan under section 1111(b)(2); or

4                   “(ii) was in school improvement status  
5                   under this section immediately before the  
6                   effective date of the No Child Left Behind  
7                   Act of 2001.

8                   “(B) DEADLINE.—The identification de-  
9                   scribed in subparagraph (A) shall take place  
10                  not later than the first day of the school year  
11                  following such failure to make adequate yearly  
12                  progress.

13                  “(C) APPLICATION.—This paragraph does  
14                  not apply to a school if almost every student in  
15                  the school is meeting the State’s advanced level  
16                  of performance.

17                  “(D) REVIEW.—To determine if an ele-  
18                  mentary school or a secondary school that is  
19                  conducting a targeted assistance program under  
20                  section 1115 should be identified for school im-  
21                  provement under this subsection, a local edu-  
22                  cational agency may choose to review the  
23                  progress of only the students in the school who  
24                  are served, or are eligible for services, under  
25                  this part.



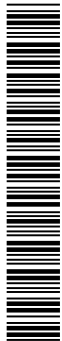


1           “(E) PUBLIC SCHOOL CHOICE.—In the  
2 case of a school identified for school improve-  
3 ment under subparagraph (A), the local edu-  
4 cational agency shall, not later than the first  
5 day of the school year following identification,  
6 provide all students enrolled in the school with  
7 the option to transfer to another public school  
8 within the local educational agency, including a  
9 public charter school, that has not been identi-  
10 fied for school improvement under subpara-  
11 graph (A), unless such an option is prohibited  
12 by State law.

13           “(F) TRANSFER.—Students who use the  
14 option to transfer under subparagraph (E) shall  
15 be enrolled in classes and other activities in the  
16 public school to which they transfer in the same  
17 manner as all other children at the public  
18 school.

19           “(2) OPPORTUNITY TO REVIEW AND PRESENT  
20 EVIDENCE; TIME LIMIT.—

21           “(A) Before identifying an elementary  
22 school or a secondary school for school improve-  
23 ment under paragraph (1), for corrective action  
24 under paragraph (6), or for restructuring under  
25 paragraph (7), the local educational agency



1 shall provide the school with an opportunity to  
2 review the school-level data, including academic  
3 assessment data, on which the proposed identi-  
4 fication is based.

5 “(B) EVIDENCE.—If the principal of a  
6 school proposed for identification under para-  
7 graph (1), (6), or (7) believes, or a majority of  
8 the parents of the students enrolled in such  
9 school believe, that the proposed identification  
10 is in error for statistical or other substantive  
11 reasons, the principal may provide supporting  
12 evidence to the local educational agency, which  
13 shall consider that evidence before making a  
14 final determination.

15 “(C) FINAL DETERMINATION.—Not later  
16 than 30 days after a local educational agency  
17 provides the school with the opportunity to re-  
18 view such school level data, the local edu-  
19 cational agency shall make public a final deter-  
20 mination on the status of the school.

21 “(3) SCHOOL PLAN.—

22 “(A) REVISED PLAN.—After the resolution  
23 of a review under paragraph (2), each school  
24 identified under paragraph (1) for school im-  
25 provement shall, not later than 3 months after



1 being so identified, develop or revise a school  
2 plan, in consultation with parents, school staff,  
3 the local educational agency serving the school,  
4 the local school board, and other outside ex-  
5 perts, for approval by such local educational  
6 agency. The school plan shall cover a 2-year pe-  
7 riod and—

8 “(i) incorporate scientifically based re-  
9 search strategies that strengthen the core  
10 academic subjects in the school and ad-  
11 dress the specific academic issues that  
12 caused the school to be identified for  
13 school improvement;

14 “(ii) adopt policies and practices con-  
15 cerning the school’s core academic subjects  
16 that have the greatest likelihood of ensur-  
17 ing that all groups of students specified in  
18 section 1111(b)(2)(C)(iii)(I) and (II) and  
19 enrolled in the school will meet the State’s  
20 proficient level of achievement on the State  
21 academic assessment described in section  
22 1111(b)(4) not later than 10 years after  
23 the date of enactment of the No Child Left  
24 Behind Act of 2001;



1                   “(iii) provide an assurance that the  
2 school shall reserve not less than 10 per-  
3 cent of the funds made available to the  
4 school under this part for each fiscal year  
5 that the school is in school improvement  
6 status, for the purpose of providing to the  
7 school’s teachers and principal high-quality  
8 professional development that—

9                   “(I) directly addresses the aca-  
10 demic performance problem that  
11 caused the school to be identified for  
12 school improvement;

13                   “(II) meets the requirements for  
14 professional development activities  
15 under section 1119A; and

16                   “(III) is provided in a manner  
17 that affords greater opportunity for  
18 participating in such professional de-  
19 velopment;

20                   “(iv) specify how the funds described  
21 in clause (iii) will be used to remove the  
22 school from school improvement status;

23                   “(v) establish specific annual, measur-  
24 able goals for continuous and significant  
25 progress by each group of students speci-

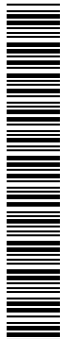


1                    fied in section 1111(b)(2)(C)(iii)(I) and  
2                    (II) and enrolled in the school that will en-  
3                    sure that all such groups of students shall  
4                    meet the State’s proficient level of achieve-  
5                    ment on the State academic assessment  
6                    described in section 1111(b)(4) not later  
7                    than 10 years after the date of enactment  
8                    of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001;

9                    “(vi) identify how the school will pro-  
10                    vide written notification about the identi-  
11                    fication to parents of each student enrolled  
12                    in such school, in a format and, to the ex-  
13                    tent practicable, in a language the parents  
14                    can understand;

15                    “(vii) specify the responsibilities of  
16                    the school, the local educational agency,  
17                    and the State educational agency serving  
18                    the school under the plan, including the  
19                    technical assistance to be provided by the  
20                    local educational agency under paragraph  
21                    (4); and

22                    “(viii) incorporate, as appropriate, ex-  
23                    tended learning time for students, such as  
24                    before school, after school, during the sum-  
25                    mer and extension of the school year.



1           “(B) CONDITIONAL APPROVAL.—The local  
2 educational agency may condition approval of a  
3 school plan on—

4                   “(i) inclusion of 1 or more of the cor-  
5 rective actions specified in paragraph  
6 (6)(D)(ii); or

7                   “(ii) feedback on the school improve-  
8 ment plan from parents and community  
9 leaders.

10           “(C) PLAN IMPLEMENTATION.—Except as  
11 provided in subparagraph (D), a school shall  
12 implement the school plan (including a revised  
13 plan) expeditiously, but not later than the be-  
14 ginning of the school year following the school  
15 year in which the failure to make adequate  
16 yearly progress took place.

17           “(D) IMPLEMENTATION.—Notwithstanding  
18 subparagraph (C), in a case in which a plan is  
19 not approved prior to the beginning of a school  
20 year, such plan shall be implemented imme-  
21 diately upon approval.

22           “(E) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY AP-  
23 PROVAL.—The local educational agency shall—

24                   “(i) establish a peer-review process to  
25 assist with review of a school plan pre-



1           pared by a school served by the local edu-  
2           cational agency; and

3                   “(ii) promptly review the school plan,  
4           work with the school as necessary, and ap-  
5           prove the school plan if it meets the re-  
6           quirements of this paragraph.

7           “(4) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—

8                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—For each school iden-  
9           tified for school improvement under paragraph  
10          (1), the local educational agency serving the  
11          school shall provide technical assistance as the  
12          school develops and implements the school plan  
13          throughout the duration of such plan.

14                   “(B) SPECIFIC ASSISTANCE.—Such tech-  
15          nical assistance—

16                           “(i) shall include assistance in ana-  
17          lyzing data from the academic assessments  
18          required under section 1111(b)(4), and  
19          other samples of student work, to identify  
20          and address instructional problems and so-  
21          lutions;

22                           “(ii) shall include assistance in identi-  
23          fying and implementing professional devel-  
24          opment, instructional strategies, and meth-  
25          ods of instruction that are based upon sci-



1                   entifically based research and that have  
2                   proven effective in addressing the specific  
3                   instructional issues that caused the school  
4                   to be identified for school improvement;

5                   “(iii) shall include assistance in ana-  
6                   lyzing and revising the school’s budget so  
7                   that the school resources are more effec-  
8                   tively allocated for the activities most likely  
9                   to increase student achievement and to re-  
10                  move the school from school improvement  
11                  status; and

12                  “(iv) may be provided—

13                         “(I) by the local educational  
14                         agency, through mechanisms author-  
15                         ized under section 1117; or

16                         “(II) by the State educational  
17                         agency, an institution of higher edu-  
18                         cation (in full compliance with all the  
19                         reporting provisions of title II of the  
20                         Higher Education Act of 1965), a pri-  
21                         vate not-for-profit organization or for-  
22                         profit organization, an educational  
23                         service agency, or another entity with  
24                         experience in helping schools improve  
25                         performance.





1                   “(C)    SCIENTIFICALLY    BASED    RE-  
2                   SEARCH.—Technical assistance provided under  
3                   this section by a local educational agency or an  
4                   entity approved by that agency shall be based  
5                   on scientifically based research.

6                   “(5) NOTIFICATION TO PARENTS.—A local edu-  
7                   cational agency shall promptly provide parents (in a  
8                   format and, to the extent practicable, in a language  
9                   they can understand) of each student in an elemen-  
10                  tary school or a secondary school identified for  
11                  school improvement—

12                  “(A) an explanation of what the school im-  
13                  provement identification means, and how the  
14                  school identified for school improvement com-  
15                  pares in terms of academic achievement to  
16                  other elementary schools or secondary schools  
17                  served by the local educational agency and the  
18                  State educational agency involved;

19                  “(B) the reasons for the identification;

20                  “(C) an explanation of what the school  
21                  identified for school improvement is doing to  
22                  address the problem of low achievement;

23                  “(D) an explanation of what the local edu-  
24                  cational agency or State educational agency is



1 doing to help the school address the achieve-  
2 ment problem;

3 “(E) an explanation of how parents de-  
4 scribed in this paragraph can become involved  
5 in addressing the academic issues that caused  
6 the school to be identified for school improve-  
7 ment; and

8 “(F) an explanation regarding the option  
9 of their child to transfer to another public  
10 school, including a public charter school.

11 “(6) CORRECTIVE ACTION.—

12 “(A) IN GENERAL.—In this subsection, the  
13 term ‘corrective action’ means action, consistent  
14 with State law, that—

15 “(i) substantially and directly re-  
16 sponds to—

17 “(I) the consistent academic fail-  
18 ure of a school that caused the local  
19 educational agency to take such ac-  
20 tion; and

21 “(II) any underlying staffing,  
22 curriculum, or other problems in the  
23 school; and

24 “(ii) is designed to increase substan-  
25 tially the likelihood that students enrolled



1 in the school identified for corrective action  
2 will perform at the State's proficient and  
3 advanced levels of achievement on the  
4 State academic assessment described in  
5 section 1111(b)(4).

6 “(B) SYSTEM.—In order to help students  
7 served under this part meet challenging State  
8 academic standards, each local educational  
9 agency shall implement a system of corrective  
10 action in accordance with subparagraphs (C)  
11 through (F) and paragraphs (7) through (9).

12 “(C) ROLE OF LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
13 CY.—The local educational agency—

14 “(i) after providing public school  
15 choice under paragraph (1)(E) and tech-  
16 nical assistance under paragraph (4), shall  
17 identify for corrective action and take cor-  
18 rective action with respect to any school  
19 served by the local educational agency  
20 under this part that—

21 “(I) fails to make adequate year-  
22 ly progress, as defined by the State  
23 under section 1111(b)(2), at the end  
24 of the first full school year following  
25 identification under paragraph (1); or



1                   “(II) was in school-improvement  
2                   status for 2 years or in corrective-ac-  
3                   tion status under this subsection im-  
4                   mediately before the effective date of  
5                   the No Child Left Behind Act of  
6                   2001; and

7                   “(ii) shall continue to provide tech-  
8                   nical assistance consistent with paragraph  
9                   (4) while instituting any corrective action  
10                  under clause (i); and

11                  “(D) REQUIREMENTS.—In the case of a  
12                  school described in subparagraph (C)(i), the  
13                  local educational agency shall both—

14                  “(i) continue to provide all students  
15                  enrolled in the school with the option to  
16                  transfer to another public school within the  
17                  local educational agency, including a public  
18                  charter school, that has not been identified  
19                  for school improvement under paragraph  
20                  (1), unless such an option is prohibited by  
21                  State law; and

22                  “(ii) take at least 1 of the following  
23                  corrective actions:



1           “(I) Replace the school staff  
2 which are relevant to the failure to  
3 make adequate yearly progress.

4           “(II) Institute and fully imple-  
5 ment a new curriculum, including pro-  
6 viding appropriate professional devel-  
7 opment for all relevant staff, that is  
8 based on scientifically based research  
9 and offers substantial promise of im-  
10 proving educational performance for  
11 low-performing students and the  
12 school meeting adequate yearly  
13 progress.

14           “(III) Significantly decrease  
15 management authority at the school  
16 level.

17           “(IV) Appoint an outside expert  
18 to advise the school on its progress to-  
19 ward meeting adequate yearly  
20 progress, based on its school plan  
21 under this subsection.

22           “(V) Extend the school year or  
23 school day.

24           “(VI) Restructure the internal  
25 organizational structure of the school.



1           “(E) DELAY.—A local educational agency  
2           may delay, for a period not to exceed 1 year,  
3           implementation of corrective action only if the  
4           school’s failure to make adequate yearly  
5           progress was justified due to exceptional or un-  
6           controllable circumstances, such as a natural  
7           disaster or a precipitous and unforeseen decline  
8           in the financial resources of the local edu-  
9           cational agency or school.

10           “(F) PUBLICATION AND DISSEMINA-  
11           TION.—The local educational agency shall pub-  
12           lish and disseminate information regarding any  
13           corrective action the local educational agency  
14           takes under this paragraph at a school—

15                   “(i) to the public and to the parents  
16                   of each student enrolled in the school sub-  
17                   ject to corrective action;

18                   “(ii) in a format and, to the extent  
19                   practicable, in a language that the parents  
20                   can understand; and

21                   “(iii) through such means as the  
22                   Internet, the media, and public agencies.

23           “(7) RESTRUCTURING.—

24                   “(A) FAILURE TO MAKE ADEQUATE YEAR-  
25                   LY PROGRESS.—If—



1           “(i) a school is subject to corrective  
2           action under paragraph (6) for one full  
3           school year, and at the end of such year  
4           continues to fail to make adequate yearly  
5           progress and students in the school who  
6           are from economically disadvantaged fami-  
7           lies are not making statistically significant  
8           progress in the subjects included in the  
9           State’s definition of adequate yearly  
10          progress; or

11          “(ii) for 2 additional years a school  
12          subject to corrective action under para-  
13          graph (6) fails to make adequate yearly  
14          progress, the local educational agency  
15          shall—

16                 “(I) provide all students enrolled  
17                 in the school with the option to trans-  
18                 fer to another public school within the  
19                 local educational agency, including a  
20                 public charter school, that has not  
21                 been identified for school improvement  
22                 under paragraph (1), unless prohib-  
23                 ited by State law;



1                   “(II) make supplemental instruc-  
2                   tional services available, consistent  
3                   with subsection (d)(1); and

4                   “(III) prepare a plan and make  
5                   necessary arrangements to carry out  
6                   subparagraph (B).

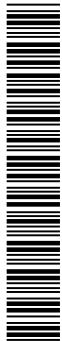
7                   “(B) ALTERNATIVE GOVERNANCE.—Not  
8                   later than the beginning of the school year fol-  
9                   lowing the year in which the local educational  
10                  agency implements subparagraph (A), the local  
11                  educational agency shall implement 1 of the fol-  
12                  lowing alternative governance arrangements for  
13                  the school consistent with State law:

14                  “(i) Reopening the school as a public  
15                  charter school.

16                  “(ii) Replacing the principal and all or  
17                  most of the school staff that are relevant  
18                  to the failure to make adequate yearly  
19                  progress.

20                  “(iii) Entering into a contract with an  
21                  entity, such as a private management com-  
22                  pany, to operate the public school.

23                  “(iv) Turning the operation of the  
24                  school over to the State, if permitted under  
25                  State law and agreed to by the State.



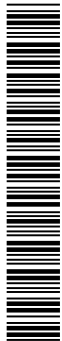


1           “(C) AVAILABLE RESULTS.—The State  
2 educational agency shall ensure that, for any  
3 school year in which a school is subject to  
4 school improvement under this subsection, the  
5 results of State academic assessments for that  
6 school are available to the local educational  
7 agency by the end of the school year in which  
8 the academic assessments are administered.

9           “(D) PROMPT NOTICE.—The local edu-  
10 cational agency shall provide prompt notice to  
11 teachers and parents whenever subparagraph  
12 (A) or (B) applies, shall provide them adequate  
13 opportunity to comment before taking any ac-  
14 tion under those subparagraphs and to partici-  
15 pate in developing any plan under subpara-  
16 graph (A)(iii), and shall provide parents an ex-  
17 planation of the options under subparagraph  
18 (A)(i) and (ii).

19           “(8) TRANSPORTATION.—In any case described  
20 in paragraph (6)(D)(i) and (7)(A)(ii)(I) the local  
21 educational agency—

22           “(A) shall provide, or shall pay for the pro-  
23 vision of, transportation for the student to the  
24 public school the child attends; and



1           “(B) may use not more than a total of 15  
2           percent of its allocation under this part for that  
3           purpose.

4           “(9) COOPERATIVE AGREEMENT.—In any case  
5           described in paragraph (6)(D)(i) and (7)(A)(ii)(I) if  
6           all public schools in the local educational agency to  
7           which a child may transfer to, are identified for  
8           school improvement, the agency shall, to the extent  
9           practicable, establish a cooperative agreement with  
10          other local educational agencies in the area for a  
11          transfer.

12          “(10) DURATION.—If any school identified for  
13          corrective action or restructuring—

14                 “(A) makes adequate yearly progress for 2  
15                 consecutive years, the local educational agency  
16                 need no longer subject it to corrective action or  
17                 restructuring nor identify it as in need of im-  
18                 provement; or

19                 “(B) fails to make adequate yearly  
20                 progress, but children from low-income families  
21                 in the school make statistically significant edu-  
22                 cational progress for 1 year, the local edu-  
23                 cational agency shall place or continue as ap-  
24                 propriate the school in corrective action under  
25                 paragraph (6).



1           “(11) STATE RESPONSIBILITIES.—The State  
2 shall—

3           “(A) make technical assistance under sec-  
4 tion 1117 available to all schools identified for  
5 school improvement and restructuring under  
6 this subsection;

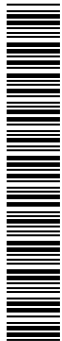
7           “(B) if it determines that a local edu-  
8 cational agency has failed to carry out its re-  
9 sponsibilities under this subsection, take such  
10 corrective actions as the State finds appropriate  
11 and in compliance with State law; and

12           “(C) ensure that academic assessment re-  
13 sults under this part are provided to schools  
14 within the same school year in which the assess-  
15 ment was given.

16           “(c) STATE REVIEW AND LOCAL EDUCATIONAL  
17 AGENCY IMPROVEMENT.—

18           “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State shall—

19           “(A) annually review the progress of each  
20 local educational agency receiving funds under  
21 this part to determine whether schools receiving  
22 assistance under this part are making adequate  
23 yearly progress as defined in section 1111(b)(2)  
24 toward meeting the State’s student academic  
25 achievement standards; and



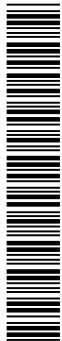
1           “(B) publicize and disseminate to local  
2 educational agencies, teachers and other staff,  
3 parents, students, and the community the re-  
4 sults of the State review consistent with section  
5 1111, including statistically sound  
6 disaggregated results, as required by section  
7 1111(b)(2).

8           “(2) IDENTIFICATION OF LOCAL EDUCATIONAL  
9 AGENCY FOR IMPROVEMENT.—A State shall identify  
10 for improvement any local educational agency that—

11           “(A) for 2 consecutive years failed to make  
12 adequate yearly progress as defined in the  
13 State’s plan under section 1111(b)(2); or

14           “(B) was in improvement status under this  
15 section as this section was in effect on the day  
16 preceding the date of the enactment of the No  
17 Child Left Behind Act of 2001.

18           “(3) TRANSITION.—The 2-year period described  
19 in paragraph (2)(A) shall include any continuous pe-  
20 riod of time immediately preceding the date of the  
21 enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001,  
22 during which a local educational agency did not  
23 make adequate yearly progress as defined in the  
24 State’s plan, as such plan was in effect on the day  
25 preceding the date of such enactment.



1           “(4) TARGETED ASSISTANCE SCHOOLS.—For  
2 purposes of targeted assistance schools in a local  
3 educational agency, a State educational agency may  
4 choose to review the progress of only the students in  
5 such schools who are served or are eligible for serv-  
6 ices under this part.

7           “(5) OPPORTUNITY TO REVIEW AND PRESENT  
8 EVIDENCE.—

9           “(A) REVIEW.—Before identifying a local  
10 educational agency for improvement under  
11 paragraph (2), a State educational agency shall  
12 provide the local educational agency with an op-  
13 portunity to review the local educational agency  
14 data, including academic assessment data, on  
15 which that proposed identification is based.

16           “(B) SUPPORTING EVIDENCE.—If the local  
17 educational agency believes that the proposed  
18 identification is in error for statistical or other  
19 substantive reasons, it may provide supporting  
20 evidence to the State educational agency, which  
21 such agency shall consider before making a  
22 final determination not later than 30 days after  
23 the State educational agency provides the local  
24 educational agency with the opportunity to re-  
25 view such data under subparagraph (A).



1           “(6) NOTIFICATION TO PARENTS.—The State  
2 educational agency shall promptly notify parents in  
3 a format, and to the extent practicable in a language  
4 they can understand, of each student enrolled in a  
5 school in a local educational agency identified for  
6 improvement, of the results of the review under  
7 paragraph (1) and, if the agency is identified as in  
8 need of improvement, the reasons for that identifica-  
9 tion and how parents can participate in upgrading  
10 the quality of the local educational agency.

11           “(7) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY REVI-  
12 SIONS.—

13           “(A) PLAN.—Each local educational agen-  
14 cy identified under paragraph (2) shall, not  
15 later than 3 months after being so identified,  
16 develop or revise a local educational agency  
17 plan, in consultation with parents, school staff,  
18 and others. Such plan shall—

19           “(i) incorporate scientifically based re-  
20 search strategies that strengthen the core  
21 academic program in the local educational  
22 agency;

23           “(ii) identify specific goals and objec-  
24 tives the local educational agency will un-



1           dertake to make adequate yearly progress  
2           and which—

3                       “(I) have the greatest likelihood  
4                       of improving the performance of par-  
5                       ticipating children in meeting the  
6                       State’s student academic achievement  
7                       standards;

8                       “(II) address the professional de-  
9                       velopment needs of staff; and

10                      “(III) include specific measurable  
11                      achievement goals and targets for  
12                      each of the groups of students identi-  
13                      fied in the disaggregated data pursu-  
14                      ant to section 1111(b)(2)(C)(iii)(I)  
15                      and (II);

16                      “(iii) incorporate, as appropriate, ex-  
17                      tended learning time for students such as  
18                      before school, after school, during the sum-  
19                      mer, and extension of the school year.

20                      “(iv) identify how the local edu-  
21                      cational agency will provide written notifi-  
22                      cation to parents in a format, and to the  
23                      extent practicable in a language, that they  
24                      can understand, pursuant to paragraph  
25                      (6); and



1                   “(v) specify the responsibilities of the  
2                   State educational agency and the local edu-  
3                   cational agency under the plan.

4                   “(B) IMPLEMENTATION.—The local edu-  
5                   cational agency shall implement its plan or re-  
6                   vised plan expeditiously, but not later than the  
7                   beginning of the school year after which the  
8                   school has been identified for improvement.

9                   “(8) STATE RESPONSIBILITY.—

10                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—For each local edu-  
11                   cational agency identified under paragraph (2),  
12                   the State shall provide technical or other assist-  
13                   ance, if requested, as authorized under section  
14                   1117, to better enable the local educational  
15                   agency—

16                   “(i) to develop and implement its re-  
17                   vised plan as approved by the State edu-  
18                   cational agency consistent with the require-  
19                   ments of this section; and

20                   “(ii) to work with schools needing im-  
21                   provement.

22                   “(B) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—Technical  
23                   assistance provided under this section by the  
24                   State educational agency or an entity author-





1           ized by such agency shall be based upon sci-  
2           entifically based research.

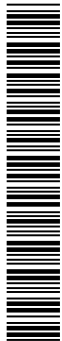
3           “(9) CORRECTIVE ACTION.—In order to help  
4           students served under this part meet challenging  
5           State academic standards, each State shall imple-  
6           ment a system of corrective action in accordance  
7           with the following:

8                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—After providing tech-  
9                   nical assistance under paragraph (8) and sub-  
10                  ject to subparagraph (D), the State—

11                           “(i) may take corrective action at any  
12                           time with respect to a local educational  
13                           agency that has been identified under  
14                           paragraph (2);

15                           “(ii) shall take corrective action with  
16                           respect to any local educational agency  
17                           that fails to make adequate yearly  
18                           progress, as defined by the State, after the  
19                           end of the second year following its identi-  
20                           fication under paragraph (2); and

21                           “(iii) shall continue to provide tech-  
22                           nical assistance while instituting any cor-  
23                           rective action under clause (i) or (ii).



1           “(B) DEFINITION.—As used in this para-  
2 graph, the term ‘corrective action’ means ac-  
3 tion, consistent with State law, that—

4           “(i) substantially and directly re-  
5 sponds to the consistent academic failure  
6 that caused the State to take such action  
7 and to any underlying staffing, curricular,  
8 or other problems in the school; and

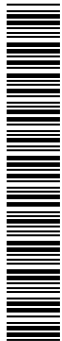
9           “(ii) is designed to meet the goal of  
10 having all students served under this part  
11 perform at the proficient and advanced  
12 performance levels.

13           “(C) CERTAIN LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
14 CIES.—In the case of a local educational agency  
15 described in this paragraph, the State edu-  
16 cational agency shall take not less than 1 of the  
17 following corrective actions:

18           “(i) Withhold funds from the local  
19 educational agency.

20           “(ii) Replace the school district per-  
21 sonnel who are relevant to the failure to  
22 make adequate year progress.

23           “(iii) Remove particular schools from  
24 the jurisdiction of the local educational  
25 agency and establish alternative arrange-



1                   ments for public governance and super-  
2                   vision of such schools.

3                   “(iv) Appoint, through the State edu-  
4                   cational agency, a receiver or trustee to ad-  
5                   minister the affairs of the local educational  
6                   agency in place of the superintendent and  
7                   school board.

8                   “(v) Abolish or restructure the local  
9                   educational agency.

10                  “(vi) Authorize students to transfer  
11                  from a school operated by a local edu-  
12                  cational agency to a higher performing  
13                  public school operated by another local  
14                  educational agency, or to a public charter  
15                  school and provide such students transpor-  
16                  tation (or the costs of transportation to  
17                  such schools), in conjunction with not less  
18                  than 1 additional action described under  
19                  this paragraph.

20                  “(D) HEARING.—Prior to implementing  
21                  any corrective action, the State educational  
22                  agency shall provide due process and a hearing  
23                  to the affected local educational agency, if State  
24                  law provides for such process and hearing.



1           “(E) PUBLICATION.—The State edu-  
2           cational agency shall publish, and disseminate  
3           to parents and the public any corrective action  
4           it takes under this paragraph through such  
5           means as the Internet, the media, and public  
6           agencies.

7           “(F) DELAY.—A local educational agency  
8           may delay, for a period not to exceed 1 year,  
9           implementation of corrective action if the fail-  
10          ure to make adequate yearly progress was justi-  
11          fied due to exceptional or uncontrollable cir-  
12          cumstances such as a natural disaster or a pre-  
13          cipitous and unforeseen decline in the financial  
14          resources of the local educational agency or  
15          school.

16          “(10) SPECIAL RULE.—A local educational  
17          agency, that, for at least 2 of the 3 years following  
18          identification under paragraph (2), makes adequate  
19          yearly progress shall no longer be identified for im-  
20          provement.

21          “(d) PARENTAL OPTIONS.—

22                 “(1) In any case described in subsection  
23                 (b)(7)(A)(ii)(II), the local educational agency shall  
24                 permit the parents of each eligible child to obtain  
25                 supplemental educational services for such child



1 from a provider, as approved by the State edu-  
2 cational agency in accordance with reasonable cri-  
3 teria that it shall adopt. Such criteria shall require  
4 a provider to demonstrate a record of effectiveness,  
5 or the potential of effectiveness, in providing supple-  
6 mental instructional services to children, consistent  
7 with the instructional program of the local edu-  
8 cational agency and the academic standards de-  
9 scribed under section 1111.

10 “(2) SELECTION.—In obtaining services under  
11 this paragraph, a parent shall select a provider that  
12 meets the criteria described under paragraph (1).  
13 The local educational agency shall provide assist-  
14 ance, upon request, to parents in the selection of a  
15 provider to provide supplemental instructional serv-  
16 ices.

17 “(3) CONTRACT.—In the case of the selection of  
18 a provider under paragraph (2) by a parent, the  
19 local educational agency shall enter into a contract  
20 with such provider. Such contract shall—

21 “(A) require the local educational agency  
22 to develop, with parents (and the provider they  
23 have chosen), a statement of specific perform-  
24 ance goals for the student, how the student’s



1 progress will be measured, and a timetable for  
2 improving achievement;

3 “(B) provide for the termination of such  
4 contract with a provider that is unable to meet  
5 such goals and timetables; and

6 “(C) contain provisions with respect to the  
7 making of payments to the provider by the local  
8 educational agency.

9 “(4) ADDITIONAL LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
10 CY RESPONSIBILITIES.—Each local educational  
11 agency subject to this paragraph shall provide an-  
12 nual notice to parents (if feasible, in the parents’  
13 language) of the availability of services under this  
14 paragraph and the eligible providers of those serv-  
15 ices.

16 “(5) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY RESPON-  
17 SIBILITIES.—Each State educational agency shall—

18 “(A) consult with local educational agen-  
19 cies and promote maximum participation by  
20 providers to ensure, to the extent practicable,  
21 that parents have as many choices of those pro-  
22 viders as possible;

23 “(B) develop criteria consistent with para-  
24 graph (6) and apply such criteria to potential  
25 providers to determine which, based on the



1 quality and effectiveness of their services, are  
2 eligible to participate;

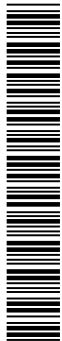
3 “(C) maintain an updated list of approved  
4 providers across the State, from which parents  
5 may select;

6 “(D) develop and implement standards and  
7 techniques for monitoring the quality and effec-  
8 tiveness of the services offered by providers,  
9 and withdraw approval from those that fail to  
10 meet those standards for two consecutive years;

11 “(E) provide annual notice to potential  
12 providers of supplemental services of the oppor-  
13 tunity to provide services under this paragraph  
14 and of the applicable procedures for obtaining  
15 approval from the State educational agency to  
16 be a provider of those services.

17 “(6) CRITERIA FOR PROVIDERS.—In order for a  
18 provider to be included on the State list under para-  
19 graph (5)(c), a provider shall agree to the following:

20 “(A) Provide parents of children receiving  
21 supplemental instructional services under this  
22 paragraph and the appropriate local educational  
23 agency with information on the progress of  
24 their children in increasing achievement, in a



1 format and, to the extent practicable, a lan-  
2 guage such parents can understand.

3 “(B) Ensure that instruction and content  
4 used by the provider is consistent with the in-  
5 struction and content used by the local edu-  
6 cational agency and State.

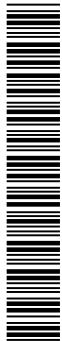
7 “(C) Require a provider to meet all appli-  
8 cable Federal, State, and local health, safety  
9 and civil rights laws.

10 “(D) Ensure that all instruction and con-  
11 tent under this paragraph shall be secular, neu-  
12 tral, and nonideological.

13 “(7) COSTS.—

14 “(A) The costs of administration of this  
15 paragraph and the costs of providing such sup-  
16 plemental instructional services shall be limited  
17 to the total of 40 percent of the per child allo-  
18 cation under subpart 2 of each school identified  
19 under subsection (b)(7)(A)(ii)(II);

20 “(B) ADDITIONAL FUNDS.—If the alloca-  
21 tion under subparagraph (A) is insufficient to  
22 provide services for all eligible students that  
23 have selected a provider, a local educational  
24 agency may use funds under subpart 1 of part  
25 A of title IV to pay for additional costs;





1           “(C) TRANSPORTATION COSTS.—A local  
2           educational agency may use up to 15 percent of  
3           its allocation under subpart 2 for transportation  
4           costs.

5           “(8) FUNDS PROVIDED BY STATE EDU-  
6           CATIONAL AGENCY.—Each State educational agency  
7           may use funds that it reserves under this part, and  
8           subpart 1 of part A of title IV to provide local edu-  
9           cational agencies that do not have sufficient funds to  
10          provide services under this paragraph for all eligible  
11          students requesting such services.

12          “(9) DURATION.—The local educational agency  
13          shall continue to provide supplemental instructional  
14          services to enrolled children receiving such services  
15          under this paragraph until the child completes the  
16          grade corresponding to the highest grade offered at  
17          the public school which was identified for restruc-  
18          turing under subsection (b)(7), or until such school,  
19          so long as the child attends such school, is not iden-  
20          tified under subsection (b)(1), (b)(6), or (b)(7),  
21          whichever comes earlier.

22          “(10) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this sub-  
23          section, the term—

24                 “(A) ‘eligible child’ means a child from a  
25                 low-income family, as determined by the local



1 educational agency for purposes of allocating  
2 funds to schools under section 1113(c)(1);

3 “(B) ‘supplemental instructional services’  
4 means tutoring and other supplemental aca-  
5 demic enrichment services that are in addition  
6 to instruction provided during the school day  
7 and are specifically designed to increase the  
8 academic achievement of eligible children on the  
9 academic assessments required under section  
10 1111; and

11 “(C) ‘provider’ means a non-profit or a  
12 for-profit entity which has a demonstrated  
13 record of effectiveness or the potential of  
14 effectiveness—

15 “(i) in providing supplemental instruc-  
16 tional services that are consistent with the  
17 instructional program of the local edu-  
18 cational agency and the academic stand-  
19 ards described under section 1111; and

20 “(ii) in sound fiscal management;

21 “(D) ‘per child allocation’ means an  
22 amount that is equal to at least—

23 “(i) the amount of the school’s alloca-  
24 tion under subpart 2; divided by



1                   “(ii) the number of children from low-  
2                   income families enrolled in the school.

3                   “(11) PROHIBITION.—Nothing contained in this  
4                   paragraph shall permit the making of any payment  
5                   under this paragraph for religious worship or in-  
6                   struction.”.

7   **SEC. 107. STATE ASSISTANCE FOR SCHOOL SUPPORT AND**  
8                   **IMPROVEMENT.**

9                   Section 1117 is amended to read as follows:

10   **“SEC. 1117. STATE ASSISTANCE FOR SCHOOL SUPPORT AND**  
11                   **IMPROVEMENT.**

12                   “(a) SYSTEM FOR SUPPORT.—Each State shall es-  
13                   tablish a statewide system of intensive and sustained sup-  
14                   port and improvement for local educational agencies and  
15                   schools receiving funds under this part, in order to in-  
16                   crease the opportunity for all students in those agencies  
17                   and schools to meet the State’s academic content stand-  
18                   ards and student academic achievement standards.

19                   “(b) PRIORITIES.—In carrying out this section, a  
20                   State shall—

21                   “(1) first, provide support and assistance to  
22                   local educational agencies subject to corrective action  
23                   under section 1116 and assist schools, in accordance  
24                   with section 1116(b)(10), for which a local edu-  
25                   cational agency has failed to carry out its respon-



1 sibilities under paragraphs (6) and (7) of section  
2 1116(b);

3 “(2) second, provide support and assistance to  
4 other local educational agencies identified as in need  
5 of improvement under section 1116(b); and

6 “(3) third, provide support and assistance to  
7 other local educational agencies and schools partici-  
8 pating under this part that need that support and  
9 assistance in order to achieve the purpose of this  
10 part.

11 “(c) APPROACHES.—In order to achieve the purpose  
12 described in subsection (a), each such system shall provide  
13 technical assistance and support through such approaches  
14 as—

15 “(1) school support teams, composed of individ-  
16 uals who are knowledgeable about scientifically  
17 based research and practice on teaching and learn-  
18 ing, particularly about strategies for improving edu-  
19 cational results for low-achieving children; and

20 “(2) the designation and use of “Distinguished  
21 Educators”, chosen from schools served under this  
22 part that have been especially successful in improv-  
23 ing academic achievement.

24 “(d) FUNDS.—Each State—



1           “(1) shall use funds reserved under section  
2           1003(a); and

3           “(2) may use State administrative funds au-  
4           thorized under section 1002(i) for such purpose to  
5           establish a Statewide system of support.

6           “(e) ALTERNATIVES.—The State may devise addi-  
7           tional approaches to providing the assistance described in  
8           paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (c), such as pro-  
9           viding assistance through institutions of higher education  
10          and educational service agencies or other local consortia,  
11          and private providers of scientifically based technical as-  
12          sistance and the State may seek approval from the Sec-  
13          retary to use funds made available under section 1002(j)  
14          for such approaches as part of the State plan.”.

15   **SEC. 108. ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT AWARDS PROGRAM.**

16          Sections 1118 through 1127 are amended to read as  
17          follows:

18   **“SEC. 1117A. ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT AWARDS PROGRAM.**

19          “(a) ESTABLISHMENT OF ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT  
20          AWARDS PROGRAM.—

21                 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State receiving a  
22                 grant under this part may establish a program for  
23                 making academic achievement awards to recognize  
24                 and financially reward schools served under this part  
25                 that have—



1           “(A) significantly closed the achievement  
2           gap between the groups of students defined in  
3           section 1111(b)(2); or

4           “(B) exceeded their adequate yearly  
5           progress goals, consistent with section  
6           1111(b)(2), for 2 or more consecutive years.

7           “(2) AWARDS TO TEACHERS.—A State program  
8           under paragraph (1) may also recognize and provide  
9           financial awards to teachers teaching in a school de-  
10          scribed in such paragraph whose students consist-  
11          ently make significant gains in academic achieve-  
12          ment in the areas in which the teacher provides in-  
13          struction.

14          “(b) FUNDING.—

15                 “(1) RESERVATION OF FUNDS BY STATE.—For  
16                 the purpose of carrying out this section, each State  
17                 receiving a grant under this part may reserve, from  
18                 the amount (if any) by which the funds received by  
19                 the State under this part for a fiscal year exceed the  
20                 amount received by the State under this part for the  
21                 preceding fiscal year, not more than 30 percent of  
22                 such excess amount.

23                 “(2) USE WITHIN 3 YEARS.—Notwithstanding  
24                 any other provision of law, the amount reserved  
25                 under paragraph (1) by a State for each fiscal year



1 shall remain available to the State until expended  
2 for a period not exceeding 3 years.

3 “(3) SPECIAL ALLOCATION RULE FOR SCHOOLS  
4 IN HIGH-POVERTY AREAS.—

5 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each State receiving  
6 a grant under this part shall distribute at least  
7 75 percent of the amount reserved under para-  
8 graph (1) for each fiscal year to schools de-  
9 scribed in subparagraph (B), or to teachers  
10 teaching in such schools.

11 “(B) SCHOOL DESCRIBED.—A school de-  
12 scribed in subparagraph (A) is a school whose  
13 student population is in the highest quartile of  
14 schools statewide in terms of the percentage of  
15 children from low income families.

16 **“SEC. 1118. PARENTAL INVOLVEMENT.**

17 “(a) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY POLICY.—

18 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency  
19 may receive funds under this part only if such agen-  
20 cy implements programs, activities, and procedures  
21 for the involvement of parents in programs assisted  
22 under this part consistent with the provisions of this  
23 section. Such activities shall be planned and imple-  
24 mented with meaningful consultation with parents of  
25 participating children.



1           “(2) WRITTEN POLICY.—Each local educational  
2 agency that receives funds under this part shall de-  
3 velop jointly with, agree upon with, and distribute  
4 to, parents of participating children a written parent  
5 involvement policy that is incorporated into the local  
6 educational agency’s plan developed under section  
7 1112, establishes the expectations for parent involve-  
8 ment, and describes how the local educational agen-  
9 cy will—

10           “(A) involve parents in the joint develop-  
11 ment of the plan under section 1112, and the  
12 process of school review and improvement under  
13 section 1116;

14           “(B) provide the coordination, technical as-  
15 sistance, and other support necessary to assist  
16 participating schools in planning and imple-  
17 menting effective parent involvement;

18           “(C) build the schools’ and parents’ capac-  
19 ity for strong parent involvement as described  
20 in subsection (e);

21           “(D) coordinate and integrate parental in-  
22 volvement strategies under this part with paren-  
23 tal involvement strategies under other pro-  
24 grams, such as Head Start, Early Reading  
25 First, Reading First, Even Start, the Parents





1 as Teachers Program, the Home Instruction  
2 Program for Preschool Youngsters, and State-  
3 run preschool programs;

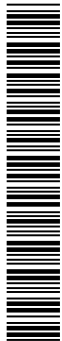
4 “(E) conduct, with the involvement of par-  
5 ents, an annual evaluation of the content and  
6 effectiveness of the parental involvement policy  
7 in improving the academic quality of the schools  
8 served under this part; and

9 “(F) involve parents in the activities of the  
10 schools served under this part.

11 “(3) RESERVATION.—

12 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
13 agency shall reserve not less than 1 percent of  
14 such agency’s allocation under this part to  
15 carry out this section, including family literacy  
16 and parenting skills, except that this paragraph  
17 shall not apply if 1 percent of such agency’s al-  
18 location under this part (other than funds allo-  
19 cated under section 1002(g) for the fiscal year  
20 for which the determination is made is \$5,000  
21 or less.

22 “(B) PARENTAL INPUT.—Parents of children  
23 receiving services under this part shall be involved in  
24 the decisions regarding how funds reserved under



1 subparagraph (A) are allotted for parental involve-  
2 ment activities.

3 “(C) DISTRIBUTION OF FUNDS.—Not less than  
4 95 percent of the funds reserved under subpara-  
5 graph (A) shall be distributed to schools served  
6 under this part.

7 “(b) SCHOOL PARENTAL INVOLVEMENT POLICY.—

8 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each school served under  
9 this part shall jointly develop with, and distribute to,  
10 parents of participating children a written parental  
11 involvement policy, agreed upon by such parents,  
12 that shall describe the means for carrying out the  
13 requirements of subsections (c) through (f). Parents  
14 shall be notified of the policy in a format, and to the  
15 extent practicable in a language they can under-  
16 stand. Such policy shall be updated periodically to  
17 meet the changing needs of parents and the school.

18 “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—If the school has a pa-  
19 rental involvement policy that applies to all parents,  
20 such school may amend that policy, if necessary, to  
21 meet the requirements of this subsection.

22 “(3) AMENDMENT.—If the local educational  
23 agency has a school district-level parental involve-  
24 ment policy that applies to all parents, such agency



1 may amend that policy, if necessary, to meet the re-  
2 quirements of this subsection.

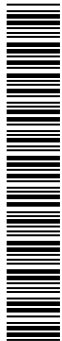
3 “(4) PARENTAL COMMENTS.—If the plan under  
4 section 1112 is not satisfactory to the parents of  
5 participating children, the local educational agency  
6 shall submit any parent comments with such plan  
7 when such local educational agency submits the plan  
8 to the State.

9 “(c) POLICY INVOLVEMENT.—Each school served  
10 under this part shall—

11 “(1) convene an annual meeting, at a conven-  
12 ient time, to which all parents of participating chil-  
13 dren shall be invited and encouraged to attend, to  
14 inform parents of their school’s participation under  
15 this part and to explain this part, its requirements,  
16 and their right to be involved;

17 “(2) offer a flexible number of meetings, such  
18 as meetings in the morning or evening, and may  
19 provide, with funds provided under this part, trans-  
20 portation, child care, or home visits, as such services  
21 relate to parental involvement;

22 “(3) involve parents, in an organized, ongoing,  
23 and timely way, in the planning, review, and im-  
24 provement of programs under this part, including  
25 the school parental involvement policy and the joint



1 development of the schoolwide program plan under  
2 section 1114(c)(2) and (c)(3), except that if a school  
3 has in place a process for involving parents in the  
4 joint planning and design of its programs, the school  
5 may use that process, if such process includes an  
6 adequate representation of parents of participating  
7 children;

8 “(4) provide parents of participating children—

9 “(A) timely information about programs  
10 under this part;

11 “(B) a description and explanation of the  
12 curriculum in use at the school, the forms of  
13 academic assessment used to measure student  
14 progress, and the proficiency levels students are  
15 expected to meet; and

16 “(5) if the schoolwide program plan under sec-  
17 tion 1114(c)(2) and (c)(3) is not satisfactory to the  
18 parents of participating children, submit any parent  
19 comments on the plan when the school makes the  
20 plan available to the local educational agency.

21 “(d) SHARED RESPONSIBILITIES FOR HIGH STU-  
22 DENT PERFORMANCE.—As a component of the school-  
23 level parental involvement policy developed under sub-  
24 section (b), each school served under this part shall agree  
25 with parents of children served under this part regarding



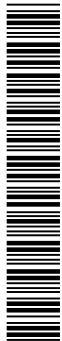
1 how parents, the entire school staff, and students will  
2 share the responsibility for improved student achievement  
3 and the means by which the school and parents will build  
4 and develop a partnership to help children achieve the  
5 State's high academic standards.

6       “(e) BUILDING CAPACITY FOR INVOLVEMENT.—To  
7 ensure effective involvement of parents and to support a  
8 partnership among the school, parents, and the commu-  
9 nity to improve student achievement, each school and local  
10 educational agency—

11           “(1) shall provide assistance to participating  
12 parents in such areas as understanding the State's  
13 academic content standards and State student aca-  
14 demic achievement standards, State and local aca-  
15 demic assessments, the requirements of this part,  
16 and how to monitor a child's progress and work with  
17 educators to improve the performance of their chil-  
18 dren;

19           “(2) shall provide materials and training to  
20 help parents to work with their children to improve  
21 their children's achievement;

22           “(3) shall educate teachers, pupil services per-  
23 sonnel, principals and other staff, with the assist-  
24 ance of parents, in the value and utility of contribu-  
25 tions of parents, and in how to reach out to, commu-



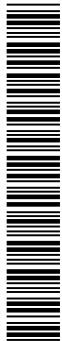
1       nicate with, and work with parents as equal part-  
2       ners, implement and coordinate parent programs,  
3       and build ties between parents and the school;

4               “(4) shall coordinate and integrate parent in-  
5       volvement programs and activities with Head Start,  
6       Reading First, Early Reading First, Even Start, the  
7       Home Instruction Programs for Preschool Young-  
8       sters, the Parents as Teachers Program, and public  
9       preschool programs and other programs, to the ex-  
10      tent feasible and appropriate;

11              “(5) shall ensure, to the extent possible, that  
12      information related to school and parent programs,  
13      meetings, and other activities is sent to the parents  
14      of participating children in the language used by  
15      such parents;

16              “(6) may involve parents in the development of  
17      training for teachers, principals, and other educators  
18      to improve the effectiveness of such training in im-  
19      proving instruction and services to the children of  
20      such parents in a format, and to the extent prac-  
21      ticable, in a language the parent can understand;

22              “(7) may provide necessary literacy training  
23      from funds received under this part if the local edu-  
24      cational agency has exhausted all other reasonably  
25      available sources of funding for such activities;



1           “(8) may pay reasonable and necessary ex-  
2           penses associated with local parental involvement ac-  
3           tivities, including transportation and child care  
4           costs, to enable parents to participate in school-re-  
5           lated meetings and training sessions;

6           “(9) may train parents to enhance the involve-  
7           ment of other parents;

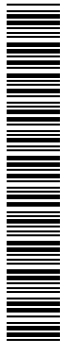
8           “(10) may arrange for teachers or other edu-  
9           cators, who work directly with participating children,  
10          to conduct in-home conferences with parents who are  
11          unable to attend such conferences at school;

12          “(11) may adopt and implement model ap-  
13          proaches to improving parental involvement;

14          “(12) may establish a districtwide parent advi-  
15          sory council to provide advice on all matters related  
16          to parental involvement in programs supported  
17          under this part;

18          “(13) may develop appropriate roles for com-  
19          munity-based organizations and businesses in parent  
20          involvement activities; and

21          “(14) may arrange for teachers or other edu-  
22          cators, who work directly with participating children,  
23          to conduct in-home conferences with parents who are  
24          unable to attend such conferences at school.







1 this part publicly to report their annual progress on  
2 the agency's and the school's performance in in-  
3 creasing the percentage of classes in core academic  
4 areas taught by fully qualified teachers.

5 “(b) NEW PARAPROFESSIONALS.—

6 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
7 agency receiving assistance under this part shall en-  
8 sure that all paraprofessionals hired 1 year or more  
9 after the effective date of the No Child Left Behind  
10 Act of 2001 and working in a program supported  
11 with funds under this part shall—

12 “(A) have completed at least 2 years of  
13 study at an institution of higher education;

14 “(B) have obtained an associate's (or high-  
15 er) degree; or

16 “(C) have met a rigorous standard of qual-  
17 ity that demonstrates, through a formal aca-  
18 demic assessment—

19 “(i) knowledge of, and the ability to  
20 assist in instructing reading, writing, and  
21 math; or

22 “(ii) knowledge of, and the ability to  
23 assist in instructing reading readiness,  
24 writing readiness, and math readiness, as  
25 appropriate.



1           “(2) CLARIFICATION.—For purposes of para-  
2           graph (1)(C), the receipt of a high school diploma  
3           (or its recognized equivalent) shall be necessary but  
4           not by itself sufficient to satisfy the requirements of  
5           such paragraph.

6           “(c) EXISTING PARAPROFESSIONALS.—Each local  
7           educational agency receiving assistance under this part  
8           shall ensure that all paraprofessionals hired before the  
9           date that is 1 year after the effective date of the No Child  
10          Left Behind Act of 2001 and working in a program sup-  
11          ported with funds under this part shall, not later than 3  
12          years after such effective date, satisfy the requirements  
13          of subsection (b).

14          “(d) EXCEPTIONS FOR TRANSLATION AND PAREN-  
15          TAL INVOLVEMENT ACTIVITIES.—Subsections (b) and (c)  
16          shall not apply to a paraprofessional—

17                 “(1) who is proficient in English and a lan-  
18                 guage other than English and who provides services  
19                 primarily to enhance the participation of children in  
20                 programs under this part by acting as a translator;  
21                 or

22                 “(2) whose duties consist solely of conducting  
23                 parental involvement activities consistent with sec-  
24                 tion 1118.



1       “(e) GENERAL REQUIREMENT FOR ALL PARA-  
2 PROFESSIONALS.—Each local educational agency receiving  
3 assistance under this part shall ensure that all paraprofes-  
4 sionals working in a program supported with funds under  
5 this part, regardless of the paraprofessional’s hiring date,  
6 possess a high school diploma or its recognized equivalent.

7       “(f) DUTIES OF PARAPROFESSIONALS.—

8           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
9 agency receiving assistance under this part shall en-  
10 sure that a paraprofessional working in a program  
11 supported with funds under this part is not assigned  
12 a duty inconsistent with this subsection.

13           “(2) RESPONSIBILITIES PARAPROFESSIONALS  
14 MAY BE ASSIGNED.—A paraprofessional described in  
15 paragraph (1) may only be assigned—

16           “(A) to provide one-on-one tutoring for eli-  
17 gible students, if the tutoring is scheduled at a  
18 time when a student would not otherwise re-  
19 ceive instruction from a teacher;

20           “(B) to assist with classroom management,  
21 such as organizing instructional and other ma-  
22 terials;

23           “(C) to provide assistance in a computer  
24 laboratory;



1           “(D) to conduct parental involvement ac-  
2           tivities;

3           “(E) to provide support in a library or  
4           media center;

5           “(F) to act as a translator; or

6           “(G) to provide instructional services to  
7           students.

8           “(3) ADDITIONAL LIMITATIONS.—A paraprofes-  
9           sional described in paragraph (1)—

10           “(A) may not provide any instructional  
11           service to a student unless the paraprofessional  
12           is working under the direct supervision of a  
13           fully qualified teacher; and

14           “(B) may not provide instructional services  
15           to students in the area of reading, writing, or  
16           math unless the paraprofessional has dem-  
17           onstrated, through a State or local academic as-  
18           sessment, the ability to effectively carry out  
19           reading, writing, or math instruction.

20           “(g) USE OF FUNDS.—

21           “(1) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—A local  
22           educational agency receiving funds under this part  
23           may use such funds to support ongoing training and  
24           professional development to assist teachers and



1       paraprofessionals in satisfying the requirements of  
2       this section.

3               “(2) LIMITATION ON USE OF FUNDS FOR PARA-  
4       PROFESSIONALS.—

5               “(A) IN GENERAL.—Beginning on and  
6       after the effective date of the No Child Left Be-  
7       hind Act of 2001, a local educational agency  
8       may not use funds received under this part to  
9       fund any paraprofessional hired after such date  
10      unless the hiring is to fill a vacancy created by  
11      the departure of another paraprofessional fund-  
12      ed under this part and such new paraprofes-  
13      sional satisfies the requirements of subsection  
14      (b), except as provided in subsection (d).

15              “(B) EXCEPTION.—Subparagraph (A)  
16      shall not apply for a fiscal year to a local edu-  
17      cational agency that can demonstrate to the  
18      State that all teachers under the jurisdiction of  
19      the agency are fully qualified.

20              “(h) VERIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE.—

21              “(1) IN GENERAL.—In verifying compliance  
22      with this section, each local educational agency at a  
23      minimum shall require that the principal of each  
24      school operating a program under section 1114 or  
25      1115 annually attest in writing as to whether such



1 school is in compliance with the requirements of this  
2 section.

3 “(2) AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION.—Copies  
4 of attestations under paragraph (1)—

5 “(A) shall be maintained at each school op-  
6 erating a program under section 1114 or 1115  
7 and at the main office of the local educational  
8 agency; and

9 “(B) shall be available to any member of  
10 the general public upon request.

11 **“SEC. 1119A. PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.**

12 “(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this section is to as-  
13 sist each local educational agency receiving assistance  
14 under this part in increasing the academic achievement  
15 of children served under this part through improved teach-  
16 er quality.

17 “(b) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT ACTIVITIES.—  
18 Professional development activities under this section  
19 shall—

20 “(1) give teachers, principals, and administra-  
21 tors the knowledge and skills to provide students  
22 with the opportunity to meet challenging State or  
23 local academic content standards and student aca-  
24 demic achievement standards;



1           “(2) support the recruiting, hiring, and training  
2 of fully qualified teachers, including teachers fully  
3 qualified through State and local alternative routes;

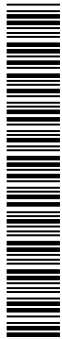
4           “(3) advance teacher understanding of effective  
5 instructional strategies based on scientifically based  
6 research for improving student achievement, at a  
7 minimum, in reading or language arts and mathe-  
8 matics;

9           “(4) be directly related to the curriculum and  
10 content areas in which the teacher provides instruc-  
11 tion, except this requirement does not apply to ac-  
12 tivities that instruct in methods of improving stu-  
13 dent behavior;

14           “(5) be designed to enhance the ability of a  
15 teacher to understand and use the State’s academic  
16 standards for the subject area in which the teacher  
17 provides instruction;

18           “(6) be tied to scientifically based research  
19 demonstrating the effectiveness of such professional  
20 development activities or programs in increasing stu-  
21 dent achievement or substantially increasing the  
22 knowledge and teaching skills of teachers;

23           “(7) be of sufficient intensity and duration (not  
24 to include 1-day or short-term workshops and con-



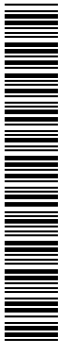
1       ferences) to have a positive and lasting impact on  
2       the teacher's performance in the classroom;

3               “(8) be developed with extensive participation  
4       of teachers, principals, parents, and administrators  
5       of schools to be served under this part;

6               “(9) be designed to give teachers of limited  
7       English proficient children, other teachers, and in-  
8       structional staff the knowledge and skills to provide  
9       instruction and appropriate language and academic  
10      support services to such children, including the ap-  
11      propriate use of curriculum and academic assess-  
12      ments;

13              “(10) to the extent appropriate, provide train-  
14      ing for teachers in the use of technology so that  
15      technology and its applications are effectively used  
16      in the classroom to improve teaching and learning in  
17      the curriculum and academic content areas in which  
18      the teachers provide instruction; and

19              “(11) as a whole, be regularly evaluated for  
20      their impact on increased teacher effectiveness and  
21      improved student achievement, with the findings of  
22      such evaluations used to improve the quality of pro-  
23      fessional development.





1           “(c) ADDITIONAL PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT  
2 ACTIVITIES.—Such professional development activities  
3 may include—

4                   “(1) instruction in the use of data and aca-  
5 demic assessments to inform and instruct classroom  
6 practice;

7                   “(2) instruction in ways that teachers, prin-  
8 cipals, pupil services personnel, and school adminis-  
9 trators may work more effectively with parents;

10                   “(3) the forming of partnerships with institu-  
11 tions of higher education to establish school-based  
12 teacher training programs that provide prospective  
13 teachers and novice teachers with an opportunity to  
14 work under the guidance of experienced teachers and  
15 college faculty;

16                   “(4) the creation of career ladder programs for  
17 paraprofessionals (assisting teachers under this  
18 part) to obtain the education necessary for such  
19 paraprofessionals to become licensed and certified  
20 teachers; and

21                   “(5) instruction in ways to teach special needs  
22 children.

23           “(d) PROGRAM PARTICIPATION.—Each local edu-  
24 cational agency receiving assistance under this part may  
25 design professional development programs so that—



1           “(1) all school staff in schools participating in  
2           a schoolwide program under section 1114 can par-  
3           ticipate in professional development activities; and

4           “(2) all school staff in targeted assistance  
5           schools may participate in professional development  
6           activities if such participation will result in better  
7           addressing the needs of students served under this  
8           part.

9           “(e) PARENTAL PARTICIPATION.—Parents may par-  
10          ticipate in professional development activities under this  
11          part if the school determines that parental participation  
12          is appropriate.

13          “(f) CONSORTIA.—In carrying out such professional  
14          development programs, local educational agencies may  
15          provide services through consortia arrangements with  
16          other local educational agencies, educational service agen-  
17          cies or other local consortia, institutions of higher edu-  
18          cation, or other public or private institutions or organiza-  
19          tions.

20          “(g) CONSOLIDATION OF FUNDS.—Funds provided  
21          under this part that are used for professional development  
22          purposes may be consolidated with funds provided under  
23          title II of this Act and other sources.

24          “(h) SPECIAL RULE.—No State educational agency  
25          shall require a school or a local educational agency to ex-



1 pend a specific amount of funds for professional develop-  
2 ment activities under this part, except that this paragraph  
3 shall not apply with respect to requirements under section  
4 1116(b)(3)(A)(iii).

5 **“SEC. 1120. PARTICIPATION OF CHILDREN ENROLLED IN**  
6 **PRIVATE SCHOOLS.**

7 “(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENT.—

8 “(1) IN GENERAL.—To the extent consistent  
9 with the number of eligible children identified under  
10 section 1115(b) in a local educational agency who  
11 are enrolled in private elementary and secondary  
12 schools, a local educational agency shall, after timely  
13 and meaningful consultation with appropriate pri-  
14 vate school officials, provide such children, on an eq-  
15 uitable basis, special educational services or other  
16 benefits under this part (such as dual enrollment,  
17 educational radio and television, computer equip-  
18 ment and materials, other technology, and mobile  
19 educational services and equipment) that address  
20 their needs, and shall ensure that teachers and fami-  
21 lies of these students participate, on an equitable  
22 basis, in services and activities developed pursuant  
23 to sections 1118 and 1119A.

24 “(2) SECULAR, NEUTRAL, NONIDEOLOGICAL.—  
25 Such educational services or other benefits, including



1 materials and equipment, shall be secular, neutral,  
2 and nonideological.

3 “(3) EQUITY.—Educational services and other  
4 benefits for such private school children shall be eq-  
5 uitable in comparison to services and other benefits  
6 for public school children participating under this  
7 part, and shall be provided in a timely manner.

8 “(4) EXPENDITURES.—Expenditures for edu-  
9 cational services and other benefits to eligible private  
10 school children shall be equal to the proportion of  
11 funds allocated to participating school attendance  
12 areas based on the number of children from low-in-  
13 come families who attend private schools, which the  
14 local educational agency may determine each year or  
15 every 2 years.

16 “(5) PROVISION OF SERVICES.—The local edu-  
17 cational agency shall provide services under this sec-  
18 tion directly or through contracts with public and  
19 private agencies, organizations, and institutions.

20 “(b) CONSULTATION.—

21 “(1) IN GENERAL.—To ensure timely and  
22 meaningful consultation, a local educational agency  
23 shall consult with appropriate private school officials  
24 during the design and development of such agency’s  
25 programs under this part, on issues such as—



1           “(A) how the children’s needs will be iden-  
2           tified;

3           “(B) what services will be offered;

4           “(C) how, where, and by whom the services  
5           will be provided;

6           “(D) how the services will be academically  
7           assessed and how the results of that assessment  
8           will be used to improve those services;

9           “(E) the size and scope of the equitable  
10          services to be provided to the eligible private  
11          school children, and the amount of funds gen-  
12          erated by low-income private school children in  
13          each participating attendance area;

14          “(F) the method or sources of data that  
15          are used under subsection (a)(4) and section  
16          1113(c)(2) to determine the number of children  
17          from low-income families in participating school  
18          attendance areas who attend private schools;  
19          and

20          “(G) how and when the agency will make  
21          decisions about the delivery of services to such  
22          children, including a thorough consideration  
23          and analysis of the views of the private school  
24          officials on the provision of contract services  
25          through potential third party providers.

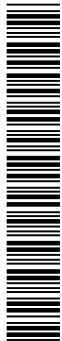


1 If the local educational agency disagrees with the views  
2 of the private school officials on the provision of services,  
3 through a contract, the local educational agency shall pro-  
4 vide in writing to such private school officials, an analysis  
5 of the reasons why the local educational agency has chosen  
6 not to use a contractor.

7           “(2) TIMING.—Such consultation shall include  
8 meetings of agency and private school officials and  
9 shall occur before the local educational agency  
10 makes any decision that affects the opportunities of  
11 eligible private school children to participate in pro-  
12 grams under this part. Such meetings shall continue  
13 throughout implementation and assessment of serv-  
14 ices provided under this section.

15           “(3) DISCUSSION.—Such consultation shall in-  
16 clude a discussion of service delivery mechanisms a  
17 local educational agency can use to provide equitable  
18 services to eligible private school children.

19           “(4) DOCUMENTATION.—Each local educational  
20 agency shall maintain in its records and provide to  
21 the State educational agency a written affirmation  
22 signed by officials of each participating private  
23 school that the consultation required by this section  
24 has occurred.



1           “(5) COMPLIANCE.—Private school officials  
2 shall have the right to appeal to the State as to  
3 whether the consultation provided for in this section  
4 was meaningful and timely, and that due consider-  
5 ation was given to the views of private school offi-  
6 cials. If the private school wishes to appeal, the basis  
7 of the claim of noncompliance with this section by  
8 a local educational agency shall be provided to the  
9 State, and the local educational agency shall forward  
10 the documentation provided in subsection (b)(4) to  
11 the State.

12           “(c) PUBLIC CONTROL OF FUNDS.—

13           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The control of funds pro-  
14 vided under this part, and title to materials, equip-  
15 ment, and property purchased with such funds, shall  
16 be in a public agency, and a public agency shall ad-  
17 minister such funds and property.

18           “(2) PROVISION OF SERVICES.—(A) The provi-  
19 sion of services under this section shall be  
20 provided—

21                   “(i) by employees of a public agency; or

22                   “(ii) through contract by such public agen-  
23 cy with an individual, association, agency, or or-  
24 ganization.



1           “(B) In the provision of such services, such em-  
2           ployee, person, association, agency, or organization  
3           shall be independent of such private school and of  
4           any religious organization, and such employment or  
5           contract shall be under the control and supervision  
6           of such public agency.

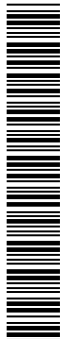
7           “(d) STANDARDS FOR A BYPASS.—If a local edu-  
8           cational agency is prohibited by law from providing for  
9           the participation on an equitable basis of eligible children  
10          enrolled in private elementary and secondary schools or  
11          if the Secretary determines that a local educational agency  
12          has substantially failed or is unwilling to provide for such  
13          participation, as required by this section, the Secretary  
14          shall—

15                 “(1) waive the requirements of this section for  
16                 such local educational agency;

17                 “(2) arrange for the provision of services to  
18                 such children through arrangements that shall be  
19                 subject to the requirements of this section and sec-  
20                 tions 8505 and 8506; and

21                 “(3) in making the determination, consider 1 or  
22                 more factors, including the quality, size, scope, and  
23                 location of the program and the opportunity of eligi-  
24                 ble children to participate.

25           “(e) CAPITAL EXPENSES.—





1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) From the amount ap-  
2           propriated for this subsection under section 1002(g)  
3           for any fiscal year, each State is eligible to receive  
4           an amount that bears the same ratio to the amount  
5           so appropriated as the number of private school chil-  
6           dren who received services under this part in the  
7           State in the most recent year for which data satis-  
8           factory to the Secretary are available bears to the  
9           number of such children in all States in that same  
10          year.

11           “(B) The Secretary shall reallocate any  
12          amounts allocated under subparagraph (A) that are  
13          not used by a State for the purpose of this sub-  
14          section to other States on the basis of their respec-  
15          tive needs, as determined by the Secretary.

16           “(2) CAPITAL EXPENSES.—(A) A local edu-  
17          cational agency may apply to the State educational  
18          agency for payments for capital expenses consistent  
19          with this subsection.

20           “(B) State educational agencies shall distribute  
21          such funds under this subsection to local educational  
22          agencies based on the degree of need set forth in  
23          their respective applications for assistance under this  
24          subsection.



1           “(3) USES OF FUNDS.—Any funds appropriated  
2           to carry out this subsection shall be used only for  
3           capital expenses incurred to provide equitable serv-  
4           ices for private school children under this section.

5   **“SEC. 1120A. FISCAL REQUIREMENTS.**

6           “(a) MAINTENANCE OF EFFORT.—A local edu-  
7           cational agency may receive funds under this part for any  
8           fiscal year only if the State educational agency finds that  
9           the local educational agency has maintained its fiscal ef-  
10          fort in accordance with section 8501 of this Act.

11          “(b) FEDERAL FUNDS TO SUPPLEMENT, NOT SUP-  
12          PLANT, NON-FEDERAL FUNDS.—

13                 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State or local edu-  
14                 cational agency shall use funds received under this  
15                 part only to supplement the amount of funds that  
16                 would, in the absence of such Federal funds, be  
17                 made available from non-Federal sources for the  
18                 education of pupils participating in programs as-  
19                 sisted under this part, and not to supplant such  
20                 funds.

21                 “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—No local educational  
22                 agency shall be required to provide services under  
23                 this part through a particular instructional method  
24                 or in a particular instructional setting in order to



1 demonstrate such agency's compliance with para-  
2 graph (1).

3 “(c) COMPARABILITY OF SERVICES.—

4 “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) Except as provided in  
5 paragraphs (4) and (5), a local educational agency  
6 may receive funds under this part only if State and  
7 local funds will be used in schools served under this  
8 part to provide services that, taken as a whole, are  
9 at least comparable to services in schools that are  
10 not receiving funds under this part.

11 “(B) If the local educational agency is serving  
12 all of such agency's schools under this part, such  
13 agency may receive funds under this part only if  
14 such agency will use State and local funds to provide  
15 services that, taken as a whole, are substantially  
16 comparable in each school.

17 “(C) A local educational agency may meet the  
18 requirements of subparagraphs (A) and (B) on a  
19 grade-span by grade-span basis or a school-by-school  
20 basis.

21 “(2) WRITTEN ASSURANCE.—(A) A local edu-  
22 cational agency shall be considered to have met the  
23 requirements of paragraph (1) if such agency has  
24 filed with the State educational agency a written as-



1 surance that such agency has established and  
2 implemented—

3 “(i) a local educational agency-wide salary  
4 schedule;

5 “(ii) a policy to ensure equivalence among  
6 schools in teachers, administrators, and other  
7 staff; and

8 “(iii) a policy to ensure equivalence among  
9 schools in the provision of curriculum materials  
10 and instructional supplies.

11 “(B) For the purpose of subparagraph (A), in  
12 the determination of expenditures per pupil from  
13 State and local funds, or instructional salaries per  
14 pupil from State and local funds, staff salary dif-  
15 ferentials for years of employment shall not be in-  
16 cluded in such determinations.

17 “(C) A local educational agency need not in-  
18 clude unpredictable changes in student enrollment or  
19 personnel assignments that occur after the beginning  
20 of a school year in determining comparability of  
21 services under this subsection.

22 “(3) PROCEDURES AND RECORDS.—Each local  
23 educational agency assisted under this part shall—

24 “(A) develop procedures for compliance  
25 with this subsection; and



1           “(B) maintain records that are updated bi-  
2           ennially documenting such agency’s compliance  
3           with this subsection.

4           “(4) INAPPLICABILITY.—This subsection shall  
5           not apply to a local educational agency that does not  
6           have more than 1 building for each grade span.

7           “(5) COMPLIANCE.—For the purpose of deter-  
8           mining compliance with paragraph (1), a local edu-  
9           cational agency may exclude State and local funds  
10          expended for—

11                   “(A) English language instruction for chil-  
12                   dren of limited English proficiency; and

13                   “(B) excess costs of providing services to  
14                   children with disabilities as determined by the  
15                   local educational agency.

16          “(d) EXCLUSION OF FUNDS.—For the purpose of  
17          complying with subsections (b) and (c), a State or local  
18          educational agency may exclude supplemental State or  
19          local funds expended in any school attendance area or  
20          school for programs that meet the intent and purposes of  
21          this part.

22          **“SEC. 1120B. COORDINATION REQUIREMENTS.**

23                   “(a) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational agency  
24                   receiving assistance under this part shall carry out the ac-  
25                   tivities described in subsection (b) with Head Start Agen-



1 cies, and if feasible, other early childhood development  
2 programs such as Early Reading First.

3 “(b) ACTIVITIES.—The activities referred to in sub-  
4 section (a) are activities that increase coordination be-  
5 tween the local educational agency and a Head Start agen-  
6 cy, and, if feasible, other early childhood development pro-  
7 grams, such as Early Reading First serving children who  
8 will attend the schools of such agency, including—

9 “(1) developing and implementing a systematic  
10 procedure for receiving records regarding such chil-  
11 dren transferred with parental consent from a Head  
12 Start program or, where applicable, other early  
13 childhood development programs such as Early  
14 Reading First;

15 “(2) establishing channels of communication be-  
16 tween school staff and their counterparts in such  
17 Head Start agencies (including teachers, social  
18 workers, and health staff) or other early childhood  
19 development programs such as Early Reading First,  
20 as appropriate, to facilitate coordination of pro-  
21 grams;

22 “(3) conducting meetings involving parents,  
23 kindergarten or elementary school teachers, and  
24 Head Start teachers or, if appropriate, teachers  
25 from other early childhood development programs



1 such as Early Reading First, to discuss the develop-  
2 mental and other needs of individual children;

3 “(4) organizing and participating in joint tran-  
4 sition related training of school staff, Head Start  
5 staff, Early Reading First staff and, where appro-  
6 priate, other early childhood staff; and

7 “(5) linking the educational services provided in  
8 such local educational agency with the services pro-  
9 vided in local Head Start agencies and Early Read-  
10 ing First programs.

11 “(c) COORDINATION OF REGULATIONS.—The Sec-  
12 retary shall work with the Secretary of Health and Human  
13 Services to coordinate regulations promulgated under this  
14 part with regulations promulgated under the Head Start  
15 Act.

16 **“Subpart 2—Allocations**

17 **“SEC. 1121. GRANTS FOR THE OUTLYING AREAS AND THE**  
18 **SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR.**

19 “(a) RESERVATION OF FUNDS.—From the amount  
20 appropriated for payments to States for any fiscal year  
21 under section 1002(a), the Secretary shall reserve a total  
22 of 1 percent to provide assistance to—

23 “(1) the outlying areas in the amount deter-  
24 mined in accordance with subsection (b); and



1           “(2) the Secretary of the Interior in the amount  
2 necessary to make payments pursuant to subsection  
3 (d).

4           “(b) ASSISTANCE TO OUTLYING AREAS.—

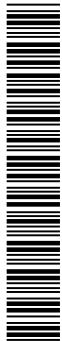
5           “(1) FUNDS RESERVED.—From the amount  
6 made available for any fiscal year under subsection  
7 (a), the Secretary shall award grants to the outlying  
8 areas.

9           “(2) COMPETITIVE GRANTS.—For each of fiscal  
10 years 2002 and 2003, the Secretary shall carry out  
11 the competition described in paragraph (3), except  
12 that the amount reserved to carry out such competi-  
13 tion shall not exceed the amount reserved under this  
14 section for the freely associated states for fiscal year  
15 1999.

16           “(3) LIMITATION FOR COMPETITIVE GRANTS.—

17           “(A) COMPETITIVE GRANTS.—The Sec-  
18 retary shall use funds described in paragraph  
19 (2) to award grants, on a competitive basis, to  
20 the outlying areas and freely associated States  
21 to carry out the purposes of this part.

22           “(B) AWARD BASIS.—The Secretary shall  
23 award grants under subparagraph (A) on a  
24 competitive basis, pursuant to the recommenda-





1           tions of the Pacific Region Educational Labora-  
2           tory in Honolulu, Hawaii.

3           “(C) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—The Sec-  
4           retary may provide not more than 5 percent of  
5           the amount reserved for grants under this para-  
6           graph to pay the administrative costs of the Pa-  
7           cific Region Educational Laboratory under sub-  
8           paragraph (B).

9           “(4) SPECIAL RULE.—The provisions of Public  
10          Law 95–134, permitting the consolidation of grants  
11          by the outlying areas, shall not apply to funds pro-  
12          vided to the freely associated States under this sec-  
13          tion.

14          “(c) DEFINITIONS.—For the purposes of subsections  
15          (a) and (b)—

16               “(1) the term ‘freely associated States’ means  
17               the Republic of the Marshall Islands, the Federated  
18               States of Micronesia, and the Republic of Palau; and

19               “(2) the term ‘outlying area’ means the United  
20               States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and  
21               the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Is-  
22               lands.

23          “(d) ALLOTMENT TO THE SECRETARY OF THE INTE-  
24          RIOR.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount allotted for  
2           payments to the Secretary of the Interior under sub-  
3           section (a)(2) for any fiscal year shall be, as deter-  
4           mined pursuant to criteria established by the Sec-  
5           retary, the amount necessary to meet the special  
6           educational needs of—

7                   “(A) Indian children on reservations served  
8                   by elementary and secondary schools for Indian  
9                   children operated or supported by the Depart-  
10                  ment of the Interior; and

11                   “(B) out-of-State Indian children in ele-  
12                   mentary and secondary schools in local edu-  
13                   cational agencies under special contracts with  
14                   the Department of the Interior.

15           “(2) PAYMENTS.—From the amount allotted  
16           for payments to the Secretary of the Interior under  
17           subsection (a)(2), the Secretary of the Interior shall  
18           make payments to local educational agencies, upon  
19           such terms as the Secretary determines will best  
20           carry out the purposes of this part, with respect to  
21           out-of-State Indian children described in paragraph  
22           (1). The amount of such payment may not exceed,  
23           for each such child, the greater of—



1           “(A) 40 percent of the average per-pupil  
2           expenditure in the State in which the agency is  
3           located; or

4           “(B) 48 percent of such expenditure in the  
5           United States.

6   **“SEC. 1122. AMOUNTS FOR BASIC GRANTS, CONCENTRA-**  
7                                   **TION GRANTS, AND TARGETED GRANTS.**

8           “(a) ALLOCATION FORMULA.—Of the amount appro-  
9           priated to carry out this part for each of fiscal years 2002  
10          through 2006 (referred to in this subsection as the current  
11          fiscal year)—

12           “(1) an amount equal to the amount appro-  
13          priated to carry out section 1124 for fiscal year  
14          2001 shall be allocated in accordance with section  
15          1124;

16           “(2) an amount equal to the amount appro-  
17          priated to carry out section 1124A for fiscal year  
18          2001 shall be allocated in accordance with section  
19          1124A; and

20           “(3) an amount equal to 100 percent of the  
21          amount, if any, by which the amount appropriated  
22          under section 1002(a) for the current fiscal year ex-  
23          ceeds the amount appropriated under such section  
24          for fiscal year 2001 shall be allocated in accordance  
25          with section 1125.



1 “(b) ADJUSTMENTS WHERE NECESSITATED BY AP-  
2 PROPRIATIONS.—

3 “(1) IN GENERAL.—If the sums available under  
4 this part for any fiscal year are insufficient to pay  
5 the full amounts that all local educational agencies  
6 in States are eligible to receive under sections 1124,  
7 1124A, and 1125 for such year, the Secretary shall  
8 ratably reduce the allocations to such local edu-  
9 cational agencies, subject to subsections (c) and (d)  
10 of this section.

11 “(2) ADDITIONAL FUNDS.—If additional funds  
12 become available for making payments under sec-  
13 tions 1124, 1124A, and 1125 for such fiscal year,  
14 allocations that were reduced under paragraph (1)  
15 shall be increased on the same basis as they were re-  
16 duced.

17 “(c) HOLD-HARMLESS AMOUNTS.—

18 “(1) AMOUNTS FOR SECTIONS 1124 AND 1125.—  
19 For each fiscal year, the amount made available to  
20 each local educational agency under each of sections  
21 1124 and 1125 shall be—

22 “(A) not less than 95 percent of the  
23 amount made available in the preceding fiscal  
24 year if the number of children counted for  
25 grants under section 1124 is not less than 30



1 percent of the total number of children aged 5  
2 to 17 years, inclusive, in the local educational  
3 agency;

4 “(B) not less than 90 percent of the  
5 amount made available in the preceding fiscal  
6 year if the percentage described in subpara-  
7 graph (A) is between 15 percent and 30 per-  
8 cent; and

9 “(C) not less than 85 percent of the  
10 amount made available in the preceding fiscal  
11 year if the percentage described in subpara-  
12 graph (A) is below 15 percent.

13 “(2) AMOUNT FOR SECTION 1124A.—The  
14 amount made available to each local educational  
15 agency under section 1124A shall be not less than  
16 85 percent of the amount made available in the pre-  
17 ceding fiscal year.

18 “(3) PAYMENTS.—If sufficient funds are appro-  
19 priated, the amounts described in paragraph (2)  
20 shall be paid to all local educational agencies that  
21 received grants under section 1124A for the pre-  
22 ceding fiscal year, regardless of whether the local  
23 educational agency meets the minimum eligibility  
24 criteria for that fiscal year provided in section  
25 1124A(a)(1)(A) except that a local educational agen-



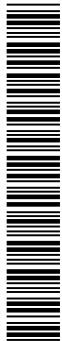
1 cy that does not meet such minimum eligibility cri-  
2 teria for 4 consecutive years shall no longer be eligi-  
3 ble to receive a hold harmless amount referred to in  
4 paragraph (2).

5 “(4) POPULATION DATA.—In any fiscal year for  
6 which the Secretary calculates grants on the basis of  
7 population data for counties, the Secretary shall  
8 apply the hold harmless percentages in paragraphs  
9 (1) and (2) to counties, and if the Secretary’s alloca-  
10 tion for a county is not sufficient to meet the hold-  
11 harmless requirements of this subsection for every  
12 local educational agency within that county, the  
13 State educational agency shall reallocate funds pro-  
14 portionately from all other local educational agencies  
15 in the State that are receiving funds in excess of the  
16 hold harmless amounts specified in this subsection.

17 “(d) RATABLE REDUCTIONS.—

18 “(1) IN GENERAL.—If the sums made available  
19 under this part for any fiscal year are insufficient to  
20 pay the full amounts that all States are eligible to  
21 receive under subsection (c) for such year, the Sec-  
22 retary shall ratably reduce such amounts for such  
23 year.

24 “(2) ADDITIONAL FUNDS.—If additional funds  
25 become available for making payments under sub-



1 section (c) for such fiscal year, amounts that were  
2 reduced under paragraph (1) shall be increased on  
3 the same basis as such amounts were reduced.

4 “(e) DEFINITION.—For the purpose of this section  
5 and sections 1124, 1124A, and 1125, the term ‘State’  
6 means each of the 50 States, the District of Columbia,  
7 and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

8 **“SEC. 1124. BASIC GRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-**  
9 **CIES.**

10 “(a) AMOUNT OF GRANTS.—

11 “(1) GRANTS FOR LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
12 CIES AND PUERTO RICO.—Except as provided in  
13 paragraph (4) and in section 1126, the grant that  
14 a local educational agency is eligible to receive under  
15 this section for a fiscal year is the amount deter-  
16 mined by multiplying—

17 “(A) the number of children counted under  
18 subsection (c); and

19 “(B) 40 percent of the average per-pupil  
20 expenditure in the State, except that the  
21 amount determined under this subparagraph  
22 shall not be less than 32 percent or more than  
23 48 percent, of the average per-pupil expenditure  
24 in the United States.

25 “(2) CALCULATION OF GRANTS.—



1           “(A) ALLOCATIONS TO LOCAL EDU-  
2           CATIONAL AGENCIES.—The Secretary shall cal-  
3           culate grants under this section on the basis of  
4           the number of children counted under sub-  
5           section (c) for local educational agencies, unless  
6           the Secretary and the Secretary of Commerce  
7           determine that some or all of those data are un-  
8           reliable or that their use would be otherwise in-  
9           appropriate, in which case—

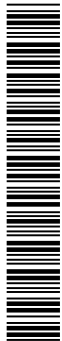
10                   “(i) the 2 Secretaries shall publicly  
11                   disclose the reasons for their determination  
12                   in detail; and

13                   “(ii) paragraph (3) shall apply.

14           “(B) ALLOCATIONS TO LARGE AND SMALL  
15           LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.—(i) For any  
16           fiscal year in which this paragraph applies, the  
17           Secretary shall calculate grants under this sec-  
18           tion for each local educational agency.

19                   “(ii) The amount of a grant under this  
20                   section for each large local educational agency  
21                   shall be the amount determined under clause  
22                   (i).

23                   “(iii) For small local educational agencies,  
24                   the State educational agency may either—





1           “(I) distribute grants under this sec-  
2           tion in amounts determined by the Sec-  
3           retary under clause (i); or

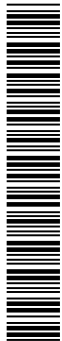
4           “(II) use an alternative method ap-  
5           proved by the Secretary to distribute the  
6           portion of the State’s total grants under  
7           this section that is based on those small  
8           agencies.

9           “(iv) An alternative method under clause  
10          (iii)(II) shall be based on population data that  
11          the State educational agency determines best  
12          reflect the current distribution of children in  
13          poor families among the State’s small local edu-  
14          cational agencies that meet the eligibility cri-  
15          teria of subsection (b).

16          “(v) If a small local educational agency is  
17          dissatisfied with the determination of its grant  
18          by the State educational agency under clause  
19          (iii)(II), it may appeal that determination to the  
20          Secretary, who shall respond not later than 45  
21          days after receipt of such appeal.

22          “(vi) As used in this subparagraph—

23                 “(I) the term ‘large local educational  
24                 agency’ means a local educational agency



1 serving an area with a total population of  
2 20,000 or more; and

3 “(II) the term ‘small local educational  
4 agency’ means a local educational agency  
5 serving an area with a total population of  
6 less than 20,000.

7 “(3) ALLOCATIONS TO COUNTIES.—

8 “(A) CALCULATION.—For any fiscal year  
9 to which this paragraph applies, the Secretary  
10 shall calculate grants under this section on the  
11 basis of the number of children counted under  
12 section 1124(c) for counties, and State edu-  
13 cational agencies shall suballocate county  
14 amounts to local educational agencies, in ac-  
15 cordance with regulations issued by the Sec-  
16 retary.

17 “(B) DIRECT ALLOCATIONS.—In any State  
18 in which a large number of local educational  
19 agencies overlap county boundaries, or for  
20 which the State believes it has data that would  
21 better target funds than allocating them by  
22 county, the State educational agency may apply  
23 to the Secretary for authority to make the allo-  
24 cations under this part for a particular fiscal



1 year directly to local educational agencies with-  
2 out regard to counties.

3 “(C) ASSURANCES.—If the Secretary ap-  
4 proves the State educational agency’s applica-  
5 tion under subparagraph (B), the State edu-  
6 cational agency shall provide the Secretary an  
7 assurance that such allocations shall be made—

8 “(i) using precisely the same factors  
9 for determining a grant as are used under  
10 this part; or

11 “(ii) using data that the State edu-  
12 cational agency submits to the Secretary  
13 for approval that more accurately target  
14 poverty.

15 “(D) APPEAL.—The State educational  
16 agency shall provide the Secretary an assurance  
17 that it shall establish a procedure through  
18 which a local educational agency that is dissat-  
19 isfied with its determinations under subpara-  
20 graph (B) may appeal directly to the Secretary  
21 for a final determination.

22 “(4) PUERTO RICO.—

23 “(A) IN GENERAL.—For each fiscal year,  
24 the grant which the Commonwealth of Puerto  
25 Rico shall be eligible to receive under this sec-



1           tion shall be the amount determined by multi-  
2           plying the number of children counted under  
3           subsection (c) for the Commonwealth of Puerto  
4           Rico by the product of—

5                   “(i) the percentage which the average  
6                   per-pupil expenditure in the Common-  
7                   wealth of Puerto Rico is of the lowest aver-  
8                   age per-pupil expenditure of any of the 50  
9                   States; and

10                   “(ii) 32 percent of the average per-  
11                   pupil expenditure in the United States.

12                   “(B) MINIMUM PERCENTAGE.—The per-  
13                   centage in subparagraph (A)(i) shall not be less  
14                   than—

15                           “(i) for fiscal year 2002, 77.5 percent;

16                           “(ii) for fiscal year 2003, 80.0 per-  
17                   cent;

18                           “(iii) for fiscal year 2004, 82.5 per-  
19                   cent; and

20                           “(iv) for fiscal year 2005 and suc-  
21                   ceeding fiscal years, 85.0 percent.

22                   “(C) LIMITATION.—If the application of  
23                   subparagraph (B) would result in any of the 50  
24                   States or the District of Columbia receiving less  
25                   under this part than it received under this part



1 for the preceding fiscal year, the percentage in  
2 subparagraph (A) shall be the greater of the  
3 percentage in subparagraph (A)(i) or the per-  
4 centage used for the preceding fiscal year.

5 “(5) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this sub-  
6 section, the term ‘State’ does not include Guam,  
7 American Samoa, the Virgin Islands, and the North-  
8 ern Mariana Islands.

9 “(b) MINIMUM NUMBER OF CHILDREN TO QUAL-  
10 IFY.—A local educational agency is eligible for a basic  
11 grant under this section for any fiscal year only if the  
12 number of children counted under subsection (c) for that  
13 agency is both—

14 “(1) 10 or more; and

15 “(2) more than 2 percent of the total school-age  
16 population in the agency’s jurisdiction.

17 “(c) CHILDREN TO BE COUNTED.—

18 “(1) CATEGORIES OF CHILDREN.—The number  
19 of children to be counted for purposes of this section  
20 is the aggregate of—

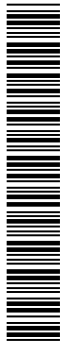
21 “(A) the number of children aged 5 to 17,  
22 inclusive, in the school district of the local edu-  
23 cational agency from families below the poverty  
24 level as determined under paragraph (2);



1           “(B) the number of children (determined  
2           under paragraph (4) for either the preceding  
3           year as described in that paragraph, or for the  
4           second preceding year, as the Secretary finds  
5           appropriate) aged 5 to 17, inclusive, in the  
6           school district of such agency in institutions for  
7           neglected and delinquent children (other than  
8           such institutions operated by the United  
9           States), but not counted pursuant to subpart 1  
10          of part D for the purposes of a grant to a State  
11          agency, or being supported in foster homes with  
12          public funds; and

13           “(C) the number of children aged 5 to 17,  
14          inclusive, in the school district of such agency  
15          from families above the poverty level as deter-  
16          mined under paragraph (4).

17          “(2) DETERMINATION OF NUMBER OF CHIL-  
18          DREN.—For the purposes of this section, the Sec-  
19          retary shall determine the number of children aged  
20          5 to 17, inclusive, from families below the poverty  
21          level on the basis of the most recent satisfactory  
22          data, described in paragraph (3), available from the  
23          Department of Commerce. The District of Columbia  
24          and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico shall be  
25          treated as individual local educational agencies. If a



1 local educational agency contains 2 or more counties  
2 in their entirety, then each county will be treated as  
3 if such county were a separate local educational  
4 agency for purposes of calculating grants under this  
5 part. The total of grants for such counties shall be  
6 allocated to such a local educational agency, which  
7 local educational agency shall distribute to schools in  
8 each county within such agency a share of the local  
9 educational agency's total grant that is no less than  
10 the county's share of the population counts used to  
11 calculate the local educational agency's grant.

12 “(3) POPULATION UPDATES.—In fiscal year  
13 2001 and every 2 years thereafter, the Secretary  
14 shall use updated data on the number of children,  
15 aged 5 to 17, inclusive, from families below the pov-  
16 erty level for local educational agencies or counties,  
17 published by the Department of Commerce, unless  
18 the Secretary and the Secretary of Commerce deter-  
19 mine that use of the updated population data would  
20 be inappropriate or unreliable. If the Secretary and  
21 the Secretary of Commerce determine that some or  
22 all of the data referred to in this paragraph are in-  
23 appropriate or unreliable, they shall publicly disclose  
24 their reasons. In determining the families which are  
25 below the poverty level, the Secretary shall utilize



1 the criteria of poverty used by the Bureau of the  
2 Census in compiling the most recent decennial cen-  
3 sus, in such form as those criteria have been up-  
4 dated by increases in the Consumer Price Index for  
5 all urban consumers, published by the Bureau of  
6 Labor Statistics.

7 “(4) OTHER CHILDREN TO BE COUNTED.—For  
8 the purposes of this section, the Secretary shall de-  
9 termine the number of children aged 5 to 17, inclu-  
10 sive, from families above the poverty level on the  
11 basis of the number of such children from families  
12 receiving an annual income, in excess of the current  
13 criteria of poverty, from payments under a State  
14 program funded under part A of title IV of the So-  
15 cial Security Act; and in making such determina-  
16 tions the Secretary shall utilize the criteria of pov-  
17 erty used by the Bureau of the Census in compiling  
18 the most recent decennial census for a family of 4  
19 in such form as those criteria have been updated by  
20 increases in the Consumer Price Index for all urban  
21 consumers, published by the Bureau of Labor Statis-  
22 tics. The Secretary shall determine the number of  
23 such children and the number of children aged 5  
24 through 17 living in institutions for neglected or de-  
25 linquent children, or being supported in foster homes





1 with public funds, on the basis of the caseload data  
2 for the month of October of the preceding fiscal year  
3 (using, in the case of children described in the pre-  
4 ceding sentence, the criteria of poverty and the form  
5 of such criteria required by such sentence which  
6 were determined for the calendar year preceding  
7 such month of October) or, to the extent that such  
8 data are not available to the Secretary before Janu-  
9 ary of the calendar year in which the Secretary's de-  
10 termination is made, then on the basis of the most  
11 recent reliable data available to the Secretary at the  
12 time of such determination. The Secretary of Health  
13 and Human Services shall collect and transmit the  
14 information required by this subparagraph to the  
15 Secretary not later than January 1 of each year.  
16 For the purpose of this section, the Secretary shall  
17 consider all children who are in correctional institu-  
18 tions to be living in institutions for delinquent chil-  
19 dren.

20 “(5) ESTIMATE.—When requested by the Sec-  
21 retary, the Secretary of Commerce shall make a spe-  
22 cial updated estimate of the number of children of  
23 such ages who are from families below the poverty  
24 level (as determined under subparagraph (A) of this  
25 paragraph) in each school district, and the Secretary



1 is authorized to pay (either in advance or by way of  
2 reimbursement) the Secretary of Commerce the cost  
3 of making this special estimate. The Secretary of  
4 Commerce shall give consideration to any request of  
5 the chief executive of a State for the collection of ad-  
6 ditional census information.

7 “(d) STATE MINIMUM.—Notwithstanding section  
8 1122, the aggregate amount allotted for all local edu-  
9 cational agencies within a State may not be less than the  
10 lesser of—

11 “(1) 0.25 percent of total grants under this sec-  
12 tion; or

13 “(2) the average of—

14 “(A) one-quarter of 1 percent of the total  
15 amount available for such fiscal year under this  
16 section; and

17 “(B) the number of children in such State  
18 counted under subsection (c) in the fiscal year  
19 multiplied by 150 percent of the national aver-  
20 age per-pupil payment made with funds avail-  
21 able under this section for that year.

22 **“SEC. 1124A. CONCENTRATION GRANTS TO LOCAL EDU-  
23 CATIONAL AGENCIES.**

24 “(a) ELIGIBILITY FOR AND AMOUNT OF GRANTS.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) Except as otherwise  
2 provided in this paragraph, each local educational  
3 agency, in a State other than Guam, American  
4 Samoa, the Virgin Islands, and the Commonwealth  
5 of the Northern Mariana Islands, which is eligible  
6 for a grant under section 1124 for any fiscal year  
7 is eligible for an additional grant under this section  
8 for that fiscal year if the number of children counted  
9 under section 1124(c) in the agency exceeds either—

10                   “(i) 6,500; or

11                   “(ii) 15 percent of the total number of  
12 children aged 5 through 17 in the agency.

13           “(B) Notwithstanding section 1122, no State  
14 described in subparagraph (A) shall receive less than  
15 the lesser of—

16                   “(i) 0.25 percent of total grants; or

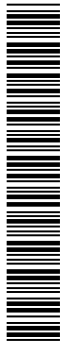
17                   “(ii) the average of—

18                   “(I) one-quarter of 1 percent of the  
19 sums available to carry out this section for  
20 such fiscal year; and

21                   “(II) the greater of—

22                           “(aa) \$340,000; or

23                           “(bb) the number of children in  
24 such State counted for purposes of  
25 this section in that fiscal year multi-



1                   plied by 150 percent of the national  
2                   average per-pupil payment made with  
3                   funds available under this section for  
4                   that year.

5                   “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—For each county or local  
6                   educational agency eligible to receive an additional  
7                   grant under this section for any fiscal year the Sec-  
8                   retary shall determine the product of—

9                   “(A) the number of children counted under  
10                  section 1124(c) for that fiscal year; and

11                  “(B) the quotient resulting from the divi-  
12                  sion of the amount determined for those agen-  
13                  cies under section 1124(a)(1) for the fiscal year  
14                  for which the determination is being made di-  
15                  vided by the total number of children counted  
16                  under section 1124(c) for that agency for that  
17                  fiscal year.

18                  “(3) AMOUNT.—The amount of the additional  
19                  grant for which an eligible local educational agency  
20                  or county is eligible under this section for any fiscal  
21                  year shall be an amount which bears the same ratio  
22                  to the amount available to carry out this section for  
23                  that fiscal year as the product determined under  
24                  paragraph (2) for such local educational agency for  
25                  that fiscal year bears to the sum of such products



1 for all local educational agencies in the United  
2 States for that fiscal year.

3 “(4) LOCAL ALLOCATIONS.—(A) Grant  
4 amounts under this section shall be determined in  
5 accordance with section 1124(a)(2) and (3).

6 “(B) For any fiscal year for which the Sec-  
7 retary allocates funds under this section on the basis  
8 of counties, a State may reserve not more than 2  
9 percent of its allocation under this section to make  
10 grants to local educational agencies that meet the  
11 criteria of paragraph (1)(A)(i) or (ii) and are in in-  
12 eligible counties that do not meet these criteria.

13 “(b) STATES RECEIVING MINIMUM GRANTS.—In  
14 States that receive the minimum grant under subsection  
15 (a)(1)(B), the State educational agency shall allocate such  
16 funds among the local educational agencies in each State  
17 either—

18 “(1) in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (4)  
19 of subsection (a); or

20 “(2) based on their respective concentrations  
21 and numbers of children counted under section  
22 1124(e), except that only those local educational  
23 agencies with concentrations or numbers of children  
24 counted under section 1124(e) that exceed the state-  
25 wide average percentage of such children or the



1 statewide average number of such children shall re-  
2 ceive any funds on the basis of this paragraph.

3 **“SEC. 1125. TARGETED GRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL**  
4 **AGENCIES.**

5 “(a) ELIGIBILITY OF LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
6 CIES.—A local educational agency in a State is eligible to  
7 receive a targeted grant under this section for any fiscal  
8 year if the number of children in the local educational  
9 agency counted under subsection 1124(c), before applica-  
10 tion of the weighting factor described in subsection (c),  
11 is at least 10, and if the number of children counted for  
12 grants under section 1124 is at least 5 percent of the total  
13 population aged 5 to 17 years, inclusive, in the local edu-  
14 cational agency. For each fiscal year for which the Sec-  
15 retary uses county population data to calculate grants,  
16 funds made available as a result of applying this sub-  
17 section shall be reallocated by the State educational agen-  
18 cy to other eligible local educational agencies in the State  
19 in proportion to the distribution of other funds under this  
20 section.

21 “(b) GRANTS FOR LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES,  
22 THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, AND PUERTO RICO.—

23 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount of the grant  
24 that a local educational agency in a State or that the



1 District of Columbia is eligible to receive under this  
2 section for any fiscal year shall be the product of—

3 “(A) the weighted child count determined  
4 under subsection (c); and

5 “(B) the amount in paragraph  
6 1124(a)(1)(B).

7 “(2) PUERTO RICO.—For each fiscal year, the  
8 amount of the grant for which the Commonwealth of  
9 Puerto Rico is eligible under this section shall be  
10 equal to the number of children counted under sub-  
11 section (c) for Puerto Rico, multiplied by the  
12 amount determined in subparagraph 1124(a)(4).

13 “(c) WEIGHTED CHILD COUNT.—

14 “(1) WEIGHTS FOR ALLOCATIONS TO COUN-  
15 TIES.—

16 “(A) IN GENERAL.—For each fiscal year  
17 for which the Secretary uses county population  
18 data to calculate grants, the weighted child  
19 count used to determine a county’s allocation  
20 under this section is the larger of the 2  
21 amounts determined under clause (i) or (ii), as  
22 follows:

23 “(i) BY PERCENTAGE OF CHIL-  
24 DREN.—This amount is determined by  
25 adding—



1                   “(I) the number of children de-  
 2                   termined under section 1124(c) for  
 3                   that county constituting up to 15 per-  
 4                   cent, inclusive, of the county’s total  
 5                   population aged 5 to 17, inclusive,  
 6                   multiplied by 1.0;

7                   “(II) the number of such children  
 8                   constituting more than 15 percent,  
 9                   but not more than 19 percent, of such  
 10                  population, multiplied by 1.75;

11                  “(III) the number of such chil-  
 12                  dren constituting more than 19 per-  
 13                  cent, but not more than 24.20 per-  
 14                  cent, of such population, multiplied by  
 15                  2.5;

16                  “(IV) the number of such chil-  
 17                  dren constituting more than 24.20  
 18                  percent, but not more than 29.20 per-  
 19                  cent, of such population, multiplied by  
 20                  3.25; and

21                  “(V) the number of such children  
 22                  constituting more than 29.20 percent  
 23                  of such population, multiplied by 4.0.

24                  “(ii) BY NUMBER OF CHILDREN.—

25                  This amount is determined by adding—





1           “(I) the number of children de-  
2           termined under section 1124(c) con-  
3           stituting up to 2,311, inclusive, of the  
4           county’s total population aged 5 to  
5           17, inclusive, multiplied by 1.0;

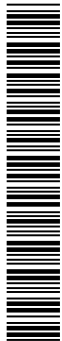
6           “(II) the number of such children  
7           between 2,312 and 7,913, inclusive, in  
8           such population, multiplied by 1.5;

9           “(III) the number of such chil-  
10          dren between 7,914 and 23,917, inclu-  
11          sive, in such population, multiplied by  
12          2.0;

13          “(IV) the number of such chil-  
14          dren between 23,918 and 93,810, in-  
15          clusive, in such population, multiplied  
16          by 2.5; and

17          “(V) the number of such children  
18          in excess of 93,811 in such popu-  
19          lation, multiplied by 3.0.

20          “(B) PUERTO RICO.—Notwithstanding  
21          subparagraph (A), the weighted child count for  
22          Puerto Rico under this paragraph shall not be  
23          greater than the total number of children  
24          counted under subsection 1124(c) multiplied by  
25          1.72.



1           “(2) WEIGHTS FOR ALLOCATIONS TO LOCAL  
2 EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.—

3           “(A) IN GENERAL.—For each fiscal year  
4 for which the Secretary uses local educational  
5 agency data, the weighted child count used to  
6 determine a local educational agency’s grant  
7 under this section is the larger of the 2  
8 amounts determined under clauses (i) and (ii),  
9 as follows:

10           “(i) BY PERCENTAGE OF CHIL-  
11 DREN.—This amount is determined by  
12 adding—

13           “(I) the number of children de-  
14 termined under section 1124(c) for  
15 that local educational agency consti-  
16 tuting up to 15.233 percent, inclusive,  
17 of the agency’s total population aged  
18 5 to 17, inclusive, multiplied by 1.0;

19           “(II) the number of such children  
20 constituting more than 15.233 per-  
21 cent, but not more than 22.706 per-  
22 cent, of such population, multiplied by  
23 1.75;

24           “(III) the number of such chil-  
25 dren constituting more than 22.706



1 percent, but not more than 32.213  
 2 percent, of such population, multiplied  
 3 by 2.5;

4 “(IV) the number of such chil-  
 5 dren constituting more than 32.213  
 6 percent, but not more than 41.452  
 7 percent, of such population, multiplied  
 8 by 3.25; and

9 “(V) the number of such children  
 10 constituting more than 41.452 percent  
 11 of such population, multiplied by 4.0.

12 “(ii) BY NUMBER OF CHILDREN.—  
 13 This amount is determined by adding—

14 “(I) the number of children de-  
 15 termined under section 1124(c) con-  
 16 stituting up to 710, inclusive, of the  
 17 agency’s total population aged 5 to  
 18 17, inclusive, multiplied by 1.0;

19 “(II) the number of such children  
 20 between 711 and 2,384, inclusive, in  
 21 such population, multiplied by 1.5;

22 “(III) the number of such chil-  
 23 dren between 2,385 and 9,645, inclu-  
 24 sive, in such population, multiplied by  
 25 2.0;



1                   “(IV) the number of such chil-  
2                   dren between 9,646 and 54,600, inclu-  
3                   sive, in such population, multiplied by  
4                   2.5; and

5                   “(V) the number of such children  
6                   in excess of 54,601 in such popu-  
7                   lation, multiplied by 3.0.

8                   “(B) PUERTO RICO.—Notwithstanding  
9                   subparagraph (A), the weighted child count for  
10                  Puerto Rico under this paragraph shall not be  
11                  greater than the total number of children  
12                  counted under section 1124(c) multiplied by  
13                  1.72.

14                  “(d) CALCULATION OF GRANT AMOUNTS.—Grants  
15                  under this section shall be calculated in accordance with  
16                  section 1124(a)(2) and (3).

17                  “(e) STATE MINIMUM.—Notwithstanding any other  
18                  provision of this section or section 1122, from the total  
19                  amount available for any fiscal year to carry out this sec-  
20                  tion, each State shall be allotted at least the lesser of—

21                         “(1) 0.25 percent of total appropriations; or

22                         “(2) the average of—

23                                 “(A) one-quarter of 1 percent of the total  
24                                 amount available to carry out this section; and



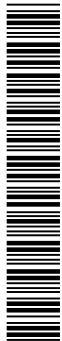
1           “(B) 150 percent of the national average  
2           grant under this section per child described in  
3           section 1124(c), without application of a  
4           weighting factor, multiplied by the State’s total  
5           number of children described in section  
6           1124(c), without application of a weighting fac-  
7           tor.

8   **“SEC. 1126. SPECIAL ALLOCATION PROCEDURES.**

9           “(a) ALLOCATIONS FOR NEGLECTED CHILDREN.—

10           “(1) IN GENERAL.—If a State educational  
11           agency determines that a local educational agency in  
12           the State is unable or unwilling to provide for the  
13           special educational needs of children who are living  
14           in institutions for neglected children as described in  
15           subparagraph (B) of section 1124(c)(1), the State  
16           educational agency shall, if such agency assumes re-  
17           sponsibility for the special educational needs of such  
18           children, receive the portion of such local educational  
19           agency’s allocation under sections 1124, 1124A, and  
20           1125 that is attributable to such children.

21           “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—If the State educational  
22           agency does not assume such responsibility, any  
23           other State or local public agency that does assume  
24           such responsibility shall receive that portion of the  
25           local educational agency’s allocation.



1       “(b) ALLOCATIONS AMONG LOCAL EDUCATIONAL  
2 AGENCIES.—The State educational agency may allocate  
3 the amounts of grants under sections 1124, 1124A, and  
4 1125 among the affected local educational agencies—

5           “(1) if 2 or more local educational agencies  
6 serve, in whole or in part, the same geographical  
7 area;

8           “(2) if a local educational agency provides free  
9 public education for children who reside in the  
10 school district of another local educational agency;  
11 or

12           “(3) to reflect the merger, creation, or change  
13 of boundaries of 1 or more local educational agen-  
14 cies.

15       “(c) REALLOCATION.—If a State educational agency  
16 determines that the amount of a grant a local educational  
17 agency would receive under sections 1124, 1124A, and  
18 1125 is more than such local agency will use, the State  
19 educational agency shall make the excess amount available  
20 to other local educational agencies in the State that need  
21 additional funds in accordance with criteria established by  
22 the State educational agency.

23 **“SEC. 1127. CARRYOVER AND WAIVER.**

24       “(a) LIMITATION ON CARRYOVER.—Notwithstanding  
25 section 421 of the General Education Provisions Act or



1 any other provision of law, not more than 15 percent of  
2 the funds allocated to a local educational agency for any  
3 fiscal year under this subpart (but not including funds re-  
4 ceived through any reallocation under this subpart) may  
5 remain available for obligation by such agency for 1 addi-  
6 tional fiscal year.

7 “(b) WAIVER.—A State educational agency may,  
8 once every 3 years, waive the percentage limitation in sub-  
9 section (a) if—

10 “(1) the agency determines that the request of  
11 a local educational agency is reasonable and nec-  
12 essary; or

13 “(2) supplemental appropriations for this sub-  
14 part become available.

15 “(c) EXCLUSION.—The percentage limitation under  
16 subsection (a) shall not apply to any local educational  
17 agency that receives less than \$50,000 under this subpart  
18 for any fiscal year.

19 **“SEC. 1128. SECULAR, NEUTRAL, AND NONIDEOLOGICAL.**

20 “Any school that receives funds under this part shall  
21 ensure that educational services or other benefits provided  
22 under this part, including materials and equipment, shall  
23 be secular, neutral, and nonideological.”.



1                   **PART B—STUDENT READING SKILLS**

2                   **IMPROVEMENT GRANTS**

3 **SEC. 111. READING FIRST; EARLY READING FIRST.**

4           Part B of title I (20 U.S.C. 6361 et seq.) is  
5 amended—

6           (1) by striking the part heading and inserting  
7 the following:

8                   **“PART B—STUDENT READING SKILLS**

9                   **IMPROVEMENT GRANTS”;**

10           (2) by redesignating sections 1201 through  
11 1212 as sections 1231 through 1242, respectively;  
12 and

13           (3) by inserting after the part heading the fol-  
14 lowing:

15                   **“Subpart 1—Reading First**

16 **“SEC. 1201. FINDINGS.**

17           “The Congress finds as follows:

18           “(1) The 2000 National Assessment of Edu-  
19 cational Progress found that 68 percent of fourth  
20 grade students in the United States are reading  
21 below the proficient level.

22           “(2) According to the 2000 National Assess-  
23 ment of Educational Progress report on reading, 63  
24 percent of African Americans, 58 percent of His-  
25 panic Americans, 60 percent of children living in





1 poverty, and 47 percent of children in urban schools  
2 scored 'below basic' in reading.

3 “(3) More than ½ of the students placed in  
4 special education classes are identified as learning  
5 disabled and, for as many as 80 percent of the stu-  
6 dents so identified, reading is the primary difficulty.

7 “(4) It is estimated that, at a minimum,  
8 10,000,000 children have difficulty learning to read.  
9 10 to 15 percent of those children eventually drop  
10 out of high school, and only 2 percent complete a 4-  
11 year program at an institution of higher education.

12 “(5) It is estimated that the number of children  
13 who are typically identified as poor readers can be  
14 significantly reduced through the implementation of  
15 early identification and prevention programs that  
16 are based on scientifically based reading research.

17 “(6) The report issued by the National Reading  
18 Panel in 2000 found that the course of reading in-  
19 struction that obtains maximum benefits for stu-  
20 dents includes explicit and systematic instruction in  
21 phonemic awareness, phonics, vocabulary develop-  
22 ment, reading fluency, and reading comprehension  
23 strategies.

24 **“SEC. 1202. PURPOSES.**

25 “The purposes of this subpart are as follows:

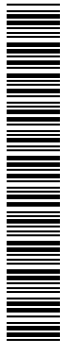


1           “(1) To provide assistance to States and local  
2 educational agencies in establishing reading pro-  
3 grams for students in grades kindergarten through  
4 3 that are based on scientifically based reading re-  
5 search, in order to ensure that every student can  
6 read at grade level or above not later than the end  
7 of the third grade.

8           “(2) To provide assistance to States and local  
9 educational agencies in preparing teachers, including  
10 special education teachers, through professional de-  
11 velopment and other support, so the teachers can  
12 identify specific reading barriers facing their stu-  
13 dents and so the teachers have the tools to effec-  
14 tively help their students learn to read.

15           “(3) To provide assistance to States and local  
16 educational agencies in selecting and administering  
17 rigorous diagnostic reading and screening assess-  
18 ment tools that are valid and reliable, document the  
19 effectiveness of this subpart in improving the read-  
20 ing skills of students, and improve classroom in-  
21 struction.

22           “(4) To provide assistance to States and local  
23 educational agencies in selecting or developing effec-  
24 tive classroom instructional materials, programs, and  
25 strategies to implement scientific research-based



1 methods that have been proven to prevent or reme-  
2 diate reading failure.

3 “(5) To strengthen coordination among schools  
4 and early literacy programs in order to improve  
5 reading achievement for all children.

6 **“SEC. 1203. FORMULA GRANTS TO STATES.**

7 “(a) IN GENERAL.—

8 “(1) AUTHORIZATION TO MAKE GRANTS.—In  
9 the case of each State that in accordance with sec-  
10 tion 1204 submits to the Secretary an application  
11 for a 5-year period, the Secretary, subject to the ap-  
12 plication’s approval, shall make a grant to the State  
13 for the uses specified in subsections (c) and (d). For  
14 each fiscal year, the funds provided under the grant  
15 shall equal the allotment determined for the State  
16 under subsection (b).

17 “(2) DURATION OF GRANTS.—

18 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subpara-  
19 graph (B), a grant under this section shall be  
20 awarded for a period of not more than 5 years.

21 “(B) INTERIM REVIEW.—

22 “(i) PROGRESS REPORT.—

23 “(I) SUBMISSION.—Not later  
24 than 60 days after the termination of  
25 the third year of the grant period,



1 each State receiving a grant under  
2 this section shall submit a progress  
3 report to the Secretary.

4 “(II) INFORMATION IN-  
5 CLUDED.—The progress report shall  
6 include information on the progress  
7 the State, and local educational agen-  
8 cies within the State, are making in  
9 reducing the number of students  
10 served under this subpart in the first  
11 and second grades who are reading  
12 below grade level, as demonstrated by  
13 such information as teacher reports  
14 and school evaluations of mastery of  
15 the essential components of reading  
16 instruction. The report shall also in-  
17 clude evidence from the State and its  
18 local educational agencies that they  
19 have significantly increased the num-  
20 ber of students reading at grade level  
21 or above, significantly increased the  
22 percentages of students in ethnic, ra-  
23 cial, and low-income populations who  
24 are reading at grade level or above,



1 and successfully implemented this  
2 subpart.

3 “(ii) PEER REVIEW.—The progress  
4 report described in clause (i) shall be re-  
5 viewed by the peer review panel convened  
6 under section 1204(c)(2).

7 “(iii) CONSEQUENCES OF INSUFFI-  
8 CIENT PROGRESS.—After the submission of  
9 the progress report described in clause (i),  
10 if the Secretary determines that the State  
11 is not making significant progress in meet-  
12 ing the purposes of this subpart, the Sec-  
13 retary may withhold from the State, in  
14 whole or in part, further payments under  
15 this section in accordance with section 455  
16 of the General Education Provisions Act  
17 (20 U.S.C. 1234d) or take such other ac-  
18 tion authorized by law as the Secretary  
19 deems necessary, including providing tech-  
20 nical assistance upon request of the State.

21 “(b) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT OF ALLOT-  
22 MENTS.—

23 “(1) RESERVATIONS FROM APPROPRIATIONS.—  
24 From the total amount made available under section



1 1002(b)(1) to carry out this subpart for a fiscal  
2 year, the Secretary—

3 “(A) shall reserve  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent for allot-  
4 ments for the Virgin Islands, Guam, American  
5 Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern  
6 Mariana Islands, to be distributed among these  
7 outlying areas on the basis of their relative  
8 need, as determined by the Secretary in accord-  
9 ance with the purposes of this subpart;

10 “(B) shall reserve  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent for the  
11 Secretary of the Interior for programs under  
12 this subpart in schools operated or funded by  
13 the Bureau of Indian Affairs;

14 “(C) shall reserve not more than 3 percent  
15 or \$30,000,000, whichever is less, to carry out  
16 section 1206;

17 “(D) may reserve not more than 1 percent  
18 to carry out section 1207; and

19 “(E) shall reserve \$5,000,000 to carry out  
20 section 1208.

21 “(2) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—From the total  
22 amount made available under section 1002(b)(1) to  
23 carry out this subpart for a fiscal year and not re-  
24 served under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall allot  
25 80 percent under this section among each of the 50



1 States, the District of Columbia, and the Common-  
2 wealth of Puerto Rico.

3 “(3) DETERMINATION OF STATE ALLOTMENT  
4 AMOUNTS.—

5 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subpara-  
6 graph (B), the Secretary shall allot the amount  
7 made available under paragraph (2) for a fiscal  
8 year among the States described in such para-  
9 graph in proportion to the number of children,  
10 aged 5 to 17, who reside within the State from  
11 families with incomes below the poverty line (as  
12 defined by the Office of Management and  
13 Budget and revised annually in accordance with  
14 section 673(2) of the Community Services  
15 Block Grant Act (42 U.S.C. 9902(2)) applica-  
16 ble to a family of the size involved for the most  
17 recent fiscal year for which satisfactory data  
18 are available, compared to the number of such  
19 individuals who reside in all such States for  
20 that fiscal year.

21 “(B) EXCEPTIONS.—

22 “(i) IN GENERAL.—Subject to clause  
23 (ii), no State receiving an allotment under  
24 subparagraph (A) may receive less than  $\frac{1}{4}$



1 of 1 percent of the total amount allotted  
2 under such subparagraph.

3 “(ii) PUERTO RICO.—The percentage  
4 of the amount allotted under subparagraph  
5 (A) that is allotted to the Commonwealth  
6 of Puerto Rico for a fiscal year may not  
7 exceed the percentage that was received by  
8 the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico of the  
9 funds allocated to all States under subpart  
10 2 of part A for the preceding fiscal year.

11 “(4) REALLOTMENT.—If a State described in  
12 paragraph (2) does not apply for an allotment under  
13 this section for any fiscal year, or if the State’s ap-  
14 plication is not approved, the Secretary shall reallo-  
15 t such amount to the remaining States in accordance  
16 with paragraph (3).

17 “(c) SUBGRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
18 CIES.—

19 “(1) DISTRIBUTION OF SUBGRANTS.—The Sec-  
20 retary may make a grant to a State under this sec-  
21 tion only if the State agrees to expend at least 80  
22 percent of the amount of the funds provided under  
23 the grant for the purpose of making, in accordance  
24 with this subsection, competitive subgrants to local  
25 educational agencies.





1           “(2) NOTICE.—A State receiving a grant under  
2 this section shall provide notice to all local edu-  
3 cational agencies in the State of the availability of  
4 competitive subgrants under this subsection and of  
5 the requirements for applying for the subgrants.

6           “(3) LOCAL APPLICATIONS.—To be eligible to  
7 receive a subgrant under this subsection, a local edu-  
8 cational agency shall submit an application to the  
9 State at such time, in such manner, and containing  
10 such information as the State may reasonably re-  
11 quire.

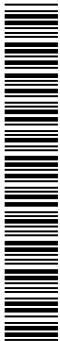
12           “(4) LIMITATION TO CERTAIN LOCAL AGEN-  
13 CIES.—A State receiving a grant under this section  
14 may award subgrants under this subsection only to  
15 local educational agencies—

16           “(A) that have the highest percentages of  
17 students in grades kindergarten through 3  
18 reading below grade level; and

19           “(B) that—

20           “(i) have jurisdiction over—

21           “(I) a geographic area that in-  
22 cludes an area designated as an em-  
23 powerment zone, or an enterprise  
24 community, under part I of sub-



1 chapter U of chapter 1 of the Internal  
2 Revenue Code of 1986; or

3 “(II) a significant number of  
4 schools that are identified for school  
5 improvement under section 1116(b);  
6 or

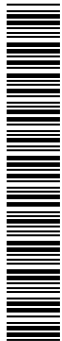
7 “(ii) are located in areas having the  
8 greatest numbers or percentages of chil-  
9 dren aged 5 through 17 from low-income  
10 families.

11 “(5) STATE REQUIREMENT.—In distributing  
12 subgrant funds to local educational agencies under  
13 this subsection, a State shall provide funds in suffi-  
14 cient size and scope to enable local educational agen-  
15 cies to improve reading instruction, as determined  
16 by rigorous diagnostic reading and screening assess-  
17 ment tools.

18 “(6) LIMITATION TO CERTAIN SCHOOLS.—In  
19 distributing subgrant funds under this subsection, a  
20 local educational agency may provide funds only to  
21 schools—

22 “(A) that have the highest percentages of  
23 students in grades kindergarten through 3  
24 reading below grade level; and

25 “(B) that—



1 “(i) are identified for school improve-  
2 ment under section 1116(b); or

3 “(ii) have the greatest numbers or  
4 percentages of children aged 5 through 17  
5 from low-income families.

6 “(7) LOCAL USES OF FUNDS.—

7 “(A) REQUIRED USES.—Subject to para-  
8 graph (8), a local educational agency that re-  
9 ceives a subgrant under this subsection shall  
10 use the funds provided under the subgrant to  
11 carry out the following activities:

12 “(i) Selecting and administering rig-  
13 orous diagnostic reading and screening as-  
14 sessment tools.

15 “(ii) Selecting and implementing a  
16 program or programs of classroom reading  
17 instruction based on scientifically based  
18 reading research that—

19 “(I) includes the essential compo-  
20 nents of reading instruction; and

21 “(II) provides such instruction to  
22 all children, including children who—

23 “(aa) may have reading dif-  
24 ficulties;



1                   “(bb)) are at risk of being  
2 referred to special education  
3 based on these difficulties;

4                   “(cc) have been evaluated  
5 under section 614 of the Individ-  
6 uals with Disabilities Education  
7 Act but, in accordance with sec-  
8 tion 614(b)(5) of such Act, have  
9 not been identified as being a  
10 child with a disability (as defined  
11 in section 602 of such Act);

12                   “(dd) are being served under  
13 such Act primarily due to being  
14 identified as being a child with a  
15 specific learning disability (as de-  
16 fined in section 602 of such Act)  
17 related to reading;

18                   “(ee) are deficient in their  
19 phonemic awareness, phonics  
20 skills, vocabulary development,  
21 oral reading fluency, or com-  
22 prehension strategies; or

23                   “(ff) are identified as having  
24 limited English proficiency.



1                   “(iii) Procuring classroom instruc-  
2                   tional materials based on scientifically  
3                   based reading research.

4                   “(iv) Providing professional develop-  
5                   ment for teachers of grades kindergarten  
6                   through 3, and special education teachers  
7                   of grades kindergarten through 12, that—

8                               “(I) will prepare these teachers  
9                               in all of the essential components of  
10                              reading instruction;

11                             “(II) shall include—

12                               “(aa) information, instruc-  
13                              tional materials, programs, strat-  
14                              egies, and approaches based on  
15                              scientifically based reading re-  
16                              search, including early interven-  
17                              tion and classroom reading mate-  
18                              rials and remedial programs and  
19                              approaches; and

20                             “(bb) instruction in the use  
21                              of rigorous diagnostic reading  
22                              and screening assessment tools  
23                              and other procedures that effec-  
24                              tively identify students who may



1 be at risk for reading failure or  
2 who are having difficulty reading;

3 “(III) shall be provided by eligi-  
4 ble professional development pro-  
5 viders; and

6 “(IV) will assist teachers in be-  
7 coming fully qualified in accordance  
8 with the requirements of section 1119.

9 “(B) OPTIONAL USES.—Subject to para-  
10 graph (8), a local educational agency that re-  
11 ceives a subgrant under this subsection may use  
12 the funds provided under the subgrant to carry  
13 out the following activities:

14 “(i) Providing training to parents and  
15 other individuals who volunteer to be read-  
16 ing tutors in the essential components of  
17 reading instruction.

18 “(ii) Providing family literacy serv-  
19 ices, especially to parents enrolled in par-  
20 ticipating schools, through the use of li-  
21 brary materials and reading programs,  
22 strategies, and approaches that are based  
23 on scientifically based reading research, to  
24 encourage reading and support their chil-  
25 dren’s reading development.



1           “(8) LOCAL PLANNING AND ADMINISTRA-  
2           TION.—A local educational agency that receives a  
3           subgrant under this subsection may use not more  
4           than 2 percent of the funds provided under the  
5           subgrant for planning and administration.

6           “(d) OTHER STATE USES OF FUNDS.—

7           “(1) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—

8           “(A) IN GENERAL.—A State that receives  
9           a grant under this section may expend not more  
10          than 15 percent of the amount of the funds  
11          provided under the grant—

12                   “(i) to develop and implement a pro-  
13                   gram of in-service professional development  
14                   for teachers of kindergarten through third  
15                   grade, and special education teachers of  
16                   kindergarten through twelfth grade, that—

17                           “(I) will prepare these teachers  
18                           in all of the essential components of  
19                           reading instruction;

20                           “(II) shall include—

21                                   “(aa) information on inter-  
22                                   ventions, instructional materials,  
23                                   programs, and approaches based  
24                                   on scientifically based reading re-  
25                                   search, including early interven-



1 tion and reading remediation ma-  
2 terials, programs, and ap-  
3 proaches; and

4 “(bb) instruction in the use  
5 of rigorous diagnostic reading  
6 and screening assessment tools  
7 and other procedures to improve  
8 instruction and effectively iden-  
9 tify students who may be at risk  
10 for reading failure or who are  
11 having difficulty reading; and

12 “(III) shall be provided by eligi-  
13 ble professional development pro-  
14 viders;

15 “(ii) to strengthen and enhance pro-  
16 fessional development courses for students  
17 preparing, at all public institutions of high-  
18 er education in the State, to teach kinder-  
19 garten through third grades by—

20 “(I) reviewing such courses to de-  
21 termine whether their content is con-  
22 sistent with the findings of the most  
23 current scientifically based reading re-  
24 search, including findings on the es-





1                    sential components of reading instruc-  
2                    tion;

3                    “(II) following up such reviews  
4                    with recommendations to ensure that  
5                    such institutions offer courses that  
6                    meet the highest standards; and

7                    “(III) preparing a report on the  
8                    results of such reviews, submitting it  
9                    to the reading and literacy partner-  
10                   ship for the State established under  
11                   section 1204(d), and making it avail-  
12                   able for public review via the Internet;  
13                   and

14                   “(iii) to make recommendations on  
15                   how the State’s licensure and certification  
16                   standards in the area of reading might be  
17                   improved.

18                   “(B) FUNDS NOT USED FOR PROFES-  
19                   SIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—Any portion of the  
20                   funds described in subparagraph (A) that a  
21                   State does not expend in accordance with such  
22                   subparagraph shall be expended for the purpose  
23                   of making subgrants in accordance with sub-  
24                   section (c).



1           “(2) OTHER STATE-LEVEL ACTIVITIES.—A  
2 State that receives a grant under this section may  
3 expend not more than 3 percent of the amount of  
4 the funds provided under the grant for one or more  
5 of the following authorized State activities:

6           “(A) Assisting local educational agencies in  
7 accomplishing the tasks required to design and  
8 implement a classroom reading program under  
9 this subpart, including—

10           “(i) selecting and implementing a pro-  
11 gram or programs of classroom reading in-  
12 struction based on scientifically based  
13 reading research;

14           “(ii) selecting rigorous diagnostic  
15 reading and screening assessment tools;  
16 and

17           “(iii) identifying eligible professional  
18 development providers to help prepare  
19 reading teachers to teach students using  
20 the programs and assessments described in  
21 clauses (i) and (ii);

22           “(B) Providing to students in kindergarten  
23 through third grades, through appropriate pro-  
24 viders, reading instruction that includes—



1           “(i) rigorous diagnostic reading and  
2           screening assessment tools; and

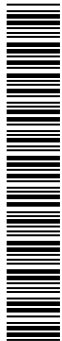
3           “(ii) as need is indicated by such as-  
4           sessments, instruction based on scientif-  
5           ically based reading research that includes  
6           the essential components of reading in-  
7           struction.

8           “(3) PLANNING, ADMINISTRATION, AND RE-  
9           PORTING.—

10           “(A) IN GENERAL.—A State that receives  
11           a grant under this section shall expend not  
12           more than 2 percent of the amount of the funds  
13           provided under the grant for the activities de-  
14           scribed in this paragraph.

15           “(B) PLANNING AND ADMINISTRATION.—A  
16           State that receives a grant under this section  
17           may expend funds described in subparagraph  
18           (A) for—

19           “(i) planning and administration re-  
20           lating to the State uses of funds author-  
21           ized under this subpart, including admin-  
22           istering the distribution of competitive sub-  
23           grants to local educational agencies under  
24           this section and section 1205; and



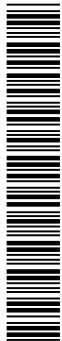
1           “(ii) assessing and evaluating, on a  
2 regular basis, local educational agency ac-  
3 tivities assisted under this subpart, with  
4 respect to whether they have been effective  
5 in increasing the number of children in  
6 first and second grades served under this  
7 subpart who can read at or above grade  
8 level.

9           “(C) ANNUAL REPORTING.—

10           “(i) IN GENERAL.—A State that re-  
11 ceives a grant under this section shall ex-  
12 pend funds provided under the grant to  
13 provide the Secretary annually with a re-  
14 port on the implementation of this subpart.  
15 The report shall include evidence that the  
16 State is fulfilling its obligations under this  
17 subpart. The report shall include a specific  
18 identification of those schools and local  
19 educational agencies that report the largest  
20 gains in reading achievement.

21           “(ii) PRIVACY PROTECTION.—Data in  
22 the report shall be set forth in a manner  
23 that protects the privacy of individuals.

24           “(iii) CONTRACT.—To the extent  
25 practicable, a State shall enter into a con-



1                   tract with an entity that conducts scientif-  
2                   ically based reading research, under which  
3                   contract the entity will produce the reports  
4                   required to be submitted under this sub-  
5                   paragraph.

6   **“SEC. 1204. STATE FORMULA GRANT APPLICATIONS.**

7           “(a) IN GENERAL.—A State that desires to receive  
8 a grant under section 1203 shall submit an application  
9 to the Secretary at such time and in such form as the  
10 Secretary may require. The application shall contain the  
11 information described in subsection (b).

12           “(b) CONTENTS.—An application under this section  
13 shall contain the following:

14                   “(1) An assurance that the Governor of the  
15 State, in consultation with the State educational  
16 agency, has established a reading and literacy part-  
17 nership described in subsection (d), and a descrip-  
18 tion of how such partnership—

19                           “(A) coordinated the development of the  
20 application; and

21                           “(B) will assist in the oversight and eval-  
22 uation of the State’s activities under this sub-  
23 part.

24                   “(2) An assurance that the State will submit to  
25 the Secretary, at such time and in such manner as



1 the Secretary may reasonably require, a State plan  
2 containing a description of a process—

3 “(A) to evaluate programs carried out by  
4 local educational agencies under this subpart;

5 “(B) to assist local educational agencies in  
6 identifying rigorous diagnostic reading and  
7 screening assessment tools; and

8 “(C) to assist local educational agencies in  
9 identifying interventions, and instructional ma-  
10 terials, programs and approaches, based on sci-  
11 entifically based reading research, including  
12 early intervention and classroom reading mate-  
13 rials and remedial programs and approaches.

14 “(3) An assurance that the State, and local  
15 educational agencies in the State, will participate in  
16 all national evaluations under this subpart.

17 “(c) APPROVAL OF APPLICATIONS.—

18 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in consulta-  
19 tion with the peer review panel convened under para-  
20 graph (2), shall approve an application of a State  
21 under this section if such application meets the re-  
22 quirements of this section.

23 “(2) PEER REVIEW.—

24 “(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in con-  
25 sultation with the National Institute for Lit-



1 eracy, shall convene a panel to evaluate applica-  
2 tions under this section. At a minimum, the  
3 panel shall include—

4 “(i) 3 individuals selected by the Sec-  
5 retary;

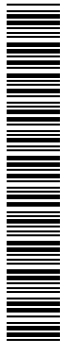
6 “(ii) 3 individuals selected by the Na-  
7 tional Institute for Literacy;

8 “(iii) 3 individuals selected by the Na-  
9 tional Research Council of the National  
10 Academy of Sciences; and

11 “(iv) 3 individuals selected by the Na-  
12 tional Institute of Child Health and  
13 Human Development.

14 “(B) EXPERTS.—The panel shall include  
15 experts who are competent, by virtue of their  
16 training, expertise, or experience, to evaluate  
17 applications under this section, and experts who  
18 provide professional development to teachers of  
19 reading to children and adults, and experts who  
20 provide professional development to other in-  
21 structional staff, based on scientifically based  
22 reading research.

23 “(C) RECOMMENDATIONS.—The panel  
24 shall recommend grant applications from States



1 under this section to the Secretary for funding  
2 or for disapproval.

3 “(d) READING AND LITERACY PARTNERSHIPS.—

4 “(1) IN GENERAL.—In order for a State to re-  
5 ceive a grant under section 1203, the Governor of  
6 the State, in consultation with the State educational  
7 agency, shall establish a reading and literacy part-  
8 nership.

9 “(2) REQUIRED PARTICIPANTS.—The reading  
10 and literacy partnership shall include the following  
11 participants:

12 “(A) The Governor of the State.

13 “(B) The chief State school officer.

14 “(C) The chairman and the ranking mem-  
15 ber of each committee of the State legislature  
16 that is responsible for education policy.

17 “(D) A representative, selected jointly by  
18 the Governor and the chief State school officer,  
19 of at least one local educational agency that is  
20 eligible to receive a subgrant under section  
21 1203.

22 “(E) A representative, selected jointly by  
23 the Governor and the chief State school officer,  
24 of a community-based organization working  
25 with children to improve their reading skills,





1 particularly a community-based organization  
2 using tutors and scientifically based reading re-  
3 search.

4 “(F) State directors of appropriate Federal  
5 or State programs with a strong reading com-  
6 ponent.

7 “(G) A parent of a public or private school  
8 student or a parent who educates their child or  
9 children in their home, selected jointly by the  
10 Governor and the chief State school officer.

11 “(H) A teacher, who may be a special edu-  
12 cation teacher, who successfully teaches reading  
13 and an instructional staff member, selected  
14 jointly by the Governor and the chief State  
15 school officer.

16 “(I) A family literacy service provider se-  
17 lected jointly by the Governor and the chief  
18 state school officer.

19 “(3) OPTIONAL PARTICIPANTS.—The reading  
20 and literacy partnership may include additional par-  
21 ticipants, who shall be selected jointly by the Gov-  
22 ernor and the chief State school officer, and who  
23 may include a representative of—

24 “(A) an institution of higher education op-  
25 erating a program of teacher preparation based



1 on scientifically based reading research in the  
2 State;

3 “(B) a local educational agency;

4 “(C) a private nonprofit or for-profit eligi-  
5 ble professional development provider providing  
6 instruction based on scientifically based reading  
7 research;

8 “(D) an adult education provider;

9 “(E) a volunteer organization that is in-  
10 volved in reading programs; or

11 “(F) a school library or a public library  
12 that offers reading or literacy programs for  
13 children or families.

14 **“SEC. 1205. DISCRETIONARY GRANTS TO STATES.**

15 “(a) IN GENERAL.—In the case of a State that, in  
16 accordance with sections 1203 and 1204, has received ap-  
17 proval of an application for a 5-year formula grant, the  
18 Secretary may make additional 2-year discretionary  
19 grants to the State for the use specified in (d). For each  
20 fiscal year, the funds provided under the discretionary  
21 grant shall equal the allotment determined for the State  
22 under subsection (b).

23 “(b) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT OF ALLOT-  
24 MENTS.—From the total amount made available under  
25 section 1002(b)(1) to carry out this subpart for a fiscal



1 year and not reserved under paragraph (1), the Secretary,  
2 upon the recommendation of the peer review panel con-  
3 vened under section 1204(c)(2), shall allot 20 percent  
4 under this section among the States described in sub-  
5 section (a)—

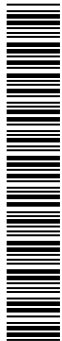
6 “(1) for fiscal years 2002 and 2003, based  
7 upon a determination of such States’ relative likeli-  
8 hood of effectively implementing a program under  
9 this subpart; and

10 “(2) for fiscal year 2004 and subsequent fiscal  
11 years, based upon such States’ applications under  
12 subsection (c).

13 “(c) STATE DISCRETIONARY GRANT APPLICA-  
14 TIONS.—

15 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State that desires to re-  
16 ceive a grant under this section for a grant period  
17 that includes any fiscal year after fiscal year 2003  
18 shall submit the information described in paragraph  
19 (3) to the Secretary at such time and in such form  
20 as the Secretary may require.

21 “(2) PEER REVIEW.—The peer review panel  
22 convened under section 1204(c)(2) shall review the  
23 information submitted under this subsection. The  
24 panel shall recommend such applications to the Sec-  
25 retary for funding or for disapproval.



1           “(3) INFORMATION.—The information de-  
2           scribed in this paragraph is the following:

3                   “(A) An assurance that the State will  
4                   award competitive subgrants to local edu-  
5                   cational agencies consistent with subsection  
6                   (d)(4).

7                   “(B) An assurance that the State will en-  
8                   sure that local educational agencies that receive  
9                   a subgrant under subsection (d) use the funds  
10                  provided under the subgrant in accordance with  
11                  subsection (d)(5).

12                  “(C) Evidence that the State has increased  
13                  significantly the percentage of students reading  
14                  at grade level or above.

15                  “(D) Evidence that the State has been suc-  
16                  cessful in increasing the percentage of students  
17                  in ethnic, racial, and low-income populations  
18                  who are reading at grade level or above.

19                  “(E) Any additional evidence that dem-  
20                  onstrates success in the implementation of this  
21                  subpart.

22           “(d) SUBGRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
23           CIES.—

24                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may make a  
25                   grant to a State under this section only if the State



1 agrees to expend 100 percent of the amount of the  
2 funds provided under the grant for the purpose of  
3 making competitive subgrants in accordance with  
4 this subsection to local educational agencies.

5 “(2) NOTICE.—A State receiving a grant under  
6 this section shall provide notice to all local edu-  
7 cational agencies in the State of the availability of  
8 competitive subgrants under this subsection and of  
9 the requirements for applying for the subgrants.

10 “(3) APPLICATION.—To be eligible to receive a  
11 subgrant under this subsection, a local educational  
12 agency shall submit an application to the State at  
13 such time, in such manner, and containing such in-  
14 formation as the State may reasonably require.

15 “(4) DISTRIBUTION.—

16 “(A) IN GENERAL.—A State shall dis-  
17 tribute subgrants under this section through a  
18 competitive process based on relative need and  
19 the evidence described in this paragraph.

20 “(B) EVIDENCE USED IN ALL YEARS.—  
21 For all fiscal years, a State shall distribute sub-  
22 grants under this section based on evidence that  
23 a local educational agency—

24 “(i) satisfies the requirements of sec-  
25 tion 1203(c)(4);



1           “(ii) will carry out its obligations  
2           under this subpart, particularly paragraph  
3           (5); and

4           “(iii) will work with other local edu-  
5           cational agencies in the State that have  
6           not received a subgrant under this sub-  
7           section to assist such non-receiving agen-  
8           cies in increasing the reading achievement  
9           of students.

10           “(C) EVIDENCE USED IN FISCAL YEARS  
11           AFTER 2003.—For fiscal year 2004 and subse-  
12           quent fiscal years, a State shall distribute sub-  
13           grants under this section based on the evidence  
14           described in subparagraph (B) and, in addition,  
15           evidence that a local educational agency—

16           “(i) has significantly increased the  
17           percentage of all students reading at grade  
18           level or above;

19           “(ii) has significantly increased the  
20           percentage of students in ethnic, racial,  
21           and low-income populations who are read-  
22           ing at grade level or above; and

23           “(iii) has demonstrated success in the  
24           implementation of this subpart.



1           “(5) LOCAL USES OF FUNDS.—A local edu-  
2           cational agency that receives a subgrant under this  
3           subsection—

4                   “(A) shall use the funds provided under  
5           the subgrant to carry out the activities de-  
6           scribed in section 1203(c)(7)(A); and

7                   “(B) may use such funds to carry out the  
8           activities described in section 1203(c)(7)(B).

9           “(e) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section, the  
10          term ‘State’ means each of the 50 States, the District of  
11          Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

12          **“SEC. 1206. EXTERNAL EVALUATION.**

13                   “(a) IN GENERAL.—From funds reserved under sec-  
14          tion 1203(b)(1)(C), the Secretary shall contract with an  
15          independent outside organization for a 5-year, rigorous,  
16          scientifically valid, quantitative evaluation of this subpart.

17                   “(b) PROCESS.—Such evaluation shall be conducted  
18          by an organization outside of the Department that is capa-  
19          ble of designing and carrying out an independent evalua-  
20          tion that identifies the effects of specific activities carried  
21          out by States and local educational agencies under this  
22          subpart on improving reading instruction. Such evaluation  
23          shall use only data relating to students served under this  
24          subpart and shall take into account factors influencing



1 student performance that are not controlled by teachers  
2 or education administrators.

3 “(c) ANALYSIS.—Such evaluation shall include the  
4 following:

5 “(1) An analysis of the relationship between  
6 each of the essential components of reading instruc-  
7 tion and overall reading proficiency.

8 “(2) An analysis of whether assessment tools  
9 used by States and local educational agencies meas-  
10 ure the essential components of reading instruction.

11 “(3) An analysis of how State reading stand-  
12 ards correlate with the essential components of read-  
13 ing instruction.

14 “(4) An analysis of whether the receipt of a dis-  
15 cretionary grant under section 1205 results in an in-  
16 crease in the number of children who read pro-  
17 ficiently.

18 “(5) A measurement of the extent to which spe-  
19 cific instructional materials improve reading pro-  
20 ficiency.

21 “(6) A measurement of the extent to which spe-  
22 cific rigorous diagnostic reading and screening as-  
23 sessment tools assist teachers in identifying specific  
24 reading deficiencies.





1           “(7) A measurement of the extent to which pro-  
2           fessional development programs implemented by  
3           States using funds received under this subpart im-  
4           prove reading instruction.

5           “(8) A measurement of how well students pre-  
6           paring to enter the teaching profession are prepared  
7           to teach the essential components of reading instruc-  
8           tion.

9           “(9) An analysis of changes in students’ inter-  
10          est in reading and time spent reading outside of  
11          school.

12          “(10) Any other analysis or measurement perti-  
13          nent to this subpart that is determined to be appro-  
14          priate by the Secretary.

15          “(d) PROGRAM IMPROVEMENT.—The findings of the  
16          evaluation conducted under this section shall be provided  
17          to States and local educational agencies on a periodic basis  
18          for use in program improvement.

19          **“SEC. 1207. NATIONAL ACTIVITIES.**

20          “From funds reserved under section 1203(b)(1)(D),  
21          the Secretary may provide technical assistance in achiev-  
22          ing the purposes of this subpart to States, local edu-  
23          cational agencies, and schools requesting such assistance.



1 **“SEC. 1208. INFORMATION DISSEMINATION.**

2 “(a) IN GENERAL.—From funds reserved under sec-  
3 tion 1203(b)(1)(E), the National Institute for Literacy, in  
4 collaboration with the Secretary of Education, the Sec-  
5 retary of Health and Human Services, and the Director  
6 of the National Institute for Child Health and Human  
7 Development—

8 “(1) shall disseminate information on scientif-  
9 ically based reading research pertaining to children,  
10 youth, and adults;

11 “(2) shall identify and disseminate information  
12 about schools, local educational agencies, and States  
13 that effectively developed and implemented class-  
14 room reading programs that meet the requirements  
15 of this subpart, including those effective States, local  
16 educational agencies, and schools identified through  
17 the evaluation and peer review provisions of this  
18 subpart; and

19 “(3) shall support the continued identification  
20 and dissemination of information on reading pro-  
21 grams that contain the essential components of  
22 reading instruction as supported by scientifically  
23 based reading research, that can lead to improved  
24 reading outcomes for children, youth, and adults.

25 “(b) DISSEMINATION.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—At a minimum, the Na-  
2           tional Institute for Literacy shall disseminate such  
3           information to—

4                   “(A) recipients of Federal financial assist-  
5                   ance under part A of this title, part A of title  
6                   III, the Head Start Act, the Individuals with  
7                   Disabilities Education Act, and the Adult Edu-  
8                   cation and Family Literacy Act; and

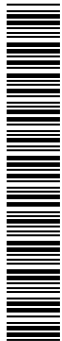
9                   “(B) each Bureau funded school (as de-  
10                   fined in section 1141(3) of the Education  
11                   Amendments of 1978).

12           “(2) USE OF EXISTING NETWORKS.—In car-  
13           rying out this section, the National Institute for Lit-  
14           eracy shall, to the extent practicable, utilize existing  
15           information and dissemination networks developed  
16           and maintained through other public and private en-  
17           tities.

18   **“SEC. 1209. DEFINITIONS.**

19           “For purposes of this subpart:

20                   “(1) ELIGIBLE PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT  
21                   PROVIDER.—The term ‘eligible professional develop-  
22                   ment provider’ means a provider of professional de-  
23                   velopment in reading instruction to teachers, includ-  
24                   ing special education teachers, that is based on sci-  
25                   entifically based reading research.



1           “(2) ESSENTIAL COMPONENTS OF READING IN-  
2           STRUCTION.—The term ‘essential components of  
3           reading instruction’ means explicit and systematic  
4           instruction in—

5                   “(A) phonemic awareness;

6                   “(B) phonics;

7                   “(C) vocabulary development;

8                   “(D) oral reading fluency; and

9                   “(E) reading comprehension strategies.

10           “(3) INSTRUCTIONAL STAFF.—The term ‘in-  
11           structional staff’—

12                   “(A) means individuals who have responsi-  
13                   bility for teaching children to read; and

14                   “(B) includes principals, teachers, super-  
15                   visors of instruction, librarians, library school  
16                   media specialists, teachers of academic subjects  
17                   other than reading, and other individuals who  
18                   have responsibility for assisting children to  
19                   learn to read.

20           “(4) READING.—The term ‘reading’ means a  
21           complex system of deriving meaning from print that  
22           requires all of the following:

23                   “(A) The skills and knowledge to under-  
24                   stand how phonemes, or speech sounds, are  
25                   connected to print.



1           “(B) The ability to decode unfamiliar  
2 words.

3           “(C) The ability to read fluently.

4           “(D) Sufficient background information  
5 and vocabulary to foster reading comprehen-  
6 sion.

7           “(E) The development of appropriate ac-  
8 tive strategies to construct meaning from print.

9           “(F) The development and maintenance of  
10 a motivation to read.

11           “(5) RIGOROUS DIAGNOSTIC READING AND  
12 SCREENING ASSESSMENT TOOLS.—The term ‘rig-  
13 orous diagnostic reading and screening assessment  
14 tools’ means assessments that—

15           “(A) are valid, reliable, and based on sci-  
16 entifically based reading research;

17           “(B) measure progress in developing pho-  
18 nemic awareness and phonics skills, vocabulary,  
19 reading fluency, and reading comprehension;

20           “(C) identify students who may be at risk  
21 for reading failure or who are having difficulty  
22 reading; and

23           “(D) are used to improve instruction.



1           “(6) SCIENTIFICALLY BASED READING RE-  
2 SEARCH.—The term ‘scientifically based reading  
3 research’—

4           “(A) means the application of rigorous,  
5 systematic, and objective procedures to obtain  
6 valid knowledge relevant to reading develop-  
7 ment, reading instruction, and reading difficul-  
8 ties; and

9           “(B) shall include research that—

10           “(i) employs systematic, empirical  
11 methods that draw on observation or ex-  
12 periment;

13           “(ii) involves rigorous data analyses  
14 that are adequate to test the stated  
15 hypotheses and justify the general conclu-  
16 sions drawn;

17           “(iii) relies on measurements or obser-  
18 vational methods that provide valid data  
19 across evaluators and observers and across  
20 multiple measurements and observations;  
21 and

22           “(iv) has been accepted by a peer-re-  
23 viewed journal or approved by a panel of  
24 independent experts through a comparably  
25 rigorous, objective, and scientific review.



1                   **“Subpart 2—Early Reading First**

2   **“SEC. 1221. PURPOSES.**

3           “The purposes of this subpart are as follows:

4                   “(1) To improve prereading skills in children  
5           aged 3 through 5, particularly children from low-in-  
6           come families, in high-quality oral language and lit-  
7           erature-rich environments.

8                   “(2) To provide professional development for  
9           early childhood teachers that prepares them with sci-  
10          entific research-based knowledge of early reading de-  
11          velopment to assist in developing the children’s—

12                           “(A) automatic recognition of the letters of  
13           the alphabet;

14                           “(B) understanding that spoken words are  
15           made up of small segments of speech sounds  
16           and that certain letters regularly represent such  
17           speech sounds;

18                           “(C) spoken vocabulary and oral com-  
19           prehension abilities; and

20                           “(D) understanding of semiotic concepts.

21                   “(3) To use scientific research-based screening  
22           tools or other appropriate measures to determine  
23           whether preschool children are developing the skills  
24           identified in this section.

25                   “(4) To identify and provide scientific research-  
26           based prereading language and literacy activities and



1 instructional materials that can be used to assist in  
2 the development of prereading skills in children.

3 “(5) To integrate such scientific research-based  
4 instructional materials and literacy activities with  
5 existing programs of preschools, child care agencies,  
6 and Head Start centers, and with family literacy  
7 services.

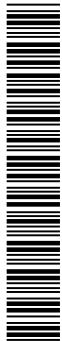
8 **“SEC. 1222. LOCAL EARLY READING FIRST GRANTS.**

9 “(a) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—From amounts ap-  
10 propriated under section 1002(b)(2), the Secretary shall  
11 make awards, on a competitive basis and for periods of  
12 not more than 5 years, to eligible applicants to enable such  
13 applicants to carry out activities that are consistent with  
14 the purposes of this subpart.

15 “(b) DEFINITION OF ELIGIBLE APPLICANT.—In this  
16 subpart, the term ‘eligible applicant’ means—

17 “(1) a local educational agency;

18 “(2) one or more public or private organiza-  
19 tions, acting on behalf of one or more programs that  
20 serve children aged 3 through 5 (such as a program  
21 at a child care agency or Head Start center or a  
22 family literacy program), which organizations shall  
23 be located in a community served by a local edu-  
24 cational agency; or





1           “(3) one or more local educational agencies in  
2           collaboration with one or more organizations de-  
3           scribed in paragraph (2).

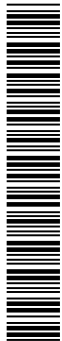
4           “(c) APPLICATIONS.—An eligible applicant that de-  
5           sires to receive a grant under this subpart shall submit  
6           an application to the Secretary, which shall include a de-  
7           scription of—

8           “(1) the programs to be served by the proposed  
9           project, including general demographic and socio-  
10          economic information on the communities in which  
11          the proposed project will be administered;

12          “(2) how the proposed project will enhance the  
13          school readiness of children aged 3 through 5 in  
14          high-quality oral language and literature-rich envi-  
15          ronments;

16          “(3) how the proposed project will provide early  
17          childhood teachers with scientific research-based  
18          knowledge of early reading development and assist  
19          such teachers in developing the children’s prereading  
20          skills;

21          “(4) how the proposed project will provide serv-  
22          ices and utilize instructional materials that are  
23          based on scientifically based reading research on  
24          early language acquisition, prereading activities, and  
25          the development of spoken vocabulary skills;



1           “(5) how the proposed project will integrate  
2 such instructional materials and literacy activities  
3 with existing preschool programs and family literacy  
4 services;

5           “(6) how the proposed project will help staff in  
6 the programs to meet the diverse needs of children  
7 in the community, including children with limited  
8 English proficiency and children with learning dis-  
9 abilities;

10           “(7) how the proposed project will help chil-  
11 dren, particularly children experiencing difficulty  
12 with spoken language, prereading, and early reading  
13 skills, to make the transition from preschool to for-  
14 mal classroom instruction in school;

15           “(8) how the activities conducted under this  
16 subpart will be coordinated with the eligible appli-  
17 cant’s activities under subpart 1, if the applicant has  
18 received a subgrant under such subpart, at the kin-  
19 dergarten through third grade levels;

20           “(9) how the proposed project will evaluate the  
21 success of the activities supported under this sub-  
22 part in enhancing the early language and reading  
23 development of children served by the project; and

24           “(10) such other information as the Secretary  
25 may require.



1           “(d) APPROVAL OF LOCAL APPLICATIONS.—The Sec-  
2 retary shall select applicants for funding under this sub-  
3 part based on the quality of the applications and the rec-  
4 ommendations of the peer review panel convened under  
5 section 1204(c)(2).

6           “(e) LOCAL USES OF FUNDS.—

7                   “(1) REQUIRED ACTIVITIES.—An eligible appli-  
8 cant that receives a grant under this subpart shall  
9 use the funds provided under the grant to carry out  
10 the following activities:

11                           “(A) Providing children aged 3 through 5  
12 with high-quality oral language and literature-  
13 rich environments in which to acquire  
14 prereading skills.

15                           “(B) Providing professional development  
16 for early childhood teachers that prepares them  
17 with scientific research-based knowledge of  
18 early reading development to assist in devel-  
19 oping the children’s—

20                                   “(i) automatic recognition of the let-  
21 ters of the alphabet;

22                                   “(ii) understanding that spoken words  
23 are made up of small segments of speech  
24 sounds and that certain letters regularly  
25 represent such speech sounds;



1                   “(iii) spoken vocabulary and oral com-  
2                   prehension abilities; and

3                   “(iv) understanding of semiotic con-  
4                   cepts.

5                   “(C) Identifying and providing scientific  
6                   research-based prereading language and literacy  
7                   activities and instructional materials for use in  
8                   developing the children’s—

9                   “(i) automatic recognition of the let-  
10                  ters of the alphabet;

11                  “(ii) understanding that spoken words  
12                  are made up of small segments of speech  
13                  sounds and that certain letters regularly  
14                  represent such speech sounds;

15                  “(iii) spoken vocabulary and oral com-  
16                  prehension abilities; and

17                  “(iv) understanding of semiotic con-  
18                  cepts.

19                  “(2) OPTIONAL ACTIVITIES.—An eligible appli-  
20                  cant that receives a grant under this subpart may  
21                  use the funds provided under the grant to carry out  
22                  the following activities:

23                  “(A) Using scientific research-based  
24                  screening tools or other appropriate measures



1 to determine whether preschool children are de-  
2 veloping the skills identified in this subsection.

3 “(B) Integrating such instructional mate-  
4 rials and literacy activities with programs of ex-  
5 isting child care agencies, preschools, and Head  
6 Start centers, and with family literacy services.

7 “(f) AWARD AMOUNTS.—The Secretary may estab-  
8 lish a maximum award amount, or ranges of award  
9 amounts, for grants under this subpart.

10 **“SEC. 1223. FEDERAL ADMINISTRATION.**

11 “The Secretary shall consult with the Secretary of  
12 Health and Human Services in order to coordinate the ac-  
13 tivities undertaken under this subpart with programs  
14 under the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C. 9831 et seq.).

15 **“SEC. 1224. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.**

16 “Each eligible applicant receiving a grant under this  
17 subpart shall report annually to the Secretary regarding  
18 the eligible applicant’s progress in addressing the purposes  
19 of this subpart.

20 **“SEC. 1225. EVALUATION.**

21 “From the total amount made available under section  
22 1002(b)(2) for the period beginning October 1, 2002, and  
23 ending September 30, 2006, the Secretary shall reserve  
24 not more than \$1,000,000 to conduct an independent eval-  
25 uation of the effectiveness of this subpart.



1 **“SEC. 1226. ADDITIONAL RESEARCH.**

2 “From the amount made available under section  
3 1002(b)(2) for each of the fiscal years 2002 through 2006,  
4 the Secretary shall reserve not more than \$3,000,000 to  
5 conduct, in consultation with the National Institute for  
6 Child Health and Human Development, the National In-  
7 stitute for Literacy, and the Department of Health and  
8 Human Services, additional research on language and lit-  
9 eracy development for children aged 3 through 5.”.

10 **SEC. 112. AMENDMENTS TO EVEN START.**

11 Part B of title I (20 U.S.C. 6361 et seq.), as amend-  
12 ed by section 111, is further amended—

13 (1) by inserting before section 1231 (as so re-  
14 designated by section 111) the following:

15 **“Subpart 3—William F. Goodling Even Start Family**  
16 **Literacy Programs”;**

17 (2) in each of sections 1231 through 1242 (as  
18 so redesignated by section 111)—

19 (A) by striking “this part” each place such  
20 term appears and inserting “this subpart”; and

21 (B) by striking “1002(b)” each place such  
22 term appears and inserting “1002(b)(3)”;

23 (3) in section 1231(4), by striking “2252” and  
24 inserting “1209”;

25 (4) in section 1232—

26 (A) in subsection (b)—



1 (i) in paragraph (1)(A), by striking  
2 “1209;” and inserting “1239;”; and

3 (ii) in paragraph (2), by striking  
4 “1211(b)” each place such term appears  
5 and inserting “1241(b)”; and

6 (B) in subsection (c)—

7 (i) by amending paragraph (2)(C) to  
8 read as follows:

9 “(C) COORDINATION WITH SUBPART 1.—

10 The consortium shall coordinate its activities  
11 with the activities of the reading and literacy  
12 partnership for the State established under sec-  
13 tion 1204(d), if the State receives a grant  
14 under section 1203.”; and

15 (ii) in paragraph (3), by striking  
16 “2252.” and inserting “1209.”;

17 (5) in section 1233—

18 (A) by striking “1202(d)(1)” each place  
19 such term appears and inserting “1232(d)(1)”;  
20 and

21 (B) by striking “1210.” and inserting  
22 “1240.”;

23 (6) in section 1234—

24 (A) in subsection (b)—



1 (i) in paragraph (1)(A), by moving  
2 the margins of clauses (v) and (vi) 2 ems  
3 to the right; and

4 (ii) in paragraph (3), by striking  
5 “1202(a)(1)(C)” and inserting  
6 “1232(a)(1)(C)”; and

7 (B) in subsection (c)—

8 (i) in paragraph (1)—

9 (I) by striking “1203(a),” and  
10 inserting “1233(a),”; and

11 (II) by striking “1203(b)” and  
12 inserting “1233(b),”; and

13 (ii) in paragraph (2), by striking  
14 “1210.” and inserting “1240.”;

15 (7) in section 1235—

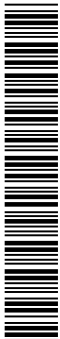
16 (A) in paragraph (10), by striking “2252)”  
17 and inserting “1209”;

18 (B) in paragraph (12), by striking  
19 “2252),” and inserting “1209,”; and

20 (C) in paragraph (15), by striking “pro-  
21 gram.” and inserting “program to be used for  
22 program improvement.”;

23 (8) in section 1237—

24 (A) in subsection (c)(1)—





1 (i) in subparagraph (B), by striking  
2 “1205;” and inserting “1235;”; and

3 (ii) in subparagraph (F), by striking  
4 “14306;” and inserting “8306;”; and  
5 (B) in subsection (d), by striking “14302.”  
6 and inserting “8302.”;

7 (9) in section 1238—

8 (A) in subsection (a)(1)—

9 (i) in subparagraph (A)(ii), by strik-  
10 ing “1205;” and inserting “1235;”; and

11 (ii) in subparagraph (F), by striking  
12 “1204(b);” and inserting “1234(b);”; and  
13 (B) in subsection (b)—

14 (i) in paragraph (3)—

15 (I) by striking “1207(c)(1)(A)”  
16 and inserting “1237(c)(1)(A);” and

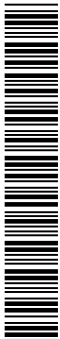
17 (II) by striking “1210.” and in-  
18 serting “1240.”;

19 (ii) in paragraph (4), by striking  
20 “1210,” and inserting “1240;”; and

21 (iii) in paragraph (5)(B), by striking  
22 “1204(b).” and inserting “1234(b).”;

23 (10) in section 1239—

24 (A) by striking “1202(b)(1),” and insert-  
25 ing “1232(b)(1),”; and



1 (B) by striking “1205(10)” and inserting  
2 “1235(10)”;

3 (11) in section 1241—

4 (A) in subsection (b)(1)—

5 (i) by striking “1202(b)(2),” and in-  
6 serting “1232(b)(2),”; and

7 (ii) by striking “2252);” and inserting  
8 “1209);”; and

9 (B) in subsection (c), by striking “2258,”  
10 and inserting “1208,”.

11 **SEC. 113. INEXPENSIVE BOOK DISTRIBUTION PROGRAM.**

12 (a) TRANSFER AND REDESIGNATION.—Part E of  
13 title X (20 U.S.C. 8131) is transferred and redesignated  
14 as subpart 4 of part B of title I. Section 10501 is redesi-  
15 gnated as section 1251.

16 (b) PURPOSE.—Section 1251 (as so redesignated) is  
17 amended—

18 (1) by striking subsection (e);

19 (2) by redesignating subsection (d) as sub-  
20 section (g);

21 (3) by redesignating subsections (a) through (c)  
22 as subsections (b) through (d), respectively; and

23 (4) by inserting before subsection (b) (as so re-  
24 designated) the following:



1       “(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this program is to  
2 establish and implement a model partnership between a  
3 governmental entity and a private entity, to help prepare  
4 young children for reading, and motivate older children  
5 to read, through the distribution of inexpensive books.  
6 Local reading motivation programs assisted under this  
7 section shall use such assistance to provide books, training  
8 for volunteers, motivational activities, and other essential  
9 literacy resources, and shall assign the highest priority to  
10 serving the youngest and neediest children in the United  
11 States.”.

12       (c) AUTHORIZATION.—Section 1251(b) (as so reded-  
13 icated) is amended by striking “books to students, that  
14 motivate children to read.” and inserting “books to young  
15 and school-aged children that motivate them to read.”.

16       (d) REQUIREMENTS OF CONTRACT.—Section 1251(c)  
17 (as so redesignated) is amended—

18           (1) in the matter preceding paragraph (1), by  
19 striking “subsection (a)” and inserting “subsection  
20 (b)”; and

21           (2) in paragraph (4), by inserting “training  
22 and” before “technical”.

23       (e) SPECIAL RULES FOR CERTAIN SUBCONTRAC-  
24 TORS; MULTI-YEAR CONTRACTS.—Section 1251 (as so re-



1 designated) is amended by inserting after subsection (d)  
2 the following:

3 “(e) SPECIAL RULES FOR CERTAIN SUBCONTRAC-  
4 TORS.—

5 “(1) FUNDS FROM OTHER FEDERAL  
6 SOURCES.—Subcontractors operating programs  
7 under this section in low-income communities with a  
8 substantial number or percentage of children with  
9 special needs, as described in subsection (c)(3), may  
10 use funds from other Federal sources to pay the  
11 non-Federal share of the cost of the program, if  
12 those funds do not comprise more than 50 percent  
13 of the non-Federal share of the funds used for the  
14 cost of acquiring and distributing books.

15 “(2) WAIVER AUTHORITY.—Notwithstanding  
16 subsection (c), the contractor may waive, in whole or  
17 in part, the requirement in subsection (c)(1) for a  
18 subcontractor, if the subcontractor demonstrates  
19 that it would otherwise not be able to participate in  
20 the program, and enters into an agreement with the  
21 contractor with respect to the amount of the non-  
22 Federal share to which the waiver will apply. In a  
23 case in which such a waiver is granted, the require-  
24 ment in subsection (c)(2) shall not apply.



1       “(f) MULTI-YEAR CONTRACTS.—The contractor may  
2 enter into a multi-year subcontract under this section, if—

3               “(1) the contractor believes that such sub-  
4 contract will provide the subcontractor with addi-  
5 tional leverage in seeking local commitments; and

6               “(2) the subcontract does not undermine the fi-  
7 nances of the national program.”.

8       (f) CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.—Notwithstanding  
9 any other provision of this Act, any person or agency that  
10 was awarded a contract under part E of title X (20 U.S.C.  
11 8131) prior to the date of the enactment of this Act shall  
12 continue to receive funds in accordance with the terms of  
13 such contract until the date on which the contract period  
14 terminates under such terms.

15   **PART C—EDUCATION OF MIGRATORY CHILDREN**

16   **SEC. 121. STATE ALLOCATIONS.**

17       Section 1303 (20 U.S.C. 6393) is amended—

18               (1) by amending subsection (a) to read as fol-  
19 lows:

20       “(a) STATE ALLOCATIONS.—

21               “(1) FISCAL YEAR 2002.—For fiscal year 2002,  
22 each State (other than the Commonwealth of Puerto  
23 Rico) is entitled to receive under this part an  
24 amount equal to—



1           “(A) the sum of the estimated number of  
2 migratory children aged three through 21 who  
3 reside in the State full time and the full-time  
4 equivalent of the estimated number of migra-  
5 tory children aged three through 21 who reside  
6 in the State part time, as determined in accord-  
7 ance with subsection (d); multiplied by

8           “(B) 40 percent of the average per-pupil  
9 expenditure in the State, except that the  
10 amount determined under this paragraph shall  
11 not be less than 32 percent, nor more than 48  
12 percent, of the average expenditure per pupil in  
13 the United States.

14           “(2) SUBSEQUENT YEARS.—

15           “(A) BASE AMOUNT.—

16           “(i) IN GENERAL.—Except as pro-  
17 vided in subsection (b) and clause (ii), each  
18 State (other than the Commonwealth of  
19 Puerto Rico) is entitled to receive under  
20 this part, for fiscal year 2003 and suc-  
21 ceeding fiscal years, an amount equal to—

22           “(I) the amount that such State  
23 received under this part for fiscal year  
24 2002; plus



1                   “(II) the amount allocated to the  
2                   State under subparagraph (B).

3                   “(ii) NONPARTICIPATING STATES.—In  
4                   the case of a State (other than the Com-  
5                   monwealth of Puerto Rico) that did not re-  
6                   ceive any funds for fiscal year 2002 under  
7                   this part, the State shall receive, for fiscal  
8                   year 2003 and succeeding fiscal years, an  
9                   amount equal to—

10                   “(I) the amount that such State  
11                   would have received under this part  
12                   for fiscal year 2002 if its application  
13                   under section 1304 for the year had  
14                   been approved; plus

15                   “(II) the amount allocated to the  
16                   State under subparagraph (B).

17                   “(B) ALLOCATION OF ADDITIONAL  
18                   AMOUNT.—For fiscal year 2003 and succeeding  
19                   fiscal years, the amount (if any) by which the  
20                   funds appropriated to carry out this part for  
21                   the year exceed such funds for fiscal year 2002  
22                   shall be allocated to a State (other than the  
23                   Commonwealth of Puerto Rico) so that the  
24                   State receives an amount equal to—

25                   “(i) the sum of—



1                   “(I) the number of identified eli-  
 2                   gible migratory children, aged 3  
 3                   through 21, residing in the State dur-  
 4                   ing the previous year; and

5                   “(II) the number of identified eli-  
 6                   gible migratory children, aged 3  
 7                   through 21, who received services  
 8                   under this part in summer or interses-  
 9                   sion programs provided by the State  
 10                  during such year; multiplied by

11                  “(ii) 40 percent of the average per-  
 12                  pupil expenditure in the State, except that  
 13                  the amount determined under this clause  
 14                  may not be less than 32 percent, or more  
 15                  than 48 percent, of the average per-pupil  
 16                  expenditure in the United States.”;

17                  (2) by amending subsection (b) to read as fol-  
 18                  lows:

19                  “(b) ALLOCATION TO PUERTO RICO.—

20                  “(1) IN GENERAL.—For each fiscal year, the  
 21                  grant which the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico shall  
 22                  be eligible to receive under this part shall be the  
 23                  amount determined by multiplying the number of  
 24                  children counted under subsection (a)(1)(A) for the  
 25                  Commonwealth of Puerto Rico by the product of—





1           “(A) the percentage which the average per  
2           pupil expenditure in the Commonwealth of  
3           Puerto Rico is of the lowest average per pupil  
4           expenditure of any of the 50 States; and

5           “(B) 32 percent of the average per pupil  
6           expenditure in the United States.

7           “(2) MINIMUM PERCENTAGE.—The percentage  
8           in paragraph (1)(A) shall not be less than—

9           “(A) for fiscal year 2002, 77.5 percent;

10           “(B) for fiscal year 2003, 80.0 percent;

11           “(C) for fiscal year 2004, 82.5 percent;

12           and

13           “(D) for fiscal year 2005 and succeeding  
14           fiscal years, 85.0 percent.

15           “(3) LIMITATION.—If the application of para-  
16           graph (2) would result in any of the 50 States or  
17           the District of Columbia receiving less under this  
18           part than it received under this part for the pre-  
19           ceding fiscal year, the percentage in paragraph (1)  
20           shall be the greater of the percentage in paragraph  
21           (1)(A) or the percentage used for the preceding fis-  
22           cal year.”; and

23           (3) by striking subsection (d) and redesignating  
24           subsection (e) as subsection (d).



1 **SEC. 122. STATE APPLICATIONS; SERVICES.**

2 (a) PROGRAM INFORMATION.—Section 1304(b) (20  
3 U.S.C. 6394(b)) is amended—

4 (1) in paragraph (1), by striking “addressed  
5 through” and all that follows through the semicolon  
6 at the end and inserting the following:

7 “addressed through—

8 “(A) the full range of services that are  
9 available for migratory children from appro-  
10 priate local, State, and Federal educational pro-  
11 grams;

12 “(B) joint planning among local, State,  
13 and Federal educational programs serving mi-  
14 grant children, including programs under part  
15 A of title III;

16 “(C) the integration of services available  
17 under this part with services provided by those  
18 other programs; and

19 “(D) measurable program goals and out-  
20 comes;”; and

21 (2) in paragraph (5), by striking “the require-  
22 ments of paragraph (1);” and inserting “the num-  
23 bers and needs of migratory children, the require-  
24 ments of subsection (d), and the availability of funds  
25 from other Federal, State, and local programs;”.



1 (b) ASSURANCES.—Section 1304(c) (20 U.S.C.  
2 6394(c)) is amended—

3 (1) in paragraph (1), by striking “1306(b)(1);”  
4 and inserting “1306(a);”;

5 (2) in paragraph (2), by striking “part F;” and  
6 inserting “part H;”

7 (3) in paragraph (3)—

8 (A) by striking “appropriate”;

9 (B) by striking “out, to the extent fea-  
10 sible,” and inserting “out”; and

11 (C) by striking “1118;” and inserting  
12 “1118, unless extraordinary circumstances  
13 make implementation consistent with such sec-  
14 tion impractical;” and

15 (4) in paragraph (7), by striking “section  
16 1303(e)” and inserting “paragraphs (1)(A) and  
17 (2)(B)(i) of section 1303(a)”.

18 **SEC. 123. AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.**

19 Section 1306 (20 U.S.C. 6396) is amended to read  
20 as follows:

21 **“SEC. 1306. AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.**

22 “(a) IN GENERAL.—

23 “(1) FLEXIBILITY.—Each State educational  
24 agency, through its local educational agencies, shall  
25 have the flexibility to determine the activities to be



1 provided with funds made available under this part,  
2 except that such funds shall first be used to meet  
3 the identified needs of migratory children that result  
4 from their migratory lifestyle, and to permit these  
5 children to participate effectively in school.

6 “(2) UNADDRESSED NEEDS.—Funds provided  
7 under this part shall be used to address the needs  
8 of migratory children that are not addressed by serv-  
9 ices available from other Federal or non-Federal  
10 programs, except that migratory children who are el-  
11 ible to receive services under part A of this title  
12 may receive those services through funds provided  
13 under that part, or through funds under this part  
14 that remain after the agency addresses the needs de-  
15 scribed in paragraph (1).

16 “(b) CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this part shall be  
17 construed to prohibit a local educational agency from serv-  
18 ing migratory children simultaneously with students with  
19 similar educational needs in the same educational settings,  
20 where appropriate.

21 “(c) SPECIAL RULE.—Notwithstanding section 1114,  
22 a school that receives funds under this part shall continue  
23 to address the identified needs described in subsection  
24 (a)(1).”.



1 **SEC. 124. COORDINATION OF MIGRANT EDUCATION ACTIVI-**  
2 **TIES.**

3 (a) DURATION.—Section 1308(a)(2) (20 U.S.C.  
4 6398(a)(2)) is amended by striking “subpart” and insert-  
5 ing “subsection”.

6 (b) STUDENT RECORDS.—Section 1308(b) (20  
7 U.S.C. 6398(b)) is amended to read as follows:

8 “(b) STUDENT RECORDS.—

9 “(1) ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary shall assist  
10 States in developing effective methods for the trans-  
11 fer of student records and in determining the num-  
12 ber of migratory children in each State. The Sec-  
13 retary, in consultation with the States, shall deter-  
14 mine the minimum data elements that each State re-  
15 ceiving funds under this part shall collect and main-  
16 tain. The Secretary shall assist States to implement  
17 a system of linking their student record transfer sys-  
18 tems for the purpose of electronic records mainte-  
19 nance and transfer for migrant students.

20 “(2) NO COST FOR CERTAIN TRANSFERS.—A  
21 State educational agency or local educational agency  
22 receiving assistance under this part shall make stu-  
23 dent records available to another State or local edu-  
24 cational agency that requests the records at no cost  
25 to the requesting agency, if the request is made in  
26 order to meet the needs of a migratory child.”.



1 (c) AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS.—Section 1308(c) (20  
2 U.S.C. 6398(c)) is amended by striking “\$6,000,000” and  
3 inserting “\$10,000,000”.

4 (d) INCENTIVE GRANTS.—Section 1308(d) (20  
5 U.S.C. 6398(d)) is amended to read as follows:

6 “(d) INCENTIVE GRANTS.—From the amounts made  
7 available to carry out this section for any fiscal year, the  
8 Secretary may reserve not more than \$3,000,000 to award  
9 grants of not more than \$250,000 on a competitive basis  
10 to State educational agencies that propose a consortium  
11 arrangement with another State or other appropriate enti-  
12 ty that the Secretary determines, pursuant to criteria that  
13 the Secretary shall establish, will improve the delivery of  
14 services to migratory children whose education is inter-  
15 rupted.”.

16 **PART D—NEGLECTED OR DELINQUENT YOUTH**

17 **SEC. 131. NEGLECTED OR DELINQUENT YOUTH.**

18 The heading for part D of title I is amended to read  
19 as follows:



1 **“PART D—PREVENTION AND INTERVENTION**  
2 **PROGRAMS FOR NEGLECTED OR DELIN-**  
3 **QUENT CHILDREN AND YOUTH”.**

4 **SEC. 132. FINDINGS.**

5 Section 1401(a) (20 U.S.C. 6421(a)) is amended by  
6 striking paragraphs (6) through (9) and inserting the fol-  
7 lowing:

8 “(6) Youth returning from correctional facilities  
9 need to be involved in programs that provide them  
10 with high-level skills and other support to help them  
11 stay in school and complete their education.

12 “(7) Pregnant and parenting teenagers are a  
13 high-at-risk group for dropping out of school and  
14 should be targeted by dropout prevention pro-  
15 grams.”.

16 **SEC. 133. ALLOCATION OF FUNDS.**

17 Section 1412(b) (20 U.S.C. 6432(b)) is amended to  
18 read as follows:

19 “(b) SUBGRANTS TO STATE AGENCIES IN PUERTO  
20 RICO.—

21 “(1) IN GENERAL.—For each fiscal year, the  
22 amount of the subgrant which a State agency in the  
23 Commonwealth of Puerto Rico shall be eligible to re-  
24 ceive under this part shall be the amount determined  
25 by multiplying the number of children counted under



1 subparagraph (a)(1)(A) for the Commonwealth of  
2 Puerto Rico by the product of—

3 “(A) the percentage which the average per-  
4 pupil expenditure in the Commonwealth of  
5 Puerto Rico is of the lowest average per-pupil  
6 expenditure of any of the 50 States; and

7 “(B) 32 percent of the average per-pupil  
8 expenditure in the United States.

9 “(2) MINIMUM PERCENTAGE.—The percentage  
10 in paragraph (1)(A) shall not be less than—

11 “(A) for fiscal year 2002, 77.5 percent;

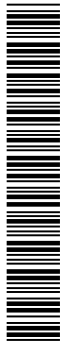
12 “(B) for fiscal year 2003, 80.0 percent;

13 “(C) for fiscal year 2004, 82.5 percent;

14 and

15 “(D) for fiscal year 2005 and succeeding  
16 fiscal years, 85.0 percent.

17 “(3) LIMITATION.—If the application of para-  
18 graph (2) would result in any of the 50 States or  
19 the District of Columbia receiving less under this  
20 part than it received under this part for the pre-  
21 ceding fiscal year, the percentage in paragraph (1)  
22 shall be the greater of the percentage in paragraph  
23 (1)(A) or the percentage used for the preceding fis-  
24 cal year.”.





1 **SEC. 134. STATE PLAN AND STATE AGENCY APPLICATIONS.**

2 Section 1414 (20 U.S.C. 6434) is amended to read  
3 as follows:

4 **“SEC. 1414. STATE PLAN AND STATE AGENCY APPLICA-**  
5 **TIONS.**

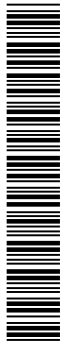
6 “(a) STATE PLAN.—

7 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational  
8 agency that desires to receive a grant under this  
9 part shall submit, for approval by the Secretary, a  
10 plan for meeting the educational needs of neglected  
11 and delinquent youth, for assisting in their transi-  
12 tion from institutions to locally operated programs,  
13 and which is integrated with other programs under  
14 this Act or other Acts, as appropriate, consistent  
15 with section 8306.

16 “(2) CONTENTS.—Each such State plan shall—

17 “(A) describe the program goals, objec-  
18 tives, and performance measures established by  
19 the State that will be used to assess the effec-  
20 tiveness of the program in improving academic  
21 and vocational and technical skills of children in  
22 the program;

23 “(B) provide that, to the extent feasible,  
24 such children will have the same opportunities  
25 to learn as such children would have if such



1 children were in the schools of local educational  
2 agencies in the State; and

3 “(C) contain assurances that the State  
4 educational agency will—

5 “(i) ensure that programs assisted  
6 under this part will be carried out in ac-  
7 cordance with the State plan described in  
8 this subsection;

9 “(ii) carry out the evaluation require-  
10 ments of section 1416;

11 “(iii) ensure that the State agencies  
12 receiving subgrants under this subpart  
13 comply with all applicable statutory and  
14 regulatory requirements; and

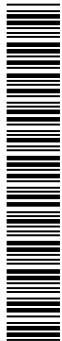
15 “(iv) provide such other information  
16 as the Secretary may reasonably require.

17 “(3) DURATION OF THE PLAN.—Each such  
18 State plan shall—

19 “(A) remain in effect for the duration of  
20 the State’s participation under this part; and

21 “(B) be periodically reviewed and revised  
22 by the State, as necessary, to reflect changes in  
23 the State’s strategies and programs under this  
24 part.

25 “(b) SECRETARIAL APPROVAL AND PEER REVIEW.—



1           “(1) SECRETARIAL APPROVAL.—The Secretary  
2 shall approve each State plan that meets the re-  
3 quirements of this part.

4           “(2) PEER REVIEW.—The Secretary may review  
5 any State plan with the assistance and advice of in-  
6 dividuals with relevant expertise.

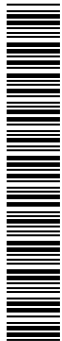
7           “(c) STATE AGENCY APPLICATIONS.—Any State  
8 agency that desires to receive funds to carry out a pro-  
9 gram under this part shall submit an application to the  
10 State educational agency that—

11           “(1) describes the procedures to be used, con-  
12 sistent with the State plan under section 1111, to  
13 assess the educational needs of the children to be  
14 served;

15           “(2) provides assurances that in making serv-  
16 ices available to youth in adult correctional facilities,  
17 priority will be given to such youth who are likely to  
18 complete incarceration within a 2-year period;

19           “(3) describes the program, including a budget  
20 for the first year of the program, with annual up-  
21 dates to be provided to the State educational agency;

22           “(4) describes how the program will meet the  
23 goals and objectives of the State plan under this  
24 subpart;



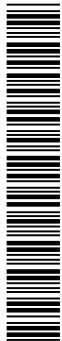
1           “(5) describes how the State agency will consult  
2 with experts and provide the necessary training for  
3 appropriate staff, to ensure that the planning and  
4 operation of institution-wide projects under section  
5 1416 are of high quality;

6           “(6) describes how the agency will carry out the  
7 evaluation requirements of section 8651 and how the  
8 results of the most recent evaluation are used to  
9 plan and improve the program;

10           “(7) includes data showing that the agency has  
11 maintained fiscal effort required of a local edu-  
12 cational agency, in accordance with section 8501;

13           “(8) describes how the programs will be coordi-  
14 nated with other appropriate State and Federal pro-  
15 grams, such as job training programs, vocational  
16 and technical education programs, State and local  
17 dropout prevention programs, and special education  
18 programs;

19           “(9) describes how States will encourage correc-  
20 tional facilities receiving funds under this subpart to  
21 coordinate with local educational agencies or alter-  
22 native education programs attended by incarcerated  
23 youth prior to their incarceration to ensure that stu-  
24 dent assessments and appropriate academic records  
25 are shared jointly between the correctional facility



1 and the local educational agency or alternative edu-  
2 cation program;

3 “(10) describes how appropriate professional  
4 development will be provided to teachers and other  
5 staff;

6 “(11) designates an individual in each affected  
7 institution to be responsible for issues relating to the  
8 transition of children and youth from the institution  
9 to locally operated programs;

10 “(12) describes how the agency will endeavor to  
11 coordinate with businesses for training and men-  
12 toring for participating youth;

13 “(13) provides assurances that the agency will  
14 assist in locating alternative programs through  
15 which students can continue their education if stu-  
16 dents are not returning to school after leaving the  
17 correctional facility;

18 “(14) provides assurances that the agency will  
19 work with parents to secure parents’ assistance in  
20 improving the educational achievement of their chil-  
21 dren and preventing their children’s further involve-  
22 ment in delinquent activities;

23 “(15) provides assurances that the agency  
24 works with special education youth in order to meet  
25 an existing individualized education program and an



1 assurance that the agency will notify the youth's  
2 local school if such youth—

3 “(A) is identified as in need of special edu-  
4 cation services while the youth is in the facility;  
5 and

6 “(B) intends to return to the local school;

7 “(16) provides assurances that the agency will  
8 work with youth who dropped out of school before  
9 entering the facility to encourage the youth to reen-  
10 ter school once the term of incarceration has been  
11 completed or provide the youth with the skills nec-  
12 essary to gain employment, continue the education  
13 of the youth, or achieve a secondary school diploma  
14 or the recognized equivalent if the youth does not in-  
15 tend to return to school;

16 “(17) provides assurances that teachers and  
17 other qualified staff are also trained to work with  
18 children with disabilities and other students with  
19 special needs, taking into consideration the unique  
20 needs of such students;

21 “(18) describes any additional services to be  
22 provided to youth, such as career counseling, dis-  
23 tance learning, and assistance in securing student  
24 loans and grants; and



1           “(19) provides assurances that the program  
2           under this subpart will be coordinated with any pro-  
3           grams operated under the Juvenile Justice and De-  
4           linquency Prevention Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5601  
5           et seq.) or other comparable programs, if applica-  
6           ble.”.

7   **SEC. 135. USE OF FUNDS.**

8           Section 1415(a) (20 U.S.C. 6435(a)) is amended—

9           (1) in paragraph (1)(B), by inserting “, voca-  
10          tional and technical training,” after “secondary  
11          school completion”;

12          (2) in paragraph (2)(B)—

13                (A) in clause (i), by inserting “and” after  
14                the semicolon;

15                (B) in clause (ii), by striking “; and” and  
16                inserting a period; and

17                (C) by striking clause (iii);

18          (3) in paragraph (2)(C), by striking “part F of  
19          this title” and inserting “part H”; and

20          (4) in paragraph (2)(D), by striking “section  
21          14701” and inserting “section 8651”.

22   **SEC. 136. TRANSITION SERVICES.**

23           Section 1418(a) (20 U.S.C. 6438(a)) is amended by  
24           striking “10 percent” and inserting “15 percent”.



1 **SEC. 137. PURPOSE.**

2 Section 1421(3) (20 U.S.C. 6451(3)) is amended to  
3 read as follows:

4 “(3) operate programs in local schools for youth  
5 returning from correctional facilities and programs  
6 which may also serve youth at risk of dropping out  
7 of school.”.

8 **SEC. 138. PROGRAMS OPERATED BY LOCAL EDUCATIONAL**  
9 **AGENCIES.**

10 Section 1422 (20 U.S.C. 6452) is amended—

11 (1) in subsection (a), by striking “retained”;

12 (2) by amending subsection (b) to read as fol-  
13 lows:

14 “(b) SPECIAL RULE.—A local educational agency  
15 which includes a correctional facility that operates a school  
16 is not required to operate a program of support for chil-  
17 dren returning from such school to a school not operated  
18 by a correctional agency but served by such local edu-  
19 cational agency if more than 30 percent of the youth at-  
20 tending the school operated by the correctional facility will  
21 reside outside the boundaries of the local educational  
22 agency after leaving such facility.”; and

23 (3) by adding at the end the following:

24 “(d) TRANSITIONAL AND ACADEMIC SERVICES.—  
25 Transitional and supportive programs operated in local  
26 educational agencies under this subpart shall be designed





1 primarily to meet the transitional and academic needs of  
2 students returning to local educational agencies or alter-  
3 native education programs from correctional facilities.  
4 Services to students at risk of dropping out of school shall  
5 not have a negative impact on meeting the transitional and  
6 academic needs of the students returning from correc-  
7 tional facilities.”.

8 **SEC. 139. LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY APPLICATIONS.**

9 Section 1423 (20 U.S.C. 6453) is amended by strik-  
10 ing paragraphs (4) through (9) and inserting the fol-  
11 lowing:

12 “(4) a description of the program operated by  
13 participating schools for children returning from cor-  
14 rectional facilities and the types of services that such  
15 schools will provide such youth and other at-risk  
16 youth;

17 “(5) a description of the characteristics (includ-  
18 ing learning difficulties, substance abuse problems,  
19 and other special needs) of the youth who will be re-  
20 turning from correctional facilities and, as appro-  
21 priate, other at-risk youth expected to be served by  
22 the program and how the school will coordinate ex-  
23 isting educational programs to meet the unique edu-  
24 cational needs of such youth;

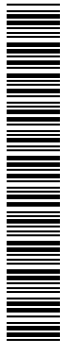


1           “(6) as appropriate, a description of how  
2 schools will coordinate with existing social, health,  
3 and other services to meet the needs of students re-  
4 turning from correctional facilities, students at risk  
5 of dropping out of school, and other participating  
6 students, including prenatal health care and nutri-  
7 tion services related to the health of the parent and  
8 child, parenting and child development classes, child  
9 care, targeted reentry and outreach programs, refer-  
10 rals to community resources, and scheduling flexi-  
11 bility;

12           “(7) as appropriate, a description of any part-  
13 nerships with local businesses to develop training,  
14 curriculum-based youth entrepreneurship education,  
15 and mentoring services for participating students;

16           “(8) as appropriate, a description of how pro-  
17 grams will involve parents in efforts to improve the  
18 educational achievement of their children, prevent  
19 the involvement of their children in delinquent activi-  
20 ties, and encourage their children to remain in  
21 school and complete their education;

22           “(9) a description of how the program under  
23 this subpart will be coordinated with other Federal,  
24 State, and local programs, such as job training pro-



1       grams and vocational and technical education pro-  
2       grams serving this at-risk population of youth.”.

3   **SEC. 140. USES OF FUNDS.**

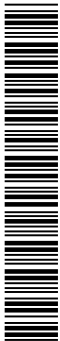
4       Section 1424 (20 U.S.C. 6454) is amended by strik-  
5   ing paragraphs (1) through (3) and inserting the fol-  
6   lowing:

7           “(1) programs that serve youth returning from  
8       correctional facilities to local schools, to assist in the  
9       transition of such youth to the school environment  
10      and help them remain in school in order to complete  
11      their education;

12          “(2) providing assistance to other youth at risk  
13      of dropping out of school, including pregnant and  
14      parenting teenagers;

15          “(3) the coordination of social, health, and  
16      other services, including day care, for participating  
17      youth, if the provision of such services will improve  
18      the likelihood that such youth will complete their  
19      education;

20          “(4) special programs to meet the unique aca-  
21      demic needs of participating youth, including voca-  
22      tional and technical education, special education, ca-  
23      reer counseling, curriculum-based youth entrepre-  
24      neurship education, and assistance in securing stu-



1 dent loans or grants for postsecondary education;  
2 and

3 “(5) programs providing mentoring and peer  
4 mediation.”.

5 **SEC. 141. PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS.**

6 Section 1425 (20 U.S.C. 6455) is amended—

7 (1) in the section heading, by striking “**THIS**  
8 **SECTION**” and inserting “***this subpart***”;

9 (2) in the matter preceding paragraph (1), by  
10 striking “this section” and inserting “this subpart”;

11 (3) in paragraph (1), by striking “where fea-  
12 sible, ensure educational programs” and inserting  
13 “to the extent practicable, ensure that educational  
14 programs”;

15 (4) in paragraphs (3) and (8), by striking  
16 “where feasible,” and inserting “to the extent prac-  
17 ticable,”;

18 (5) in paragraph (9)—

19 (A) by striking “this program” and insert-  
20 ing “this subpart”;

21 (B) by inserting “and technical” after “vo-  
22 cational”; and

23 (C) by striking “title I of the Workforce  
24 Investment Act of 1998” and inserting “other  
25 job training programs”;



1 (6) in paragraph (10), by inserting “(42 U.S.C.  
2 5601 et seq.)” after “Juvenile Justice and Delin-  
3 quency Prevention Act of 1974”; and

4 (7) by amending paragraph (11) to read as fol-  
5 lows:

6 “(11) if appropriate, work with local businesses  
7 to develop training, curriculum-based youth entre-  
8 preneurship education, and mentoring programs for  
9 youth.”.

10 **SEC. 142. PROGRAM EVALUATIONS.**

11 Section 1431(a) (20 U.S.C. 6471(a)) is amended by  
12 striking “sex, and if feasible,” and inserting “gender,”.

13 **PART E—FEDERAL EVALUATIONS AND**  
14 **DEMONSTRATIONS**

15 **SEC. 151. EVALUATIONS.**

16 Section 1501 (20 U.S.C. 6491) is amended to read  
17 as follows:

18 **“SEC. 1501. EVALUATIONS.**

19 **“(a) NATIONAL ASSESSMENT.—**

20 **“(1) IN GENERAL.—**In accordance with this  
21 section, the Secretary shall conduct a national as-  
22 sessment of programs assisted under this title.

23 **“(2) ISSUES TO BE EXAMINED.—**In conducting  
24 the assessment under this subsection, the Secretary  
25 shall examine—



1           “(A) the implementation of programs as-  
2           sisted under this title and the impact of such  
3           implementation on increasing student academic  
4           achievement, particularly schools with high con-  
5           centrations of children living in poverty;

6           “(B) the implementation of State stand-  
7           ards, assessments, and accountability systems  
8           developed under this title and the impact of  
9           such implementation on educational programs  
10          and instruction at the local level;

11          “(C) the impact of schoolwide programs  
12          and targeted assistance programs under this  
13          title on improving student academic achieve-  
14          ment;

15          “(D) the extent to which varying models of  
16          comprehensive school reform are funded under  
17          this title, and the effect of the implementation  
18          of such models on improving achievement of  
19          disadvantaged students;

20          “(E) the costs as compared to the benefits  
21          of the activities assisted under this title;

22          “(F) the impact of school choice options  
23          under section 1116 on the academic achieve-  
24          ment of disadvantaged students, on schools in



1 school improvement, and on schools from which  
2 students have transferred under such options;

3 “(G) the extent to which actions author-  
4 ized under section 1116 of this title are em-  
5 ployed by State and local educational agencies  
6 to improve the academic achievement of stu-  
7 dents in low-performing schools, and the effec-  
8 tiveness of the implementation of such actions;

9 “(H) the extent to which technical assist-  
10 ance made available under this title is used to  
11 improve the achievement of students in low-per-  
12 forming schools, and the impact of such assist-  
13 ance on such achievement;

14 “(I) the extent to which State and local  
15 fiscal accounting requirements under this title  
16 limit the flexibility of schoolwide programs;

17 “(J) the impact of the professional devel-  
18 opment activities assisted under this title on in-  
19 struction and student performance;

20 “(K) the extent to which the assistance  
21 made available under this title is targeted to  
22 disadvantaged students and schools that need  
23 them the most;

24 “(L) the effectiveness of Federal adminis-  
25 tration assistance made available under this



1 title, including monitoring and technical assist-  
2 ance; and

3 “(M) such other issues as the Secretary  
4 considers appropriate.

5 “(3) SOURCES OF INFORMATION.—In con-  
6 ducting the assessment under this subsection, the  
7 Secretary shall use information from a variety of  
8 sources, including the National Assessment of Edu-  
9 cational Progress (carried out under section 411 of  
10 the National Education Statistics Act of 1994 (20  
11 U.S.C. 9010)), state evaluations, and other research  
12 studies.

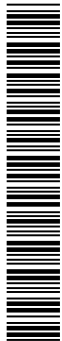
13 “(4) COORDINATION.—In carrying out this sub-  
14 section, the Secretary shall—

15 “(A) coordinate conducting the national  
16 assessment with conducting the longitudinal  
17 study described in subsection (c); and

18 “(B) ensure that the independent review  
19 panel described in subsection (d) participates in  
20 conducting the national assessment, including  
21 planning for and reviewing the assessment.

22 “(5) REPORTS.—

23 “(A) INTERIM REPORT.—Not later than 3  
24 years after the date of enactment of the Leave  
25 No Child Behind Act of 2001, the Secretary





1 shall transmit to the President and the Con-  
2 gress an interim report on the national assess-  
3 ment conducted under this subsection.

4 “(B) FINAL REPORT.—Not later than 4  
5 years after the date of enactment of the Leave  
6 No Child Behind Act of 2001, the Secretary  
7 shall transmit to the President and the Con-  
8 gress a final report on the national assessment  
9 conducted under this subsection.

10 “(b) STUDIES AND DATA COLLECTION.—

11 “(1) IN GENERAL.—In addition to other activi-  
12 ties described in this section, the Secretary may, di-  
13 rectly or through the making of grants to or con-  
14 tracts with appropriate entities—

15 “(A) conduct studies and evaluations of  
16 the need for, and effectiveness of, each program  
17 authorized under this title;

18 “(B) collect the data necessary to comply  
19 with the Government Performance and Results  
20 Act of 1993; and

21 “(C) provide guidance and technical assist-  
22 ance to State education agencies and local edu-  
23 cational agencies in developing and maintaining  
24 management information systems through  
25 which such agencies can develop program per-



1 formance indicators in order to improve services  
2 and performance.

3 “(2) MINIMUM INFORMATION.—Under this sub-  
4 section, the Secretary shall collect, at a minimum,  
5 trend information on the effect of each program au-  
6 thorized under this title, which shall complement the  
7 data collected and reported under subsections (a)  
8 and (c).

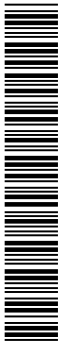
9 “(c) NATIONAL LONGITUDINAL STUDY.—

10 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall con-  
11 duct a longitudinal study of schools receiving assist-  
12 ance under this title.

13 “(2) ISSUES TO BE EXAMINED.—In carrying  
14 out this subsection, the Secretary shall ensure that  
15 the study referred to in paragraph (1) provides the  
16 Congress and educators with each of the following:

17 “(A) An accurate description and analysis  
18 of short-term and long-term effectiveness of the  
19 assistance made available under this title upon  
20 academic performance.

21 “(B) Information that can be used to im-  
22 prove the effectiveness of the assistance made  
23 available under this title in enabling students to  
24 meet challenging achievement standards.



1           “(C) An analysis of educational practices  
2 or model programs that are effective in improv-  
3 ing the achievement of disadvantaged children.

4           “(D) An analysis of the costs as compared  
5 to the benefits of the assistance made available  
6 under this title in improving the achievement of  
7 disadvantaged children.

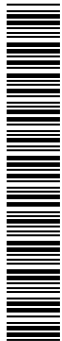
8           “(E) An analysis of the effects of the avail-  
9 ability of school choice options under section  
10 1116 on the academic achievement of disadvan-  
11 tagged students, on schools in school improve-  
12 ment, and on schools from which students have  
13 transferred under such options.

14           “(F) Such other information as the Sec-  
15 retary considers appropriate.

16           “(3) SCOPE.—In conducting the study referred  
17 to in paragraph (1), the Secretary shall ensure that  
18 the study—

19           “(A) bases its analysis on a nationally rep-  
20 resentative sample of schools participating in  
21 programs under this part;

22           “(B) to the extent practicable, includes in  
23 its analysis students who transfer to different  
24 schools during the course of the study; and



1 “(C) analyzes varying models or strategies  
2 for delivering school services, including—

3 “(i) schoolwide and targeted services;  
4 and

5 “(ii) comprehensive school reform  
6 models.

7 “(d) INDEPENDENT REVIEW PANEL.—

8 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall estab-  
9 lish an independent review panel (in this subsection  
10 referred to as the ‘Review Panel’) to advise the Sec-  
11 retary on methodological and other issues that arise  
12 in carrying out subsections (a) and (c).

13 “(2) APPOINTMENT OF MEMBERS.—

14 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subpara-  
15 graph (B), the Secretary shall appoint members  
16 of the Review Panel from among qualified indi-  
17 viduals who are—

18 “(i) specialists in statistics, evalua-  
19 tion, research, and assessment;

20 “(ii) education practitioners, including  
21 teachers, principals, and local and State  
22 superintendents; and

23 “(iii) other individuals with technical  
24 expertise who would contribute to the over-



1 all rigor and quality of the program eval-  
2 uation.

3 “(B) LIMITATIONS.—In appointing mem-  
4 bers of the Review Panel under this subpara-  
5 graph (A), the Secretary shall ensure that—

6 “(i) in order to ensure diversity, a  
7 majority of the number of individuals ap-  
8 pointed under subparagraph (A)(i) rep-  
9 resent disciplines or programs outside the  
10 field of education; and

11 “(ii) the total number of the individ-  
12 uals appointed under subparagraph (A)(ii)  
13 or (A)(iii) does not exceed  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the total  
14 number of the individuals appointed under  
15 this paragraph.

16 “(3) FUNCTIONS.—The Review Panel shall con-  
17 sult with and advise the Secretary—

18 “(A) to ensure that the assessment con-  
19 ducted under subsection (a) and the study con-  
20 ducted under subsection (c)—

21 “(i) adhere to the highest possible  
22 standards of quality with respect to re-  
23 search design, statistical analysis, and the  
24 dissemination of findings; and



1                   “(ii) use valid and reliable measures  
2                   to document program implementation and  
3                   impacts; and

4                   “(B) to ensure—

5                   “(i) that the final report described in  
6                   subsection (a)(5)(B) is reviewed not later  
7                   than 120 days after its completion by not  
8                   less than 2 independent experts in pro-  
9                   gram evaluation;

10                   “(ii) that such experts evaluate and  
11                   comment on the degree to which the report  
12                   complies with subsection (a); and

13                   “(iii) that the comments of such ex-  
14                   perts are transmitted with the report  
15                   under subsection (a)(5)(B).”.

16 **SEC. 152. DEMONSTRATIONS OF INNOVATIVE PRACTICES.**

17           (a) IN GENERAL.—Section 1502 (20 U.S.C. 6492)  
18 is amended—

19               (1) by redesignating subsection (b) as sub-  
20               section (c);

21               (2) by striking “(2) EVALUATION.—The Sec-  
22               retary” and inserting “(b) EVALUATION.—The Sec-  
23               retary” and by moving such subsection (b) 2 ems to  
24               the left;



1           (3) by striking “Such projects shall include  
2 promising” and all that follows through “career  
3 guidance opportunities.”;

4           (4) by striking “student performance stand-  
5 ards” and inserting “student achievement stand-  
6 ards”;

7           (5) by inserting “academic” after “to meet  
8 challenging State”; and

9           (6) by striking “(a) DEMONSTRATION PRO-  
10 GRAMS” AND ALL THAT FOLLOWS THROUGH “IN  
11 GENERAL.—From the” and inserting “(a) IN GEN-  
12 ERAL.—From the”.

13 **SEC. 153. ELLENDER-CLOSE UP FELLOWSHIP PROGRAM;**  
14 **DROPOUT REPORTING.**

15           (a) IN GENERAL.—Part E of title I (20 U.S.C. 6491  
16 et seq.) is further amended by adding at the end the fol-  
17 lowing:

18 **“SEC. 1503. ELLENDER-CLOSE UP FELLOWSHIP PROGRAM**

19           “(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds the following:

20           “(1) It is a worthwhile goal to ensure that all  
21 students in America are prepared for responsible  
22 citizenship and that all students should have the op-  
23 portunity to be involved in activities that promote  
24 and demonstrate good citizenship.



1           “(2) It is a worthwhile goal to ensure that  
2 America’s educators have access to programs for the  
3 continued improvement of their professional skills.

4           “(3) Allen J. Ellender, a Senator from Lou-  
5 isiana and President pro tempore of the United  
6 States Senate, had a distinguished career in public  
7 service characterized by extraordinary energy and  
8 real concern for young people. Senator Ellender pro-  
9 vided valuable support and encouragement to the  
10 Close Up Foundation, a nonpartisan, nonprofit foun-  
11 dation promoting knowledge and understanding of  
12 the Federal Government among young people and  
13 educators. Therefore, it is a fitting and appropriate  
14 tribute to Senator Ellender to provide fellowships in  
15 his name to students of limited economic means and  
16 the teachers who work with such students, so that  
17 such students and teachers may participate in the  
18 programs supported by the Close Up Foundation.

19           “(4) The Close Up Foundation is a non-  
20 partisan, nonprofit, education foundation promoting  
21 civic responsibility and knowledge and understanding  
22 of the Federal Government among young people and  
23 educators. The Congress has consistently supported  
24 the Close Up Foundation’s work with disadvantaged  
25 young people and their educators through the Allen





1 J. Ellender Fellowship Program. Therefore, it is fit-  
2 ting and appropriate to continue support under the  
3 successor Ellender-Close Up Fellowship Program to  
4 students of limited economic means and the teachers  
5 who work with such students, so that such students  
6 and teachers may participate in the programs sup-  
7 ported by the Close Up Foundation.

8 “(b) PROGRAM FOR MIDDLE AND SECONDARY  
9 SCHOOL STUDENTS.—

10 “(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—

11 “(A) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—In accord-  
12 ance with this subsection, the Secretary may  
13 make grants to the Close Up Foundation of  
14 Washington, District of Columbia, a non-  
15 partisan, nonprofit foundation, for the purpose  
16 of assisting the Close Up Foundation in car-  
17 rying out its programs of increasing civic re-  
18 sponsibility and understanding of the Federal  
19 Government among middle and secondary  
20 school students.

21 “(B) USE OF FUNDS.—Grants under this  
22 subsection shall be used only to provide finan-  
23 cial assistance to economically disadvantaged  
24 students who participate in the program de-  
25 scribed in subparagraph (A). Financial assist-



1           ance received pursuant to this subsection by  
2           such students shall be known as Ellender-Close  
3           Up fellowships.

4           “(2) APPLICATIONS.—

5                   “(A) APPLICATION REQUIRED.—No grant  
6           under this subsection may be made except upon  
7           an application at such time, in such manner,  
8           and accompanied by such information as the  
9           Secretary may reasonably require.

10                   “(B) CONTENTS OF APPLICATION.—Each  
11           application submitted under this paragraph  
12           shall contain provisions to assure—

13                           “(i) that fellowship grants are made  
14                           to economically disadvantaged middle and  
15                           secondary school students;

16                           “(ii) that every effort will be made to  
17                           ensure the participation of students from  
18                           rural and small town areas, as well as from  
19                           urban areas, and that in awarding fellow-  
20                           ships to economically disadvantaged stu-  
21                           dents, special consideration will be given to  
22                           the participation of students with special  
23                           educational needs, including students with  
24                           disabilities, ethnic minority students, re-



1 cent immigrants, and gifted and talented  
2 students; and

3 “(iii) the proper disbursement of the  
4 funds received under this subsection.

5 “(c) PROGRAM FOR MIDDLE AND SECONDARY  
6 SCHOOL TEACHERS.—

7 “(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—

8 “(A) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—In accord-  
9 ance with this subsection, the Secretary may  
10 make grants to the Close Up Foundation of  
11 Washington, District of Columbia, a non-  
12 partisan, nonprofit foundation, for the purpose  
13 of assisting the Close Up Foundation in car-  
14 rying out its programs of professional develop-  
15 ment for middle and secondary school teachers  
16 and to promote greater civic understanding and  
17 responsibility among the students of such teach-  
18 ers.

19 “(B) USE OF FUNDS.—Grants under this subsection  
20 shall be used only for financial assistance to teachers who  
21 participate in the program described in subparagraph (A).  
22 Financial assistance received pursuant to this subpart by  
23 such individuals shall be known as Ellender-Close Up fel-  
24 lowships.

25 “(2) APPLICATIONS.—



1           “(A) APPLICATION REQUIRED.—No grant  
2 under this subsection may be made except upon  
3 an application at such time, in such manner,  
4 and accompanied by such information as the  
5 Secretary may reasonably require.

6           “(B) CONTENTS OF APPLICATION.—Each  
7 application submitted under this paragraph  
8 shall contain provisions to assure—

9                   “(i) that fellowship grants are made  
10 only to teachers who have worked with at  
11 least one student from such teacher’s  
12 school who participates in the programs  
13 described in subsection (b);

14                   “(ii) that no teacher in each school  
15 participating in the programs assisted  
16 under subsection (b) may receive more  
17 than one fellowship in any fiscal year; and

18                   “(iii) the proper disbursement of the  
19 funds received under this subsection.

20           “(d) PROGRAMS FOR RECENT IMMIGRANTS AND STU-  
21 DENTS OF MIGRANT PARENTS.—

22                   “(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—

23                   “(A) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—In accord-  
24 ance with this subsection, the Secretary may  
25 make grants to the Close Up Foundation of



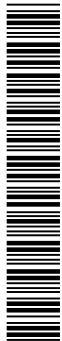
1 Washington, District of Columbia, a non-  
2 partisan, nonprofit foundation, for the purpose  
3 of assisting the Close Up Foundation in car-  
4 rying out its programs of increasing under-  
5 standing of the Federal Government among  
6 economically disadvantaged recent immigrants  
7 and students of migrant parents.

8 “(B) USE OF FUNDS.—Grants under this  
9 subsection shall be used for financial assistance  
10 to economically disadvantaged older Americans,  
11 recent immigrants and students of migrant par-  
12 ents who participate in the program described  
13 in subsection (a). Financial assistance received  
14 pursuant to this subpart by such individuals  
15 shall be known as Ellender-Close Up fellow-  
16 ships.

17 “(2) APPLICATIONS.—

18 “(A) APPLICATION REQUIRED.—No grant  
19 under this subsection may be made except upon  
20 application at such time, in such manner, and  
21 accompanied by such information as the Sec-  
22 retary may reasonably require.

23 “(B) CONTENTS OF APPLICATION.—Each  
24 application submitted under this paragraph  
25 shall contain provisions—



1           “(i) to assure that fellowship grants  
2           are made to economically disadvantaged  
3           recent immigrants and students of migrant  
4           parents;

5           “(ii) to assure that every effort will be  
6           made to ensure the participation of recent  
7           immigrants and students of migrant par-  
8           ents from rural and small town areas, as  
9           well as from urban areas, and that in  
10          awarding fellowships, special consideration  
11          will be given to the participation of recent  
12          immigrants and students of migrant par-  
13          ents with special needs, including individ-  
14          uals with disabilities, ethnic minorities, and  
15          gifted and talented students;

16          “(iii) that fully describe the activities  
17          to be carried out with the proceeds of the  
18          grant; and

19          “(iv) to assure the proper disburse-  
20          ment of the funds received under this sub-  
21          section.

22          “(e) GENERAL PROVISIONS.—

23                 “(1) ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS.—

24                         “(A) GENERAL RULE.—Payments under  
25                         this section may be made in installments, in ad-



1 vance, or by way of reimbursement, with nec-  
2 essary adjustments on account of underpayment  
3 or overpayment.

4 “(B) AUDIT RULE.—The Comptroller Gen-  
5 eral of the United States or any of the Comp-  
6 troller General’s duly authorized representatives  
7 shall have access for the purpose of audit and  
8 examination to any books, documents, papers,  
9 and records that are pertinent to any grant  
10 under this section.

11 “(f) LIMITATION.—Of the funds appropriated to  
12 carry out this section under section 1002, the Secretary  
13 may use not more than 30 percent to carry out subsection  
14 (c) of this section.

15 **“SEC. 1504. DROPOUT REPORTING.**

16 “State educational agencies receiving funds under  
17 this title shall annually report to the National Center on  
18 Education Statistics (established under section 403 of the  
19 National Education Statistics Act of 1994 (20 U.S.C.  
20 9002)) on the dropout rate of students in the State, as  
21 defined for the Center’s Common Core of Data.”.

22 (b) CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.—Notwithstanding  
23 any other provision of this Act, any person or agency that  
24 was awarded a grant under part G of title X (20 U.S.C.  
25 8161 et seq.) prior to the date of the enactment of this



1 Act shall continue to receive funds in accordance with the  
2 terms of such award until the date on which the award  
3 period terminates under such terms.

4 **PART F—COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM**

5 **SEC. 161. SCHOOL REFORM.**

6 Part F of title I is amended to read as follows:

7 **“PART F—COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM**

8 **“SEC. 1601. COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM.**

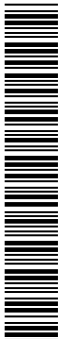
9 “(a) FINDINGS AND PURPOSE.—

10 “(1) FINDINGS.—Congress finds the following:

11 “(A) A number of schools across the coun-  
12 try have shown impressive gains in student per-  
13 formance through the use of comprehensive  
14 models for schoolwide change that incorporate  
15 virtually all aspects of school operations.

16 “(B) No single comprehensive school re-  
17 form model may be suitable for every school,  
18 however, schools should be encouraged to exam-  
19 ine successful, externally developed comprehen-  
20 sive school reform approaches as they under-  
21 take comprehensive school reform.

22 “(C) Comprehensive school reform is an  
23 important means by which children are assisted  
24 in meeting challenging State student academic  
25 achievement standards.





1           “(2) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this section is  
2           to provide financial incentives for schools to develop  
3           comprehensive school reforms, based upon scientif-  
4           ically-based research and effective practices that in-  
5           clude an emphasis on basic academics and parental  
6           involvement so that all children can meet challenging  
7           State content and academic achievement standards.

8           “(b) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—

9           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized  
10          to provide grants to State educational agencies to  
11          provide subgrants to local educational agencies to  
12          carry out the purpose described in subsection (a)(2).

13          “(2) ALLOCATION.—

14                 “(A) RESERVATION.—Of the amount ap-  
15                 propriated under this section, the Secretary  
16                 may reserve—

17                         “(i) not more than 1 percent for  
18                         schools supported by the Bureau of Indian  
19                         Affairs and in the United States Virgin Is-  
20                         lands, Guam, American Samoa, and the  
21                         Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana  
22                         Islands;

23                         “(ii) not more than 1 percent to con-  
24                         duct national evaluation activities de-  
25                         scribed under subsection (e); and



1                   “(iii) not more than 2 percent of the  
2                   amount appropriated in fiscal year 2002 to  
3                   carry out this part, for quality initiatives  
4                   described under subsection (f).

5                   “(B) IN GENERAL.—Of the amount of  
6                   funds remaining after the reservation under  
7                   subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall allocate  
8                   to each State for a fiscal year, an amount that  
9                   bears the same ratio to the remainder for that  
10                  fiscal year as the amount made available under  
11                  section 1124 to the State for the preceding fis-  
12                  cal year bears to the total amount allocated  
13                  under section 1124 to all States for that year.

14                  “(C) REALLOCATION.—If a State does not  
15                  apply for funds under this section, the Sec-  
16                  retary shall reallocate such funds to other  
17                  States that do apply in proportion to the  
18                  amount allocated to such States under subpara-  
19                  graph (B).

20                  “(c) STATE AWARDS.—

21                         “(1) STATE APPLICATION.—

22                                 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each State edu-  
23                                 cational agency that desires to receive a grant  
24                                 under this section shall submit an application to  
25                                 the Secretary at such time, in such manner and



1 containing such other information as the Sec-  
2 retary may reasonably require.

3 “(B) CONTENTS.—Each State application  
4 shall also describe—

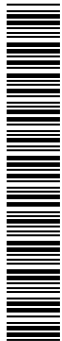
5 “(i) the process and selection criteria  
6 by which the State educational agency,  
7 using expert review, will select local edu-  
8 cational agencies to receive subgrants  
9 under this section;

10 “(ii) how the agency will ensure that  
11 funds under this part are used only for  
12 comprehensive school reform programs  
13 that—

14 “(I) include each of the compo-  
15 nents described in subsection (d)(2);

16 “(II) have the capacity to im-  
17 prove the academic achievement of all  
18 students in core academic subjects  
19 within participating schools; and

20 “(III) are supported by technical  
21 assistance providers that have a suc-  
22 cessful track record, financial sta-  
23 bility, and the capacity to deliver  
24 high-quality materials and profes-



1                   sional development for school per-  
2                   sonnel.

3                   “(iii) how the agency will disseminate  
4                   materials regarding information on com-  
5                   prehensive school reforms that are based  
6                   on scientifically-based research and effec-  
7                   tive practices;

8                   “(iv) how the agency will evaluate an-  
9                   nually the implementation of such reforms  
10                  and measure the extent to which the re-  
11                  forms resulted in increased student aca-  
12                  demic performance; and

13                  “(v) how the agency will provide, tech-  
14                  nical assistance to the local educational  
15                  agency or consortia of local educational  
16                  agencies, and to participating schools, in  
17                  evaluating, developing, and implementing  
18                  comprehensive school reform.

19                  “(2) USES OF FUNDS.—

20                  “(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in  
21                  subparagraph (E), a State educational agency  
22                  that receives an award under this section shall  
23                  use such funds to provide competitive grants to  
24                  local educational agencies or consortia of local  
25                  educational agencies in the State receiving



1 funds under part A to support comprehensive  
2 school reforms in schools eligible for funds  
3 under such part.

4 “(B) GRANT REQUIREMENTS.—A grant to  
5 a local educational agency or consortium shall  
6 be—

7 “(i) of sufficient size and scope to  
8 support the initial costs of the comprehen-  
9 sive school reforms selected or designed by  
10 each school identified in the application of  
11 the local educational agency or consortium;

12 “(ii) in an amount not less than  
13 \$50,000 to each participating school; and

14 “(iii) renewable for two additional 1-  
15 year periods after the initial 1-year grant  
16 is made if schools are making substantial  
17 progress in the implementation of their re-  
18 forms.

19 “(C) PRIORITY.—The State, in awarding  
20 grants under this paragraph, shall give priority  
21 to local educational agencies that—

22 “(i) plan to use the funds in schools  
23 identified as being in need of improvement  
24 or corrective action under section 1116(e);  
25 or



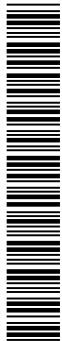
1                   “(ii) demonstrate a commitment to  
2                   assist schools with budget allocation, pro-  
3                   fessional development, and other strategies  
4                   necessary to ensure the comprehensive  
5                   school reforms are properly implemented  
6                   and are sustained in the future.

7                   “(D) GRANT CONSIDERATION.—In making  
8                   subgrant awards under this part, the State edu-  
9                   cational agency shall take into account the equi-  
10                  table distribution of awards to different geo-  
11                  graphic regions within the State, including  
12                  urban and rural areas, and to schools serving  
13                  elementary and secondary students.

14                  “(E) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—A State  
15                  educational agency that receives a grant award  
16                  under this section may reserve not more than 5  
17                  percent of such award for administrative, eval-  
18                  uation, and technical assistance expenses.

19                  “(F) SUPPLEMENT.—Funds made avail-  
20                  able under this section shall be used to supple-  
21                  ment, not supplant, any other Federal, State,  
22                  or local funds that would otherwise be available  
23                  to carry out this section.

24                  “(3) REPORTING.—Each State educational  
25                  agency that receives an award under this section



1 shall provide to the Secretary such information as  
2 the Secretary may require, including the names of  
3 local educational agencies and schools selected to re-  
4 ceive subgrant awards under this section, the  
5 amount of such award, a description of the com-  
6 prehensive school reforms selected and in use and a  
7 copy of the State's annual evaluation of the imple-  
8 mentation of comprehensive school reforms sup-  
9 ported under this part and student achievement re-  
10 sults.

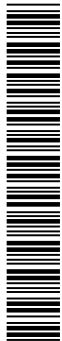
11 “(d) LOCAL AWARDS.—

12 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
13 agency or consortium that applies for a subgrant  
14 under this section shall—

15 “(A) identify which schools eligible for  
16 funds under part A plan to implement a com-  
17 prehensive school reform program, including the  
18 projected costs of such a program;

19 “(B) describe the comprehensive school re-  
20 forms based on scientifically-based research and  
21 effective practices that such schools will imple-  
22 ment;

23 “(C) describe how the agency or consor-  
24 tium will provide technical assistance and sup-  
25 port for the effective implementation of the



1 school reforms based on scientifically-based re-  
2 search and effective practices selected by such  
3 schools; and

4 “(D) describe how the agency or consor-  
5 tium will evaluate the implementation of such  
6 reforms and measure the results achieved in im-  
7 proving student academic performance.

8 “(2) COMPONENTS OF THE PROGRAM.—A local  
9 educational agency that receives a subgrant award  
10 under this section shall provide such funds to  
11 schools that implement a comprehensive school re-  
12 form program that—

13 “(A) employs proven strategies and proven  
14 methods for student learning, teaching, and  
15 school management that are based on scientif-  
16 ically-based research and effective practices and  
17 have been replicated successfully in similar  
18 schools;

19 “(B) integrates a comprehensive design for  
20 effective school functioning, including instruc-  
21 tion, assessment, classroom management, pro-  
22 fessional development, parental involvement,  
23 and school management, that aligns the school’s  
24 curriculum, technology, and professional devel-  
25 opment into a comprehensive reform plan for





1 schoolwide change designed to enable all stu-  
2 dents to meet challenging State content and  
3 challenging student performance standards and  
4 addresses needs identified through a school  
5 needs assessment;

6 “(C) provides high-quality and continuous  
7 teacher and staff professional development;

8 “(D) includes measurable goals for student  
9 performance and benchmarks for meeting such  
10 goals;

11 “(E) is supported by teachers, principals,  
12 administrators, and other professional staff;

13 “(F) provides for the meaningful involve-  
14 ment of parents and the local community in  
15 planning and implementing school improvement  
16 activities;

17 “(G) uses high quality external technical  
18 support and assistance from an entity, which  
19 may be an institution of higher education, with  
20 experience and expertise in schoolwide reform  
21 and improvement;

22 “(H) includes a plan for the annual eval-  
23 uation of the implementation of school reforms  
24 and the student results achieved;



1           “(I) identifies how other resources, includ-  
2           ing Federal, State, local, and private resources,  
3           available to the school will be used to coordinate  
4           services to support and sustain the school re-  
5           form effort; and

6           “(J)(i) has been found, through rigorous  
7           field experiments in multiple sites, to signifi-  
8           cantly improve the academic performance of  
9           students participating in such activity or pro-  
10          gram as compared to similar students in similar  
11          schools, who have not participated in such ac-  
12          tivity or program; or

13          “(ii) has been found to have strong evi-  
14          dence that such model will significantly improve  
15          the performance of participating children.

16          “(3) SPECIAL RULE.—A school that receives  
17          funds to develop a comprehensive school reform pro-  
18          gram shall not be limited to using nationally avail-  
19          able approaches, but may develop its own com-  
20          prehensive school reform program for schoolwide  
21          change that complies with paragraph (2).

22          “(e) EVALUATION AND REPORT.—

23                 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall develop  
24                 a plan for a national evaluation of the programs de-  
25                 veloped pursuant to this section.

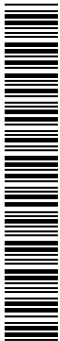


1           “(2) EVALUATION.—This national evaluation  
2 shall evaluate the implementation and results  
3 achieved by schools after 3 years of implementing  
4 comprehensive school reforms, and assess the effec-  
5 tiveness of comprehensive school reforms in schools  
6 with diverse characteristics.

7           “(3) REPORTS.—Prior to the completion of a  
8 national evaluation, the Secretary shall submit an  
9 interim report outlining first year implementation  
10 activities to the Committees on Education and the  
11 Workforce and Appropriations of the House of Rep-  
12 resentatives and the Committees on Health, Edu-  
13 cation, Labor, and Pensions and Appropriations of  
14 the Senate.

15          “(f) QUALITY INITIATIVES.—The Secretary, through  
16 grants or contracts, shall provide funds for the following  
17 activities:

18           (1) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—A joint public  
19 and private partnership that receives matching funds  
20 from private organizations, in order to assist States,  
21 local educational agencies, and schools in making in-  
22 formed decisions when approving or selecting pro-  
23 viders of comprehensive school reform, consistent  
24 with the requirements described in subsection (d)(3).



1           (2) OTHER ACTIVITIES.—Other activities  
2           that—

3                   (A) encourage the development of com-  
4                   prehensive reform models;

5                   (B) build the capacity of comprehensive  
6                   school reform providers to increase the number  
7                   of schools the providers can serve; and

8                   (C) ensure that schools served receive high  
9                   quality services that meet the needs of their  
10                  teachers and students.”.

11   **PART G—RURAL EDUCATION FLEXIBILITY AND**  
12                                   **ASSISTANCE**

13   **SEC. 171. RURAL EDUCATION.**

14           Title I is amended by adding at the end the following  
15   new part:

16   **“PART G—RURAL EDUCATION FLEXIBILITY AND**  
17                                   **ASSISTANCE**

18   **“SEC. 1701. SHORT TITLE.**

19           “‘This part may be cited as the ‘Rural Education Ini-  
20   tiative Act’.

21   **“SEC. 1702. FINDINGS.**

22           “Congress finds the following:

23                   “(1) While there are rural education initiatives  
24                  identified at the State and local level, no Federal



1 education policy focuses on the specific and unique  
2 needs of rural school districts and schools.

3 “(2) Small school districts often cannot use  
4 Federal grant funds distributed by formula because  
5 the formula allocation does not provide enough rev-  
6 enue to carry out the program the grant is intended  
7 to fund.

8 “(3) Rural schools often cannot compete for  
9 Federal funding distributed by competitive grants  
10 because the schools lack the personnel needed to  
11 prepare grant applications and the resources to hire  
12 specialists in the writing of Federal grant proposals.

13 “(4) A critical problem for rural school districts  
14 involves the hiring and retention of qualified admin-  
15 istrators and certified teachers (especially in read-  
16 ing, science, and mathematics). As a result, teachers  
17 in rural schools are almost twice as likely to provide  
18 instruction in three or more subject areas than  
19 teachers in urban schools. Rural schools also face  
20 other tough challenges, such as shrinking local tax  
21 bases, high transportation costs, aging buildings,  
22 limited course offerings, and limited resources.

23 **“Subpart 1—Rural Education Flexibility**

24 **“SEC. 1711. FORMULA GRANT PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.**

25 “(a) ALTERNATIVE USES.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other  
2 provision of law, an eligible local educational agency  
3 may use the applicable funding, that the agency is  
4 eligible to receive from the State educational agency  
5 for a fiscal year, to carry out local activities author-  
6 ized in part A of title I, part A of title II, part A  
7 of title III, part A of title IV, or part A or B of title  
8 V.

9           “(2) NOTIFICATION.—An eligible local edu-  
10 cational agency shall notify the State educational  
11 agency of the local educational agency’s intention to  
12 use the applicable funding in accordance with para-  
13 graph (1) not later than a date that is established  
14 by the State educational agency for the notification.

15           “(b) ELIGIBILITY.—

16           “(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency  
17 shall be eligible to use the applicable funding in ac-  
18 cordance with subsection (a) if—

19           “(A)(i) the total number of students in av-  
20 erage daily attendance at all of the schools  
21 served by the local educational agency is less  
22 than 600; and

23           “(ii) all of the schools served by the local  
24 educational agency are designated with a school



1 locale code of 7 or 8 as determined by the Sec-  
2 retary of Education; or

3 “(B) the agency meets the criteria estab-  
4 lished in subparagraph (A)(i) and the Sec-  
5 retary, in accordance with paragraph (2),  
6 grants the local educational agency’s request to  
7 waive the criteria described in subparagraph  
8 (A)(ii).

9 “(2) CERTIFICATION.—The Secretary shall de-  
10 termine whether or not to waive the criteria de-  
11 scribed in paragraph (1)(A)(ii) based on a dem-  
12 onstration by a local educational agency and concu-  
13 rrence by the State educational agency that the local  
14 educational agency is located in an area defined as  
15 rural by a governmental agency of the State.

16 “(c) APPLICABLE FUNDING.—In this section, the  
17 term ‘applicable funding’ means funds provided under  
18 part A of title II, section 3106, part A of title IV, part  
19 A of title V, and section 5212(2)(A).

20 “(d) DISBURSEMENT.—Each State educational agen-  
21 cy that receives applicable funding for a fiscal year shall  
22 disburse the applicable funding to local educational agen-  
23 cies for alternative uses under this section for the fiscal  
24 year at the same time that the State educational agency  
25 disburses the applicable funding to local educational agen-



1 cies that do not intend to use the applicable funding for  
2 such alternative uses for the fiscal year.

3 “(e) SUPPLEMENT NOT SUPPLANT.—Funds used  
4 under this section shall be used to supplement and not  
5 supplant any other Federal, State, or local education  
6 funds that would otherwise be available for the purpose  
7 of this subpart.

8 “(f) APPLICABLE RULE.—Except as otherwise pro-  
9 vided in this subpart, funds transferred under this subpart  
10 are subject to each of the rules and requirements applica-  
11 ble to the funds allocated by the Secretary under the provi-  
12 sion to which the transferred funds are transferred.

13 **“SEC. 1712. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.**

14 “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized to  
15 award grants to eligible local educational agencies under  
16 section 1711(b) to enable the local educational agencies  
17 to support local or statewide education reform efforts in-  
18 tended to improve the academic achievement of elementary  
19 school and secondary school students and the quality of  
20 instruction provided for the students.

21 “(b) ALLOCATION.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in para-  
23 graph (3), the Secretary shall award a grant to an  
24 eligible local educational agency under section  
25 1711(b) for a fiscal year in an amount equal to the





1 initial amount determined under paragraph (2) for  
2 the fiscal year minus the total amount received  
3 under the provisions of law described under section  
4 1711(e) for the preceding fiscal year.

5 “(2) DETERMINATION OF THE INITIAL  
6 AMOUNT.—The initial amount referred to in para-  
7 graph (1) is equal to \$100 multiplied by the total  
8 number of students, over 50 students, in average  
9 daily attendance in such eligible agency plus  
10 \$20,000, except that the initial amount may not ex-  
11 ceed \$60,000.

12 “(3) RATABLE ADJUSTMENT.—

13 “(A) IN GENERAL.—If the amount made  
14 available for this subpart for any fiscal year is  
15 not sufficient to pay in full the amounts that  
16 local educational agencies are eligible to receive  
17 under paragraph (1) for such year, the Sec-  
18 retary shall ratably reduce such amounts for  
19 such year.

20 “(B) ADDITIONAL AMOUNTS.—If addi-  
21 tional funds become available for making pay-  
22 ments under paragraph (1) for such fiscal year,  
23 payments that were reduced under subpara-  
24 graph (A) shall be increased on the same basis  
25 as such payments were reduced.



1           “(4) CENSUS DETERMINATION.—

2                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
3           agency desiring a grant under this section shall  
4           conduct a census not later than December 1 of  
5           each year to determine the number of kinder-  
6           garten through grade 12 students in average  
7           daily attendance at the schools served by the  
8           local educational agency.

9                   “(B) SUBMISSION.—Each local educational  
10           agency shall submit the number described in  
11           subparagraph (A) to the Secretary not later  
12           than March 1 of each year.

13           “(c) DISBURSAL.—The Secretary shall disburse the  
14           funds awarded to a local educational agency under this  
15           section for a fiscal year not later than July 1 of that year.

16           “(d) SPECIAL RULE.—A local educational agency  
17           that is eligible to receive a grant under this subpart for  
18           a fiscal year shall be ineligible to receive funds for such  
19           fiscal year under subpart 2.

20           “(e) SUPPLEMENT NOT SUPPLANT.—Funds made  
21           available under this section shall be used to supplement  
22           and not supplant any other Federal, State, or local edu-  
23           cation funds.

24           **“SEC. 1713. ACCOUNTABILITY.**

25           “(a) ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT.—



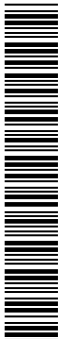
1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
2 agency that uses or receives funds under section  
3 1711 or 1712 for a fiscal year shall administer an  
4 assessment consistent with section 1111.

5           “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—Each local educational  
6 agency that uses or receives funds under section  
7 1711 or 1712 shall use the same assessment de-  
8 scribed in paragraph (1) for each year of partici-  
9 tion in the program under such section.

10          “(b) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY DETERMINATION  
11 REGARDING CONTINUING PARTICIPATION.—Each State  
12 educational agency that receives funding under the provi-  
13 sions of law described in section 1711(c) shall—

14           “(1) after the second year that a local edu-  
15 cational agency participates in a program under sec-  
16 tion 1711 or 1712 and on the basis of the results  
17 of the assessments described in subsection (a), deter-  
18 mine whether the schools served by the local edu-  
19 cational agency participating in the program per-  
20 formed in accordance with section 1111; and

21           “(2) only permit those local educational agen-  
22 cies that so participated and make adequate yearly  
23 progress, as described in section 1111(b)(2), to con-  
24 tinue to so participate.



1           **“Subpart 2—Rural Education Assistance**

2   **“SEC. 1721. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.**

3           “(a) RESERVATIONS.—From amounts appropriated  
4 under section 1002(f) for this subpart for a fiscal year,  
5 the Secretary shall reserve ½ of 1 percent to make awards  
6 to elementary or secondary schools operated or supported  
7 by the Bureau of Indian Affairs to carry out the purpose  
8 of this subpart.

9           “(b) GRANTS TO STATES.—

10           “(1) IN GENERAL.—From amounts appro-  
11 priated under section 1002(f) for this subpart that  
12 are not reserved under subsection (a), the Secretary  
13 shall award grants for a fiscal year to State edu-  
14 cational agencies that have applications approved  
15 under section 1723 to enable the State educational  
16 agencies to award subgrants to eligible local edu-  
17 cational agencies for local authorized activities de-  
18 scribed in subsection (c)(2).

19           “(2) ALLOCATION.—From amounts appro-  
20 priated for this subpart, the Secretary shall allocate  
21 to each State educational agency for a fiscal year an  
22 amount that bears the same ratio to the amount of  
23 funds appropriated under section 1002(f) for this  
24 subpart that are not reserved under subsection (a)  
25 as the number of students in average daily attend-  
26 ance served by eligible local educational agencies in



1 the State bears to the number of all such students  
2 served by eligible local educational agencies in all  
3 States for that fiscal year.

4 “(3) DIRECT AWARDS TO SPECIALLY QUALI-  
5 FIED AGENCIES.—

6 “(A) NONPARTICIPATING STATE.—If a  
7 State educational agency elects not to partici-  
8 pate in the program under this subpart or does  
9 not have an application approved under section  
10 1723 a specially qualified agency in such State  
11 desiring a grant under this subpart shall submit  
12 an application under such section directly to the  
13 Secretary to receive an award under this sub-  
14 part.

15 “(B) DIRECT AWARDS TO SPECIALLY  
16 QUALIFIED AGENCIES.—The Secretary may  
17 award, on a competitive basis, the amount the  
18 State educational agency is eligible to receive  
19 under paragraph (2) directly to specially quali-  
20 fied agencies in the State.

21 “(c) LOCAL AWARDS.—

22 “(1) ELIGIBILITY.—A local educational agency  
23 shall be eligible to receive funds under this subpart  
24 if—



1           “(A) 20 percent or more of the children  
2           aged 5 to 17, inclusive, served by the local edu-  
3           cational agency are from families with incomes  
4           below the poverty line; and

5           “(B) all of the schools served by the agen-  
6           cy are designated with a school code of 6, 7, or  
7           8 as determined by the Secretary of Education.

8           “(2) USES OF FUNDS.—Grant funds awarded  
9           to local educational agencies or made available to  
10          schools under this subpart shall be used for—

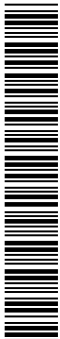
11          “(A) teacher recruitment and retention, in-  
12          cluding the use of signing bonuses and other fi-  
13          nancial incentives;

14          “(B) teacher professional development, in-  
15          cluding programs that train teachers to utilize  
16          technology to improve teaching and to train  
17          special needs teachers;

18          “(C) educational technology, including  
19          software and hardware as described in part B  
20          of title V;

21          “(D) parental involvement activities; or

22          “(E) programs to improve student aca-  
23          demic achievement.



1 **“SEC. 1722. STATE DISTRIBUTION OF FUNDS.**

2 “(a) AWARD BASIS.—A State educational agency  
3 shall award grants to eligible local educational agencies—

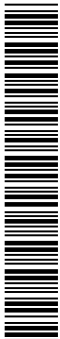
4 “(1) on a competitive basis; or

5 “(2) according to a formula based on the num-  
6 ber of students in average daily attendance served  
7 by the eligible local educational agencies or schools  
8 (as appropriate) in the State, as determined by the  
9 State.

10 “(b) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—A State educational  
11 agency receiving a grant under this subpart may not use  
12 more than 5 percent of the amount of the grant for State  
13 administrative costs.

14 **“SEC. 1723. APPLICATIONS.**

15 “Each State educational agency and specially quali-  
16 fied agency desiring to receive a grant under this subpart  
17 shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time,  
18 in such manner, and accompanied by such information as  
19 the Secretary may require. Such application shall include  
20 specific measurable goals and objectives relating to in-  
21 creased student academic achievement, decreased student  
22 dropout rates, or such other factors that the State edu-  
23 cational agency or specially qualified agency may choose  
24 to measure.



1 **“SEC. 1724. REPORTS.**

2 “(a) STATE REPORTS.—Each State educational  
3 agency that receives a grant under this subpart shall pro-  
4 vide an annual report to the Secretary. The report shall  
5 describe—

6 “(1) the method the State educational agency  
7 used to award grants to eligible local educational  
8 agencies and to provide assistance to schools under  
9 this subpart;

10 “(2) how local educational agencies and schools  
11 used funds provided under this subpart; and

12 “(3) the degree to which progress has been  
13 made toward meeting the goals and objectives de-  
14 scribed in the application submitted under section  
15 1723.

16 “(b) SPECIALLY QUALIFIED AGENCY REPORT.—  
17 Each specially qualified agency that receives a grant under  
18 this subpart shall provide an annual report to the Sec-  
19 retary. Such report shall describe—

20 “(1) how such agency uses funds provided  
21 under this subpart; and

22 “(2) the degree to which progress has been  
23 made toward meeting the goals and objectives de-  
24 scribed in the application submitted under section  
25 1723.





1       “(c) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—The Secretary shall  
2 prepare and submit to the Committee on Education and  
3 the Workforce for the House of Representatives and the  
4 Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions for  
5 the Senate an annual report. The report shall describe—

6           “(1) the methods the State educational agency  
7 used to award grants to eligible local educational  
8 agencies and to provide assistance to schools under  
9 this subpart;

10          “(2) how eligible local educational agencies and  
11 schools used funds provided under this subpart; and

12          “(3) progress made in meeting specific measur-  
13 able educational goals and objectives.

14 **“SEC. 1725. PERFORMANCE REVIEW.**

15       “Three years after a State educational agency or spe-  
16 cially qualified agency receives funds under this part, the  
17 Secretary shall review the progress of such agency toward  
18 achieving the goals and objectives included in its applica-  
19 tion, to determine whether the agency has made progress  
20 toward meeting such goals and objectives. To review the  
21 performance of each agency, the Secretary shall—

22           “(1) review the use of funds of such agency  
23 under section 1721(c)(2); and

24           “(2) deny the provision of additional funds in  
25 subsequent fiscal years to an agency only if the Sec-



1       retary determines, after notice and an opportunity  
2       for a hearing, that the agency's use of funds has  
3       been inadequate to justify continuation of such fund-  
4       ing.

5       **“SEC. 1726. DEFINITIONS.**

6       “In this subpart—

7               “(1) The term ‘poverty line’ means the poverty  
8       line (as defined by the Office of Management and  
9       Budget, and revised annually in accordance with sec-  
10      tion 673(2) of the Community Services Block Grant  
11      Act (42 U.S.C. 9902(2))) applicable to a family of  
12      the size involved.

13              “(2) The term ‘specially qualified agency’  
14      means an eligible local educational agency, located in  
15      a State that does not participate in a program under  
16      this subpart in a fiscal year, that may apply directly  
17      to the Secretary for a grant in such year under sec-  
18      tion 1721(b)(3)(A).

19                      **“Subpart 3—General Provisions**

20      **“SEC. 1731. DEFINITION.**

21              “In this part, the term ‘State’ means each of the 50  
22      States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth  
23      of Puerto Rico.



1       **PART H—GENERAL PROVISIONS OF TITLE I**

2       **SEC. 181. GENERAL PROVISIONS.**

3           Title I is amended further by adding at the end the  
4 following:

5                   **“PART H—GENERAL PROVISIONS**

6                   **“SEC. 1801. FEDERAL REGULATIONS.**

7           “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized to  
8 issue such regulations as are necessary to ensure reason-  
9 able compliance with this title.

10           “(b) NEGOTIATED RULEMAKING PROCESS.—

11                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—Prior to publishing in the  
12 Federal Register proposed regulations to carry out  
13 this title, the Secretary shall obtain the advice and  
14 recommendations of representatives of Federal,  
15 State, and local administrators, parents, teachers,  
16 paraprofessionals, and members of local boards of  
17 education involved with the implementation and op-  
18 eration of programs under this title.

19                   “(2) MEETINGS AND ELECTRONIC EX-  
20 CHANGE.—Such advice and recommendation may be  
21 obtained through such mechanisms as regional meet-  
22 ings and electronic exchanges of information.

23                   “(3) PROPOSED REGULATIONS.—After obtain-  
24 ing such advice and recommendations, and prior to  
25 publishing proposed regulations, the Secretary  
26 shall—



1           “(A) establish a negotiated rulemaking  
2 process on a minimum of three key issues,  
3 including—

4                   “(i) accountability;

5                   “(ii) implementation of assessments;

6                   and

7                   “(iii) use of paraprofessionals;

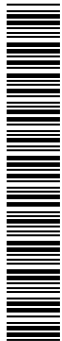
8           “(B) select individuals to participate in  
9 such process from among individuals or groups  
10 which provided advice and recommendations, in-  
11 cluding representation from all geographic re-  
12 gions of the United States; and

13           “(C) prepare a draft of proposed regula-  
14 tions that shall be provided to the individuals  
15 selected by the Secretary under subparagraph  
16 (B) not less than 15 days prior to the first  
17 meeting under such process.

18           “(4) PROCESS.—Such process—

19                   “(A) shall be conducted in a timely manner  
20 to ensure that final regulations are issued by  
21 the Secretary not later than 1 year after the  
22 date of the enactment of the No Child Left Be-  
23 hind Act of 2001; and

24                   “(B) shall not be subject to the Federal  
25 Advisory Committee Act but shall otherwise fol-



1 low the provisions of the Negotiated Rule-  
2 making Act of 1990 (5 U.S.C. 561 et seq.).

3 “(5) EMERGENCY SITUATION.—In an  
4 emergency situation in which regulations to  
5 carry out this title must be issued within a very  
6 limited time to assist State and local edu-  
7 cational agencies with the operation of a pro-  
8 gram under this title, the Secretary may issue  
9 proposed regulations without following such  
10 process but shall, immediately thereafter and  
11 prior to issuing final regulations, conduct re-  
12 gional meetings to review such proposed regula-  
13 tions.

14 “(c) LIMITATION.—Regulations to carry out this part  
15 may not require local programs to follow a particular in-  
16 structional model, such as the provision of services outside  
17 the regular classroom or school program.

18 **“SEC. 1802. AGREEMENTS AND RECORDS.**

19 “(a) AGREEMENTS.—All published proposed regula-  
20 tions shall conform to agreements that result from nego-  
21 tiated rulemaking described in section 1801 unless the  
22 Secretary reopens the negotiated rulemaking process or  
23 provides a written explanation to the participants involved  
24 in the process explaining why the Secretary decided to de-  
25 part from and not adhere to such agreements.



1           “(b) RECORDS.—The Secretary shall ensure that an  
2 accurate and reliable record of agreements reached during  
3 the negotiations process is maintained.

4   **“SEC. 1803. STATE ADMINISTRATION.**

5           “(a) RULEMAKING.—

6               “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State that receives  
7 funds under this title shall—

8                   “(A) ensure that any State rules, regula-  
9 tions, and policies relating to this title conform  
10 to the purposes of this title and provide any  
11 such proposed rules, regulations, and policies to  
12 the committee of practitioners under subsection  
13 (b) for their review and comment;

14                   “(B) minimize such rules, regulations, and  
15 policies to which their local educational agencies  
16 and schools are subject;

17                   “(C) eliminate or modify State and local  
18 fiscal accounting requirements in order to facili-  
19 tate the ability of schools to consolidate funds  
20 under schoolwide programs; and

21                   “(D) identify any such rule, regulation, or  
22 policy as a State-imposed requirement.

23               “(2) SUPPORT AND FACILITATION.—State  
24 rules, regulations, and policies under this title shall  
25 support and facilitate local educational agency and



1 school-level systemic reform designed to enable all  
2 children to meet the challenging State student aca-  
3 demic achievement standards.

4 “(b) COMMITTEE OF PRACTITIONERS.—

5 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational  
6 agency shall create a State committee of practi-  
7 tioners to advise the State in carrying out its re-  
8 sponsibilities under this title.

9 “(2) MEMBERSHIP.—Each such committee  
10 shall include—

11 “(A) as a majority of its members, rep-  
12 resentatives from local educational agencies;

13 “(B) administrators, including the admin-  
14 istrators of programs described in other parts  
15 of this title;

16 “(C) teachers, including vocational edu-  
17 cators;

18 “(D) parents;

19 “(E) members of local boards of education;

20 “(F) representatives of private school chil-  
21 dren; and

22 “(G) pupil services personnel.

23 “(3) DUTIES.—The duties of such committee  
24 shall include a review, prior to publication, of any  
25 proposed or final State rule or regulation pursuant



1 to this title. In an emergency situation where such  
2 rule or regulation must be issued within a very lim-  
3 ited time to assist local educational agencies with  
4 the operation of the program under this title, the  
5 State educational agency may issue a regulation  
6 without prior consultation, but shall immediately  
7 thereafter convene the State committee of practi-  
8 tioners to review the emergency regulation prior to  
9 issuance in final form.

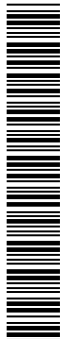
10 **“SEC. 1804. LOCAL ADMINISTRATIVE COST LIMITATION.**

11 “(a) LOCAL ADMINISTRATIVE COST LIMITATION.—  
12 Each local educational agency may use not more than 4  
13 percent of funds received under part A for administrative  
14 expenses.

15 “(b) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary, after consulting  
16 with State and local officials and other experts in school  
17 finance, shall develop and issue regulations that define the  
18 term administrative cost for purposes of this title. Such  
19 definition shall be consistent with generally accepted ac-  
20 counting principles. The Secretary shall publish final regu-  
21 lations on this section not later than 1 year after the date  
22 of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001.

23 **“SEC. 1805. APPLICABILITY.**

24 “Nothing in this title shall be construed to affect  
25 home schools nor shall any home schooled student be re-





1 quired to participate in any assessment referenced in this  
2 title.

3 **“SEC. 1806. PRIVATE SCHOOLS.**

4 “Nothing in this title shall be construed to affect any  
5 private school that does not receive funds or services under  
6 this title, nor shall any student who attends a private  
7 school that does not receive funds or services under this  
8 title be required to participate in any assessment ref-  
9 erenced in this title.

10 **“SEC. 1807. PRIVACY OF ASSESSMENT RESULTS.**

11 “Any results from individual assessments referenced  
12 in this title which become part of the education records  
13 of the student shall have the protections as provided in  
14 section 444 of the General Education Provisions Act.”.

15 **TITLE II—PREPARING, TRAIN-**  
16 **ING, AND RECRUITING QUAL-**  
17 **ITY TEACHERS**

18 **SEC. 201. TEACHER QUALITY TRAINING AND RECRUITING**

19 **FUND.**

20 Title II (20 U.S.C. 6601 et seq.) is amended to read  
21 as follows:



1 **“TITLE II—PREPARING, TRAIN-**  
2 **ING, AND RECRUITING QUAL-**  
3 **ITY TEACHERS**

4 **“PART A—TEACHER QUALITY TRAINING AND**  
5 **RECRUITING FUND**

6 **“SEC. 2001. PURPOSE.**

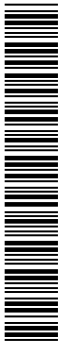
7 “The purpose of this part is to provide grants to  
8 States and local educational agencies in order to assist  
9 their efforts to increase student academic achievement  
10 through such strategies as improving teacher and prin-  
11 cipal quality and increasing the number of highly qualified  
12 teachers in the classroom.

13 **“Subpart 1—Grants to States to Prepare, Train, and**  
14 **Recruit Qualified Teachers**

15 **“SEC. 2011. FORMULA GRANTS TO STATES.**

16 “(a) IN GENERAL.—In the case of each State that  
17 in accordance with section 2013 submits to the Secretary  
18 an application for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall make  
19 a grant for the year to the State for the uses specified  
20 in section 2012. The grant shall consist of the allotment  
21 determined for the State under subsection (b).

22 “(b) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT OF ALLOT-  
23 MENTS.—



1           “(1) RESERVATION OF FUNDS.—From the  
2 amount made available to carry out this subpart for  
3 any fiscal year, the Secretary shall reserve—

4           “(A) 1/2 of 1 percent for allotments for the  
5 Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and  
6 the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Is-  
7 lands, to be distributed among these outlying  
8 areas on the basis of their relative need, as de-  
9 termined by the Secretary in accordance with  
10 the purpose of this part; and

11           “(B) 1/2 of 1 percent for the Secretary of  
12 the Interior for programs under this subpart  
13 for professional development activities for  
14 teachers, other staff, and administrators in  
15 schools operated or funded by the Bureau of In-  
16 dian Affairs.

17           “(2) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—

18           “(A) HOLD HARMLESS.—

19           “(i) IN GENERAL.—Subject to sub-  
20 paragraph (B), from the total amount  
21 made available to carry out this subpart  
22 for any fiscal year and not reserved under  
23 paragraph (1), the Secretary shall allot to  
24 each of the 50 States, the District of Co-  
25 lumbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto



1 Rico an amount equal to the total amount  
2 that such State received for fiscal year  
3 2001 under—

4 “(I) section 2202(b) of this Act  
5 (as in effect on the day before the  
6 date of the enactment of the No Child  
7 Left Behind Act of 2001); and

8 “(II) section 306 of the Depart-  
9 ment of Education Appropriations  
10 Act, 2001 (as enacted into law by sec-  
11 tion 1(a)(1) of Public Law 106–554).

12 “(ii) NONPARTICIPATING STATES.—In  
13 the case of a State that did not receive any  
14 funds for fiscal year 2001 under one or  
15 both of the provisions referred to in sub-  
16 clauses (I) and (II) of clause (i), the  
17 amount allotted to the State under such  
18 clause shall be the total amount that the  
19 State would have received for fiscal year  
20 2001 if it had elected to participate in all  
21 of the programs for which it was eligible  
22 under each of the provisions referred to in  
23 such subclauses.

24 “(iii) RATABLE REDUCTION.—If the  
25 total amount made available to carry out



1 this subpart for any fiscal year and not re-  
2 served under paragraph (1) is insufficient  
3 to pay the full amounts that all States are  
4 eligible to receive under clause (i) for any  
5 fiscal year, the Secretary shall ratably re-  
6 duce such amounts for such fiscal year.

7 “(B) ALLOTMENT OF ADDITIONAL  
8 FUNDS.—

9 “(i) IN GENERAL.—Subject to clause  
10 (ii), for any fiscal year for which the total  
11 amount made available to carry out this  
12 subpart and not reserved under paragraph  
13 (1) exceeds the total amount required to  
14 make allotments under subparagraph (A),  
15 the Secretary shall allot such excess  
16 amount among the 50 States, the District  
17 of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of  
18 Puerto Rico as follows:

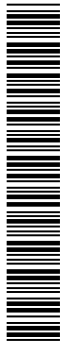
19 “(I) 50 percent of such excess  
20 amount shall be allotted among such  
21 States on the basis of their relative  
22 populations of individuals aged 5  
23 through 17, as determined by the Sec-  
24 retary on the basis of the most recent  
25 satisfactory data.



1                   “(II) 50 percent of such excess  
2                   amount shall be allotted among such  
3                   States in proportion to the number of  
4                   children, aged 5 to 17, who reside  
5                   within the State from families with in-  
6                   comes below the poverty line (as de-  
7                   fined by the Office of Management  
8                   and Budget and revised annually in  
9                   accordance with section 673(2) of the  
10                  Community Services Block Grant Act  
11                  (42 U.S.C. 9902(2)) applicable to a  
12                  family of the size involved for the  
13                  most recent fiscal year for which sat-  
14                  isfactory data are available, compared  
15                  to the number of such individuals who  
16                  reside in all such States for that fiscal  
17                  year.

18                  “(ii) EXCEPTION.—No State receiving  
19                  an allotment under clause (i) may receive  
20                  less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent of the total ex-  
21                  cess amount allotted under such clause.

22                  “(3) REALLOTMENT.—If any State does not  
23                  apply for an allotment under this subsection for any  
24                  fiscal year, the Secretary shall reallocate such amount



1 to the remaining States in accordance with this sub-  
2 section.

3 **“SEC. 2012. WITHIN-STATE ALLOCATIONS.**

4 “(a) USE OF FUNDS.—Each State receiving a grant  
5 under this subpart shall use the funds provided under the  
6 grant in accordance with this section to carry out activities  
7 for the improvement of teaching and learning.

8 “(b) RESERVATION OF FUNDS.—

9 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State that receives a  
10 grant under this subpart may reserve not more than  
11 5 percent of the amount of the funds provided under  
12 the grant for—

13 “(A) one or more of the authorized State  
14 activities described in subsection (e); and

15 “(B) planning and administration related  
16 to carrying out such activities and making sub-  
17 grants to local educational agencies under sub-  
18 parts 2 and 3.

19 “(2) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—

20 The amount reserved by a State under paragraph  
21 (1)(B) may not exceed 1 percent of the amount of  
22 the funds provided under the grant.

23 “(c) SUBGRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
24 CIES.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may make a  
2           grant to a State under this subpart only if the State  
3           agrees to distribute the funds described in this sub-  
4           section as subgrants to local educational agencies  
5           under subpart 3.

6           “(2) HOLD HARMLESS.—

7           “(A) IN GENERAL.—From the funds that  
8           a State receives under this subpart for any fis-  
9           cal year that are not reserved under subsection  
10          (b), the State shall allot to each local edu-  
11          cational agency an amount equal to the total  
12          amount that such agency received for fiscal  
13          year 2001 under—

14                 “(i) section 2203(1)(B) of this Act (as  
15                 in effect on the day before the date of the  
16                 enactment of the No Child Left Behind  
17                 Act of 2001); and

18                 “(ii) section 306 of the Department of  
19                 Education Appropriations Act, 2001 (as  
20                 enacted into law by section 1(a)(1) of Pub-  
21                 lic Law 106–554).

22           “(B) NONPARTICIPATING AGENCIES.—In  
23           the case of a local educational agency that did  
24           not receive any funds for fiscal year 2001 under  
25           one or both of the provisions referred to in





1 clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph (A), the  
2 amount allotted to the agency under such sub-  
3 paragraph shall be the total amount that the  
4 agency would have received for fiscal year 2001  
5 if it had elected to participate in all of the pro-  
6 grams for which it was eligible under each of  
7 the provisions referred to in such clauses.

8 “(C) RATABLE REDUCTION.—If the funds  
9 described in subparagraph (A) are insufficient  
10 to pay the full amounts that all local edu-  
11 cational agencies are eligible to receive under  
12 such subparagraph for any fiscal year, the  
13 State shall ratably reduce such amounts for  
14 such fiscal year.

15 “(3) ALLOTMENT OF ADDITIONAL FUNDS.—

16 “(A) IN GENERAL.—For any fiscal year  
17 for which the funds that a State receives under  
18 this subpart that are not reserved under sub-  
19 section (b) exceed the total amount required to  
20 make allotments under paragraph (2), the State  
21 shall distribute the amount described in sub-  
22 paragraph (B) through a formula under  
23 which—

24 “(i) 20 percent is allocated to local  
25 educational agencies in accordance with



1 the relative enrollment in public and pri-  
2 vate nonprofit elementary and secondary  
3 schools within the boundaries of such  
4 agencies; and

5 “(ii) 80 percent is allocated to local  
6 educational agencies in proportion to the  
7 number of children, aged 5 to 17, who re-  
8 side within the geographic area served by  
9 such agency from families with incomes  
10 below the poverty line (as defined by the  
11 Office of Management and Budget and re-  
12 vised annually in accordance with section  
13 673(2) of the Community Services Block  
14 Grant Act (42 U.S.C. 9902(2))) applicable  
15 to a family of the size involved for the  
16 most recent fiscal year for which satisfac-  
17 tory data are available, compared to the  
18 number of such individuals who reside in  
19 the geographic areas served by all the local  
20 educational agencies in the State for that  
21 fiscal year.

22 “(B) CALCULATION OF AMOUNT.—

23 “(i) IN GENERAL.—The amount de-  
24 scribed in this subparagraph for a State  
25 for any fiscal year is the base amount for



1 such State and year, plus any additional  
2 amount for such State and year.

3 “(ii) BASE AMOUNT.—For purposes of  
4 this subparagraph, the term ‘base amount’  
5 means 50 percent of the funds that remain  
6 to a State after a State makes the reserva-  
7 tions described in subsection (b) and the  
8 allotments described in paragraph (2).

9 “(iii) ADDITIONAL AMOUNT.—For  
10 purposes of this subparagraph, the term  
11 ‘additional amount’ means the amount (if  
12 any) by which the base amount for a State  
13 exceeds the maximum amount described in  
14 subsection (d)(2)(B).

15 “(d) MATH AND SCIENCE PARTNERSHIPS.—

16 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may make a  
17 grant to a State under this subpart only if the State  
18 agrees to distribute the amount described in para-  
19 graph (2) through a competitive subgrant process in  
20 accordance with subpart 2.

21 “(2) AMOUNT DESCRIBED.—

22 “(A) IN GENERAL.—The amount described  
23 in this paragraph for a State for any fiscal year  
24 is 50 percent of the funds that the State re-  
25 ceives under this subpart for the year that re-



1 main after the State makes the reservations de-  
2 scribed in subsection (b) and the allotments de-  
3 scribed in subsection (c)(2).

4 “(B) LIMITATION.—In no case may the  
5 amount described in this paragraph exceed a  
6 maximum amount calculated by multiplying the  
7 total amount of the funds that a State receives  
8 under this subpart for a fiscal year that the  
9 State does not reserve under subsection (b) by  
10 a percentage, selected by the State, that shall  
11 be not less than 15 nor more than 20 percent.

12 “(e) AUTHORIZED STATE ACTIVITIES.—The author-  
13 ized State activities referred to in subsection (b)(1)(A) are  
14 the following:

15 “(1) Reforming teacher certification, recertifi-  
16 cation, or licensure requirements to ensure that—

17 “(A) teachers have the necessary teaching  
18 skills and academic content knowledge in the  
19 subject areas in which they are assigned to  
20 teach;

21 “(B) teacher certification, recertification,  
22 or licensure requirements are aligned with the  
23 State’s challenging State academic content  
24 standards; and



1           “(C) teachers have the knowledge and  
2 skills necessary to help students meet chal-  
3 lenging State student achievement standards.

4           “(2) Carrying out programs that—

5           “(A) include support during the initial  
6 teaching or leadership experience, such as men-  
7 toring programs that—

8           “(i) provide—

9           “(I) mentoring to beginning  
10 teachers from veteran teachers with  
11 expertise in the same subject matter  
12 that the beginning teachers will be  
13 teaching; or

14           “(II) similar mentoring to prin-  
15 cipals or superintendents;

16           “(ii) provide mentors time for activi-  
17 ties such as coaching, observing, and as-  
18 sisting the teachers or school leaders who  
19 are mentored; and

20           “(iii) use standards or assessments  
21 for guiding beginning teachers that are  
22 consistent with the State’s student achieve-  
23 ment standards and with the requirements  
24 for professional development activities  
25 under section 2033; and



1           “(B) establish, expand, or improve alter-  
2           native routes to State certification of teachers,  
3           especially in the areas of mathematics and  
4           science, for highly qualified individuals with a  
5           baccalaureate degree, including mid-career pro-  
6           fessionals from other occupations, paraprofes-  
7           sionals, former military personnel, and recent  
8           college or university graduates with records of  
9           academic distinction who demonstrate the po-  
10          tential to become highly effective teachers.

11          “(3) Developing and implementing effective  
12          mechanisms to assist local educational agencies and  
13          schools in effectively recruiting and retaining highly  
14          qualified and effective teachers and principals.

15          “(4) Reforming tenure systems and imple-  
16          menting teacher testing and other procedures to ex-  
17          peditiously remove ineffective teachers from the  
18          classroom.

19          “(5) Developing enhanced performance systems  
20          to measure the effectiveness of specific professional  
21          development programs and strategies.

22          “(6) Providing technical assistance to local edu-  
23          cational agencies consistent with this part.

24          “(7) Funding projects to promote reciprocity of  
25          teacher certification or licensure between or among



1 States, except that no reciprocity agreement devel-  
2 oped under this paragraph or developed using funds  
3 provided under this part may lead to the weakening  
4 of any State teaching certification or licensing re-  
5 quirement.

6 “(8) Developing or assisting local educational  
7 agencies in the development and utilization of prov-  
8 en, innovative strategies to deliver intensive profes-  
9 sional development programs that are both cost-ef-  
10 fective and easily accessible, such as through the use  
11 of technology and distance learning.

12 “(9) Providing assistance to local educational  
13 agencies for the development and implementation of  
14 innovative professional development programs that  
15 train teachers to use technology to improve teaching  
16 and learning and are consistent with the require-  
17 ments of section 2033.

18 “(10) Developing or assisting local educational  
19 agencies in developing merit-based performance sys-  
20 tems, rigorous assessments for teachers, and strate-  
21 gies which provide differential and bonus pay for  
22 teachers in high-need subject areas such as reading,  
23 math, and science and in high-poverty schools and  
24 districts.



1           “(11) Providing assistance to local educational  
2 agencies for the development and implementation of  
3 professional development programs for principals  
4 that enable them to be effective school leaders and  
5 prepare all students to achieve challenging State  
6 content and student achievement standards, includ-  
7 ing the development and support of school leadership  
8 academies to help exceptionally talented aspiring or  
9 current principals and superintendents become out-  
10 standing managers and educational leaders.

11           “(12) Developing, or assisting local educational  
12 agencies in developing, teacher advancement initia-  
13 tives that promote professional growth and empha-  
14 size multiple career paths, such as career teacher,  
15 mentor teacher, and master teacher career paths,  
16 with pay differentiation.

17           “(f) COORDINATION.—States receiving grants under  
18 section 202 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 shall  
19 coordinate the use of such funds with activities carried out  
20 under this section.

21 **“SEC. 2013. APPLICATIONS BY STATES.**

22           “(a) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to receive a grant  
23 under this subpart, a State shall submit an application  
24 to the Secretary at such time, in such manner, and con-





1 taining such information as the Secretary may reasonably  
2 require.

3 “(b) CONTENTS.—Each application under this sec-  
4 tion shall include the following:

5 “(1) A description of how the State will ensure  
6 that a local educational agency receiving a subgrant  
7 under subpart 3 will comply with the requirements  
8 of such subpart.

9 “(2) A description of how the State will use  
10 funds under this part to meet the requirements of  
11 section 1119(a)(2).

12 “(3) A description of how the State will coordi-  
13 nate professional development activities authorized  
14 under this part with professional development activi-  
15 ties provided under other Federal, State, and local  
16 programs, including those authorized under title I,  
17 part A of title III, parts A and B of title V, and  
18 (where applicable) the Individuals with Disabilities  
19 Education Act and the Carl D. Perkins Vocational  
20 and Technical Education Act. The application shall  
21 also describe the comprehensive strategy that the  
22 State will take as part of such coordination effort,  
23 to ensure that teachers are trained in the utilization  
24 of technology so that technology and its applications  
25 are effectively used in the classroom to improve



1 teaching and learning in all curriculum and content  
2 areas, as appropriate.

3 “(4) A description of how the State will encour-  
4 age the development of proven, innovative strategies  
5 to deliver intensive professional development pro-  
6 grams that are both cost-effective and easily acces-  
7 sible, such as through the use of technology and dis-  
8 tance learning.

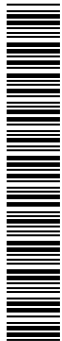
9 “(5) A description of how the State will ensure  
10 that local educational agencies will comply with the  
11 requirements under section 2033, especially with re-  
12 spect to ensuring the participation of teachers, prin-  
13 cipals, and parents.

14 “(c) APPLICATION APPROVAL.—A State application  
15 submitted to the Secretary under this section shall be  
16 deemed approved by the Secretary unless the Secretary  
17 makes a written determination, within 90 days after re-  
18 ceiving the application, that the application is in violation  
19 of the provisions of this subpart. The Secretary shall not  
20 finally disapprove a State application except after giving  
21 the State notice and opportunity for a hearing.

22 **“Subpart 2—Math and Science Partnerships**

23 **“SEC. 2021. PURPOSE.**

24 “The purpose of this subpart is to improve the  
25 achievement of students in the areas of mathematics and



1 science by encouraging States, institutions of higher edu-  
2 cation, and local educational agencies to participate in  
3 programs that—

4 “(1) focus on education and training of mathe-  
5 matics and science teachers that improves teachers’  
6 knowledge and skills and encourages intellectual  
7 growth;

8 “(2) improve mathematics and science teaching  
9 by encouraging institutions of higher education to  
10 assume greater responsibility for improving mathe-  
11 matics and science teacher education through the es-  
12 tablishment of a comprehensive, integrated system of  
13 recruiting, training, and advising such teachers; and

14 “(3) bring mathematics and science teachers in  
15 elementary and secondary schools together with sci-  
16 entists, mathematicians, and engineers to increase  
17 the subject matter knowledge of teachers and im-  
18 prove their teaching skills through the use of sophis-  
19 ticated laboratory equipment and work space, com-  
20 puting facilities, libraries, and other resources that  
21 institutions of higher education are better able to  
22 provide than the schools.

23 **“SEC. 2022. APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS.**

24 “(a) IN GENERAL.—An eligible partnership seeking  
25 to receive a subgrant from a State under this subpart shall



1 submit an application to the State at such time, in such  
2 manner, and accompanied by such information as the  
3 State may require.

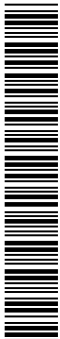
4 “(b) PARTNERSHIP APPLICATION CONTENTS.—Each  
5 such application shall include—

6 “(1) an assessment of the teacher quality and  
7 professional development of all the schools and agen-  
8 cies participating in the eligible partnership with re-  
9 spect to the teaching and learning of mathematics  
10 and science;

11 “(2) a description of how the activities to be  
12 carried out by the eligible partnership will be aligned  
13 with State academic content standards in mathe-  
14 matics and science and with other educational re-  
15 form activities that promote student achievement in  
16 mathematics and science;

17 “(3) a description of how the activities to be  
18 carried out by the eligible partnership will be based  
19 on a review of relevant research, and an explanation  
20 of why the activities are expected to improve student  
21 achievement and to strengthen the quality of mathe-  
22 matics and science instructions; and

23 “(4) a description of—



1           “(A) how the eligible partnership will carry  
2           out the activities described in section 2023(c);  
3           and

4           “(B) the eligible partnership’s evaluation  
5           and accountability plan described in section  
6           2024.

7   **“SEC. 2023. MATH AND SCIENCE PARTNERSHIP SUB-**  
8           **GRANTS.**

9           “(a) IN GENERAL.—From the amount described in  
10          section 2012(d), the State educational agency, working in  
11          conjunction with the State agency for higher education (if  
12          such agencies are separate), shall award subgrants on a  
13          competitive basis to eligible partnerships to enable such  
14          partnerships to carry out activities described in subsection  
15          (c).

16          “(b) DURATION.—The State shall award subgrants  
17          under this subpart for a period of not less than 2 and  
18          not more than 5 years.

19          “(c) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—A recipient of funds  
20          provided under this subpart may use the funds for the  
21          following activities related to elementary or secondary  
22          schools:

23                  “(1) Establishing and operating mathematics  
24                  and science summer professional development work-



1 shops or institutes for elementary and secondary  
2 school teachers that—

3 “(A) shall—

4 “(i) directly relate to the curriculum  
5 and content areas in which the teacher  
6 provides instruction, and focus only sec-  
7 ondarily on pedagogy;

8 “(ii) enhance the ability of a teacher  
9 to understand and use the State’s aca-  
10 demic content standards for mathematics  
11 and science and to select appropriate cur-  
12 ricula;

13 “(iii) train teachers to use curricula  
14 that are—

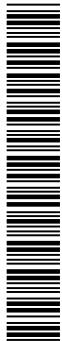
15 “(I) based on scientific research;

16 “(II) aligned with State academic  
17 content standards; and

18 “(III) object-centered, experi-  
19 ment-oriented, and concept- and con-  
20 tent-based; and

21 “(iv) provide supplemental assistance  
22 and follow-up training during the school  
23 year for summer institute graduates; and

24 “(B) may include—



1                   “(i) programs that provide prospective  
2                   teachers and novice teachers opportunities  
3                   to work under the guidance of experienced  
4                   teachers and college faculty;

5                   “(ii) instruction in the use of data  
6                   and assessments to inform and instruct  
7                   classroom practice; and

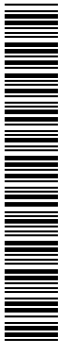
8                   “(iii) professional development activi-  
9                   ties, including supplemental and follow-up  
10                  activities, such as curriculum alignment,  
11                  distance learning, and activities that train  
12                  teachers to utilize technology in the class-  
13                  room.

14                  “(2) Recruiting to the teaching profession—

15                  “(A) students studying mathematics, engi-  
16                  neering, and science; or

17                  “(B) mathematicians, engineers, and sci-  
18                  entists currently working in the field.

19                  “(3) Establishing and operating programs to  
20                  bring teachers into contact with working scientists,  
21                  mathematicians, and engineers, to expand teacher  
22                  content knowledge of and research in science and  
23                  mathematics.



1           “(d) PRIORITY.—In awarding subgrants under this  
2 subpart, States shall give priority to applications seeking  
3 funding for the activity described in subsection (c)(1).

4           “(e) COORDINATION.—Partnerships receiving grants  
5 under section 203 of the Higher Education Act of 1965  
6 (20 U.S.C. 1023) shall coordinate the use of such funds  
7 with any related activities carried out by such partnership  
8 with funds made available under this subpart.

9           **“SEC. 2024. EVALUATION AND ACCOUNTABILITY PLAN.**

10           “(a) IN GENERAL.—Each eligible partnership receiv-  
11 ing a subgrant under this subpart shall develop an evalua-  
12 tion and accountability plan for activities assisted under  
13 this subpart that includes rigorous performance objectives  
14 that measure the impact of activities funded under this  
15 subpart.

16           “(b) CONTENTS.—The plan—

17                   “(1) shall include measurable goals to increase  
18 the number of mathematics and science teachers  
19 who participate in content-based professional devel-  
20 opment activities; and

21                   “(2) may include objectives and measures for—

22                           “(A) improved student achievement on  
23 State mathematics and science assessments;

24                           “(B) increased participation by students in  
25 advanced courses in mathematics and science;





1           “(C) increased percentages of elementary  
2 school teachers with academic majors or mi-  
3 nors, or group majors or minors, in mathe-  
4 matics, engineering, or the sciences; and

5           “(D) increased percentages of secondary  
6 school classes in mathematics and science  
7 taught by teachers with academic majors in  
8 mathematics and science, respectively.

9 **“SEC. 2025. REPORTS; REVOCATION OF SUBGRANTS.**

10          “(a) REPORTS.—Each eligible partnership receiving  
11 a subgrant under this subpart annually shall report to the  
12 State regarding the eligible partnership’s progress in  
13 meeting the performance objectives described in section  
14 2024.

15          “(b) REVOCATION.—If the State determines that an  
16 eligible partnership that receives a subgrant under this  
17 subpart for 5 years is not making substantial progress in  
18 meeting the performance objectives described in section  
19 2024 by the end of the third year of the subgrant, the  
20 subgrant payments shall not be made for the fourth and  
21 fifth years.

22 **“SEC. 2026. DEFINITIONS.**

23          “In this subpart:

24           “(1) ELIGIBLE PARTNERSHIP.—The term ‘eligi-  
25 ble partnership’ means a partnership that—



1 “(A) shall include—

2 “(i) a State educational agency;

3 “(ii) a mathematics or science depart-  
4 ment of a private independent institution  
5 of higher education or a State-supported  
6 public institution of higher education; and

7 “(iii) a high need local educational  
8 agency; and

9 “(B) may include—

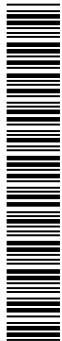
10 “(i) another institution of higher edu-  
11 cation or the teacher training department  
12 of such an institution;

13 “(ii) additional local educational agen-  
14 cies, public charter schools, public or pri-  
15 vate elementary or secondary schools, or a  
16 consortium of such schools;

17 “(iii) a business; or

18 “(iv) a nonprofit organization of dem-  
19 onstrated effectiveness, including a mu-  
20 seum or research institution.

21 “(2) SUMMER PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT  
22 WORKSHOP OR INSTITUTE.—The term ‘summer pro-  
23 fessional development workshop or institute’ means  
24 a workshop or institute that—



1           “(A) is conducted during a period of not  
2           less than 2 weeks;

3           “(B) includes as a component a program  
4           that provides direct interaction between stu-  
5           dents and faculty; and

6           “(C) provides for follow-up training during  
7           the academic year that is conducted in the  
8           classroom for a period of not less than 3 con-  
9           secutive or nonconsecutive days, except that—

10                   “(i) if the workshop or institute is  
11                   conducted during a two-week period, the  
12                   follow-up training shall be conducted for a  
13                   period of at least 4 days; and

14                   “(ii) if the follow-up training is for  
15                   teachers in rural school districts, it may be  
16                   conducted through distance learning.

17           **“Subpart 3—Subgrants to Local Educational**  
18   **Agencies**

19           **“SEC. 2031. LOCAL USE OF FUNDS.**

20           “(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subsection (b), each  
21           local educational agency that receives a subgrant under  
22           this subpart may use the subgrant to carry out the fol-  
23           lowing activities:



1           “(1) Initiatives to assist in recruiting and hir-  
2           ing fully qualified teachers who will be assigned  
3           teaching positions within their field, including—

4                   “(A) providing signing bonuses or other fi-  
5                   nancial incentives, such as differential pay, for  
6                   teachers to teach in academic subject areas in  
7                   which there exists a shortage of such fully  
8                   qualified teachers within a school or the local  
9                   educational agency;

10                   “(B) establishing programs that—

11                           “(i) recruit professionals from other  
12                           fields and provide such professionals with  
13                           alternative routes to teacher certification;  
14                           and

15                           “(ii) provide increased opportunities  
16                           for minorities, individuals with disabilities,  
17                           and other individuals underrepresented in  
18                           the teaching profession; and

19                   “(C) implementing hiring policies that en-  
20                   sure comprehensive recruitment efforts as a  
21                   way to expand the applicant pool, such as  
22                   through identifying teachers certified through  
23                   alternative routes, coupled with a system of in-  
24                   tensive screening designed to hire the most  
25                   qualified applicant.



1           “(2) Initiatives to promote retention of highly  
2 qualified teachers and principals, particularly within  
3 elementary and secondary schools with a high per-  
4 centage of low-achieving students, including pro-  
5 grams that provide—

6                   “(A) mentoring to newly hired teachers,  
7 such as from master teachers, or principals or  
8 superintendents;

9                   “(B) incentives, including financial incen-  
10 tives, to retain teachers who have a record of  
11 success in helping low-achieving students im-  
12 prove their academic success; or

13                   “(C) incentives, including financial incen-  
14 tives, to principals who have a record of improv-  
15 ing the performance of all students, but par-  
16 ticularly students from economically disadvan-  
17 taged families and students from racial and  
18 ethnic minority groups.

19           “(3) Programs and activities that are designed  
20 to improve the quality of the teacher force, such  
21 as—

22                   “(A) innovative professional development  
23 programs (which may be through partnerships  
24 including institutions of higher education), in-  
25 cluding programs that train teachers and prin-



1 principals to utilize technology to improve teaching  
2 and learning, are consistent with the require-  
3 ments of section 2033, and are coordinated  
4 with part B of title V;

5 “(B) development and utilization of prov-  
6 en, cost-effective strategies for the implementa-  
7 tion of professional development activities, such  
8 as through the utilization of technology and dis-  
9 tance learning;

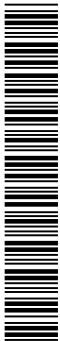
10 “(C) tenure reform;

11 “(D) merit pay;

12 “(E) testing of elementary and secondary  
13 school teachers in the subject areas taught by  
14 such teachers;

15 “(F) professional development programs  
16 that provide instruction in how to teach chil-  
17 dren with different learning styles, particularly  
18 children with disabilities and children with spe-  
19 cial learning needs (including those who are  
20 gifted and talented); and

21 “(G) professional development programs  
22 that provide instruction in methods of improv-  
23 ing student behavior in the classroom and how  
24 to identify early and appropriate interventions



1 to help children described in subparagraph (F)  
2 learn.

3 “(4) Teacher opportunity payments, consistent  
4 with section 2034.

5 “(5) Professional activities designed to improve  
6 the quality of principals and superintendents, includ-  
7 ing the development and support of academies to  
8 help exceptionally talented aspiring or current prin-  
9 cipals and superintendents become outstanding man-  
10 agers and educational leaders.

11 “(6) Hiring fully qualified teachers, including  
12 teachers who become fully qualified through State  
13 and local alternative routes, and special education  
14 teachers, in order to reduce class size, particularly in  
15 the early grades.

16 “(7) Teacher advancement initiatives that pro-  
17 mote professional growth and emphasize multiple ca-  
18 reer paths, such as career teacher, mentor teacher,  
19 and master teacher career paths, with pay differen-  
20 tiation.

21 “(b) SPECIAL RULE.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—For any fiscal year for  
23 which the amount described in section  
24 2012(d)(2)(A) for a State is less than 15 percent of  
25 the total amount of the funds that the State receives



1 under this subpart for the year that the State does  
2 not reserve under section 2012(b), each local edu-  
3 cational agency that receives a subgrant under this  
4 subpart from the State shall use the funds to comply  
5 with paragraph (2).

6 “(2) REQUIREMENT.—A local educational agen-  
7 cy required to comply with this paragraph shall use  
8 not less than the amount expended by the agency  
9 under section 2206(b) of this Act (as in effect on  
10 the day before the date of the enactment of the No  
11 Child Left Behind Act of 2001), for the fiscal year  
12 preceding the year in which such enactment occurs,  
13 to carry out professional development activities in  
14 mathematics and science.

15 **“SEC. 2032. LOCAL APPLICATIONS.**

16 “(a) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency seek-  
17 ing to receive a subgrant from a State under this subpart  
18 shall submit an application to the State—

19 “(1) at such time as the State shall require;  
20 and

21 “(2) which is coordinated with other programs  
22 under this Act, or other Acts, as appropriate.

23 “(b) LOCAL APPLICATION CONTENTS.—The local ap-  
24 plication described in subsection (a), shall include, at a  
25 minimum, the following:





1           “(1) An assurance that the local educational  
2 agency will target funds to schools within the juris-  
3 diction of the local educational agency that—

4                   “(A) have the lowest proportion of fully  
5 qualified teachers;

6                   “(B) have the largest average class size; or

7                   “(C) are identified for school improvement  
8 under section 1116(b).

9           “(2) A description of how the local educational  
10 agency will coordinate professional development ac-  
11 tivities authorized under this subpart with profes-  
12 sional development activities provided through other  
13 Federal, State, and local programs, including those  
14 authorized under title I, part A of title III, parts A  
15 and B of title V, and (where applicable) the Individ-  
16 uals with Disabilities Education Act and the Carl D.  
17 Perkins Vocational and Technical Education Act.

18           “(3) A description of how the local educational  
19 agency will integrate funds under this subpart with  
20 funds received under part B of title V that are used  
21 for professional development to train teachers to uti-  
22 lize technology to improve teaching and learning.

23           “(4) A description of how the local educational  
24 agency has collaborated with teachers, principals,



1 parents, and administrators in the preparation of  
2 the application.

3 **“SEC. 2033. PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT FOR TEACHERS.**

4 “(a) REQUIREMENTS FOR PROFESSIONAL DEVELOP-  
5 MENT ACTIVITIES.—Professional development activities  
6 under this subpart shall—

7 “(1) meet the requirements of section  
8 1119(a)(2);

9 “(2) support professional development activities  
10 that give teachers, principals, and administrators the  
11 knowledge and skills to provide students with the op-  
12 portunity to meet challenging State academic con-  
13 tent standards and student achievement standards;

14 “(3) support the recruiting, hiring, and training  
15 of fully qualified teachers, including teachers fully  
16 qualified through State and local alternative routes;

17 “(4) advance teacher understanding of effective  
18 instructional strategies based on scientifically based  
19 research for improving student achievement, at a  
20 minimum, in reading or language arts and mathe-  
21 matics;

22 “(5) be directly related to the curriculum and  
23 content areas in which the teacher provides instruc-  
24 tion, except that this paragraph shall not apply to  
25 subparagraphs (F) and (G) of section 2031(3);



1           “(6) be designed to enhance the ability of a  
2 teacher to understand and use the State’s standards  
3 for the subject area in which the teacher provides in-  
4 struction;

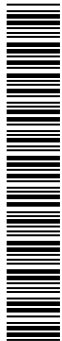
5           “(7) be tied to scientifically based research  
6 demonstrating the effectiveness of such professional  
7 development activities or programs in increasing stu-  
8 dent achievement or substantially increasing the  
9 knowledge and teaching skills of teachers;

10           “(8) be of sufficient intensity and duration (not  
11 to include 1-day or short-term workshops and con-  
12 ferences) to have a positive and lasting impact on  
13 the teacher’s performance in the classroom;

14           “(9) be developed with extensive participation  
15 of teachers, principals, parents, and administrators  
16 of schools to be served under this subpart;

17           “(10) be designed to give teachers of limited  
18 English proficient children, and other teachers and  
19 instructional staff, the knowledge and skills to pro-  
20 vide instruction and appropriate language and aca-  
21 demic support services to such children, including  
22 the appropriate use of curriculum and assessments;

23           “(11) to the extent appropriate, provide train-  
24 ing for teachers and principals in the use of tech-  
25 nology so that technology and its applications are ef-



1       fectively used in the classroom to improve teaching  
2       and learning in the curriculum and academic content  
3       areas in which the teachers provide instruction;

4               “(12) as a whole, be regularly evaluated for  
5       their impact on increased teacher effectiveness and  
6       improved student achievement, with the findings of  
7       such evaluations used to improve the quality of pro-  
8       fessional development; and

9               “(13) provide instruction in methods of teach-  
10      ing children with special needs.

11      “(b) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT ACTIVITIES.—  
12      Professional development activities under this subpart  
13      may include—

14              “(1) instruction in the use of data and assess-  
15      ments to inform and instruct classroom practice;

16              “(2) instruction in ways that teachers, prin-  
17      cipals, pupil services personnel, and school adminis-  
18      trators may work more effectively with parents;

19              “(3) the forming of partnerships with institu-  
20      tions of higher education to establish school-based  
21      teacher training programs that provide prospective  
22      teachers and novice teachers with an opportunity to  
23      work under the guidance of experienced teachers and  
24      college faculty;



1           “(4) the creation of programs for paraprofes-  
2           sionals (assisting teachers employed by a local edu-  
3           cational agency receiving assistance under this part)  
4           to obtain the education necessary for such para-  
5           professionals to become licensed and certified teach-  
6           ers; and

7           “(5) activities that provide follow-up training to  
8           teachers who have participated in professional devel-  
9           opment activities which are designed to ensure that  
10          the knowledge and skills learned by the teacher are  
11          implemented in the classroom.

12          “(c) ACCOUNTABILITY.—

13           “(1) IN GENERAL.—If, after any fiscal year, a  
14          State determines that the programs or activities  
15          funded by a local educational agency fail to meet the  
16          requirements of subsection (a), the State shall notify  
17          the agency that—

18           “(A) it may be subject to paragraph (2);

19          and

20           “(B) technical assistance is available from  
21          the State to help the agency meet those require-  
22          ments.

23          “(2) REQUIREMENT TO PROVIDE TEACHER OP-  
24          PORTUNITY PAYMENTS.—A local educational agency  
25          that has been notified by a State for 2 consecutive



1 years under paragraph (1) shall expend under sec-  
2 tion 2034 for the succeeding fiscal year a proportion  
3 of the amount the agency receives under this sub-  
4 part that is equal to the proportion of the amount  
5 the agency received under this part for the preceding  
6 fiscal year that the agency used for professional de-  
7 velopment.

8 **“SEC. 2034. TEACHER OPPORTUNITY PAYMENTS.**

9 “(a) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency re-  
10 ceiving funds under this subpart may (or, in the case of  
11 a local educational agency described in section 2033(c)(2),  
12 shall) provide funds directly to a teacher or a group of  
13 teachers seeking opportunities to participate in a profes-  
14 sional development activity of their choice that meets the  
15 requirements of section 2033(a) and is selected in con-  
16 sultation with the principal in order to coordinate such  
17 professional development with other reform efforts at the  
18 school.

19 “(b) NOTICE TO TEACHERS.—Local educational  
20 agencies distributing funds under this section shall estab-  
21 lish and implement a timely process through which proper  
22 notice of availability of funds will be given to all teachers  
23 within schools identified by the agency and shall develop  
24 a process whereby teachers will have regular consultation



1 with and be specifically recommended by principals to par-  
2 ticipate in such program by virtue of—

3 “(1) a teacher not being fully qualified to teach  
4 in the subject or subjects in which they teach; or

5 “(2) a teacher’s need for additional assistance  
6 to ensure that the teacher’s students make progress  
7 toward meeting challenging State academic content  
8 standards and student achievement standards.

9 “(c) SELECTION OF TEACHERS.—If adequate fund-  
10 ing is not available to provide payments under this section  
11 to all teachers seeking such assistance or identified as  
12 needing such assistance pursuant to subsection (b), a local  
13 educational agency shall establish procedures for selecting  
14 teachers that give priority to teachers described in para-  
15 graph (1) or (2) of subsection (b).

16 **“Subpart 4—Mid-Career Transitions to Teaching**  
17 **“CHAPTER I—TROOPS-TO-TEACHERS**  
18 **PROGRAM”.**

19 **“SEC. 2041. AUTHORIZATION OF TROOPS-TO-TEACHERS**  
20 **PROGRAM.**

21 “(a) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary may  
22 carry out a program (to be known as the ‘Troops-to-  
23 Teachers Program’)—

24 “(1) to assist eligible members and former  
25 members of the Armed Forces described in section

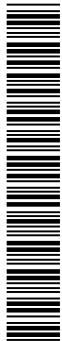


1       2042 to obtain certification or licensure as fully  
2       qualified elementary school teachers, secondary  
3       school teachers, or vocational or technical teachers;  
4       and

5               “(2) to facilitate the employment of such mem-  
6       bers in elementary schools or secondary schools or as  
7       vocational or technical teachers.

8       “(b) ADMINISTRATION OF PROGRAM.—The Secretary  
9       shall enter into a memorandum of agreement with the Sec-  
10      retary of Defense under which the Secretary of Defense,  
11      acting through the Defense Activity for Non-Traditional  
12      Education Support of the Department of Defense, will  
13      perform the actual administration of the Program, other  
14      than section 2045. Using funds appropriated to the Sec-  
15      retary to carry out this chapter, the Secretary shall trans-  
16      fer to the Secretary of Defense such amounts as may be  
17      necessary to administer the Program pursuant to the  
18      memorandum of agreement.

19       “(c) INFORMATION REGARDING PROGRAM.—The  
20      Secretary shall provide to the Secretary of Defense, for  
21      distribution as part of preparation counseling provided  
22      under section 1142 of title 10, United States Code, to  
23      members of the Armed Forces described in section 2042,  
24      information regarding the Troops-to-Teachers Program  
25      and applications to participate in the program.





1           “(d) PLACEMENT ASSISTANCE AND REFERRAL  
2 SERVICES.—As part of the Troops-to-Teachers Program,  
3 the Secretary may, with the agreement of the Secretary  
4 of Defense, provide placement assistance and referral serv-  
5 ices regarding employment opportunities with local edu-  
6 cational agencies to members of the Armed Forces who  
7 are discharged or released from active duty under other  
8 than adverse conditions. Unless the member is also se-  
9 lected to participate in the Program under section 2042,  
10 a member receiving placement assistance and referral  
11 services under the authority of this subsection is not eligi-  
12 ble for financial assistance under section 2043.

13 **“SEC. 2042. RECRUITMENT AND SELECTION OF PROGRAM**  
14 **PARTICIPANTS.**

15           “(a) ELIGIBLE MEMBERS.—The following members  
16 and former members of the Armed Forces are eligible for  
17 selection to participate in the Troops-to-Teachers Pro-  
18 gram:

19                   “(1) Any member who—

20                           “(A) on or after October 1, 1999, becomes  
21 entitled to retired or retainer pay in the manner  
22 provided in title 10 or title 14, United States  
23 Code; or

24                           “(B) on or after the date of the enactment  
25 of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001, has



1 an approved date of voluntary retirement and,  
2 as of the date the member submits an applica-  
3 tion to participate in the Program, has one year  
4 or less of active duty remaining before retire-  
5 ment.

6 “(2) Any member who, on or after the date of  
7 the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
8 2001—

9 “(A) is separated or released from active  
10 duty after six or more years of continuous ac-  
11 tive duty immediately before the separation or  
12 release; and

13 “(B) executes a reserve commitment agree-  
14 ment for a period of three years under sub-  
15 section (e)(2).

16 “(3) Any member who, on or after the date of  
17 the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
18 2001, is retired or separated for physical disability  
19 under chapter 61 of title 10, United States Code.

20 “(4) Any member who—

21 “(A) during the period beginning on Octo-  
22 ber 1, 1990, and ending on September 30,  
23 1999, was involuntarily discharged or released  
24 from active duty for purposes of a reduction of  
25 force after six or more years of continuous ac-



1           tive duty immediately before the discharge or  
2           release; or

3                   “(B) applied for the teacher placement  
4           program administered under section 1151 of  
5           title 10, United States Code, before its repeal,  
6           and who satisfied the eligibility criteria specified  
7           in subsection (c) of such section 1151.

8           “(b) SUBMISSION OF APPLICATIONS.—

9                   “(1) FORM AND SUBMISSION.—Selection of eli-  
10          gible members and former members of the Armed  
11          Forces to participate in the Troops-to-Teachers Pro-  
12          gram shall be made on the basis of applications sub-  
13          mitted to the Secretary within the time periods spec-  
14          ified in paragraph (2). An application shall be in  
15          such form and contain such information as the Sec-  
16          retary may require.

17                   “(2) TIME FOR SUBMISSION.—An application  
18          shall be considered to be submitted on a timely basis  
19          under paragraph (1) if—

20                           “(A) in the case of a member or former  
21          member of the Armed Forces described in para-  
22          graph (1), (2), or (3) of subsection (a), the ap-  
23          plication is submitted not later than four years  
24          after the date on which the member is retired



1 or separated or released from active duty,  
2 whichever applies to the member; or

3 “(B) in the case of a member or former  
4 member described in subsection (a)(4), the ap-  
5 plication is submitted not later than September  
6 30, 2003.

7 “(c) SELECTION CRITERIA.—

8 “(1) ESTABLISHMENT.—Subject to paragraphs  
9 (2) and (3), the Secretary shall prescribe the criteria  
10 to be used to select eligible members and former  
11 members of the Armed Forces to participate in the  
12 Troops-to-Teachers Program.

13 “(2) EDUCATIONAL BACKGROUND.—If a mem-  
14 ber or former member of the Armed Forces de-  
15 scribed in paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of subsection  
16 (a) is applying for assistance for placement as an el-  
17 elementary or secondary school teacher, the Secretary  
18 shall require the member to have received a bacca-  
19 laurate or advanced degree from an accredited in-  
20 stitution of higher education. If such a member is  
21 applying for assistance for placement as a vocational  
22 or technical teacher, the Secretary shall require the  
23 member—

24 “(A) to have received the equivalent of one  
25 year of college from an accredited institution of



1 higher education and have six or more years of  
2 military experience in a vocational or technical  
3 field; or

4 “(B) to otherwise meet the certification or  
5 licensure requirements for a vocational or tech-  
6 nical teacher in the State in which the member  
7 seeks assistance for placement under the Pro-  
8 gram.

9 “(3) HONORABLE SERVICE.—A member or  
10 former member of the Armed Forces is eligible to  
11 participate in the Troops-to-Teachers Program only  
12 if the member’s last period of service in the Armed  
13 Forces was characterized as honorable. If the mem-  
14 ber is selected to participate in the Program before  
15 the retirement of the member or the separation or  
16 release of the member from active duty, the member  
17 may continue to participate in the Program only if,  
18 upon the retirement or separation or release from  
19 active duty, the member’s last period of service is  
20 characterized as honorable.

21 “(d) SELECTION PRIORITIES.—In selecting eligible  
22 members and former members of the Armed Forces to re-  
23 ceive assistance for placement as elementary or secondary  
24 school teachers or vocational or technical teachers, the  
25 Secretary shall give priority to members who have edu-



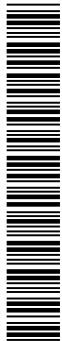
1 cational or military experience in science, mathematics,  
2 special education, or vocational or technical subjects and  
3 agree to seek employment as science, mathematics, or spe-  
4 cial education teachers in elementary or secondary schools  
5 or in other schools under the jurisdiction of a local edu-  
6 cational agency.

7 “(e) OTHER CONDITIONS ON SELECTION.—

8 “(1) SELECTION SUBJECT TO FUNDING.—The  
9 Secretary may not select an eligible member or  
10 former member of the Armed Forces to participate  
11 in the Troops-to-Teachers Program under this sec-  
12 tion and receive financial assistance under section  
13 2043 unless the Secretary has sufficient appropria-  
14 tions for the Program available at the time of the  
15 selection to satisfy the obligations to be incurred by  
16 the United States under section 2043 with respect  
17 to the member.

18 “(2) RESERVE COMMITMENT AGREEMENT.—  
19 The Secretary may not select an eligible member or  
20 former member of the Armed Forces described in  
21 subsection (a)(2)(A) to participate in the Troops-to-  
22 Teachers Program under this section and receive fi-  
23 nancial assistance under section 2043 unless—

24 “(A) the Secretary notifies the Secretary  
25 concerned and the member that the Secretary



1 has reserved a full stipend or bonus under sec-  
2 tion 2043 for the member; and

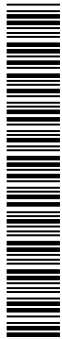
3 “(B) the member executes a written agree-  
4 ment with the Secretary concerned to serve as  
5 a member of the Selected Reserve of a reserve  
6 component of the Armed Forces for a period of  
7 three years (in addition to any other reserve  
8 commitment the member may have).

9 **“SEC. 2043. PARTICIPATION AGREEMENT AND FINANCIAL**  
10 **ASSISTANCE.**

11 “(a) PARTICIPATION AGREEMENT.—An eligible  
12 member or former member of the Armed Forces selected  
13 to participate in the Troops-to-Teachers Program under  
14 section 2042 and receive financial assistance under this  
15 section shall be required to enter into an agreement with  
16 the Secretary in which the member agrees—

17 “(1) to obtain, within such time as the Sec-  
18 retary may require, certification or licensure as a  
19 fully qualified elementary school teacher, secondary  
20 school teacher, or vocational or technical teacher;  
21 and

22 “(2) to accept an offer of full-time employment  
23 as a fully qualified elementary school teacher, sec-  
24 ondary school teacher, or vocational or technical  
25 teacher for not less than three school years with a



1 local educational agency or public charter school, to  
2 begin the school year after obtaining that certifi-  
3 cation or licensure.

4 “(b) VIOLATION OF PARTICIPATION AGREEMENT;  
5 EXCEPTIONS.—A participant in the Troops-to-Teachers  
6 Program shall not be considered to be in violation of the  
7 participation agreement entered into under subsection (a)  
8 during any period in which the participant—

9 “(1) is pursuing a full-time course of study re-  
10 lated to the field of teaching at an institution of  
11 higher education;

12 “(2) is serving on active duty as a member of  
13 the Armed Forces;

14 “(3) is temporarily totally disabled for a period  
15 of time not to exceed three years as established by  
16 sworn affidavit of a qualified physician;

17 “(4) is unable to secure employment for a pe-  
18 riod not to exceed 12 months by reason of the care  
19 required by a spouse who is disabled;

20 “(5) is seeking and unable to find full-time em-  
21 ployment as a fully qualified teacher in an elemen-  
22 tary or secondary school or as a vocational or tech-  
23 nical teacher for a single period not to exceed 27  
24 months; or





1           “(6) satisfies the provisions of additional reim-  
2           bursement exceptions that may be prescribed by the  
3           Secretary.

4           “(c) STIPEND FOR PARTICIPANTS.—

5           “(1) STIPEND AUTHORIZED.—Subject to para-  
6           graph (2), the Secretary may pay to a participant in  
7           the Troops-to-Teachers Program selected under sec-  
8           tion 2042 a stipend in an amount up to \$5,000.

9           “(2) LIMITATION.—The total number of sti-  
10          pends that may be paid under paragraph (1) in any  
11          fiscal year may not exceed 3,000.

12          “(d) BONUS FOR PARTICIPANTS.—

13          “(1) BONUS AUTHORIZED.—Subject to para-  
14          graph (2), the Secretary may, in lieu of paying a sti-  
15          pend under subsection (c), pay a bonus of \$10,000  
16          to a participant in the Troops-to-Teachers Program  
17          selected under section 2042 who agrees in the par-  
18          ticipation agreement under subsection (a) to accept  
19          full-time employment as a fully qualified elementary  
20          school teacher, secondary school teacher, or voca-  
21          tional or technical teacher for not less than three  
22          years in a high need school.

23          “(2) LIMITATION.—The total number of bo-  
24          nuses that may be paid under paragraph (1) in any  
25          fiscal year may not exceed 1,000.



1           “(3) HIGH NEED SCHOOL DEFINED.—For pur-  
2           poses of this subsection, the term ‘high need school’  
3           means a public elementary school, public secondary  
4           school, or public charter school that meets one or  
5           more of the following criteria:

6                   “(A) At least 50 percent of the students  
7                   enrolled in the school were children counted  
8                   under subsection (c) of section 1124 for pur-  
9                   poses of making grants under such section to  
10                  local educational agencies, when such counting  
11                  was most recently performed.

12                  “(B) The school has a large percentage of  
13                  students who qualify for assistance under part  
14                  B of the Individuals with Disabilities Education  
15                  Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et seq.).

16                  “(C) The school meets any other criteria  
17                  established by the Secretary in consultation  
18                  with the National Assessment Governing Board.

19           “(e) TREATMENT OF STIPEND AND BONUS.—A sti-  
20           pend or bonus paid under this section to a participant in  
21           the Troops-to-Teachers Program shall be taken into ac-  
22           count in determining the eligibility of the participant for  
23           Federal student financial assistance provided under title  
24           IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1070  
25           et seq.).



1       “(f) REIMBURSEMENT UNDER CERTAIN CIR-  
2 CUMSTANCES.—

3               “(1) REIMBURSEMENT REQUIRED.—A partici-  
4 pant in the Troops-to-Teachers Program who is paid  
5 a stipend or bonus under this section shall be re-  
6 quired to repay the stipend or bonus under the fol-  
7 lowing circumstances:

8               “(A) The participant fails to obtain teach-  
9 er certification or licensure or employment as a  
10 fully qualified elementary school teacher, sec-  
11 ondary school teacher, or vocational or technical  
12 teacher as required by the participation agree-  
13 ment under subsection (a).

14               “(B) The participant voluntarily leaves, or  
15 is terminated for cause, from employment as an  
16 elementary school teacher, secondary school  
17 teacher, or vocational or technical teacher dur-  
18 ing the three years of required service in viola-  
19 tion of the participation agreement.

20               “(C) The participant executed a written  
21 agreement with the Secretary concerned under  
22 section 2042(e)(2) to serve as a member of a  
23 reserve component of the Armed Forces for a  
24 period of three years and fails to complete the  
25 required term of service.



1           “(2) AMOUNT OF REIMBURSEMENT.—A partici-  
2           pant required to reimburse the Secretary for a sti-  
3           pend or bonus paid to the participant under this sec-  
4           tion shall pay an amount that bears the same ratio  
5           to the amount of the stipend or bonus as the  
6           unserved portion of required service bears to the  
7           three years of required service. Any amount owed by  
8           the participant shall bear interest at the rate equal  
9           to the highest rate being paid by the United States  
10          on the day on which the reimbursement is deter-  
11          mined to be due for securities having maturities of  
12          ninety days or less and shall accrue from the day on  
13          which the participant is first notified of the amount  
14          due.

15           “(3) TREATMENT OF OBLIGATION.—The obliga-  
16          tion to reimburse the Secretary under this sub-  
17          section is, for all purposes, a debt owing the United  
18          States. A discharge in bankruptcy under title 11,  
19          United States Code, shall not release a participant  
20          from the obligation to reimburse the Secretary.

21           “(4) EXCEPTIONS TO REIMBURSEMENT RE-  
22          QUIREMENT.—A participant shall be excused from  
23          reimbursement under this subsection if the partici-  
24          pant becomes permanently totally disabled as estab-  
25          lished by sworn affidavit of a qualified physician.



1 The Secretary may also waive reimbursement in  
2 cases of extreme hardship to the participant, as de-  
3 termined by the Secretary.

4 “(g) RELATIONSHIP TO EDUCATIONAL ASSISTANCE  
5 UNDER MONTGOMERY GI BILL.—The receipt by a partic-  
6 ipant in the Troops-to-Teachers Program of a stipend or  
7 bonus under this section shall not reduce or otherwise af-  
8 fect the entitlement of the participant to any benefits  
9 under chapter 30 of title 38, United States Code, or chap-  
10 ter 1606 of title 10, United States Code.

11 **“SEC. 2044. PARTICIPATION BY STATES.**

12 “(a) DISCHARGE OF STATE ACTIVITIES THROUGH  
13 CONSORTIA OF STATES.—The Secretary may permit  
14 States participating in the Troops-to-Teachers Program to  
15 carry out activities authorized for such States under the  
16 Program through one or more consortia of such States.

17 “(b) ASSISTANCE TO STATES.—

18 “(1) GRANTS AUTHORIZED.—Subject to para-  
19 graph (2), the Secretary may make grants to States  
20 participating in the Troops-to-Teachers Program, or  
21 to consortia of such States, in order to permit such  
22 States or consortia of States to operate offices for  
23 purposes of recruiting eligible members and former  
24 members of the Armed Forces for participation in  
25 the Program and facilitating the employment of par-



1 participants in the Program as elementary school teach-  
2 ers, secondary school teachers, and vocational or  
3 technical teachers.

4 “(2) LIMITATION.—The total amount of grants  
5 under paragraph (1) in any fiscal year may not ex-  
6 ceed \$4,000,000.

7 **“SEC. 2045. SUPPORT OF INNOVATIVE PRERETIREMENT**  
8 **TEACHER CERTIFICATION PROGRAMS.**

9 “(a) DEVELOPMENT, IMPLEMENTATION AND DEM-  
10 ONSTRATION.—The Secretary may enter into a memo-  
11 randum of agreement with a State, an institution of high-  
12 er education, or a consortia of States or institutions of  
13 higher education, to develop, implement, and demonstrate  
14 teacher certification programs for members of the Armed  
15 Forces described in section 2042(a)(1)(B) for the purpose  
16 of assisting such members to consider and prepare for a  
17 career as a fully qualified elementary school teacher, sec-  
18 ondary school teacher, or vocational or technical teacher  
19 upon their retirement from the Armed Forces.

20 “(b) PROGRAM ELEMENTS.—A teacher certification  
21 program under subsection (a) must—

22 “(1) provide recognition of military experience  
23 and training as related to licensure or certification  
24 requirements;



1           “(2) provide courses of instruction that may be  
2           conducted on or near a military installation;

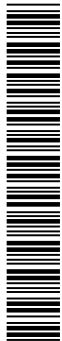
3           “(3) incorporate alternative approaches to  
4           achieve teacher certification, such as innovative  
5           methods to gaining field-based teaching experiences,  
6           and assessment of background and experience as re-  
7           lated to skills, knowledge, and abilities required of  
8           elementary school teachers, secondary school teach-  
9           ers, or vocational or technical teachers;

10           “(4) provide for courses to also be delivered via  
11           distance education methods; and

12           “(5) address any additional requirements or  
13           specifications as established by the Secretary.

14           “(c) APPLICATION PROCEDURES.—A State or insti-  
15           tution of higher education (or a consortia of States or in-  
16           stitutions of higher education) that has a program leading  
17           to State approved teacher certification programs may sub-  
18           mit a proposal to the Secretary for consideration under  
19           subsection (a). The Secretary shall give preference to pro-  
20           posals that provide for a sharing of the costs to carry out  
21           the teacher certification program.

22           “(d) CONTINUATION OF PROGRAMS.—The purpose of  
23           this section is to provide funding to develop, implement,  
24           and demonstrate teacher certification programs under  
25           subsection (a). Upon successful completion of the dem-



1 onstration phase, the continued operation of the teacher  
2 certification programs shall not be the responsibility of the  
3 Secretary.

4 “(e) FUNDING LIMITATION.—The total amount obli-  
5 gated by the Secretary under this section in any fiscal year  
6 may not exceed \$5,000,000.

7 **“SEC. 2046. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.**

8 “(a) REPORT REQUIRED.—Not later than March 31  
9 of each year, the Secretary (in consultation with the Sec-  
10 retary of Defense and the Secretary of Transportation)  
11 and the Comptroller General shall each submit to Con-  
12 gress a report on the effectiveness of the Troops-to-Teach-  
13 ers Program in the recruitment and retention of qualified  
14 personnel by local educational agencies and public charter  
15 schools.

16 “(b) ELEMENTS OF REPORT.—The report under sub-  
17 section (a) shall include information on the following:

18 “(1) The number of participants in the Troops-  
19 to-Teachers Program.

20 “(2) The schools in which the participants are  
21 employed.

22 “(3) The grade levels at which the participants  
23 teach.

24 “(4) The subject matters taught by the partici-  
25 pants.





1           “(5) The rates of retention of the participants  
2           by the local educational agencies and public charter  
3           schools employing the participants.

4           “(6) Such other matters as the Secretary or the  
5           Comptroller General, as the case may be, considers  
6           appropriate.

7           “(c) **RECOMMENDATIONS.**—The report of the Comp-  
8           troller General under this section shall also include any  
9           recommendations of the Comptroller General regarding  
10          any means of improving the Troops-to-Teachers Program,  
11          including means of enhancing the recruitment and reten-  
12          tion of participants in the Program.

13          **“SEC. 2047. DEFINITIONS.**

14          “For purposes of this chapter:

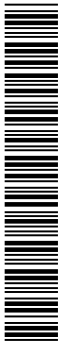
15                 “(1) **ARMED FORCES.**—The term ‘Armed  
16                 Forces’ means the Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine  
17                 Corps, and Coast Guard.

18                 “(2) **PROGRAM.**—The term ‘Program’ means  
19                 the Troops-to-Teachers Program authorized by this  
20                 subpart.

21                 “(3) **RESERVE COMPONENT.**—The term ‘reserve  
22                 component’ means—

23                         “(A) the Army National Guard of the  
24                         United States;

25                         “(B) the Army Reserve;



1 “(C) the Naval Reserve;

2 “(D) the Marine Corps Reserve;

3 “(E) the Air National Guard of the United  
4 States;

5 “(F) the Air Force Reserve; and

6 “(G) the Coast Guard Reserve.

7 “(4) SECRETARY CONCERNED.—The term ‘Sec-  
8 retary concerned’ means—

9 “(A) the Secretary of the Army, with re-  
10 spect to matters concerning a reserve compo-  
11 nent of the Army;

12 “(B) the Secretary of the Navy, with re-  
13 spect to matters concerning a reserve compo-  
14 nent of the Navy;

15 “(C) the Secretary of the Air Force, with  
16 respect to matters concerning a reserve compo-  
17 nent of the Air Force; and

18 “(D) the Secretary of Transportation, with  
19 respect to matters concerning the Coast Guard  
20 Reserve.

21 **“CHAPTER II—TRANSITION TO TEACHING**

22 **“SEC. 2048. PROFESSIONALS SEEKING TO CHANGE CA-**  
23 **REERS.**

24 “(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this section is to ad-  
25 dress the need of high-need local educational agencies for



1 highly qualified teachers in particular subject areas, such  
2 as mathematics, science, foreign languages, bilingual edu-  
3 cation, and special education, needed by those agencies,  
4 following the model of the program under chapter 1, by  
5 recruiting, preparing, placing, and supporting career-  
6 changing professionals who have knowledge and experi-  
7 ence that will help them become such teachers.

8 “(b) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary may  
9 award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to in-  
10 stitutions of higher education and public and private non-  
11 profit agencies or organizations to carry out programs au-  
12 thorized by this section.

13 “(c) APPLICATION.—Each applicant that desires an  
14 award under subsection (b) shall submit an application to  
15 the Secretary containing such information as the Sec-  
16 retary requires, including—

17 “(1) a description of the target group of career-  
18 changing professionals upon which the applicant will  
19 focus its recruitment efforts in carrying out its pro-  
20 gram under this section, including a description of  
21 the characteristics of that target group that shows  
22 how the knowledge and experience of its members  
23 are relevant to meeting the purpose of this section;



1           “(2) a description of the training that program  
2 participants will receive and how that training will  
3 relate to their certification as teachers;

4           “(3) a description of how the applicant will col-  
5 laborate, as needed, with other institutions, agencies,  
6 or organizations to recruit, train, place, support, and  
7 provide teacher induction programs to program par-  
8 ticipants under this section, including evidence of  
9 the commitment of those institutions, agencies, or  
10 organizations to the applicant’s program;

11           “(4) a description of how the applicant will  
12 evaluate the progress and effectiveness of its pro-  
13 gram, including—

14                   “(A) the program’s goals and objectives;

15                   “(B) the performance indicators the appli-  
16 cant will use to measure the program’s  
17 progress; and

18                   “(C) the outcome measures that will be  
19 used to determine the program’s effectiveness;  
20 and

21           “(5) such other information and assurances as  
22 the Secretary may require.

23           “(d) USES OF FUNDS AND PERIOD OF SERVICE.—

24                   “(1) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—Funds under  
25 this section may be used for—



1           “(A) recruiting program participants, in-  
2           cluding informing them of opportunities under  
3           the program and putting them in contact with  
4           other institutions, agencies, or organizations  
5           that would train, place, and support them;

6           “(B) training stipends and other financial  
7           incentives for program participants, not to ex-  
8           ceed \$5,000 per participant;

9           “(C) assisting institutions of higher edu-  
10          cation or other providers of teacher training to  
11          tailor their training to meet the particular  
12          needs of professionals who are changing their  
13          careers to teaching;

14          “(D) placement activities, including identi-  
15          fying high-need local educational agencies with  
16          a need for the particular skills and characteris-  
17          tics of the newly trained program participants  
18          and assisting those participants to obtain em-  
19          ployment in those local educational agencies;  
20          and

21          “(E) post-placement induction or support  
22          activities for program participants.

23          “(2) PERIOD OF SERVICE.—A program partici-  
24          pant in a program under this section who completes



1 his or her training shall serve in a high-need local  
2 educational agency for at least 3 years.

3 “(3) REPAYMENT.—The Secretary shall estab-  
4 lish such requirements as the Secretary determines  
5 appropriate to ensure that program participants who  
6 receive a training stipend or other financial incentive  
7 under paragraph (1)(B), but fail to complete their  
8 service obligation under paragraph (2), repay all or  
9 a portion of such stipend or other incentive.

10 “(e) EQUITABLE DISTRIBUTION.—To the extent  
11 practicable, the Secretary shall make awards under this  
12 section that support programs in different geographic re-  
13 gions of the United States.

14 “(f) DEFINITION.—As used in this section, the term  
15 ‘program participants’ means career-changing profes-  
16 sionals who—

17 “(1) hold at least a baccalaureate degree;

18 “(2) demonstrate interest in, and commitment  
19 to, becoming a teacher; and

20 “(3) have knowledge and experience that are  
21 relevant to teaching a high-need subject area in a  
22 high-need local educational agency.



1                                   **“Subpart 5—Funding**

2   **“SEC. 2051. AUTHORIZATIONS OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

3           “(a) IN GENERAL.—For the purpose of carrying out  
4 this part, other than subpart 4, there are authorized to  
5 be appropriated \$3,600,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and  
6 such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years  
7 2003 through 2006.

8           “(b) SUBPART 4.—For the purpose of carrying out  
9 subpart 4, there are authorized to be appropriated  
10 \$50,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may  
11 be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003 through 2006.

12                                   **“Subpart 6—General Provisions**

13   **“SEC. 2061. DEFINITIONS.**

14           “For purposes of this part—

15                   “(1) ARTS AND SCIENCES.—The term ‘arts and  
16 sciences’ means—

17                                   “(A) when referring to an organizational  
18 unit of an institution of higher education, any  
19 academic unit that offers one or more academic  
20 majors in disciplines or content areas cor-  
21 responding to the academic subject matter  
22 areas in which teachers provide instruction; and

23                                   “(B) when referring to a specific academic  
24 subject matter area, the disciplines or content  
25 areas in which academic majors are offered by  
26 the arts and sciences organizational unit.



1           “(2) BEGINNING TEACHER.—The term ‘begin-  
2           ning teacher’ means an educator in a public school  
3           who has not yet been teaching 3 full school years.

4           “(3) MENTORING PROGRAM.—The term ‘men-  
5           toring program’ means to provide professional sup-  
6           port and development, instruction, and guidance to  
7           beginning teachers, but does not include a teacher or  
8           individual who begins to work in a supervisory posi-  
9           tion.

10           “(4) PUBLICLY REPORT.—The term ‘publicly  
11           report’, when used with respect to the dissemination  
12           of information, means that the information is made  
13           widely available to the public, including parents and  
14           students, through such means as the Internet and  
15           major print and broadcast media outlets.”.

16 **SEC. 202. NATIONAL WRITING PROJECT.**

17           (a) TRANSFER AND REDESIGNATION.—Part K of  
18           title X (20 U.S.C. 8331 et seq.) is transferred and redesi-  
19           gnated as part B of title II. Sections 10991 and 10992  
20           are redesignated as sections 2101 and 2102, respectively.

21           (b) EVALUATION.—Section 2102(g) (as so redesi-  
22           gnated) is amended—

23                   (1) in paragraph (1), by striking “14701.” and  
24                   inserting “8651.”; and





1 (2) in paragraph (2), by striking "1994" and  
2 inserting "2002".

3 (c) REAUTHORIZATION.—Section 2102(i) (as so re-  
4 designated) is amended by striking "\$4,000,000 for fiscal  
5 year 1995, and such sums as may be necessary for each  
6 of the four succeeding fiscal years," and inserting "such  
7 sums as may be necessary for fiscal year 2002 and the  
8 four succeeding fiscal years,".

9 (d) CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.—Notwithstanding  
10 any other provision of this Act, any person or agency that  
11 was awarded a grant or contract under part K of title  
12 X (20 U.S.C. 8331 et seq.) prior to the date of the enact-  
13 ment of this Act shall continue to receive funds in accord-  
14 ance with the terms of such award until the date on which  
15 the award period terminates under such terms.

16 **SEC. 203. CIVIC EDUCATION; TEACHER LIABILITY PROTEC-**  
17 **TION.**

18 (a) IN GENERAL.—Title II, as amended by sections  
19 201 and 202, is further amended by adding at the end  
20 the following:

21 **"PART C—CIVIC EDUCATION**

22 **"SEC. 2201. SHORT TITLE.**

23 "This part may be cited as the 'Education for De-  
24 mocracy Act'.



1 **“SEC. 2202. FINDINGS.**

2 “The Congress finds that—

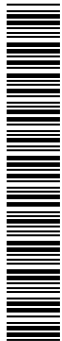
3 “(1) college freshmen surveyed in 1999 by the  
4 Higher Education Research Institute at the Univer-  
5 sity of California at Los Angeles demonstrated high-  
6 er levels of disengagement, both academically and  
7 politically, than any previous entering class of stu-  
8 dents;

9 “(2) college freshmen in 1999 demonstrated the  
10 lowest levels of political interest in the 20-year his-  
11 tory of surveys conducted by the Higher Education  
12 Research Institute at the University of California at  
13 Los Angeles;

14 “(3) United States secondary school students  
15 expressed relatively low levels of interest in politics  
16 and economics in a 1999 Harris survey;

17 “(4) the 32d Annual Phi Delta Kappa/Gallup  
18 Poll of 2000 indicated that preparing students to be-  
19 come responsible citizens was the most important  
20 purpose of public schools;

21 “(5) Americans surveyed by the Organization of  
22 Economic Cooperation and Development indicated  
23 that only 59 percent had confidence that schools  
24 have a major effect on the development of good citi-  
25 zenship;



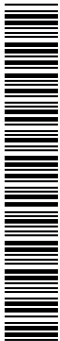
1           “(6) teachers too often do not have sufficient  
2 expertise in the subjects that they teach, and 50 per-  
3 cent of all secondary school history students in  
4 America are being taught by teachers with neither a  
5 major nor a minor in history;

6           “(7) secondary school students correctly an-  
7 swered fewer than 50 percent of the questions on a  
8 national test of economic knowledge in a 1999 Har-  
9 ris survey;

10           “(8) the 1998 National Assessment of Edu-  
11 cational Progress indicated that students have only  
12 superficial knowledge of, and lacked a depth of un-  
13 derstanding regarding, civics;

14           “(9) civics and economic education are impor-  
15 tant not only to developing citizenship competencies  
16 in the United States but also are critical to sup-  
17 porting political stability and economic health in  
18 other democracies, particularly emerging democratic  
19 market economies;

20           “(10) more than 75 percent of Americans sur-  
21 veyed by the National Constitution Center in 1997  
22 admitted that they knew only some or very little  
23 about the Constitution of the United States; and



1           “(11) the Constitution of the United States is  
2           too often viewed within the context of history and  
3           not as a living document that shapes current events.

4   **“SEC. 2203. PURPOSE.**

5           “It is the purpose of this part—

6           “(1) to improve the quality of civics and gov-  
7           ernment education by educating students about the  
8           history and principles of the Constitution of the  
9           United States, including the Bill of Rights;

10          “(2) to foster civic competence and responsi-  
11          bility; and

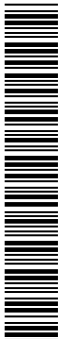
12          “(3) to improve the quality of civic education  
13          and economic education through cooperative civic  
14          education and economic education exchange pro-  
15          grams with emerging democracies.

16   **“SEC. 2204. AUTHORITY.**

17          “The Secretary may make grants to, or enter into  
18          contracts with—

19          “(1) the Center for Civic Education to carry  
20          out civic education activities in accordance with sec-  
21          tions 2205 and 2206; and

22          “(2) the National Council on Economic Edu-  
23          cation to carry out economic education activities in  
24          accordance with section 2206.



1 **“SEC. 2205. WE THE PEOPLE PROGRAM.**

2 “(a) USE OF FUNDS.—The Center for Civic Edu-  
3 cation may use funds made available under grants or con-  
4 tracts under section 2204(1) only to carry out activities—

5 “(1) under the Citizen and the Constitution  
6 program in accordance with subsection (b); and

7 “(2) under the Project Citizen program in ac-  
8 cordance with subsection (c).

9 “(b) CITIZEN AND THE CONSTITUTION PROGRAM.—

10 “(1) EDUCATIONAL ACTIVITIES.—The Center  
11 for Civic Education—

12 “(A) shall use funds made available under  
13 grants or contracts under section 2204(1)—

14 “(i) to continue and expand the edu-  
15 cational activities of the program entitled  
16 the ‘We the People . . . The Citizen and the  
17 Constitution’ administered by the Center  
18 for Civic Education;

19 “(ii) to carry out activities to enhance  
20 student attainment of challenging aca-  
21 demic content standards in civics and gov-  
22 ernment;

23 “(iii) to provide a course of instruc-  
24 tion on the basic principles of the Nation’s  
25 constitutional democracy and the history of



1 the Constitution of the United States, in-  
2 cluding the Bill of Rights;

3 “(iv) to provide, at the request of a  
4 participating school, school and community  
5 simulated congressional hearings following  
6 the course of instruction described in  
7 clause (iii); and

8 “(v) to provide an annual national  
9 competition of simulated congressional  
10 hearings for secondary school students who  
11 wish to participate in such a program; and

12 “(B) may use assistance made available  
13 under section 2204(1)—

14 “(i) to provide advanced sustained  
15 and ongoing training of teachers about the  
16 Constitution of the United States and the  
17 political system of the United States;

18 “(ii) to provide materials and methods  
19 of instruction, including teacher training,  
20 that utilize the latest advancements in edu-  
21 cational technology; and

22 “(iii) to provide civic education mate-  
23 rials and services to address specific prob-  
24 lems such as the prevention of school vio-  
25 lence and the abuse of drugs and alcohol.



1           “(2) AVAILABILITY OF PROGRAM.—As a condi-  
2           tion of receipt of funds under grants or contracts  
3           under section 2204(1), the Secretary shall require  
4           the Center for Civic Education to make the edu-  
5           cation program authorized under this subsection  
6           available to public and private elementary schools  
7           and secondary schools, including Bureau-funded  
8           schools, in each of the 435 congressional districts,  
9           and in the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth  
10          of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American  
11          Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern  
12          Mariana Islands.

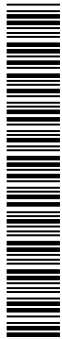
13          “(c) PROJECT CITIZEN.—

14                 “(1) EDUCATIONAL ACTIVITIES.—The Center  
15                 for Civic Education—

16                         “(A) shall use funds made available under  
17                         grants or contracts under section 2204(1)—

18                                 “(i) to continue and expand the edu-  
19                                 cational activities of the program entitled  
20                                 the ‘We the People . . . Project Citizen’ pro-  
21                                 gram administered by the Center;

22                                 “(ii) to carry out activities to enhance  
23                                 student attainment of challenging aca-  
24                                 demic content standards in civics and gov-  
25                                 ernment;



1 “(iii) to provide a course of instruc-  
2 tion at the middle school level on the roles  
3 of State and local governments in the Fed-  
4 eral system established by the Constitution  
5 of the United States; and

6 “(iv) to provide an annual national  
7 showcase or competition; and

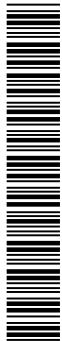
8 “(B) may use funds made available under  
9 grants or contracts under section 2204(1)—

10 “(i) to provide optional school and  
11 community simulated State legislative  
12 hearings;

13 “(ii) to provide advanced sustained  
14 and ongoing training of teachers on the  
15 roles of State and local governments in the  
16 Federal system established by the Con-  
17 stitution of the United States;

18 “(iii) to provide materials and meth-  
19 ods of instruction, including teacher train-  
20 ing, that utilize the latest advancements in  
21 educational technology; and

22 “(iv) to provide civic education mate-  
23 rials and services to address specific prob-  
24 lems such as the prevention of school vio-  
25 lence and the abuse of drugs and alcohol.





1           “(2) AVAILABILITY OF PROGRAM.—As a condi-  
2           tion of receipt of funds under grants or contracts  
3           under section 2204(1), the Secretary shall require  
4           the Center for Civic Education to make the edu-  
5           cation program authorized under this subsection  
6           available to public and private middle schools, in-  
7           cluding Bureau-funded schools, in each of the 50  
8           States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth  
9           of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American  
10          Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern  
11          Mariana Islands.

12          “(d) BUREAU-FUNDED SCHOOL DEFINED.—In this  
13          section, the term ‘Bureau-funded school’ has the meaning  
14          given such term in section 1146 of the Education Amend-  
15          ments of 1978 (25 U.S.C. 2026).

16          **“SEC. 2206. COOPERATIVE CIVIC EDUCATION AND ECO-  
17          NOMIC EDUCATION EXCHANGE PROGRAMS.**

18          “(a) USE OF FUNDS.—The Center for Civic Edu-  
19          cation and the National Council on Economic Education  
20          may use funds made available under grants or contracts  
21          under section 2204(2) only to carry out cooperative edu-  
22          cation exchange programs that—

23                  “(1) make available to educators from eligible  
24                  countries exemplary curriculum and teacher training



1 programs in civics and government education, and  
2 economics education, developed in the United States;

3 “(2) assist eligible countries in the adaptation,  
4 implementation, and institutionalization of programs  
5 described in paragraph (1);

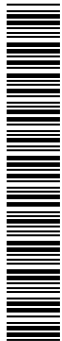
6 “(3) create and implement programs for civics  
7 and government education, and economic education,  
8 for students that draw upon the experiences of the  
9 participating eligible countries;

10 “(4) provide means for the exchange of ideas  
11 and experiences in civics and government education,  
12 and economic education, among political, edu-  
13 cational, governmental, and private sector leaders of  
14 participating eligible countries; and

15 “(5) provide support for—

16 “(A) independent research and evaluation  
17 to determine the effects of educational pro-  
18 grams on students’ development of the knowl-  
19 edge, skills, and traits of character essential for  
20 the preservation and improvement of constitu-  
21 tional democracy; and

22 “(B) effective participation in and the  
23 preservation and improvement of an efficient  
24 market economy.



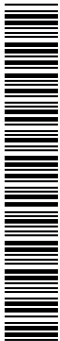
1           “(b) ACTIVITIES.—In carrying out the cooperative  
2 education exchange programs assisted under this section,  
3 the Center for Civic Education and the National Council  
4 on Economic Education shall—

5           “(1) provide to the participants from eligible  
6 countries—

7           “(A) seminars on the basic principles of  
8 United States constitutional democracy and  
9 economic system, including seminars on the  
10 major governmental and economic institutions  
11 and systems in the United States, and visits to  
12 such institutions;

13           “(B) visits to school systems, institutions  
14 of higher education, and nonprofit organizations  
15 conducting exemplary programs in civics and  
16 government education, and economic education,  
17 in the United States;

18           “(C) translations and adaptations with re-  
19 spect to United States civics and government  
20 education, and economic education, curricular  
21 programs for students and teachers, and in the  
22 case of training programs for teachers trans-  
23 lations and adaptations into forms useful in  
24 schools in eligible countries, and joint research  
25 projects in such areas; and



1           “(D) independent research and evaluation  
2 assistance—

3           “(i) to determine the effects of the co-  
4 operative education exchange programs on  
5 students’ development of the knowledge,  
6 skills, and traits of character essential for  
7 the preservation and improvement of con-  
8 stitutional democracy; and

9           “(ii) to identify effective participation  
10 in and the preservation and improvement  
11 of an efficient market economy;

12           “(2) provide to the participants from the  
13 United States—

14           “(A) seminars on the histories, economies,  
15 and systems of government of eligible countries;

16           “(B) visits to school systems, institutions  
17 of higher education, and organizations con-  
18 ducting exemplary programs in civics and gov-  
19 ernment education, and economic education, lo-  
20 cated in eligible countries;

21           “(C) assistance from educators and schol-  
22 ars in eligible countries in the development of  
23 curricular materials on the history, government,  
24 and economy of such countries that are useful  
25 in United States classrooms;



1           “(D) opportunities to provide onsite dem-  
2           onstrations of United States curricula and ped-  
3           agogy for educational leaders in eligible coun-  
4           tries; and

5           “(E) independent research and evaluation  
6           assistance to determine—

7                   “(i) the effects of the cooperative edu-  
8                   cation exchange programs assisted under  
9                   this section on students’ development of  
10                  the knowledge, skills, and traits of char-  
11                  acter essential for the preservation and im-  
12                  provement of constitutional democracy;  
13                  and

14                   “(ii) effective participation in and im-  
15                  provement of an efficient market economy;  
16                  and

17           “(3) assist participants from eligible countries  
18           and the United States to participate in international  
19           conferences on civics and government education, and  
20           economic education, for educational leaders, teacher  
21           trainers, scholars in related disciplines, and edu-  
22           cational policymakers.

23           “(c) PARTICIPANTS.—The primary participants in  
24           the cooperative education exchange programs assisted  
25           under this section shall be educational leaders in the areas



1 of civics and government education, and economic edu-  
2 cation, including teachers, curriculum and teacher train-  
3 ing specialists, scholars in relevant disciplines, and edu-  
4 cational policymakers, and government and private sector  
5 leaders from the United States and eligible countries.

6 “(d) CONSULTATION.—The Secretary may make a  
7 grant, or enter into a contract, under section 2204(2) only  
8 if the Secretary of State concurs with the Secretary that  
9 such grant, or contract, is consistent with the foreign pol-  
10 icy of the United States.

11 “(e) AVOIDANCE OF DUPLICATION.—With the con-  
12 currence of the Secretary of State, the Secretary shall en-  
13 sure that—

14 “(1) the activities carried out under the pro-  
15 grams assisted under this section are not duplicative  
16 of other activities conducted in eligible countries;  
17 and

18 “(2) any institutions in eligible countries, with  
19 which the Center for Civic Education or the Na-  
20 tional Council on Economic Education may work in  
21 conducting such activities, are creditable.

22 “(f) ELIGIBLE COUNTRY DEFINED.—In this section,  
23 the term ‘eligible country’ means a Central European  
24 country, an Eastern European country, Lithuania, Latvia,  
25 Estonia, the independent states of the former Soviet



1 Union as defined in section 3 of the FREEDOM Support  
2 Act (22 U.S.C. 5801), the Republic of Ireland, the prov-  
3 ince of Northern Ireland in the United Kingdom, and any  
4 developing country (as such term is defined in section  
5 209(d) of the Education for the Deaf Act) if the Sec-  
6 retary, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State, de-  
7 termines that such developing country has a democratic  
8 form of government.

9 **“SEC. 2207. FUNDING.**

10 (a) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—

11 “(1) WE THE PEOPLE PROGRAM.—There are  
12 authorized to be appropriated to carry out sections  
13 2204(1) and 2205 such sums as may be necessary  
14 for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2006.

15 “(2) COOPERATIVE CIVIC EDUCATION AND ECO-  
16 NOMIC EDUCATION EXCHANGE PROGRAMS.—There  
17 are authorized to be appropriated to carry out sec-  
18 tions 2204(2) and 2206 such sums as may be nec-  
19 essary for each of fiscal years 2002 through 2006.

20 “(b) LIMITATION.—In each fiscal year, the Secretary  
21 may use not more than 50 percent of the amount appro-  
22 priated under subsection (a)(2) for assistance for eco-  
23 nomic educational activities.



1       **“PART D—TEACHER LIABILITY PROTECTION**

2       **“SEC. 2301. TEACHER IMMUNITY.**

3           “(a) IMMUNITY.—Notwithstanding any other provi-  
4 sion of law, no school board member of, or teacher or ad-  
5 ministrator in, a local educational agency that receives  
6 funds under this Act shall be liable for monetary damages  
7 in his or her personal capacity for an action that was  
8 taken in carrying out his or her official duties and in-  
9 tended to maintain school discipline, so long as that action  
10 was not prohibited under State or local law and did not  
11 constitute reckless or criminal misconduct.

12           “(b) LIMITATION.—The immunity established under  
13 subsection (a) shall apply only to liability arising under  
14 Federal law.”.

15           (b) CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.—Notwithstanding  
16 any other provision of this Act, any person or agency that  
17 was awarded a grant under part F of title X (20 U.S.C.  
18 8141 et seq.) prior to the date of the enactment of this  
19 Act shall continue to receive funds in accordance with the  
20 terms of such award until the date on which the award  
21 period terminates under such terms.





1 **TITLE III—EDUCATION OF LIM-**  
2 **ITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT**  
3 **AND IMMIGRANT CHILDREN;**  
4 **INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE**  
5 **EDUCATION**

6 **PART A—EDUCATION OF LIMITED ENGLISH**  
7 **PROFICIENT AND IMMIGRANT CHILDREN**

8 **SEC. 301. PROGRAMS AUTHORIZED.**

9 (a) **TITLE HEADING.**—The heading for title III is  
10 amended to read as follows:

11 **“TITLE III—EDUCATION OF LIM-**  
12 **ITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT**  
13 **AND IMMIGRANT CHILDREN;**  
14 **INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE**  
15 **EDUCATION”.**

16 (b) **SHORT TITLE.**—Section 3101 (20 U.S.C. 6801)  
17 is repealed.

18 (c) **LIMITATION ON AVAILABILITY OF CERTAIN**  
19 **FUNDS FOR SCHOOLS.**—Section 3601 (20 U.S.C. 7001)—

20 (1) is transferred to part B of title V (as  
21 amended by section 501) and inserted after section  
22 5204 (as so amended);

23 (2) is redesignated as section 5205; and

24 (3) is amended by striking “this title” each  
25 place such term appears and inserting “this part”.



1 (d) LIMITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT AND IMMIGRANT  
2 CHILDREN.—Parts A through E of title III (20 U.S.C.  
3 6811 et seq.) are amended to read as follows:

4 **“PART A—EDUCATION OF LIMITED ENGLISH**  
5 **PROFICIENT AND IMMIGRANT CHILDREN**

6 **“Subpart 1—English Language and Academic**  
7 **Instructional Programs**

8 **“SEC. 3101. SHORT TITLE.**

9 “This subpart may be cited as the ‘English Language  
10 Proficiency and Academic Achievement Act’.

11 **“SEC. 3102. FINDINGS AND PURPOSES.**

12 “(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds as follows:

13 “(1) English is the common language of the  
14 United States and every citizen and other person re-  
15 siding in the United States should have a command  
16 of the English language in order to develop to their  
17 full potential.

18 “(2) Limited English proficient children, in-  
19 cluding recent immigrant children, must overcome a  
20 number of challenges in receiving an education in  
21 order to participate fully in American society,  
22 including—

23 “(A) segregated educational programs;

24 “(B) disproportionate and improper place-  
25 ment in special education and other special pro-



1           grams due to the use of inappropriate evalua-  
2           tion procedures;

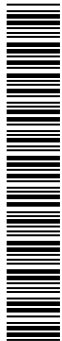
3           “(C) the limited English proficiency of  
4           their parents, which hinders the parents’ ability  
5           to fully participate in the education of their  
6           children; and

7           “(D) a need for additional teachers and  
8           other staff who are professionally trained and  
9           qualified to serve such children.

10          “(3) States and local educational agencies need  
11          assistance in developing the capacity to provide pro-  
12          grams of instruction that offer and provide an equal  
13          educational opportunity to children who need special  
14          assistance because English is not their dominant  
15          language.

16          “(4) Since 1979, the number of limited English  
17          proficient children attending school in the United  
18          States has more than doubled to greater than  
19          4,000,000, and demographic trends indicate the pop-  
20          ulation of limited English proficient children will  
21          continue to increase.

22          “(5) Native Americans, including native resi-  
23          dents of the outlying areas, and Native American  
24          languages (as such terms are defined in section 103  
25          of the Native American Languages Act) have a



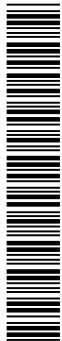
1 unique status under Federal law that requires spe-  
2 cial policies within the broad purposes of this part  
3 to serve the educational needs of language minority  
4 students in the United States.

5 “(6) Research, evaluation, and data collection  
6 capabilities in the field of instruction for limited  
7 English proficient children need to be strengthened  
8 so that educators and other staff teaching limited  
9 English proficient children in the classroom can bet-  
10 ter identify and promote programs, program imple-  
11 mentation strategies, and instructional practices that  
12 result in the effective education of limited English  
13 proficient children.

14 “(7) The Federal Government has a special and  
15 continuing obligation to ensure that States and local  
16 educational agencies provide children of limited  
17 English proficiency the same educational opportuni-  
18 ties afforded other children.

19 “(b) PURPOSES.—The purposes of this part are—

20 “(1) to help ensure that children who are lim-  
21 ited English proficient, including recent immigrant  
22 children, attain English proficiency, develop high lev-  
23 els of academic attainment in English, and meet the  
24 same challenging State academic content standards



1 and challenging State student academic achievement  
2 standards expected of all children;

3 “(2) to develop high-quality programs designed  
4 to assist local educational agencies in teaching lim-  
5 ited English proficient children;

6 “(3) to assist local educational agencies to de-  
7 velop and enhance their capacity to provide high-  
8 quality instructional programs designed to prepare  
9 limited English proficient students, including recent  
10 immigrant students, to enter all-English instruc-  
11 tional settings within 3 years; and

12 “(4) to provide State educational agencies and  
13 local educational agencies with the flexibility to im-  
14 plement instructional programs, tied to scientifically  
15 based reading research and sound research and the-  
16 ory on teaching limited English proficient children,  
17 that the agencies believe to be the most effective for  
18 teaching English.

19 **“SEC. 3103. PARENTAL NOTIFICATION AND CONSENT FOR**  
20 **ENGLISH LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION.**

21 “(a) NOTIFICATION.—If a local educational agency  
22 uses funds under this subpart to provide English language  
23 instruction to limited English proficient children, the  
24 agency shall inform a parent or the parents of a child par-  
25 ticipating in an English language instruction program for



1 limited English proficient children assisted under this sub-  
2 part of—

3 “(1) the reasons for the identification of the  
4 child as being in need of English language instruc-  
5 tion;

6 “(2) the child’s level of English proficiency, how  
7 such level was assessed, and the status of the child’s  
8 academic achievement;

9 “(3) how the English language instruction pro-  
10 gram will specifically help the child acquire English  
11 and meet age-appropriate standards for grade pro-  
12 motion and graduation;

13 “(4) what the specific exit requirements are for  
14 the program;

15 “(5) the expected rate of transition from the  
16 program into a classroom that is not tailored for  
17 limited English proficient children; and

18 “(6) the expected rate of graduation from high  
19 school for the program if funds under this subpart  
20 are used for children in secondary schools.

21 “(b) CONSENT.—

22 “(1) AGENCY REQUIREMENTS.—

23 “(A) INFORMED CONSENT.—For a child  
24 who has been identified as limited English pro-  
25 ficient prior to the beginning of the school year,



1 each local educational agency that receives  
2 funds under this subpart shall make a reason-  
3 able and substantial effort to obtain informed  
4 parental consent prior to the placement of a  
5 child in an English language instruction pro-  
6 gram for limited English proficient children  
7 funded under this subpart, if the program does  
8 not include classes which exclusively or almost  
9 exclusively use the English language in instruc-  
10 tion.

11 “(B) WRITTEN CONSENT NOT OB-  
12 TAINED.—

13 “(i) IN GENERAL.—If written consent  
14 is not obtained, the local educational agen-  
15 cy shall maintain a written record that in-  
16 cludes the date and the manner in which  
17 such informed consent was sought, includ-  
18 ing the specific efforts made to obtain such  
19 consent.

20 “(ii) PROOF OF EFFORT.—Notice, in  
21 an understandable form, of specific efforts  
22 made to obtain written consent and a copy  
23 of the written record described in clause (i)  
24 shall be mailed or delivered in writing to a  
25 parent or the parents of a child prior to



1 placing the child in a program described in  
2 subparagraph (A), and shall include a final  
3 request for parental consent for such serv-  
4 ices. After such notice has been mailed or  
5 delivered in writing, the local educational  
6 agency shall provide appropriate edu-  
7 cational services.

8 “(iii) SPECIAL RULE APPLICABLE  
9 DURING SCHOOL YEAR.—For those chil-  
10 dren who have not been identified as lim-  
11 ited English proficient prior to the begin-  
12 ning of the school year, the local edu-  
13 cational agency shall make a reasonable  
14 and substantial effort to obtain parental  
15 consent under this clause. For such chil-  
16 dren, the agency shall document, in writ-  
17 ing, its specific efforts to obtain such con-  
18 sent prior to placing the child in a pro-  
19 gram described in subparagraph (A). After  
20 such documentation has been made, the  
21 local educational agency shall provide ap-  
22 propriate educational services to such  
23 child. The proof of documentation shall be  
24 mailed or delivered in writing to a parent  
25 or the parents of the child in a timely





1 manner and shall include information on  
2 how to have their child immediately re-  
3 moved from the program upon their re-  
4 quest. Nothing in this clause shall be con-  
5 strued as exempting a local educational  
6 agency from complying with the notifica-  
7 tion requirements of subsection (a) and the  
8 consent requirements of this paragraph.

9 “(2) PARENTAL RIGHTS.—A parent or the par-  
10 ents of a child participating in an English language  
11 instruction program for limited English proficient  
12 children assisted under this subpart—

13 “(A) shall select among methods of in-  
14 struction, if more than one method is offered in  
15 the program; and

16 “(B) shall have the right to have their  
17 child immediately removed from the program  
18 upon their request.

19 “(c) RECEIPT OF INFORMATION.—A parent or the  
20 parents of a child identified for participation in an English  
21 language instruction program for limited English pro-  
22 ficient children assisted under this subpart shall receive,  
23 in a manner and form understandable to the parent or  
24 parents, the information required by this subsection. At  
25 a minimum, the parent or parents shall receive—



1           “(1) timely information about English language  
2 instruction programs for limited English proficient  
3 children assisted under this part;

4           “(2) if a parent or the parents of a partici-  
5 pating child so desire, notice of opportunities for  
6 regular meetings for the purpose of formulating and  
7 responding to recommendations from the parent or  
8 parents; and

9           “(3) procedural information for removing a  
10 child from a program for limited English proficient  
11 children.

12       “(d) BASIS FOR ADMISSION OR EXCLUSION.—Stu-  
13 dents shall not be admitted to, or excluded from, any fed-  
14 erally assisted education program on the basis of a sur-  
15 name or language-minority status.

16       **“SEC. 3104. TESTING OF LIMITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT**  
17                               **CHILDREN.**

18       “(a) IN GENERAL.—Assessments of limited English  
19 proficient children participating in programs funded under  
20 this subpart, to the extent practicable, shall be in the lan-  
21 guage and form most likely to yield accurate and reliable  
22 information on what such students know and can do in  
23 content areas.

24       “(b) SPECIAL RULE.—Notwithstanding subsection  
25 (a), in the case of an assessment of reading or language



1 arts of any student who has attended school in the United  
2 States (excluding Puerto Rico) for 3 or more consecutive  
3 school years, the assessment shall be in the form of a test  
4 written in English, except that, if the entity administering  
5 the assessment determines, on a case-by-case individual  
6 basis, that assessments in another language or form would  
7 likely yield more accurate and reliable information on what  
8 such student knows and can do, the entity may assess  
9 such student in such language or form for 1 additional  
10 year.

11 **“SEC. 3105. FORMULA GRANTS TO STATES.**

12 “(a) IN GENERAL.—In the case of each State that  
13 in accordance with section 3107 submits to the Secretary  
14 an application for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall make  
15 a grant for the year to the State for the purposes specified  
16 in subsection (b). The grant shall consist of the allotment  
17 determined for the State under subsection (c).

18 “(b) PURPOSES OF GRANTS.—

19 “(1) REQUIRED EXPENDITURES.—The Sec-  
20 retary may make a grant under subsection (a) only  
21 if the State involved agrees that the State will ex-  
22 pend at least 95 percent of its allotment under sub-  
23 section (c) for the purpose of making subgrants to  
24 eligible entities to provide assistance to limited



1 English proficient children in accordance with sec-  
2 tions 3108 and 3109.

3 “(2) AUTHORIZED EXPENDITURES.—Subject to  
4 paragraph (3), a State that receives a grant under  
5 subsection (a) may expend not more than 5 percent  
6 of its allotment under subsection (c) for one or more  
7 of the following purposes:

8 “(A) Carrying out—

9 “(i) professional development activi-  
10 ties, and other activities, that assist per-  
11 sonnel in meeting State and local certifi-  
12 cation requirements for teaching limited  
13 English proficient children; and

14 “(ii) other activities that provide such  
15 personnel with the skills and knowledge  
16 necessary to educate limited English pro-  
17 ficient children.

18 “(B) Providing scholarships and fellow-  
19 ships to students who agree to teach limited  
20 English proficient children once they graduate.

21 “(C) Planning, administration, and inter-  
22 agency coordination related to the subgrants re-  
23 ferred to in paragraph (1).



1           “(D) Providing technical assistance and  
2 other forms of assistance to local educational  
3 agencies that—

4                   “(i) educate limited English proficient  
5 children; and

6                   “(ii) are not receiving a subgrant  
7 from a State under this subpart.

8           “(E) Providing bonuses to subgrantees  
9 whose performance has been exceptional in  
10 terms of the speed with which children enrolled  
11 in the subgrantee’s programs and activities at-  
12 tain English language proficiency and meet  
13 challenging State academic content standards  
14 and challenging State student academic  
15 achievement standards.

16           “(3) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—  
17 In carrying out paragraph (2), a State that receives  
18 a grant under subsection (a) may expend not more  
19 than 2 percent of its allotment under subsection (c)  
20 for the purposes described in paragraph (2)(C).

21           “(c) DETERMINATION OF ALLOTMENT AMOUNTS.—

22                   “(1) RESERVATIONS.—From the amount appro-  
23 priated under section 3110 to carry out this subpart  
24 for each fiscal year, the Secretary shall reserve—



1           “(A) .5 percent of such amount for pay-  
2           ments to entities that are considered to be local  
3           educational agencies under section 3106(a) for  
4           activities approved by the Secretary;

5           “(B) .5 percent of such amount for pay-  
6           ments to outlying areas, to be allotted in ac-  
7           cordance with their respective needs for assist-  
8           ance under this subpart, as determined by the  
9           Secretary, for activities, approved by the Sec-  
10          retary, consistent with this part; and

11          “(C)  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent of such amount for  
12          evaluation of the programs under this part and  
13          for dissemination of best practices.

14          “(2) CONTINUATION AWARDS.—Before making  
15          awards to States under paragraph (3) for any fiscal  
16          year, the Secretary shall make continuation awards  
17          to recipients of grants under subpart 1 of part A of  
18          the Bilingual Education Act, as that Act was in ef-  
19          fect on the day before the effective date of the No  
20          Child Left Behind Act of 2001, in order to allow  
21          such recipients to continue to receive funds in ac-  
22          cordance with the terms of their grant until the date  
23          on which the grant period otherwise would have ter-  
24          minated if the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001  
25          had not been enacted.

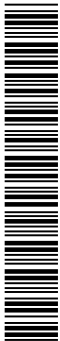


1           “(3) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—

2                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—From the amount ap-  
3           propriated under section 3110 to carry out this  
4           subpart for each fiscal year that remains after  
5           carrying out paragraphs (1) and (2), the Sec-  
6           retary shall allot to each of the 50 States, the  
7           District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of  
8           Puerto Rico an amount which bears the same  
9           ratio to such amount as the total number of  
10          children and youth who are limited English pro-  
11          ficient and who reside in such State bears to  
12          the total number of such children and youth re-  
13          siding in all such States that, in accordance  
14          with section 3107, submit to the Secretary an  
15          application for the year.

16                   “(B) REALLOTMENT.—

17                           “(i) IN GENERAL.—If any State de-  
18           scribed in subparagraph (A) does not sub-  
19           mit to the Secretary an application for a  
20           fiscal year, or submits an application (or  
21           any modification to an application) that  
22           the Secretary, after reasonable notice and  
23           opportunity for a hearing, determines does  
24           not satisfy the requirements of this sub-  
25           part, the Secretary—



1                   “(I) shall endeavor to make the  
2                   State’s allotment available on a com-  
3                   petitive basis to specially qualified  
4                   agencies within the State that satisfy  
5                   the requirements applicable to eligible  
6                   entities under section 3108 and any  
7                   additional requirements that may be  
8                   imposed by the Secretary; and

9                   “(II) shall reallocate any portion of  
10                  such allotment remaining after the  
11                  application of subclause (I) to the re-  
12                  maining States in accordance with  
13                  subparagraph (A).

14                  “(ii) REQUIREMENTS ON SPECIALLY  
15                  QUALIFIED AGENCIES.—If a specially  
16                  qualified agency receives funds under this  
17                  subparagraph, the requirements of sub-  
18                  section (b) shall not apply to the agency.  
19                  In lieu of those requirements, the specially  
20                  qualified agency shall expend the funds for  
21                  the authorized activities described in sec-  
22                  tion 3108(b) and otherwise shall satisfy  
23                  the requirements of section 3108.

24                  “(C) SPECIAL RULE FOR PUERTO RICO.—  
25                  The total amount allotted to Puerto Rico for





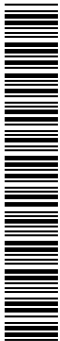
1 any fiscal year under subparagraph (A) shall  
2 not exceed .5 percent of the total amount allot-  
3 ted to all States for that fiscal year.

4 “(4) USE OF DATA FOR DETERMINATIONS.—

5 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in  
6 subparagraph (B), for the purpose of deter-  
7 mining the number of children and youth who  
8 are limited English proficient and reside in a  
9 State and in all States for each fiscal year, the  
10 Secretary shall use the most recent satisfactory  
11 data available from the Bureau of the Census  
12 and the American Community Survey available  
13 from the Department of Commerce.

14 “(B) EXCEPTION.—If the data described  
15 in subparagraph (A) are more than 4 years old  
16 or unavailable, the Secretary shall use the most  
17 recent satisfactory data provided by the States,  
18 such as enrollment data and data that reflect  
19 the number of students taking the English pro-  
20 ficiency assessments in the States.

21 “(5) NO REDUCTION PERMITTED BASED ON  
22 TEACHING METHOD.—The Secretary may not reduce  
23 a State’s allotment based on the State’s selection of  
24 any method of instruction as its preferred method of



1 teaching the English language to children who are  
2 limited English proficient.

3 **“SEC. 3106. NATIVE AMERICAN AND ALASKA NATIVE CHIL-**  
4 **DREN IN SCHOOL.**

5 “(a) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—For the purpose of car-  
6 rying out programs under this part for individuals served  
7 by elementary, secondary, and postsecondary schools oper-  
8 ated predominately for Native American or Alaska Native  
9 children, the following shall be considered to be a local  
10 educational agency:

11 “(1) An Indian tribe.

12 “(2) A tribally sanctioned educational author-  
13 ity.

14 “(3) A Native Hawaiian or Native American  
15 Pacific Islander native language educational organi-  
16 zation.

17 “(4) An elementary or secondary school that is  
18 operated or funded by the Bureau of Indian Affairs,  
19 or a consortium of such schools.

20 “(5) An elementary or secondary school oper-  
21 ated under a contract with or grant from the Bu-  
22 reau of Indian Affairs, in consortium with another  
23 such school or a tribal or community organization.

24 “(6) An elementary or secondary school oper-  
25 ated by the Bureau of Indian Affairs and an institu-



1       tion of higher education, in consortium with an ele-  
2       mentary or secondary school operated under a con-  
3       tract with or grant from the Bureau of Indian Af-  
4       fairs or a tribal or community organization.

5       “(b) SUBMISSION OF APPLICATIONS FOR ASSIST-  
6 ANCE.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this part,  
7 an entity that is considered to be a local educational agen-  
8 cy under subsection (a), and that desires to submit an ap-  
9 plication for Federal financial assistance under this sub-  
10 part, shall submit the application to the Secretary. In all  
11 other respects, such an entity shall be eligible for a  
12 subgrant under this subpart on the same basis as any  
13 other local educational agency.

14 **“SEC. 3107. APPLICATIONS BY STATES.**

15       “For purposes of section 3105, an application sub-  
16 mitted by a State for a grant under such section for a  
17 fiscal year is in accordance with this section if the  
18 application—

19               “(1) describes the process that the State will  
20       use in making competitive subgrants to eligible enti-  
21       ties under section 3109(c);

22               “(2) contains an agreement that, in carrying  
23       out this subpart, the State will address the needs of  
24       school systems of all sizes and in all geographic  
25       areas, including rural and urban schools;



1           “(3) contains an agreement that competitive  
2 subgrants to eligible entities under section 3109(c)  
3 shall be of sufficient size and scope to allow such en-  
4 tities to carry out high quality education programs  
5 for limited English proficient children;

6           “(4) contains an agreement that the State will  
7 coordinate its programs and activities under this  
8 subpart with its other programs and activities under  
9 this Act and other Acts, as appropriate;

10           “(5) contains an agreement that the State—

11           “(A) shall monitor the progress of students  
12 enrolled in programs and activities receiving as-  
13 sistance under this subpart in attaining English  
14 proficiency and in attaining challenging State  
15 academic content standards and challenging  
16 State student academic achievement standards;

17           “(B) shall establish standards and bench-  
18 marks for English language development that  
19 are aligned with State academic content and  
20 achievement standards; and

21           “(C) will ensure that eligible entities com-  
22 ply with section 3104 to annually test children  
23 in English who have been in the United States  
24 for 3 or more consecutive years;



1           “(6) contains an assurance that the State will  
2           develop high-quality annual assessments to measure  
3           English language proficiency and require eligible en-  
4           tities receiving a subgrant under this subpart annu-  
5           ally to assess the English proficiency of all children  
6           with limited English proficiency participating in a  
7           program funded under this subpart;

8           “(7) contains an agreement that the State will  
9           develop annual performance objectives for raising  
10          the level of English proficiency of each limited  
11          English proficient student, and that these objectives  
12          shall include percentage increases in performance on  
13          annual assessments in reading, writing, speaking,  
14          and listening comprehension as compared to the pre-  
15          ceding school year; and

16          “(8) contains an agreement that the State will  
17          require eligible entities receiving a subgrant under  
18          this subpart to use the subgrant in ways that will  
19          build such recipient’s capacity to continue to offer  
20          high-quality English language instruction and pro-  
21          grams which assist limited English proficient chil-  
22          dren in attaining challenging State academic content  
23          standards and challenging State student academic  
24          achievement standards once assistance under this  
25          subpart is no longer available.



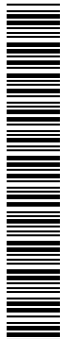
1 **“SEC. 3108. SUBGRANTS TO ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.**

2 “(a) PURPOSES OF SUBGRANTS.—A State may make  
3 a subgrant to an eligible entity from funds received by  
4 the State under this subpart only if the entity agrees to  
5 expend the funds to improve the education of limited  
6 English proficient children and their families, through the  
7 acquisition of English and the attainment of challenging  
8 State academic content standards and challenging State  
9 student academic achievement standards, using ap-  
10 proaches and methodologies based on scientifically based  
11 reading research and sound research and theory on teach-  
12 ing limited English proficient children, by—

13 “(1) developing and implementing new English  
14 language and academic content instructional pro-  
15 grams for children who are limited English pro-  
16 ficient, including programs of early childhood edu-  
17 cation and kindergarten through 12th grade edu-  
18 cation;

19 “(2) carrying out highly focused, innovative, lo-  
20 cally designed projects to expand or enhance existing  
21 English language and academic content instruction  
22 programs for limited English proficient children;

23 “(3) implementing, within an individual school,  
24 schoolwide programs for restructuring, reforming,  
25 and upgrading all relevant programs and operations  
26 relating to English language and academic content



1 instruction for limited English proficient students;  
2 or

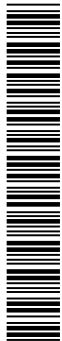
3 “(4) implementing, within the entire jurisdic-  
4 tion of a local educational agency, agencywide pro-  
5 grams for restructuring, reforming, and upgrading  
6 all relevant programs and operations relating to  
7 English language and academic content instruction  
8 for limited English proficient students.

9 “(b) AUTHORIZED SUBGRANTEE ACTIVITIES.—

10 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2), a  
11 State may make a subgrant to an eligible entity  
12 from funds received by the State under this subpart  
13 in order that the eligible entity may achieve one of  
14 the purposes described in subsection (a) by under-  
15 taking one or more of the following activities to im-  
16 prove the understanding, and use, of the English  
17 language, based on a child’s learning skills and at-  
18 tainment of challenging State academic content  
19 standards and challenging State student academic  
20 achievement standards:

21 “(A) Upgrading program objectives and ef-  
22 fective instructional strategies.

23 “(B) Improving the instruction program  
24 for limited English proficient students by iden-  
25 tifying, acquiring, and upgrading curricula, in-



1 instructional materials, educational software, and  
2 assessment procedures.

3 “(C) Providing—

4 “(i) tutorials and academic or voca-  
5 tional education for limited English pro-  
6 ficient children; and

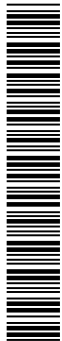
7 “(ii) intensified instruction.

8 “(D) Developing and implementing elemen-  
9 tary or secondary school English language in-  
10 structional programs that are coordinated with  
11 other relevant programs and services.

12 “(E) Providing professional development to  
13 classroom teachers, principals, administrators,  
14 and other school or community-based organiza-  
15 tional personnel to improve the instruction and  
16 assessment of children who are limited English  
17 proficient children.

18 “(F) Improving the English language pro-  
19 ficiency and academic performance of limited  
20 English proficient children.

21 “(G) Improving the instruction of limited  
22 English proficient children by providing for the  
23 acquisition or development of education tech-  
24 nology or instructional materials, access to and  
25 participation in electronic networks for mate-





1           rials, training and communications, and incor-  
2           poration of such resources in curricula and pro-  
3           grams, such as those funded under this sub-  
4           part.

5           “(H) Developing tutoring programs for  
6           limited English proficient children that provide  
7           early intervention and intensive instruction in  
8           order to improve academic achievement, to in-  
9           crease graduation rates among limited English  
10          proficient children, and to prepare students for  
11          transition as soon as possible into classrooms  
12          where instruction is not tailored for limited  
13          English proficient children.

14          “(I) Providing family literacy services and  
15          parent outreach and training activities to lim-  
16          ited English proficient children and their fami-  
17          lies to improve their English language skills and  
18          assist parents in helping their children to im-  
19          prove their academic performance.

20          “(J) Other activities that are consistent  
21          with the purposes of this part.

22          “(2) MOVING CHILDREN OUT OF SPECIALIZED  
23          CLASSROOMS.—Any program or activity undertaken  
24          by an eligible entity using a subgrant from a State  
25          under this subpart shall be designed to assist stu-



1       dents enrolled in the program or activity to attain  
2       English proficiency and meet challenging State aca-  
3       demic content standards and challenging State stu-  
4       dent academic achievement standards as soon as  
5       possible, but not later than after 3 consecutive years  
6       of attendance in United States schools (excluding  
7       schools in Puerto Rico), and to move into a class-  
8       room where instruction is not tailored for limited  
9       English proficient children.

10       “(c) SELECTION OF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.—To  
11 receive a subgrant from a State under this subpart, an  
12 eligible entity shall select one or more methods or forms  
13 of instruction to be used in the programs and activities  
14 undertaken by the entity to assist limited English pro-  
15 ficient children to attain English proficiency and meet  
16 challenging State academic content standards and chal-  
17 lenging State student academic achievement standards.  
18 Such selection shall be consistent with sections 3134 and  
19 3135.

20       “(d) DURATION OF SUBGRANTS.—The duration of a  
21 competitive subgrant made by a State under section  
22 3109(c) shall be determined by the State in its discretion.

23       “(e) APPLICATIONS BY ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—

24               “(1) IN GENERAL.—To receive a subgrant from  
25 a State under this subpart, an eligible entity shall



1 submit an application to the State at such time, in  
2 such form, and containing such information as the  
3 State may require.

4 “(2) REQUIRED DOCUMENTATION.—The appli-  
5 cation shall—

6 “(A) describe the programs and activities  
7 proposed to be developed, implemented, and ad-  
8 ministered under the subgrant;

9 “(B) describe how the eligible entity will  
10 use the subgrant funds to satisfy the require-  
11 ment in subsection (b)(2); and

12 “(C) describe how the eligible entity, using  
13 the disaggregated results of the student assess-  
14 ments required under section 1111(b)(4) and  
15 other measures available, will annually review  
16 the progress of elementary and secondary  
17 schools within its jurisdiction, or served by it,  
18 to determine if such schools are making the  
19 adequate yearly progress necessary to ensure  
20 that limited English proficient students attend-  
21 ing the schools will meet the State’s proficient  
22 level of performance on the State assessment  
23 described in section 1111(b)(4), and will hold  
24 such schools accountable for making such  
25 progress.



1           “(3) REQUIREMENTS FOR APPROVAL.—The ap-  
2           plication shall contain assurances that—

3           “(A) the eligible entity will use qualified  
4           personnel who have appropriate training and  
5           professional credentials in teaching English to  
6           children who are limited English proficient, and  
7           who are proficient in English, including written  
8           and oral communication skills;

9           “(B) if the eligible entity includes one or  
10          more local educational agencies, each such  
11          agency is complying with section 3103(b) prior  
12          to, and throughout, each school year;

13          “(C) the eligible entity annually will assess  
14          the English proficiency of all children with lim-  
15          ited English proficiency participating in pro-  
16          grams funded under this subpart;

17          “(D) the eligible entity has based its pro-  
18          posal on scientifically based reading research  
19          and sound research and theory on teaching lim-  
20          ited English proficient children;

21          “(E) the eligible entity has described in the  
22          application how students enrolled in the pro-  
23          grams and activities proposed in the application  
24          will be proficient in English after 3 academic  
25          years of enrollment;



1           “(F) the eligible entity will ensure that  
2           programs will enable children to speak, read,  
3           write, and comprehend the English language  
4           and meet challenging State academic content  
5           standards and challenging State student aca-  
6           demic achievement standards; and

7           “(G) the eligible entity is not in violation  
8           of any State law, including State constitutional  
9           law, regarding the education of limited English  
10          proficient children, consistent with sections  
11          3134 and 3135.

12          “(4) QUALITY.—For the purposes of awarding  
13          competitive subgrants under section 3109(c), a State  
14          shall consider the quality of each application and en-  
15          sure that it is of sufficient size and scope to meet  
16          the purposes of this subpart.

17      **“SEC. 3109. DISTRIBUTION OF SUBGRANTS TO ELIGIBLE**  
18                                      **ENTITIES.**

19          “(a) IN GENERAL.—A State shall expend at least 95  
20          percent of its allotment under section 3105(c) each fiscal  
21          year for the purpose of making subgrants to eligible enti-  
22          ties within the State that have approved applications, in  
23          accordance with subsections (b) and (c).

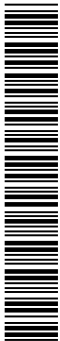
24          “(b) FORMULA SUBGRANTS.—



1           “(1) RESERVATION.—75 percent of the amount  
2           expended by a State for subgrants under this sub-  
3           part shall be reserved for subgrants to eligible enti-  
4           ties described in subsection (a) in which, during the  
5           fiscal year for which the subgrant is to be made, the  
6           number of limited English proficient children and  
7           youth who are enrolled in public and nonpublic ele-  
8           mentary or secondary schools located in geographic  
9           areas under the jurisdiction of, or served by, such  
10          entities is equal to at least 500 students, or 3 per-  
11          cent of the total number of children and youth en-  
12          rolled in such schools during such fiscal year, which-  
13          ever is less.

14           “(2) ALLOTMENT.—From the amount reserved  
15          under paragraph (1), the State shall allot to each el-  
16          igible entity described in such paragraph a percent-  
17          age based on the ratio of—

18           “(A) the number of limited English pro-  
19          ficient children and youth who are enrolled in  
20          public and nonpublic elementary or secondary  
21          schools located in geographic areas under the  
22          jurisdiction of, or served by, such entity during  
23          the fiscal year for which the allotment is to be  
24          made; to



1           “(B) the number of such children and  
2           youth in all such eligible entities.

3           “(3) REALLOTMENT.—Whenever a State deter-  
4           mines that an allotment made to an eligible entity  
5           under this subsection for a fiscal year will not be  
6           used by the entity for the purpose for which it was  
7           made, the State shall, in accordance with such rules  
8           as it deems appropriate, reallocate such amount, con-  
9           sistent with paragraph (2), to other eligible entities  
10          in the State for carrying out that purpose.

11          “(c) COMPETITIVE SUBGRANTS.—25 percent of the  
12          amount expended by a State for subgrants under this sub-  
13          part shall be reserved for competitive subgrants to eligible  
14          entities described in subsection (a) that the State  
15          determines—

16                 “(1) have experienced significant increases, as  
17                 compared to the previous 2 years, in the percentage  
18                 or number of children and youth with limited  
19                 English proficiency, including recent immigrant chil-  
20                 dren, that have enrolled in public and nonpublic ele-  
21                 mentary or secondary schools in the geographic  
22                 areas under the jurisdiction of, or served by, such  
23                 entities during the fiscal year for which the subgrant  
24                 is to be made; or



1           “(2) do not satisfy the requirements of sub-  
2           section (b)(1) but have significant needs for pro-  
3           grams under this subpart.

4   **“SEC. 3110. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

5           “For the purpose of carrying out this subpart, there  
6           are authorized to be appropriated \$750,000,000 for fiscal  
7           year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for each  
8           of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

9                           **“Subpart 2—Administration**

10   **“SEC. 3121. EVALUATIONS.**

11           “(a) IN GENERAL.—Each eligible entity that receives  
12           a subgrant from a State under subpart 1 shall provide  
13           the State, at the conclusion of every second fiscal year  
14           during which the subgrant is received, with an evaluation,  
15           in a form prescribed by the State, of—

16                   “(1) the programs and activities conducted by  
17                   the entity with funds received under subpart 1 dur-  
18                   ing the 2 immediately preceding fiscal years;

19                   “(2) the progress made by students in learning  
20                   the English language and meeting challenging State  
21                   academic content standards and challenging State  
22                   student academic achievement standards;

23                   “(3) the number and percentage of students in  
24                   the programs and activities attaining English lan-  
25                   guage proficiency by the end of each school year, as





1 determined by a valid and reliable assessment of  
2 English proficiency; and

3 “(4) the progress made by students in meeting  
4 challenging State academic content standards and  
5 challenging State student academic achievement  
6 standards for each of the 2 years after such students  
7 are no longer receiving services under this part.

8 “(b) USE OF EVALUATION.—An evaluation provided  
9 by an eligible entity under subsection (a) shall be used  
10 by the entity and the State—

11 “(1) for improvement of programs and activi-  
12 ties;

13 “(2) to determine the effectiveness of programs  
14 and activities in assisting children who are limited  
15 English proficient to attain English proficiency (as  
16 measured consistent with subsection (d)) and meet  
17 challenging State academic content standards and  
18 challenging State student academic achievement  
19 standards; and

20 “(3) in determining whether or not to continue  
21 funding for specific programs or projects.

22 “(c) EVALUATION COMPONENTS.—An evaluation  
23 provided by an eligible entity under subsection (a) shall  
24 include—



1           “(1) an evaluation of whether students enrolling  
2           in a program or activity conducted by the entity  
3           with funds received under subpart 1—

4                   “(A) have attained English proficiency and  
5                   are meeting challenging State academic content  
6                   academic and challenging State student aca-  
7                   demic achievement standards; and

8                   “(B) have achieved a working knowledge of  
9                   the English language that is sufficient to per-  
10                  mit them to perform, in English, in a classroom  
11                  that is not tailored to limited English proficient  
12                  children; and

13                  “(2) such other information as the State may  
14                  require.

15                  “(d) EVALUATION MEASURES.—In prescribing the  
16                  form of an evaluation provided by an entity under sub-  
17                  section (a), a State shall approve evaluation measures, as  
18                  applicable, for use under subsection (c) that are designed  
19                  to assess—

20                          “(1) oral language proficiency in kindergarten;

21                          “(2) oral language proficiency, including speak-  
22                          ing and listening skills, in first grade;

23                          “(3) both oral language proficiency, including  
24                          speaking and listening skills, and reading and writ-  
25                          ing proficiency in grades 2 and higher; and



1           “(4) attainment of challenging State student  
2           academic achievement standards.

3   **“SEC. 3122. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS.**

4           “(a) STATES.—Based upon the evaluations provided  
5 to a State under section 3121, each State that receives  
6 a grant under subpart 1 shall prepare and submit every  
7 second year to the Secretary a report on programs and  
8 activities undertaken by the State under such subpart and  
9 the effectiveness of such programs and activities in im-  
10 proving the education provided to children who are limited  
11 English proficient.

12          “(b) SECRETARY.—Every second year, the Secretary  
13 shall prepare and submit to the Committee on Education  
14 and the Workforce of the House of Representatives and  
15 the Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pen-  
16 sions of the Senate a report on—

17           “(1) programs and activities undertaken by  
18 States under subpart 1 and the effectiveness of such  
19 programs and activities in improving the education  
20 provided to children who are limited English pro-  
21 ficient;

22           “(2) the types of instructional programs used  
23 under subpart 1 to teach limited English proficient  
24 children;



1           “(3) the number of programs or projects, if  
2 any, that were terminated because they were not  
3 able to reach program goals;

4           “(4) the number of limited English proficient  
5 children served under subpart 1 who were  
6 transitioned out of special instructional programs  
7 funded under such subpart into classrooms where in-  
8 struction is not tailored for limited English pro-  
9 ficient children; and

10           “(5) other information gathered from the re-  
11 ports submitted under subsection (a).

12 **“SEC. 3123. COORDINATION WITH RELATED PROGRAMS.**

13           “In order to maximize Federal efforts aimed at serv-  
14 ing the educational needs of children and youth of limited  
15 English proficiency, the Secretary shall coordinate and en-  
16 sure close cooperation with other programs serving lan-  
17 guage-minority and limited English proficient students  
18 that are administered by the Department and other agen-  
19 cies.

20                           **“Subpart 3—General Provisions**

21 **“SEC. 3131. DEFINITIONS.**

22           “For purposes of this part:

23           “(1) CHILDREN AND YOUTH.—The term ‘chil-  
24 dren and youth’ means individuals aged 3 through  
25 21.



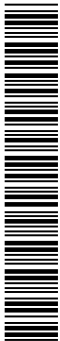
1           “(2) COMMUNITY-BASED ORGANIZATION.—The  
2 term ‘community-based organization’ means a pri-  
3 vate nonprofit organization of demonstrated effec-  
4 tiveness or Indian tribe or tribally sanctioned edu-  
5 cational authority which is representative of a com-  
6 munity or significant segments of a community and  
7 which provides educational or related services to in-  
8 dividuals in the community. Such term includes a  
9 Native Hawaiian or Native American Pacific Is-  
10 lander native language educational organization.

11           “(3) ELIGIBLE ENTITY.—The term ‘eligible en-  
12 tity’ means—

13           “(A) one or more local educational agen-  
14 cies; or

15           “(B) one or more local educational agen-  
16 cies in collaboration with an institution of high-  
17 er education, community-based organization, or  
18 State educational agency.

19           “(4) NATIVE HAWAIIAN OR NATIVE AMERICAN  
20 PACIFIC ISLANDER NATIVE LANGUAGE EDUCATIONAL  
21 ORGANIZATION.—The term ‘Native Hawaiian or Na-  
22 tive American Pacific Islander native language edu-  
23 cational organization’ means a nonprofit organiza-  
24 tion with a majority of its governing board and em-  
25 ployees consisting of fluent speakers of the tradi-



1 tional Native American languages used in their edu-  
2 cational programs and with not less than 5 years  
3 successful experience in providing educational serv-  
4 ices in traditional Native American languages.

5 “(5) NATIVE LANGUAGE.—The term ‘native  
6 language’, when used with reference to an individual  
7 who is limited English proficient, means the lan-  
8 guage normally used by such individual.

9 “(6) SPECIALLY QUALIFIED AGENCY.—The  
10 term ‘specially qualified agency’, when used with re-  
11 spect to a fiscal year, means an eligible entity lo-  
12 cated in a State that, for that year—

13 “(A) does not submit to the Secretary an  
14 application under sections 3105(a) and 3107;  
15 or

16 “(B) submits an application (or any modi-  
17 fication to an application) that the Secretary,  
18 after reasonable notice and opportunity for a  
19 hearing, determines does not satisfy the re-  
20 quirements of subpart 1.

21 “(7) TRIBALLY SANCTIONED EDUCATIONAL AU-  
22 THORITY.—The term ‘tribally sanctioned educational  
23 authority’ means—

24 “(A) any department or division of edu-  
25 cation operating within the administrative



1 structure of the duly constituted governing body  
2 of an Indian tribe; and

3 “(B) any nonprofit institution or organiza-  
4 tion that is—

5 “(i) chartered by the governing body  
6 of an Indian tribe to operate a school de-  
7 scribed in section 3106(a) or otherwise to  
8 oversee the delivery of educational services  
9 to members of the tribe; and

10 “(ii) approved by the Secretary for  
11 the purpose of carrying out programs  
12 under subpart 1 for individuals served by  
13 a school described in section 3106(a).

14 **“SEC. 3132. RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.**

15 “Nothing in subpart 1 shall be construed—

16 “(1) to prohibit a local educational agency from  
17 serving limited English proficient children and youth  
18 simultaneously with students with similar edu-  
19 cational needs, in the same educational settings  
20 where appropriate;

21 “(2) to require a State or a local educational  
22 agency to establish, continue, or eliminate any par-  
23 ticular type of instructional program for limited  
24 English proficient children; or



1           “(3) to limit the preservation or use of Native  
2           American languages as defined in the Native Amer-  
3           ican Languages Act of 1990.

4   **“SEC. 3133. LIMITATION ON FEDERAL REGULATIONS.**

5           “The Secretary shall issue regulations under this part  
6           only to the extent that such regulations are necessary to  
7           ensure compliance with the specific requirements of this  
8           part.

9   **“SEC. 3134. LEGAL AUTHORITY UNDER STATE LAW.**

10          “Nothing in this part shall be construed to negate  
11          or supersede State law, or the legal authority under State  
12          law of any State agency, State entity, or State public offi-  
13          cial, over programs that are under the jurisdiction of the  
14          State agency, entity, or official.

15   **“SEC. 3135. CIVIL RIGHTS.**

16          “Nothing in this part shall be construed in a manner  
17          inconsistent with any Federal law guaranteeing a civil  
18          right.

19   **“SEC. 3136. PROGRAMS FOR NATIVE AMERICANS AND**  
20                           **PUERTO RICO.**

21          “Programs authorized under subpart 1 that serve  
22          Native American children, Native Pacific Island children,  
23          and children in the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, not-  
24          withstanding any other provision of subpart 1, may in-  
25          clude programs of instruction, teacher training, cur-





1 rriculum development, evaluation, and testing designed for  
2 Native American children learning and studying Native  
3 American languages and children of limited Spanish pro-  
4 ficiency, except that a primary outcome of programs serv-  
5 ing such children shall be increased English proficiency  
6 among such children.”.

7 **SEC. 302. CONFORMING AMENDMENT TO DEPARTMENT OF**  
8 **EDUCATION ORGANIZATION ACT.**

9 (a) IN GENERAL.—The Department of Education  
10 Organization Act is amended by striking “Office of Bilin-  
11 gual Education and Minority Languages Affairs” each  
12 place such term appears in the text and inserting “Office  
13 of Educational Services for Limited English Proficient  
14 Children”.

15 (b) CLERICAL AMENDMENTS.—

16 (1) SECTION 209.—The section heading for sec-  
17 tion 209 of the Department of Education Organiza-  
18 tion Act is amended to read as follows:

19 “OFFICE OF EDUCATIONAL SERVICES FOR LIMITED  
20 ENGLISH PROFICIENT CHILDREN”.

21 (2) SECTION 216.—The section heading for sec-  
22 tion 216 of the Department of Education Organiza-  
23 tion Act is amended to read as follows:

24 **“SEC. 216. OFFICE OF EDUCATIONAL SERVICES FOR LIM-**  
25 **ITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT CHILDREN.”.**

26 (3) TABLE OF CONTENTS.—



1 (A) SECTION 209.—The table of contents  
 2 of the Department of Education Organization  
 3 Act is amended by amending the item relating  
 4 to section 209 to read as follows:

“Sec. 209. Office of Educational Services for Limited English Proficient Children.”.

5 (B) SECTION 216.—The table of contents  
 6 of the Department of Education Organization  
 7 Act is amended by amending the item relating  
 8 to section 216 to read as follows:

“Sec. 216. Office of Educational Services for Limited English Proficient Children.”.

9 **PART B—INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE**  
 10 **EDUCATION**  
 11 **SEC. 311. ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY EDUCATION ACT**  
 12 **OF 1965.**

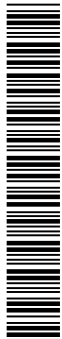
13 (a) IN GENERAL.—Title III (as amended by section  
 14 301 of this Act) is further amended by adding at the end  
 15 the following new part:

16 **“PART B—INDIAN AND ALASKA NATIVE**  
 17 **EDUCATION**  
 18 **“Subpart 1—Indian Education**

19 **“SEC. 3201. FINDINGS.**

20 “Congress finds that—

21 “(1) the Federal Government has a special re-  
 22 sponsibility to ensure that educational programs for



1 all American Indian and Alaska Native children and  
2 adults—

3 “(A) are based on high-quality, inter-  
4 nationally competitive academic content stand-  
5 ards and student academic achievement stand-  
6 ards and build on Indian culture and the Indian  
7 community;

8 “(B) assist local educational agencies, In-  
9 dian tribes, and other entities and individuals in  
10 providing Indian students the opportunity to  
11 achieve such standards; and

12 “(C) meet the unique educational and cul-  
13 turally related academic needs of American In-  
14 dian and Alaska Native students;

15 “(2) since the date of the enactment of the ini-  
16 tial Indian Education Act in 1972, the level of in-  
17 volvement of Indian parents in the planning, devel-  
18 opment, and implementation of educational pro-  
19 grams that affect such parents and their children  
20 has increased significantly, and schools should con-  
21 tinue to foster such involvement;

22 “(3) although the number of Indian teachers,  
23 administrators, and university professors has in-  
24 creased since 1972, teacher training programs are  
25 not recruiting, training, or retraining a sufficient



1 number of Indian individuals as educators to meet  
2 the needs of a growing Indian student population in  
3 elementary, secondary, vocational, adult, and higher  
4 education;

5 “(4) the dropout rate for Indian students is un-  
6 acceptably high; 9 percent of Indian students who  
7 were eighth graders in 1988 had dropped out of  
8 school by 1990;

9 “(5) during the period from 1980 to 1990, the  
10 percentage of Indian individuals living at or below  
11 the poverty level increased from 24 percent to 31  
12 percent, and the readiness of Indian children to  
13 learn is hampered by the high incidence of poverty,  
14 unemployment, and health problems among Indian  
15 children and their families; and

16 “(6) research related specifically to the edu-  
17 cation of Indian children and adults is very limited,  
18 and much of the research is of poor quality or is fo-  
19 cused on limited local or regional issues.

20 **“SEC. 3202. PURPOSE.**

21 “(a) PURPOSE.—It is the purpose of this subpart to  
22 support the efforts of local educational agencies, Indian  
23 tribes and organizations, postsecondary institutions, and  
24 other entities to meet the unique educational and cul-  
25 turally related academic needs of American Indians and



1 Alaska Natives, so that such students can achieve to the  
2 same challenging State academic achievement standards  
3 expected of all other students.

4 “(b) PROGRAMS.—this subpart carries out the pur-  
5 pose described in subsection (a) by authorizing programs  
6 of direct assistance for—

7 “(1) meeting the unique educational and cul-  
8 turally related academic needs of American Indians  
9 and Alaska Natives;

10 “(2) the education of Indian children and  
11 adults;

12 “(3) the training of Indian persons as educators  
13 and counselors, and in other professions serving In-  
14 dian people; and

15 “(4) research, evaluation, data collection, and  
16 technical assistance.

17 **“CHAPTER I—FORMULA GRANTS TO**  
18 **LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES**

19 **“SEC. 3211. PURPOSE.**

20 “It is the purpose of this chapter to support local  
21 educational agencies in their efforts to reform elementary  
22 and secondary school programs that serve Indian students  
23 in order to ensure that such programs—

24 “(1) are based on challenging State academic  
25 content standards and State student academic



1 achievement standards that are used for all stu-  
2 dents; and

3 “(2) are designed to assist Indian students in  
4 meeting those standards and assist the Nation in  
5 reaching the National Education Goals.

6 **“SEC. 3212. GRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.**

7 “(a) IN GENERAL.—

8 “(1) ENROLLMENT REQUIREMENTS.—A local  
9 educational agency shall be eligible for a grant under  
10 this chapter for any fiscal year if the number of In-  
11 dian children eligible under section 3217 and who  
12 were enrolled in the schools of the agency, and to  
13 whom the agency provided free public education,  
14 during the preceding fiscal year—

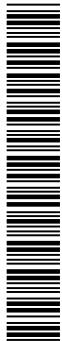
15 “(A) was at least 10; or

16 “(B) constituted not less than 25 percent  
17 of the total number of individuals enrolled in  
18 the schools of such agency.

19 “(2) EXCLUSION.—The requirement of para-  
20 graph (1) shall not apply in Alaska, California, or  
21 Oklahoma, or with respect to any local educational  
22 agency located on, or in proximity to, a reservation.

23 “(b) INDIAN TRIBES.—

24 “(1) IN GENERAL.—If a local educational agen-  
25 cy that is eligible for a grant under this chapter does



1 not establish a parent committee under section  
2 3214(c)(4) for such grant, an Indian tribe that rep-  
3 resents not less than one-half of the eligible Indian  
4 children who are served by such local educational  
5 agency may apply for such grant.

6 “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—The Secretary shall treat  
7 each Indian tribe applying for a grant pursuant to  
8 paragraph (1) as if such Indian tribe were a local  
9 educational agency for purposes of this chapter, ex-  
10 cept that any such tribe is not subject to section  
11 3214(c)(4), section 3218(c), or section 3219.

12 **“SEC. 3213. AMOUNT OF GRANTS.**

13 “(a) AMOUNT OF GRANT AWARDS.—

14 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in sub-  
15 section (b) and paragraph (2), the Secretary shall  
16 allocate to each local educational agency which has  
17 an approved application under this chapter an  
18 amount equal to the product of—

19 “(A) the number of Indian children who  
20 are eligible under section 3217 and served by  
21 such agency; and

22 “(B) the greater of—

23 “(i) the average per pupil expenditure  
24 of the State in which such agency is lo-  
25 cated; or



1                   “(ii) 80 percent of the average per  
2                   pupil expenditure in the United States.

3                   “(2) REDUCTION.—The Secretary shall reduce  
4                   the amount of each allocation determined under  
5                   paragraph (1) in accordance with subsection (e).

6                   “(b) MINIMUM GRANT.—

7                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding subsection  
8                   (e), a local educational agency or an Indian tribe (as  
9                   authorized under section 3212(b)) that is eligible for  
10                  a grant under section 3212, and a school that is op-  
11                  erated or supported by the Bureau of Indian Affairs  
12                  that is eligible for a grant under subsection (d), that  
13                  submits an application that is approved by the Sec-  
14                  retary, shall, subject to appropriations, receive a  
15                  grant under this chapter in an amount that is not  
16                  less than \$3,000.

17                  “(2) CONSORTIA.—Local educational agencies  
18                  may form a consortium for the purpose of obtaining  
19                  grants under this chapter.

20                  “(3) INCREASE.—The Secretary may increase  
21                  the minimum grant under paragraph (1) to not  
22                  more than \$4,000 for all grantees if the Secretary  
23                  determines such increase is necessary to ensure the  
24                  quality of the programs provided.





1           “(c) DEFINITION.—For the purpose of this section,  
2 the term ‘average per pupil expenditure of a State’ means  
3 an amount equal to—

4           “(1) the sum of the aggregate current expendi-  
5 tures of all the local educational agencies in the  
6 State, plus any direct current expenditures by the  
7 State for the operation of such agencies, without re-  
8 gard to the sources of funds from which such local  
9 or State expenditures were made, during the second  
10 fiscal year preceding the fiscal year for which the  
11 computation is made; divided by

12           “(2) the aggregate number of children who  
13 were included in average daily attendance for whom  
14 such agencies provided free public education during  
15 such preceding fiscal year.

16           “(d) SCHOOLS OPERATED OR SUPPORTED BY THE  
17 BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS.—(1) Subject to subsection  
18 (e), in addition to the grants awarded under subsection  
19 (a), the Secretary shall allocate to the Secretary of the  
20 Interior an amount equal to the product of—

21           “(A) the total number of Indian children en-  
22 rolled in schools that are operated by—

23           “(i) the Bureau of Indian Affairs; or

24           “(ii) an Indian tribe, or an organization  
25 controlled or sanctioned by an Indian tribal



1 government, for the children of that tribe under  
2 a contract with, or grant from, the Department  
3 of the Interior under the Indian Self-Deter-  
4 mination Act or the Tribally Controlled Schools  
5 Act of 1988; and

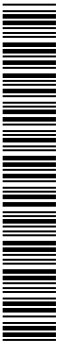
6 “(B) the greater of—

7 “(i) the average per pupil expenditure of  
8 the State in which the school is located; or

9 “(ii) 80 percent of the average per pupil  
10 expenditure in the United States.

11 “(2) Any school described in paragraph (1)(A) that  
12 wishes to receive an allocation under this chapter shall  
13 submit an application in accordance with section 3214,  
14 and shall otherwise be treated as a local educational agen-  
15 cy for the purpose of this chapter, except that such school  
16 shall not be subject to section 3214(c)(4), section 3218(c),  
17 or section 3219.

18 “(e) RATABLE REDUCTIONS.—If the sums appro-  
19 priated for any fiscal year under section 3252(a) are insuf-  
20 ficient to pay in full the amounts determined for local edu-  
21 cational agencies under subsection (a)(1) and for the Sec-  
22 retary of the Interior under subsection (d), each of those  
23 amounts shall be ratably reduced.



1 **“SEC. 3214. APPLICATIONS.**

2 “(a) APPLICATION REQUIRED.—Each local edu-  
3 cational agency that desires to receive a grant under this  
4 chapter shall submit an application to the Secretary at  
5 such time, in such manner, and containing such informa-  
6 tion as the Secretary may reasonably require.

7 “(b) COMPREHENSIVE PROGRAM REQUIRED.—Each  
8 application submitted under subsection (a) shall include  
9 a comprehensive program for meeting the needs of Indian  
10 children served by the local educational agency, including  
11 the language and cultural needs of the children, that—

12 “(1) provides programs and activities to meet  
13 the culturally related academic needs of American  
14 Indian and Alaska Native students;

15 “(2)(A) is consistent with State and local plans  
16 under other provisions of this Act; and

17 “(B) includes academic content and student  
18 performance goals for such children, and bench-  
19 marks for attaining such goals, that are based on  
20 the challenging State standards under title I;

21 “(3) explains how Federal, State, and local pro-  
22 grams, especially under title I, will meet the needs  
23 of such students;

24 “(4) demonstrates how funds made available  
25 under this chapter will be used for activities de-  
26 scribed in section 3215;



1           “(5) describes the professional development op-  
2           portunities that will be provided, as needed, to en-  
3           sure that—

4                   “(A) teachers and other school profes-  
5                   sionals who are new to the Indian community  
6                   are prepared to work with Indian children; and

7                   “(B) all teachers who will be involved in  
8                   programs assisted under this chapter have been  
9                   properly trained to carry out such programs;  
10                  and

11               “(6) describes how the local educational  
12               agency—

13                   “(A) will periodically assess the progress of  
14                   all Indian children enrolled in the schools of the  
15                   local educational agency, including Indian chil-  
16                   dren who do not participate in programs as-  
17                   sisted under this chapter, in meeting the goals  
18                   described in paragraph (2);

19                   “(B) will provide the results of each as-  
20                   sessment referred to in subparagraph (A) to—

21                           “(i) the committee of parents de-  
22                           scribed in subsection (c)(4); and

23                           “(ii) the community served by the  
24                           local educational agency; and



1           “(C) is responding to findings of any pre-  
2           vious assessments that are similar to the as-  
3           sessments described in subparagraph (A).

4           “(c) ASSURANCES.—Each application submitted  
5 under subsection (a) shall include assurances that—

6           “(1) the local educational agency will use funds  
7 received under this chapter only to supplement the  
8 level of funds that, in the absence of the Federal  
9 funds made available under this chapter, such agen-  
10 cy would make available for the education of Indian  
11 children, and not to supplant such funds;

12           “(2) the local educational agency will submit  
13 such reports to the Secretary, in such form and con-  
14 taining such information, as the Secretary may re-  
15 quire to—

16           “(A) carry out the functions of the Sec-  
17 retary under this chapter; and

18           “(B) determine the extent to which funds  
19 provided to the local educational agency under  
20 this chapter are effective in improving the edu-  
21 cational achievement of Indian students served  
22 by such agency;

23           “(3) the program for which assistance is  
24 sought—



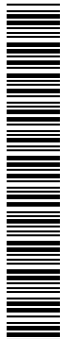
1           “(A) is based on a comprehensive local as-  
2           sessment and prioritization of the unique edu-  
3           cational and culturally related academic needs  
4           of the American Indian and Alaska Native stu-  
5           dents to whom the local educational agency is  
6           providing an education;

7           “(B) will use the best available talents and  
8           resources, including individuals from the Indian  
9           community; and

10           “(C) was developed by such agency in open  
11           consultation with parents of Indian children  
12           and teachers, and, if appropriate, Indian stu-  
13           dents from secondary schools, including public  
14           hearings held by such agency to provide the in-  
15           dividuals described in this subparagraph a full  
16           opportunity to understand the program and to  
17           offer recommendations regarding the program;  
18           and

19           “(4) the local educational agency developed the  
20           program with the participation and written approval  
21           of a committee—

22           “(A) that is composed of, and selected  
23           by—



1                   “(i) parents of Indian children in the  
2                   local educational agency’s schools and  
3                   teachers; and

4                   “(ii) if appropriate, Indian students  
5                   attending secondary schools;

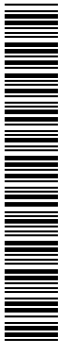
6                   “(B) a majority of whose members are  
7                   parents of Indian children;

8                   “(C) that sets forth such policies and pro-  
9                   cedures, including policies and procedures relat-  
10                  ing to the hiring of personnel, as will ensure  
11                  that the program for which assistance is sought  
12                  will be operated and evaluated in consultation  
13                  with, and with the involvement of, parents of  
14                  the children, and representatives of the area, to  
15                  be served;

16                  “(D) with respect to an application de-  
17                  scribing a schoolwide program in accordance  
18                  with section 3215(c), that has—

19                         “(i) reviewed in a timely fashion the  
20                         program; and

21                         “(ii) determined that the program will  
22                         not diminish the availability of culturally  
23                         related activities for American Indian and  
24                         Alaskan Native students; and



1           “(E) that has adopted reasonable bylaws  
2           for the conduct of the activities of the com-  
3           mittee and abides by such bylaws.

4   **“SEC. 3215. AUTHORIZED SERVICES AND ACTIVITIES.**

5           “(a) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.—Each local edu-  
6           cational agency that receives a grant under this chapter  
7           shall use the grant funds, in a manner consistent with the  
8           purpose specified in section 3211, for services and activi-  
9           ties that—

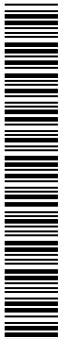
10           “(1) are designed to carry out the comprehen-  
11           sive program of the local educational agency for In-  
12           dian students, and described in the application of  
13           the local educational agency submitted to the Sec-  
14           retary under section 3214(b);

15           “(2) are designed with special regard for the  
16           language and cultural needs of the Indian students;  
17           and

18           “(3) supplement and enrich the regular school  
19           program of such agency.

20           “(b) PARTICULAR ACTIVITIES.—The services and ac-  
21           tivities referred to in subsection (a) may include—

22           “(1) culturally related activities that support  
23           the program described in the application submitted  
24           by the local educational agency;





1           “(2) early childhood and family programs that  
2 emphasize school readiness;

3           “(3) enrichment programs that focus on prob-  
4 lem solving and cognitive skills development and di-  
5 rectly support the attainment of challenging State  
6 academic content standards and State student aca-  
7 demic achievement standards;

8           “(4) integrated educational services in combina-  
9 tion with other programs that meet the needs of In-  
10 dian children and their families;

11           “(5) career preparation activities to enable In-  
12 dian students to participate in programs such as the  
13 programs supported by the Carl D. Perkins Voca-  
14 tional and Technical Education Act of 1998, includ-  
15 ing programs for tech-prep, mentoring, and appren-  
16 ticeship;

17           “(6) activities to educate individuals concerning  
18 substance abuse and to prevent substance abuse;

19           “(7) the acquisition of equipment, but only if  
20 the acquisition of the equipment is essential to meet  
21 the purposes described in section 3211; and

22           “(8) family literacy services.

23           “(c) SCHOOLWIDE PROGRAMS.—Notwithstanding  
24 any other provision of law, a local educational agency may  
25 use funds made available to such agency under this chap-



1 ter to support a schoolwide program under section 1114  
2 if—

3 “(1) the committee composed of parents estab-  
4 lished pursuant to section 3214(c)(4) approves the  
5 use of the funds for the schoolwide program; and

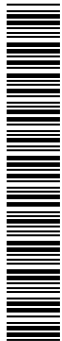
6 “(2) the schoolwide program is consistent with  
7 the purposes described in section 3211.

8 “(d) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Not  
9 more than 5 percent of the funds provided to a grantee  
10 under this chapter for any fiscal year may be used for  
11 administrative purposes.

12 **“SEC. 3216. INTEGRATION OF SERVICES AUTHORIZED.**

13 “(a) PLAN.—An entity receiving funds under this  
14 chapter may submit a plan to the Secretary for the inte-  
15 gration of education and related services provided to In-  
16 dian students.

17 “(b) COORDINATION OF PROGRAMS.—Upon the re-  
18 ceipt of an acceptable plan, the Secretary, in cooperation  
19 with each Federal agency providing grants for the provi-  
20 sion of education and related services to the applicant,  
21 shall authorize the applicant to coordinate, in accordance  
22 with such plan, its federally funded education and related  
23 services programs, or portions thereof, serving Indian stu-  
24 dents in a manner that integrates the program services  
25 involved into a single, coordinated, comprehensive pro-



1 gram and reduces administrative costs by consolidating  
2 administrative functions.

3 “(c) PROGRAMS AFFECTED.—The funds that may be  
4 consolidated in a demonstration project under any such  
5 plan referred to in subsection (b) shall include funds for  
6 any Federal program exclusively serving Indian children  
7 or the funds reserved under any program to exclusively  
8 serve Indian children under which the applicant is eligible  
9 for receipt of funds under a statutory or administrative  
10 formula for the purposes of providing education and re-  
11 lated services which would be used to serve Indian stu-  
12 dents.

13 “(d) PLAN REQUIREMENTS.—For a plan to be ac-  
14 ceptable pursuant to subsection (b), it shall—

15 “(1) identify the programs or funding sources  
16 to be consolidated;

17 “(2) be consistent with the purposes of this sec-  
18 tion authorizing the services to be integrated in a  
19 demonstration project;

20 “(3) describe a comprehensive strategy which  
21 identifies the full range of potential educational op-  
22 portunities and related services to be provided to as-  
23 sist Indian students to achieve the goals set forth in  
24 this chapter;



1           “(4) describe the way in which services are to  
2           be integrated and delivered and the results expected  
3           from the plan;

4           “(5) identify the projected expenditures under  
5           the plan in a single budget;

6           “(6) identify the local, State, or tribal agency  
7           or agencies to be involved in the delivery of the serv-  
8           ices integrated under the plan;

9           “(7) identify any statutory provisions, regula-  
10          tions, policies, or procedures that the applicant be-  
11          lieves need to be waived in order to implement its  
12          plan;

13          “(8) set forth measures of student achievement  
14          and performance goals designed to be met within a  
15          specified period of time; and

16          “(9) be approved by a parent committee formed  
17          in accordance with section 3214(e)(4), if such a  
18          committee exists.

19          “(e) PLAN REVIEW.—Upon receipt of the plan from  
20          an eligible entity, the Secretary shall consult with the Sec-  
21          retary of each Federal department providing funds to be  
22          used to implement the plan, and with the entity submit-  
23          ting the plan. The parties so consulting shall identify any  
24          waivers of statutory requirements or of Federal depart-  
25          mental regulations, policies, or procedures necessary to en-



1 able the applicant to implement its plan. Notwithstanding  
2 any other provision of law, the Secretary of the affected  
3 department or departments shall have the authority to  
4 waive any regulation, policy, or procedure promulgated by  
5 that department that has been so identified by the appli-  
6 cant or department, unless the Secretary of the affected  
7 department determines that such a waiver is inconsistent  
8 with the intent of this chapter or those provisions of the  
9 statute from which the program involved derives its au-  
10 thority which are specifically applicable to Indian stu-  
11 dents.

12 “(f) PLAN APPROVAL.—Within 90 days after the re-  
13 ceipt of an applicant’s plan by the Secretary, the Secretary  
14 shall inform the applicant, in writing, of the Secretary’s  
15 approval or disapproval of the plan. If the plan is dis-  
16 approved, the applicant shall be informed, in writing, of  
17 the reasons for the disapproval and shall be given an op-  
18 portunity to amend its plan or to petition the Secretary  
19 to reconsider such disapproval.

20 “(g) RESPONSIBILITIES OF DEPARTMENT OF EDU-  
21 CATION.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the  
22 enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001, the  
23 Secretary of Education, the Secretary of the Interior, and  
24 the head of any other Federal department or agency iden-  
25 tified by the Secretary of Education, shall enter into an



1 interdepartmental memorandum of agreement providing  
2 for the implementation of the demonstration projects au-  
3 thorized under this section. The lead agency head for a  
4 demonstration program under this section shall be—

5 “(1) the Secretary of the Interior, in the case  
6 of applicant meeting the definition of contract or  
7 grant school under title XI of the Education Amend-  
8 ments of 1978; or

9 “(2) the Secretary of Education, in the case of  
10 any other applicant.

11 “(h) RESPONSIBILITIES OF LEAD AGENCY.—The re-  
12 sponsibilities of the lead agency shall include—

13 “(1) the use of a single report format related  
14 to the plan for the individual project which shall be  
15 used by an eligible entity to report on the activities  
16 undertaken under the project;

17 “(2) the use of a single report format related  
18 to the projected expenditures for the individual  
19 project which shall be used by an eligible entity to  
20 report on all project expenditures;

21 “(3) the development of a single system of Fed-  
22 eral oversight for the project, which shall be imple-  
23 mented by the lead agency; and

24 “(4) the provision of technical assistance to an  
25 eligible entity appropriate to the project, except that



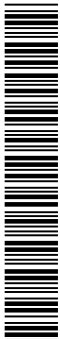
1 an eligible entity shall have the authority to accept  
2 or reject the plan for providing such technical assist-  
3 ance and the technical assistance provider.

4 “(i) REPORT REQUIREMENTS.—A single report for-  
5 mat shall be developed by the Secretary, consistent with  
6 the requirements of this section. Such report format, to-  
7 gether with records maintained on the consolidated pro-  
8 gram at the local level, shall contain such information as  
9 will allow a determination that the eligible entity has com-  
10 plied with the requirements incorporated in its approved  
11 plan, including the demonstration of student achievement,  
12 and will provide assurances to each Secretary that the eli-  
13 gible entity has complied with all directly applicable statu-  
14 tory requirements and with those directly applicable regu-  
15 latory requirements which have not been waived.

16 “(j) NO REDUCTION IN AMOUNTS.—In no case shall  
17 the amount of Federal funds available to an eligible entity  
18 involved in any demonstration project be reduced as a re-  
19 sult of the enactment of this section.

20 “(k) INTERAGENCY FUND TRANSFERS AUTHOR-  
21 IZED.—The Secretary is authorized to take such action  
22 as may be necessary to provide for an interagency transfer  
23 of funds otherwise available to an eligible entity in order  
24 to further the purposes of this section.

25 “(l) ADMINISTRATION OF FUNDS.—

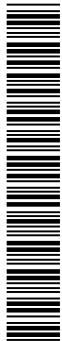


1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Program funds shall be ad-  
2           ministered in such a manner as to allow for a deter-  
3           mination that funds from specific a program or pro-  
4           grams are spent on allowable activities authorized  
5           under such program, except that the eligible entity  
6           shall determine the proportion of the funds granted  
7           which shall be allocated to such program.

8           “(2) SEPARATE RECORDS NOT REQUIRED.—  
9           Nothing in this section shall be construed as requir-  
10          ing the eligible entity to maintain separate records  
11          tracing any services or activities conducted under its  
12          approved plan to the individual programs under  
13          which funds were authorized, nor shall the eligible  
14          entity be required to allocate expenditures among  
15          such individual programs.

16          “(m) OVERAGE.—All administrative costs may be  
17          commingled and participating entities shall be entitled to  
18          the full amount of such costs (under each program or de-  
19          partment’s regulations), and no overage shall be counted  
20          for Federal audit purposes, provided that the overage is  
21          used for the purposes provided for under this section.

22          “(n) FISCAL ACCOUNTABILITY.—Nothing in this  
23          subpart shall be construed so as to interfere with the abil-  
24          ity of the Secretary or the lead agency to fulfill the respon-



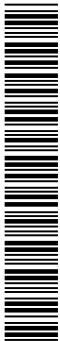


1 sibilities for the safeguarding of Federal funds pursuant  
2 to the Single Audit Act of 1984.

3 “(o) REPORT ON STATUTORY OBSTACLES TO PRO-  
4 GRAM INTEGRATION.—

5 “(1) PRELIMINARY REPORT.—Not later than 2  
6 years after the date of the enactment of the No  
7 Child Left Behind Act of 2001, the Secretary of  
8 Education shall submit a preliminary report to the  
9 Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pen-  
10 sions of the Senate and the Committee on Education  
11 and the Workforce of the House of Representatives  
12 on the status of the implementation of the dem-  
13 onstration program authorized under this section.

14 “(2) FINAL REPORT.—Not later than 5 years  
15 after the date of the enactment of the No Child Left  
16 Behind Act of 2001, the Secretary of Education  
17 shall submit a report to the Committee on Health,  
18 Education, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate and  
19 the Committee on Education and the Workforce of  
20 the House of Representatives on the results of the  
21 implementation of the demonstration program au-  
22 thorized under this section. Such report shall iden-  
23 tify statutory barriers to the ability of participants  
24 to integrate more effectively their education and re-



1       lated services to Indian students in a manner con-  
2       sistent with the purposes of this section.

3       “(p) DEFINITIONS.—For the purposes of this section,  
4 the term ‘Secretary’ means—

5           “(1) the Secretary of the Interior, in the case  
6 of applicant meeting the definition of contract or  
7 grant school under title XI of the Education Amend-  
8 ments of 1978; or

9           “(2) the Secretary of Education, in the case of  
10 any other applicant.

11 **“SEC. 3217. STUDENT ELIGIBILITY FORMS.**

12       “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall require that,  
13 as part of an application for a grant under this chapter,  
14 each applicant shall maintain a file, with respect to each  
15 Indian child for whom the local educational agency pro-  
16 vides a free public education, that contains a form that  
17 sets forth information establishing the status of the child  
18 as an Indian child eligible for assistance under this chap-  
19 ter and that otherwise meets the requirements of sub-  
20 section (b).

21       “(b) FORMS.—

22           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The form described in sub-  
23 section (a) shall include—

24           “(A) either—



1           “(i)(I) the name of the tribe or band  
2           of Indians (as described in section  
3           3251(3)) with respect to which the child  
4           claims membership;

5           “(II) the enrollment number estab-  
6           lishing the membership of the child (if  
7           readily available); and

8           “(III) the name and address of the  
9           organization that maintains updated and  
10          accurate membership data for such tribe or  
11          band of Indians; or

12          “(ii) if the child is not a member of  
13          a tribe or band of Indians, the name, the  
14          enrollment number (if readily available),  
15          and the organization (and address thereof)  
16          responsible for maintaining updated and  
17          accurate membership rolls of the tribe of  
18          any parent or grandparent of the child  
19          from whom the child claims eligibility;

20          “(B) a statement of whether the tribe or  
21          band of Indians with respect to which the child,  
22          parent, or grandparent of the child claims mem-  
23          bership is federally recognized;

24          “(C) the name and address of the parent  
25          or legal guardian of the child;



1           “(D) a signature of the parent or legal  
2 guardian of the child that verifies the accuracy  
3 of the information supplied; and

4           “(E) any other information that the Sec-  
5 retary considers necessary to provide an accu-  
6 rate program profile.

7           “(2) MINIMUM INFORMATION.—In order for a  
8 child to be eligible to be counted for the purpose of  
9 computing the amount of a grant award made under  
10 section 3213, an eligibility form prepared pursuant  
11 to this section for a child shall include—

12           “(A) the name of the child;

13           “(B) the name of the tribe or band of Indi-  
14 ans (as described in section 3251(3)) with re-  
15 spect to which the child claims eligibility; and

16           “(C) the dated signature of the parent or  
17 guardian of the child.

18           “(3) FAILURE.—The failure of an applicant to  
19 furnish any information described in this subsection  
20 other than the information described in paragraph  
21 (2) with respect to any child shall have no bearing  
22 on the determination of whether the child is an eligi-  
23 ble Indian child for the purposes of determining the  
24 amount of a grant award made under section 3213.



1           “(c) STATUTORY CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this  
2 section shall be construed to affect a definition contained  
3 in section 3251.

4           “(d) FORMS AND STANDARDS OF PROOF.—The  
5 forms and the standards of proof (including the standard  
6 of good faith compliance) that were in use during the  
7 1985–1986 academic year to establish the eligibility of a  
8 child for entitlement under the Indian Elementary and  
9 Secondary School Assistance Act shall be the forms and  
10 standards of proof used—

11                   “(1) to establish such eligibility; and

12                   “(2) to meet the requirements of subsection (a).

13           “(e) DOCUMENTATION.—For purposes of deter-  
14 mining whether a child is eligible to be counted for the  
15 purpose of computing the amount of a grant under section  
16 3213, the membership of the child, or any parent or  
17 grandparent of the child, in a tribe or band of Indians  
18 may be established by proof other than an enrollment  
19 number, notwithstanding the availability of an enrollment  
20 number for a member of such tribe or band. Nothing in  
21 subsection (b) shall be construed to require the furnishing  
22 of an enrollment number.

23           “(f) MONITORING AND EVALUATION REVIEW.—

24                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) For each fiscal year, in  
25 order to provide such information as is necessary to



1 carry out the responsibility of the Secretary to pro-  
2 vide technical assistance under this chapter, the Sec-  
3 retary shall conduct a monitoring and evaluation re-  
4 view of a sampling of the recipients of grants under  
5 this chapter. The sampling conducted under this  
6 subparagraph shall take into account the size of the  
7 local educational agency and the geographic location  
8 of such agency.

9 “(B) A local educational agency may not be  
10 held liable to the United States or be subject to any  
11 penalty, by reason of the findings of an audit that  
12 relates to the date of completion, or the date of sub-  
13 mission, of any forms used to establish, before April  
14 28, 1988, the eligibility of a child for entitlement  
15 under the Indian Elementary and Secondary School  
16 Assistance Act.

17 “(2) FALSE INFORMATION.—Any local edu-  
18 cational agency that provides false information in an  
19 application for a grant under this chapter shall—

20 “(A) be ineligible to apply for any other  
21 grant under this subpart; and

22 “(B) be liable to the United States for any  
23 funds that have not been expended.

24 “(3) EXCLUDED CHILDREN.—A student who  
25 provides false information for the form required



1 under subsection (a) shall not be counted for the  
2 purpose of computing the amount of a grant under  
3 section 3213.

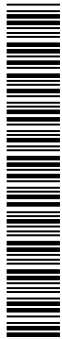
4 “(g) TRIBAL GRANT AND CONTRACT SCHOOLS.—  
5 Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, in  
6 awarding funds under this chapter to a tribal school that  
7 receives a grant or contract from the Bureau of Indian  
8 Affairs, the Secretary shall use only one of the following,  
9 as selected by the school:

10 “(1) A count of the number of students in those  
11 schools certified by the Bureau.

12 “(2) A count of the number of students for  
13 whom the school has eligibility forms that comply  
14 with this section.

15 “(h) TIMING OF CHILD COUNTS.—For purposes of  
16 determining the number of children to be counted in calcu-  
17 lating the amount of a local educational agency’s grant  
18 under this chapter (other than in the case described in  
19 subsection (g)(1)), the local educational agency shall—

20 “(1) establish a date on, or a period not longer  
21 than 31 consecutive days during which, the agency  
22 counts those children, so long as that date or period  
23 occurs before the deadline established by the Sec-  
24 retary for submitting an application under section  
25 3214; and



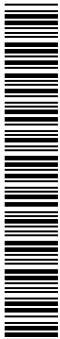
1           “(2) determine that each such child was en-  
2           rolled, and receiving a free public education, in a  
3           school of the agency on that date or during that pe-  
4           riod, as the case may be.

5   **“SEC. 3218. PAYMENTS.**

6           “(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subsections (b) and  
7           (c), the Secretary shall pay to each local educational agen-  
8           cy that submits an application that is approved by the Sec-  
9           retary under this chapter the amount determined under  
10          section 3213. The Secretary shall notify the local edu-  
11          cational agency of the amount of the payment not later  
12          than June 1 of the year for which the Secretary makes  
13          the payment.

14          “(b) PAYMENTS TAKEN INTO ACCOUNT BY THE  
15          STATE.—The Secretary may not make a grant under this  
16          chapter to a local educational agency for a fiscal year if,  
17          for such fiscal year, the State in which the local edu-  
18          cational agency is located takes into consideration pay-  
19          ments made under this chapter in determining the eligi-  
20          bility of the local educational agency for State aid, or the  
21          amount of the State aid, with respect to the free public  
22          education of children during such fiscal year or the pre-  
23          ceding fiscal year.

24          “(c) REDUCTION OF PAYMENT FOR FAILURE TO  
25          MAINTAIN FISCAL EFFORT.—





1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may not pay  
2 a local educational agency the full amount of a grant  
3 award determined under section 3213 for any fiscal  
4 year unless the State educational agency notifies the  
5 Secretary, and the Secretary determines that, with  
6 respect to the provision of free public education by  
7 the local educational agency for the preceding fiscal  
8 year, the combined fiscal effort of the local edu-  
9 cational agency and the State, computed on either a  
10 per student or aggregate expenditure basis, was not  
11 less than 90 percent of the amount of the combined  
12 fiscal effort, computed on the same basis, for the  
13 second preceding fiscal year.

14           “(2) FAILURE TO MAINTAIN EFFORT.—If, for  
15 any fiscal year, the Secretary determines that a local  
16 educational agency failed to maintain the fiscal ef-  
17 fort of such agency at the level specified in para-  
18 graph (1), the Secretary shall—

19           “(A) reduce the amount of the grant that  
20 would otherwise be made to such agency under  
21 this chapter in the exact proportion of such  
22 agency’s failure to maintain its fiscal effort at  
23 such level; and

24           “(B) not use the reduced amount of the  
25 agency’s expenditures for the preceding year to



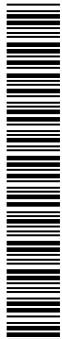
1 determine compliance with paragraph (1) for  
2 any succeeding fiscal year, but shall use the  
3 amount of expenditures that would have been  
4 required to comply with paragraph (1).

5 “(3) WAIVER.—(A) The Secretary may waive  
6 the requirement of paragraph (1), for not more than  
7 1 year at a time, if the Secretary determines that  
8 the failure to comply with such requirement is due  
9 to exceptional or uncontrollable circumstances, such  
10 as a natural disaster or a precipitous and unforeseen  
11 decline in the agency’s financial resources.

12 “(B) The Secretary shall not use the reduced  
13 amount of such agency’s expenditures for the fiscal  
14 year preceding the fiscal year for which a waiver is  
15 granted to determine compliance with paragraph (1)  
16 for any succeeding fiscal year, but shall use the  
17 amount of expenditures that would have been re-  
18 quired to comply with paragraph (1) in the absence  
19 of the waiver.

20 “(d) REALLOCATIONS.—The Secretary may reallo-  
21 cate, in a manner that the Secretary determines will best  
22 carry out the purpose of this chapter, any amounts that—

23 “(1) based on estimates made by local edu-  
24 cational agencies or other information, the Secretary



1 determines will not be needed by such agencies to  
 2 carry out approved programs under this chapter; or  
 3 “(2) otherwise become available for reallocation  
 4 under this chapter.

5 **“SEC. 3219. STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY REVIEW.**

6 “Before submitting an application to the Secretary  
 7 under section 3214, a local educational agency shall sub-  
 8 mit the application to the State educational agency, which  
 9 may comment on such application. If the State educational  
 10 agency comments on the application, it shall comment on  
 11 all applications submitted by local educational agencies in  
 12 the State and shall provide those comments to the respec-  
 13 tive local educational agencies, with an opportunity to re-  
 14 spond.

15 **“CHAPTER II—SPECIAL PROGRAMS AND**  
 16 **PROJECTS TO IMPROVE EDU-**  
 17 **CATIONAL OPPORTUNITIES FOR IN-**  
 18 **DIAN CHILDREN**

19 **“SEC. 3221. IMPROVEMENT OF EDUCATIONAL OPPORTUNI-**  
 20 **TIES FOR INDIAN CHILDREN.**

21 “(a) PURPOSE.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—It is the purpose of this  
 23 section to support projects to develop, test, and dem-  
 24 onstrate the effectiveness of services and programs



1 to improve educational opportunities and achieve-  
2 ment of Indian children.

3 “(2) COORDINATION.—The Secretary shall take  
4 such actions as are necessary to achieve the coordi-  
5 nation of activities assisted under this chapter  
6 with—

7 “(A) other programs funded under this  
8 Act; and

9 “(B) other Federal programs operated for  
10 the benefit of American Indian and Alaska Na-  
11 tive children.

12 “(b) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—For the purpose of this  
13 section, the term ‘eligible entity’ means a State edu-  
14 cational agency, local educational agency, Indian tribe, In-  
15 dian organization, federally supported elementary and sec-  
16 ondary school for Indian students, Indian institution, in-  
17 cluding an Indian institution of higher education, or a con-  
18 sortium of such institutions.

19 “(c) GRANTS AUTHORIZED.—

20 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall award  
21 grants to eligible entities to enable such entities to  
22 carry out activities that meet the purpose specified  
23 in subsection (a)(1), including—



1           “(A) innovative programs related to the  
2 educational needs of educationally disadvan-  
3 taged children;

4           “(B) educational services that are not  
5 available to such children in sufficient quantity  
6 or quality, including remedial instruction, to  
7 raise the achievement of Indian children in one  
8 or more of the core academic subjects of  
9 English, mathematics, science, foreign lan-  
10 guages, art, history, and geography;

11           “(C) bilingual and bicultural programs and  
12 projects;

13           “(D) special health and nutrition services,  
14 and other related activities, that address the  
15 unique health, social, and psychological prob-  
16 lems of Indian children;

17           “(E) special compensatory and other pro-  
18 grams and projects designed to assist and en-  
19 courage Indian children to enter, remain in, or  
20 reenter school, and to increase the rate of sec-  
21 ondary school graduation;

22           “(F) comprehensive guidance, counseling,  
23 and testing services;

24           “(G) early childhood and kindergarten pro-  
25 grams, including family-based preschool pro-



1           grams that emphasize school readiness and pa-  
2           rental skills, and the provision of services to In-  
3           dian children with disabilities;

4           “(H) partnership projects between local  
5           educational agencies and institutions of higher  
6           education that allow secondary school students  
7           to enroll in courses at the postsecondary level to  
8           aid such students in the transition from sec-  
9           ondary school to postsecondary education;

10          “(I) partnership projects between schools  
11          and local businesses for career preparation pro-  
12          grams designed to provide Indian youth with  
13          the knowledge and skills such youth need to  
14          make an effective transition from school to a  
15          high-skill, high-wage career;

16          “(J) programs designed to encourage and  
17          assist Indian students to work toward, and gain  
18          entrance into, an institution of higher edu-  
19          cation;

20          “(K) family literacy services; or

21          “(L) other services that meet the purpose  
22          described in subsection (a)(1).

23          “(2) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—Profes-  
24          sional development of teaching professionals and



1       paraprofessional may be a part of any program as-  
2       sisted under this section.

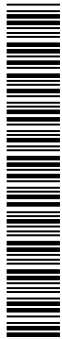
3       “(d) GRANT REQUIREMENTS AND APPLICATIONS.—

4               “(1) GRANT REQUIREMENTS.—(A) The Sec-  
5       retary may make multiyear grants under this section  
6       for the planning, development, pilot operation, or  
7       demonstration of any activity described in subsection  
8       (c) for a period not to exceed 5 years.

9               “(B) In making multiyear grants under this  
10       section, the Secretary shall give priority to applica-  
11       tions that present a plan for combining two or more  
12       of the activities described in subsection (c) over a  
13       period of more than 1 year.

14               “(C) The Secretary shall make a grant payment  
15       to an eligible entity after the initial year of the  
16       multiyear grant only if the Secretary determines  
17       that the eligible entity has made substantial progress  
18       in carrying out the activities assisted under the  
19       grant in accordance with the application submitted  
20       under paragraph (2) and any subsequent modifica-  
21       tions to such application.

22               “(D)(i) In addition to awarding the multiyear  
23       grants described in subparagraph (A), the Secretary  
24       may award grants to eligible entities for the dissemi-



1 nation of exemplary materials or programs assisted  
2 under this section.

3 “(ii) The Secretary may award a dissemination  
4 grant under this subparagraph if, prior to awarding  
5 the grant, the Secretary determines that the mate-  
6 rial or program to be disseminated has been ade-  
7 quately reviewed and has demonstrated—

8 “(I) educational merit; and

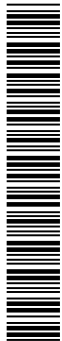
9 “(II) the ability to be replicated.

10 “(2) APPLICATION.—(A) Any eligible entity  
11 that desires to receive a grant under this section  
12 shall submit an application to the Secretary at such  
13 time and in such manner as the Secretary may re-  
14 quire.

15 “(B) Each application submitted to the Sec-  
16 retary under subparagraph (A), other than an appli-  
17 cation for a dissemination grant under paragraph  
18 (1)(D), shall contain—

19 “(i) a description of how parents of Indian  
20 children and representatives of Indian tribes  
21 have been, and will be, involved in developing  
22 and implementing the activities for which as-  
23 sistance is sought;

24 “(ii) assurances that the applicant will par-  
25 ticipate, at the request of the Secretary, in any





1 national evaluation of activities assisted under  
2 this section;

3 “(iii) information demonstrating that the  
4 proposed program is either a research-based  
5 program (which may be a research-based pro-  
6 gram that has been modified to be culturally  
7 appropriate for the students who will be  
8 served);

9 “(iv) a description of how the applicant  
10 will incorporate the proposed services into the  
11 ongoing school program once the grant period is  
12 over; and

13 “(v) such other assurances and informa-  
14 tion as the Secretary may reasonably require.

15 “(e) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Not more than 5 per-  
16 cent of the funds provided to a grantee under this chapter  
17 for any fiscal year may be used for administrative pur-  
18 poses.

19 **“SEC. 3222. PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT FOR TEACHERS**  
20 **AND EDUCATION PROFESSIONALS.**

21 “(a) PURPOSES.—The purposes of this section are—

22 “(1) to increase the number of qualified Indian  
23 individuals in teaching or other education profes-  
24 sions that serve Indian people;



1           “(2) to provide training to qualified Indian indi-  
2           viduals to enable such individuals to become teach-  
3           ers, administrators, teacher aides, social workers,  
4           and ancillary educational personnel; and

5           “(3) to improve the skills of qualified Indian in-  
6           dividuals who serve in the capacities described in  
7           paragraph (2).

8           “(b) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—For the purpose of this  
9           section, the term ‘eligible entity’ means—

10           “(1) an institution of higher education, includ-  
11           ing an Indian institution of higher education;

12           “(2) a State or local educational agency, in con-  
13           sortium with an institution of higher education; and

14           “(3) an Indian tribe or organization, in consor-  
15           tium with an institution of higher education.

16           “(c) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary is au-  
17           thorized to award grants to eligible entities having applica-  
18           tions approved under this section to enable such entities  
19           to carry out the activities described in subsection (d).

20           “(d) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—

21           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Grant funds under this sec-  
22           tion shall be used to provide support and training  
23           for Indian individuals in a manner consistent with  
24           the purposes of this section. Such activities may in-  
25           clude but are not limited to, continuing programs,



1       symposia, workshops, conferences, and direct finan-  
2       cial support.

3               “(2) SPECIAL RULES.—(A) For education per-  
4       sonnel, the training received pursuant to a grant  
5       under this section may be inservice or preservice  
6       training.

7               “(B) For individuals who are being trained to  
8       enter any field other than teaching, the training re-  
9       ceived pursuant to a grant under this section shall  
10      be in a program that results in a graduate degree.

11      “(e) APPLICATION.—Each eligible entity desiring a  
12      grant under this section shall submit an application to the  
13      Secretary at such time, in such manner and accompanied  
14      by such information, as the Secretary may reasonably re-  
15      quire.

16      “(f) SPECIAL RULE.—In making grants under this  
17      section, the Secretary—

18               “(1) shall consider the prior performance of the  
19      eligible entity; and

20               “(2) may not limit eligibility to receive a grant  
21      under this section on the basis of—

22                       “(A) the number of previous grants the  
23      Secretary has awarded such entity; or

24                       “(B) the length of any period during which  
25      such entity received such grants.



1       “(g) GRANT PERIOD.—Each grant under this section  
2 shall be awarded for a period of not more than 5 years.

3       “(h) SERVICE OBLIGATION.—

4             “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall re-  
5 quire, by regulation, that an individual who receives  
6 training pursuant to a grant made under this  
7 section—

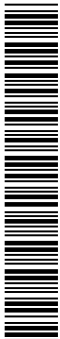
8                     “(A) perform work—

9                             “(i) related to the training received  
10                             under this section; and

11                             “(ii) that benefits Indian people; or

12                     “(B) repay all or a prorated part of the as-  
13 sistance received.

14             “(2) REPORTING.—The Secretary shall estab-  
15 lish, by regulation, a reporting procedure under  
16 which a grant recipient under this section shall, not  
17 later than 12 months after the date of completion of  
18 the training, and periodically thereafter, provide in-  
19 formation concerning the compliance of such recipi-  
20 ent with the work requirement under paragraph (1).



1       **“CHAPTER III—NATIONAL RESEARCH**  
2                                   **ACTIVITIES**

3       **“SEC. 3231. NATIONAL ACTIVITIES.**

4           “(a) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—The Secretary may  
5 use funds made available under section 3252(b) for each  
6 fiscal year to—

7                   “(1) conduct research related to effective ap-  
8 proaches for the education of Indian children and  
9 adults;

10                   “(2) evaluate federally assisted education pro-  
11 grams from which Indian children and adults may  
12 benefit;

13                   “(3) collect and analyze data on the educational  
14 status and needs of Indians; and

15                   “(4) carry out other activities that are con-  
16 sistent with the purpose of this subpart.

17           “(b) ELIGIBILITY.—The Secretary may carry out any  
18 of the activities described in subsection (a) directly or  
19 through grants to, or contracts or cooperative agreements  
20 with Indian tribes, Indian organizations, State educational  
21 agencies, local educational agencies, institutions of higher  
22 education, including Indian institutions of higher edu-  
23 cation, and other public and private agencies and institu-  
24 tions.



1 “(c) COORDINATION.—Research activities supported  
2 under this section—

3 “(1) shall be carried out in consultation with  
4 the Office of Educational Research and Improve-  
5 ment to assure that such activities are coordinated  
6 with and enhance the research and development ac-  
7 tivities supported by the Office; and

8 “(2) may include collaborative research activi-  
9 ties which are jointly funded and carried out by the  
10 Office of Indian Education Programs and the Office  
11 of Educational Research and Improvement.

## 12 **“CHAPTER IV—FEDERAL**

### 13 **ADMINISTRATION**

14 **“SEC. 3241. NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL ON INDIAN EDU-  
15 CATION.**

16 “(a) MEMBERSHIP.—There is established a National  
17 Advisory Council on Indian Education (hereafter in this  
18 section referred to as the ‘Council’), which shall—

19 “(1) consist of 15 Indian members, who shall  
20 be appointed by the President from lists of nominees  
21 furnished, from time-to-time, by Indian tribes and  
22 organizations; and

23 “(2) represent different geographic areas of the  
24 United States.

25 “(b) DUTIES.—The Council shall—



1           “(1) advise the Secretary concerning the fund-  
2           ing and administration (including the development of  
3           regulations and administrative policies and prac-  
4           tices) of any program, including any program estab-  
5           lished under this subpart—

6                   “(A) with respect to which the Secretary  
7           has jurisdiction; and

8                   “(B)(i) that includes Indian children or  
9           adults as participants; or

10                   “(ii) that may benefit Indian children or  
11           adults;

12           “(2) make recommendations to the Secretary  
13           for filling the position of Director of Indian Edu-  
14           cation whenever a vacancy occurs; and

15           “(3) submit to the Congress, not later than  
16           June 30 of each year, a report on the activities of  
17           the Council, including—

18                   “(A) any recommendations that the Coun-  
19           cil considers appropriate for the improvement of  
20           Federal education programs that include Indian  
21           children or adults as participants, or that may  
22           benefit Indian children or adults; and

23                   “(B) recommendations concerning the  
24           funding of any program described in subpara-  
25           graph (A).



1 **“SEC. 3242. PEER REVIEW.**

2 “The Secretary may use a peer review process to re-  
3 view applications submitted to the Secretary under chap-  
4 ter II or III.

5 **“SEC. 3243. PREFERENCE FOR INDIAN APPLICANTS.**

6 “In making grants under chapter II or III, the Sec-  
7 retary shall give a preference to Indian tribes, organiza-  
8 tions, and institutions of higher education under any pro-  
9 gram with respect to which Indian tribes, organizations,  
10 and institutions are eligible to apply for grants.

11 **“SEC. 3244. MINIMUM GRANT CRITERIA.**

12 “The Secretary may not approve an application for  
13 a grant under subpart 2 unless the application is for a  
14 grant that is—

15 “(1) of sufficient size, scope, and quality to  
16 achieve the purpose or objectives of such grant; and

17 “(2) based on relevant research findings.

18 **“CHAPTER V—DEFINITIONS;**

19 **AUTHORIZATIONS OF APPROPRIATIONS**

20 **“SEC. 3251. DEFINITIONS.**

21 “For the purposes of this subpart:

22 “(1) **ADULT.**—The term ‘adult’ means an indi-  
23 vidual who—

24 “(A) has attained the age of 16 years; or





1           “(B) has attained an age that is greater  
2           than the age of compulsory school attendance  
3           under an applicable State law.

4           “(2) FREE PUBLIC EDUCATION.—The term  
5           ‘free public education’ means education that is—

6                   “(A) provided at public expense, under  
7                   public supervision and direction, and without  
8                   tuition charge; and

9                   “(B) provided as elementary or secondary  
10                  education in the applicable State or to preschool  
11                  children.

12           “(3) INDIAN.—The term ‘Indian’ means an in-  
13           dividual who is—

14                   “(A) a member of an Indian tribe or band,  
15                   as membership is defined by the tribe or band,  
16                   including—

17                           “(i) any tribe or band terminated  
18                           since 1940; and

19                           “(ii) any tribe or band recognized by  
20                           the State in which the tribe or band re-  
21                           sides;

22                   “(B) a descendant, in the first or second  
23                   degree, of an individual described in subpara-  
24                   graph (A);



1           “(C) considered by the Secretary of the In-  
2           terior to be an Indian for any purpose;

3           “(D) an Eskimo, Aleut, or other Alaska  
4           Native; or

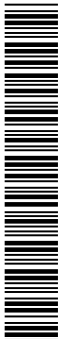
5           “(E) a member of an organized Indian  
6           group that received a grant under the Indian  
7           Education Act of 1988 as it was in effect the  
8           day preceding the date of the enactment of the  
9           Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994.

10 **“SEC. 3252. AUTHORIZATIONS OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

11           “(a) CHAPTER I.—For the purpose of carrying out  
12           chapter I of this subpart, there are authorized to be appro-  
13           priated \$100,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and such sums  
14           as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003 through  
15           2006.

16           “(b) CHAPTERS II AND III.—For the purpose of car-  
17           rying out chapters II and III of this subpart, there are  
18           authorized to be appropriated \$25,000,000 for fiscal year  
19           2002, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the  
20           fiscal years 2003 through 2006.”.

21           (b) SAVINGS PROVISION.—Funds appropriated for  
22           part A of title IX of the Elementary and Secondary Edu-  
23           cation Act of 1965 (as in effect on the day before the date  
24           of the enactment of this Act) shall be available for use



1 under subpart 1 of part B of title III of such Act, as added  
2 by this section.

3 **SEC. 312. ALASKA NATIVE EDUCATION.**

4 (a) IN GENERAL.—Part B of title III (as added by  
5 section 311 of this Act) is further amended by adding at  
6 the end the following new subpart:

7 **“Subpart 2—Alaska Native Education**

8 **“SEC. 3301. SHORT TITLE.**

9 “This subpart may be cited as the ‘Alaska Native  
10 Educational Equity, Support, and Assistance Act’.

11 **“SEC. 3302. FINDINGS.**

12 “The Congress finds and declares:

13 “(1) The attainment of educational success is  
14 critical to the betterment of the conditions, long-  
15 term well-being and preservation of the culture of  
16 Alaska Natives.

17 “(2) It is the policy of the Federal Government  
18 to encourage the maximum participation by Alaska  
19 Natives in the planning and the management of  
20 Alaska Native education programs.

21 “(3) Alaska Native children enter and exit  
22 school with serious educational handicaps.

23 “(4) The educational achievement of Alaska  
24 Native children is far below national norms. In addi-  
25 tion to low Native performance on standardized



1 tests, Native student dropout rates are high, and  
2 Natives are significantly underrepresented among  
3 holders of baccalaureate degrees in the State of  
4 Alaska. As a result, Native students are being de-  
5 nied their opportunity to become full participants in  
6 society by grade school and high school educations  
7 that are condemning an entire generation to an  
8 underclass status and a life of limited choices.

9 “(5) The programs authorized herein, combined  
10 with expanded Head Start, infant learning and early  
11 childhood education programs, and parent education  
12 programs are essential if educational handicaps are  
13 to be overcome.

14 “(6) The sheer magnitude of the geographic  
15 barriers to be overcome in delivering educational  
16 services in rural and village Alaska should be ad-  
17 dressed through the development and implementa-  
18 tion of innovative, model programs in a variety of  
19 areas.

20 “(7) Congress finds that Native children should  
21 be afforded the opportunity to begin their formal  
22 education on a par with their non-Native peers. The  
23 Federal Government should lend support to efforts  
24 developed by and undertaken within the Alaska Na-



1       tive community to improve educational opportunity  
2       for all students.

3       **“SEC. 3303. PURPOSE.**

4       “It is the purpose of this subpart to—

5               “(1) recognize the unique educational needs of  
6       Alaska Natives;

7               “(2) authorize the development of supplemental  
8       educational programs to benefit Alaska Natives;

9               “(3) supplement existing programs and authori-  
10       ties in the area of education to further the purposes  
11       of this subpart; and

12               “(4) provide direction and guidance to appro-  
13       priate Federal, State and local agencies to focus re-  
14       sources, including resources made available under  
15       this subpart, on meeting the educational needs of  
16       Alaska Natives.

17       **“SEC. 3304. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.**

18       “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—

19               “(1) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary is  
20       authorized to make grants to, or enter into contracts  
21       with, Alaska Native organizations, educational enti-  
22       ties with experience in developing or operating Alas-  
23       ka Native programs or programs of instruction con-  
24       ducted in Alaska Native languages, and consortia of



1 such organizations and entities to carry out pro-  
2 grams that meet the purpose of this subpart.

3 “(2) PERMISSIBLE ACTIVITIES.—Programs  
4 under this subpart may include—

5 “(A) the development and implementation  
6 of plans, methods, and strategies to improve the  
7 education of Alaska Natives;

8 “(B) the development of curricula and edu-  
9 cational programs that address the educational  
10 needs of Alaska Native students, including—

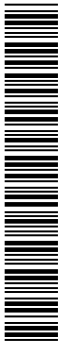
11 “(i) curriculum materials that reflect  
12 the cultural diversity or the contributions  
13 of Alaska Natives;

14 “(ii) instructional programs that make  
15 use of Native Alaskan languages; and

16 “(iii) networks that introduce success-  
17 ful programs, materials, and techniques to  
18 urban and rural schools;

19 “(C) professional development activities for  
20 educators, including—

21 “(i) programs to prepare teachers to  
22 address the cultural diversity and unique  
23 needs of Alaska Native students;



1                   “(ii) in-service programs to improve  
2                   the ability of teachers to meet the unique  
3                   needs of Alaska Native students; and

4                   “(iii) recruiting and preparing teach-  
5                   ers who are Alaska Natives, reside in com-  
6                   munities with high concentrations of Alas-  
7                   ka Native students, or are likely to succeed  
8                   as teachers in isolated, rural communities  
9                   and engage in cross-cultural instruction;

10                   “(D) the development and operation of  
11                   home instruction programs for Alaska Native  
12                   preschool children, the purpose of which is to  
13                   ensure the active involvement of parents in  
14                   their children’s education from the earliest  
15                   ages;

16                   “(E) family literacy services;

17                   “(F) the development and operation of stu-  
18                   dent enrichment programs in science and math-  
19                   ematics that—

20                   “(i) are designed to prepare Alaska  
21                   Native students from rural areas, who are  
22                   preparing to enter high school, to excel in  
23                   science and math; and

24                   “(ii) provide appropriate support serv-  
25                   ices to the families of such students that



1 are needed to enable such students to ben-  
2 efit from the program;

3 “(G) research and data collection activities  
4 to determine the educational status and needs  
5 of Alaska Native children and adults;

6 “(H) other research and evaluation activi-  
7 ties related to programs under this subpart;  
8 and

9 “(I) other activities, consistent with the  
10 purposes of this subpart, to meet the edu-  
11 cational needs of Alaska Native children and  
12 adults.

13 “(3) HOME INSTRUCTION PROGRAMS.—Home  
14 instruction programs for Alaska Native preschool  
15 children under paragraph (2)(D) may include—

16 “(A) programs for parents and their in-  
17 fants, from prenatal through age three;

18 “(B) preschool programs; and

19 “(C) training, education, and support for  
20 parents in such areas as reading readiness, ob-  
21 servation, story-telling, and critical thinking.

22 “(b) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Not  
23 more than 5 percent of funds provided to a grantee under  
24 this section for any fiscal year may be used for administra-  
25 tive purposes.





1       “(c) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There  
2 are authorized to be appropriated \$15,000,000 for fiscal  
3 year 2002, and such sums as may be necessary for each  
4 of the fiscal years 2003 through 2006 to carry out this  
5 subpart.

6       **“SEC. 3305. ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS.**

7       “(a) APPLICATION REQUIRED.—No grant may be  
8 made under this subpart, nor any contract be entered into  
9 under this subpart, unless an application is submitted to  
10 the Secretary in such form, in such manner, and con-  
11 taining such information as the Secretary may determine  
12 necessary to carry out the provisions of this subpart.

13       “(b) APPLICATIONS.—State and local educational  
14 agencies may apply for an award under this subpart only  
15 as subpart of a consortium involving an Alaska Native or-  
16 ganization. This consortium may include other eligible ap-  
17 plicants.

18       “(c) CONSULTATION REQUIRED.—Each applicant for  
19 funding shall provide for ongoing advice from and con-  
20 sultation with representatives of the Alaska Native com-  
21 munity.

22       “(d) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY COORDINA-  
23 TION.—Each applicant for an award under this subpart  
24 shall inform each local educational agency serving stu-



1 dents who would participate in the project about its appli-  
2 cation.

3 **“SEC. 3306. DEFINITIONS.**

4 “For purposes of this subpart—

5 “(1) the term ‘Alaska Native’ has the same  
6 meaning as the term ‘Native’ has in section 3(b) of  
7 the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act; and

8 “(2) the term ‘Alaska Native organization’  
9 means a federally recognized tribe, consortium of  
10 tribes, regional nonprofit Native association, and  
11 other Alaska Native organizations that—

12 “(A) has or commits to acquire expertise  
13 in the education of Alaska Natives; and

14 “(B) has Alaska Natives in substantive  
15 and policy-making positions within the organi-  
16 zation.”.

17 (b) SAVINGS PROVISION.—Funds appropriated for  
18 part C of title IX of the Elementary and Secondary Edu-  
19 cation Act of 1965 (as in effect on the day before the date  
20 of the enactment of this Act) shall be available for use  
21 under subpart 2 of part B of title III of such Act, as added  
22 by this section.



1 **SEC. 313. AMENDMENTS TO THE EDUCATION AMENDMENTS**  
2 **OF 1978.**

3 Part B of title XI of the Education Amendments of  
4 1978 (25 U.S.C. 2001 et seq.) is amended to read as fol-  
5 lows:

6 **“PART B—BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS**  
7 **PROGRAMS**

8 **“SEC. 1120. FINDING AND POLICY.**

9 “(a) FINDING.—Congress finds and recognizes that  
10 the Federal Government has the sole responsibility for the  
11 operation and financial support of the Bureau of Indian  
12 Affairs funded school system that it has established on  
13 or near Indian reservations and Indian trust lands  
14 throughout the Nation for Indian children.

15 “(b) POLICY.—It is the policy of the United States  
16 to work in full cooperation with Indian tribes toward the  
17 goal of assuring that the programs of the Bureau of In-  
18 dian Affairs funded school system are of the highest qual-  
19 ity and meet the unique educational and cultural needs  
20 of Indian children.

21 **“SEC. 1121. ACCREDITATION AND STANDARDS FOR THE**  
22 **BASIC EDUCATION OF INDIAN CHILDREN IN**  
23 **BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS SCHOOLS.**

24 “(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of the standards imple-  
25 mented under this section shall be to afford Indian stu-  
26 dents being served by a school funded by the Bureau of



1 Indian Affairs the same opportunities as all other students  
2 in the United States to achieve the same challenging State  
3 academic achievement standards expected of all students.

4 “(b) STUDIES AND SURVEYS RELATING TO STAND-  
5 ARDS.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enact-  
6 ment of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001, the Sec-  
7 retary, in consultation with the Secretary of Education,  
8 consortia of education organizations, and Indian organiza-  
9 tions and tribes, and making the fullest use possible of  
10 other existing studies, surveys, and plans, shall carry out  
11 by contract with an Indian organization, studies and sur-  
12 veys to establish and revise standards for the basic edu-  
13 cation of Indian children attending Bureau funded  
14 schools. Such studies and surveys shall take into account  
15 factors such as academic needs, local cultural differences,  
16 type and level of language skills, geographic isolation, and  
17 appropriate teacher-student ratios for such children, and  
18 shall be directed toward the attainment of equal edu-  
19 cational opportunity for such children.

20 “(c) REVISION OF MINIMUM ACADEMIC STAND-  
21 ARDS.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 2 years  
23 after the date of the enactment of the No Child Left  
24 Behind Act of 2001, the Secretary shall—



1           “(A) propose revisions to the minimum  
2 academic standards published in the Federal  
3 Register on September 9, 1995 (50 Fed. Reg.  
4 174) for the basic education of Indian children  
5 attending Bureau funded schools in accordance  
6 with the purpose described in subsection (a)  
7 and the findings of the studies and surveys con-  
8 ducted under subsection (b);

9           “(B) publish such proposed revisions to  
10 such standards in the Federal Register for the  
11 purpose of receiving comments from the tribes,  
12 tribal school boards, Bureau funded schools,  
13 and other interested parties; and

14           “(C) consistent with the provisions of this  
15 section and section 1131, take such actions as  
16 are necessary to coordinate standards imple-  
17 mented under this section with the Comprehen-  
18 sive School Reform Plan developed by the Bu-  
19 reau and—

20           “(i) with the standards of the im-  
21 provement plans for the States in which  
22 any school operated by the Bureau of In-  
23 dian Affairs is located; or

24           “(ii) in the case where schools oper-  
25 ated by the Bureau are within the bound-

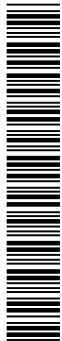


1           aries of reservation land of one tribe but  
2           within the boundaries of more than one  
3           State, with the standards of the State im-  
4           provement plan of one such State selected  
5           by the tribe.

6           “(2) FURTHER REVISIONS.—Not later than 6  
7           months after the close of the comment period, the  
8           Secretary shall establish final standards, distribute  
9           such standards to all tribes and publish such final  
10          standards in the Federal Register. The Secretary  
11          shall revise such standards periodically as necessary.  
12          Prior to any revision of such final standards, the  
13          Secretary shall distribute such proposed revision to  
14          all the tribes, and publish such proposed revision in  
15          the Federal Register, for the purpose of receiving  
16          comments from the tribes and other interested par-  
17          ties.

18          “(3) APPLICABILITY OF STANDARDS.—Except  
19          as provided in subsection (e), the final standards  
20          published under paragraph (2) shall apply to all Bu-  
21          reau funded schools not accredited under subsection  
22          (f), and may also serve as a model for educational  
23          programs for Indian children in public schools.

24          “(4) CONSIDERATIONS WHEN ESTABLISHING  
25          AND REVISING STANDARDS.—In establishing and re-



1 vising such standards, the Secretary shall take into  
2 account the unique needs of Indian students and  
3 support and reinforcement of the specific cultural  
4 heritage of each tribe.

5 “(d) ALTERNATIVE OR MODIFIED STANDARDS.—The  
6 Secretary shall provide alternative or modified standards  
7 in lieu of the standards established under subsection (c),  
8 where necessary, so that the programs of each school are  
9 in compliance with the minimum accreditation standards  
10 required for schools in the State or region where the school  
11 is located.

12 “(e) WAIVER OF STANDARDS; ALTERNATIVE STAND-  
13 ARDS.—A tribal governing body, or the local school board  
14 so designated by the tribal governing body, shall have the  
15 local authority to waive, in part or in whole, the standards  
16 established under subsections (c) and (d) if such standards  
17 are deemed by such body to be inappropriate. The tribal  
18 governing body or designated school board shall, not later  
19 than 60 days after a waiver under this subsection, submit  
20 to the Secretary a proposal for alternative standards that  
21 take into account the specific needs of the tribe’s children.  
22 Such alternative standards shall be established by the Sec-  
23 retary unless specifically rejected by the Secretary for  
24 good cause and in writing to the affected tribes or local



1 school board, which rejection shall be final and not subject  
2 to review.

3 “(f) ACCREDITATION AND IMPLEMENTATION OF  
4 STANDARDS.—

5 “(1) DEADLINE FOR MEETING STANDARDS.—

6 Not later the second academic year after publication  
7 of the standards, to the extent necessary funding is  
8 provided, all Bureau funded schools shall meet the  
9 standards established under subsections (c) and (d)  
10 or shall be accredited—

11 “(A) by a tribal accrediting body, if the ac-  
12 creditation standards of the tribal accrediting  
13 body have been accepted by formal action of the  
14 tribal governing body and are equal to or ex-  
15 ceed the accreditation standards of the State or  
16 region in which the school is located;

17 “(B) by a regional accreditation agency; or

18 “(C) by State accreditation standards for  
19 the State in which it is located.

20 “(2) DETERMINATION OF STANDARDS TO BE

21 APPLIED.—The accreditation type or standards ap-  
22 plied for each school shall be determined by the  
23 school board of the school, in consultation with the  
24 Administrator of the school, provided that in the  
25 case where the School Board and the Administrator



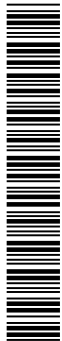


1 fail to agree on the type of accreditation and stand-  
2 ards to apply, the decision of the school board with  
3 the approval of the tribal governing body shall be  
4 final.

5 “(3) ASSISTANCE TO SCHOOL BOARDS.—The  
6 Secretary, through contracts and grants, shall assist  
7 school boards of contract or grant schools in imple-  
8 mentation of the standards established under sub-  
9 sections (c) and (d), if the school boards request  
10 that such standards, in part or in whole, be imple-  
11 mented.

12 “(4) FISCAL CONTROL AND FUND ACCOUNTING  
13 STANDARDS.—The Bureau shall, either directly or  
14 through contract with an Indian organization, estab-  
15 lish a consistent system of reporting standards for  
16 fiscal control and fund accounting for all contract  
17 and grant schools. Such standards shall provide data  
18 comparable to those used by Bureau operated  
19 schools.

20 “(g) ANNUAL PLAN FOR MEETING OF STAND-  
21 ARDS.—Except as provided in subsections (e) and (f), the  
22 Secretary shall begin to implement the standards estab-  
23 lished under this section immediately upon the date of  
24 their establishment. On an annual basis, the Secretary  
25 shall submit to the appropriate committees of Congress,



1 all Bureau funded schools, and the tribal governing bodies  
2 of such schools a detailed plan to bring all Bureau schools  
3 and contract or grant schools up to the level required by  
4 the applicable standards established under this section.  
5 Such plan shall include detailed information on the status  
6 of each school's educational program in relation to the ap-  
7 plicable standards established under this section, specific  
8 cost estimates for meeting such standards at each school  
9 and specific timelines for bringing each school up to the  
10 level required by such standards.

11 “(h) CLOSURE OR CONSOLIDATION OF SCHOOLS.—

12 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as specifically re-  
13 quired by statute, no school or peripheral dormitory  
14 operated by the Bureau on or after January 1,  
15 1992, may be closed or consolidated or have its pro-  
16 gram substantially curtailed unless done according  
17 to the requirements of this subsection.

18 “(2) EXCEPTIONS.—This subsection shall not  
19 apply—

20 “(A) in those cases where the tribal gov-  
21 erning body, or the local school board concerned  
22 (if so designated by the tribal governing body),  
23 requests closure or consolidation; or

24 “(B) when a temporary closure, consolida-  
25 tion, or substantial curtailment is required by



1 plant conditions which constitute an immediate  
2 hazard to health and safety.

3 “(3) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary shall, by  
4 regulation, promulgate standards and procedures for  
5 the closure, transfer to another authority, consolida-  
6 tion, or substantial curtailment of Bureau schools, in  
7 accordance with the requirements of this subsection.

8 “(4) NOTICE.—Whenever closure, transfer to  
9 another authority, consolidation, or substantial cur-  
10 tailment of a school is under active consideration or  
11 review by any division of the Bureau or the Depart-  
12 ment of the Interior, the affected tribe, tribal gov-  
13 erning body, and designated local school board, will  
14 be notified immediately, kept fully and currently in-  
15 formed, and afforded an opportunity to comment  
16 with respect to such consideration or review. When  
17 a formal decision is made to close, transfer to an-  
18 other authority, consolidate, or substantially curtail  
19 a school, the affected tribe, tribal governing body,  
20 and designated school board shall be notified at least  
21 6 months prior to the end of the school year pre-  
22 ceding the proposed closure date. Copies of any such  
23 notices and information shall be transmitted prompt-  
24 ly to the appropriate committees of Congress and  
25 published in the Federal Register.



1           “(5) REPORT.—The Secretary shall make a re-  
2           port to the appropriate committees of Congress, the  
3           affected tribe, and the designated school board de-  
4           scribing the process of the active consideration or re-  
5           view referred to in paragraph (4). The report shall  
6           include a study of the impact of such action on the  
7           student population, identify those students with par-  
8           ticular educational and social needs, and ensure that  
9           alternative services are available to such students.  
10          Such report shall include the description of the con-  
11          sultation conducted between the potential service  
12          provider, current service provider, parents, tribal  
13          representatives and the tribe or tribes involved, and  
14          the Director of the Office of Indian Education Pro-  
15          grams within the Bureau regarding such students.

16               “(6) LIMITATION ON CERTAIN ACTIONS.—No  
17          irrevocable action may be taken in furtherance of  
18          any such proposed school closure, transfer to an-  
19          other authority, consolidation, or substantial curtail-  
20          ment (including any action which would prejudice  
21          the personnel or programs of such school) prior to  
22          the end of the first full academic year after such re-  
23          port is made.

24               “(7) TRIBAL GOVERNING BODY APPROVAL RE-  
25          QUIRED FOR CERTAIN ACTIONS.—The Secretary may



1 terminate, contract, transfer to any other authority,  
2 consolidate, or substantially curtail the operation or  
3 facilities of—

4 “(A) any Bureau funded school that is op-  
5 erated on or after of January 1, 1999;

6 “(B) any program of such a school that is  
7 operated on or after January 1, 1999; or

8 “(C) any school board of a school operated  
9 under a grant under the Tribally Controlled  
10 Schools Act of 1988,

11 only if the tribal governing body approves such ac-  
12 tion.

13 “(i) APPLICATION FOR CONTRACTS OR GRANTS FOR  
14 NON-BUREAU FUNDED SCHOOLS OR EXPANSION OF BU-  
15 REAU FUNDED SCHOOLS.—

16 “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A)(i) The Secretary shall  
17 only consider the factors described in subparagraph  
18 (B) in reviewing—

19 “(I) applications from any tribe for the  
20 awarding of a contract or grant for a school  
21 that is not a Bureau funded school; and

22 “(II) applications from any tribe or school  
23 board of any Bureau funded school for—

24 “(aa) a school which is not a Bureau  
25 funded school; or



1                   “(bb) the expansion of a Bureau  
2                   funded school which would increase the  
3                   amount of funds received by the Indian  
4                   tribe or school board under section 1127.

5                   “(ii) With respect to applications described in  
6                   this subparagraph, the Secretary shall give consider-  
7                   ation to all the factors described in subparagraph  
8                   (B), but no such application shall be denied based  
9                   primarily upon the geographic proximity of com-  
10                  parable public education.

11                  “(B) With respect to applications described in  
12                  subparagraph (A) the Secretary shall consider the  
13                  following factors relating to the program and serv-  
14                  ices that are the subject of the application:

15                  “(i) The adequacy of the facilities or the  
16                  potential to obtain or provide adequate facili-  
17                  ties.

18                  “(ii) Geographic and demographic factors  
19                  in the affected areas.

20                  “(iii) The adequacy of the applicant’s pro-  
21                  gram plans or, in the case of a Bureau funded  
22                  school, of projected needs analysis done either  
23                  by the tribe or the Bureau.

24                  “(iv) Geographic proximity of comparable  
25                  public education.



1           “(v) The stated needs of all affected par-  
2           ties, including students, families, tribal govern-  
3           ments at both the central and local levels, and  
4           school organizations.

5           “(vi) Adequacy and comparability of pro-  
6           grams already available.

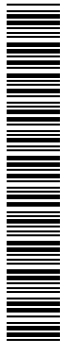
7           “(vii) Consistency of available programs  
8           with tribal educational codes or tribal legisla-  
9           tion on education.

10          “(viii) The history and success of these  
11          services for the proposed population to be  
12          served, as determined from all factors, including  
13          but not limited to standardized examination  
14          performance.

15          “(2) DETERMINATION ON APPLICATION.—(A)  
16          The Secretary shall make a determination of wheth-  
17          er to approve any application described in paragraph  
18          (1)(A) not later than 180 days after such applica-  
19          tion is submitted to the Secretary.

20          “(B) If the Secretary fails to make the deter-  
21          mination with respect to an application by the date  
22          described in subparagraph (A), the application shall  
23          be treated as having been approved by the Secretary.

24          “(3) REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLICATIONS.—(A)  
25          Notwithstanding paragraph (2)(B), an application



1 described in paragraph (1)(A) may be approved by  
2 the Secretary only if—

3 “(i) the application has been approved by  
4 the tribal governing body of the students served  
5 by (or to be served by) the school or program  
6 that is the subject of the application; and

7 “(ii) written evidence of such approval is  
8 submitted with the application.

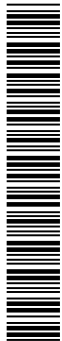
9 “(B) Each application described in paragraph  
10 (1)(A) shall provide information concerning each of  
11 the factors described in paragraph (1)(B).

12 “(4) DENIAL OF APPLICATIONS.—Whenever the  
13 Secretary makes a determination to deny approval of  
14 any application described in paragraph (1)(A), the  
15 Secretary shall—

16 “(A) state the objections in writing to the  
17 applicant not later 180 days after the applica-  
18 tion is submitted to the Secretary;

19 “(B) provide assistance to the applicant to  
20 overcome stated objections; and

21 “(C) provide the applicant a hearing,  
22 under the same rules and regulations pertaining  
23 to the Indian Self-Determination and Education  
24 Assistance Act and an opportunity to appeal  
25 the objections raised by the Secretary.



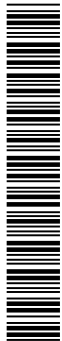


1           “(5) EFFECTIVE DATE OF A SUBJECT APPLICA-  
2           TION.—(A) Except as otherwise provided in this  
3           paragraph, the action which is the subject of any ap-  
4           plication described in paragraph (1)(A) that is ap-  
5           proved by the Secretary shall become effective at the  
6           beginning of the academic year following the fiscal  
7           year in which the application is approved, or at an  
8           earlier date determined by the Secretary.

9           “(B) If an application is treated as having been  
10          approved by the Secretary under paragraph (2)(B),  
11          the action that is the subject of the application shall  
12          become effective on the date that is 18 months after  
13          the date on which the application is submitted to the  
14          Secretary, or at an earlier date determined by the  
15          Secretary.

16          “(6) STATUTORY CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in  
17          this section shall be read so as to preclude the ex-  
18          pansion of grades and related facilities at a Bureau  
19          funded school where such expansion and the mainte-  
20          nance of such expansion is occasioned or paid for  
21          with non-Bureau funds.

22          “(j) GENERAL USE OF FUNDS.—Funds received by  
23          Bureau funded schools from the Bureau of Indian Affairs  
24          and under any program from the Department of Edu-  
25          cation or any other Federal agency for the purpose of pro-

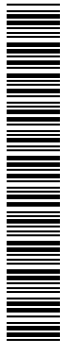


1 viding education or related services may be used for  
2 schoolwide projects to improve the educational program  
3 for all Indian students.

4       “(k) STUDY ON ADEQUACY OF FUNDS AND FOR-  
5 MULAS.—The Comptroller General shall conduct a study,  
6 in consultation with Indian tribes and local school boards,  
7 to determine the adequacy of funding, and formulas used  
8 by the Bureau to determine funding, for programs oper-  
9 ated by Bureau funded schools, taking into account unique  
10 circumstances applicable to Bureau funded schools, as well  
11 as expenditures for comparable purposes in public schools  
12 nationally. Upon completion of the study, the Secretary  
13 of the Interior shall take such action as necessary to en-  
14 sure distribution of the findings of the study to all affected  
15 Indian tribes, local school boards, and associations of local  
16 school boards.

17 **“SEC. 1122. NATIONAL CRITERIA FOR HOME-LIVING SITUA-**  
18 **TIONS.**

19       “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary, in consultation  
20 with the Secretary of Education, Indian organizations and  
21 tribes, and Bureau funded schools, shall revise the na-  
22 tional standards for home-living (dormitory) situations to  
23 include such factors as heating, lighting, cooling, adult-  
24 child ratios, needs for counselors (including special needs  
25 related to off-reservation home-living (dormitory) situa-



1 tions), therapeutic programs, space, and privacy. Such  
2 standards shall be implemented in Bureau operated  
3 schools, and shall serve as minimum standards for con-  
4 tract or grant schools. Once established, any revisions of  
5 such standards shall be developed according to the re-  
6 quirements established under section 1138A.

7       “(b) IMPLEMENTATION.—The Secretary shall imple-  
8 ment the revised standards established under this section  
9 immediately upon their completion.

10       “(c) PLAN.—At the time of each annual budget sub-  
11 mission for Bureau educational services is presented, the  
12 Secretary shall submit to the appropriate committees of  
13 Congress, the tribes, and the affected schools, and publish  
14 in the Federal Register, a detailed plan to bring all Bu-  
15 reau funded schools that provide home-living (dormitory)  
16 situations up to the standards established under this sec-  
17 tion. Such plan shall include a statement of the relative  
18 needs of each Bureau funded home-living (dormitory)  
19 school, projected future needs of each Bureau funded  
20 home-living (dormitory) school, detailed information on  
21 the status of each school in relation to the standards es-  
22 tablished under this section, specific cost estimates for  
23 meeting each standard for each such school, aggregate  
24 cost estimates for bringing all such schools into compli-  
25 ance with the criteria established under this section, and



1 specific timelines for bringing each school into compliance  
2 with such standards.

3 “(d) WAIVER.—The criteria established under this  
4 section may be waived in the same manner as the stand-  
5 ards provided under section 1121(c) may be waived.

6 “(e) CLOSURE FOR FAILURE TO MEET STANDARDS  
7 PROHIBITED.—No school in operation on or before Janu-  
8 ary 1, 1987 (regardless of compliance or noncompliance  
9 with the criteria established under this section), may be  
10 closed, transferred to another authority, consolidated, or  
11 have its program substantially curtailed for failure to meet  
12 the criteria.

13 **“SEC. 1123. CODIFICATION OF REGULATIONS.**

14 “(a) PART 32 OF TITLE 25 OF CODE OF FEDERAL  
15 REGULATIONS.—The provisions of part 32 of title 25 of  
16 the Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on January  
17 1, 1987, are incorporated into this Act and shall be treat-  
18 ed as though such provisions are set forth in this sub-  
19 section. Such provisions may be altered only by means of  
20 an Act of Congress. To the extent that such provisions  
21 of part 32 do not conform with this Act or any statutory  
22 provision of law enacted before November 1, 1978, the  
23 provisions of this Act and the provisions of such other  
24 statutory law shall govern.



1       “(b) **REGULATION DEFINED.**—For purposes of this  
2 part, the term ‘regulation’ means any rules, regulations,  
3 guidelines, interpretations, orders, or requirements of gen-  
4 eral applicability prescribed by any officer or employee of  
5 the executive branch.

6       **“SEC. 1124. SCHOOL BOUNDARIES.**

7       “(a) **ESTABLISHMENT BY SECRETARY.**—The Sec-  
8 retary shall establish, by regulation, separate geographical  
9 attendance areas for each Bureau funded school.

10       “(b) **ESTABLISHMENT BY TRIBAL BODY.**—In any  
11 case where there is more than one Bureau funded school  
12 located on an Indian reservation, at the direction of the  
13 tribal governing body, the relevant school boards of the  
14 Bureau funded schools on the reservation may, by mutual  
15 consent, establish the relevant attendance areas for such  
16 schools, subject to the approval of the tribal governing  
17 body. Any such boundaries so established shall be accepted  
18 by the Secretary.

19       “(c) **BOUNDARY REVISIONS.**—

20               “(1) **IN GENERAL.**—On or after July 1, 2001,  
21 no geographical attendance area shall be revised or  
22 established with respect to any Bureau funded  
23 school unless the tribal governing body or the local  
24 school board concerned (if so designated by the trib-  
25 al governing body) has been afforded—



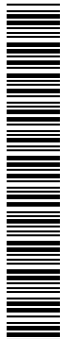
1           “(A) at least 6 months notice of the inten-  
2           tion of the Bureau to revise or establish such  
3           attendance area; and

4           “(B) the opportunity to propose alternative  
5           boundaries.

6           Any tribe may petition the Secretary for revision of  
7           existing attendance area boundaries. The Secretary  
8           shall accept such proposed alternative or revised  
9           boundaries unless the Secretary finds, after con-  
10          sultation with the affected tribe or tribes, that such  
11          revised boundaries do not reflect the needs of the In-  
12          dian students to be served or do not provide ade-  
13          quate stability to all of the affected programs. The  
14          Secretary shall cause such revisions to be published  
15          in the Federal Register.

16          “(2) TRIBAL RESOLUTION DETERMINATION.—  
17          Nothing in this section shall be interpreted as deny-  
18          ing a tribal governing body the authority, on a con-  
19          tinuing basis, to adopt a tribal resolution allowing  
20          parents the choice of the Bureau funded school their  
21          children may attend, regardless of the attendance  
22          boundaries established under this section.

23          “(d) FUNDING RESTRICTIONS.—The Secretary shall  
24          not deny funding to a Bureau funded school for any eligi-  
25          ble Indian student attending the school solely because that



1 student's home or domicile is outside of the geographical  
2 attendance area established for that school under this sec-  
3 tion. No funding shall be made available without tribal au-  
4 thorization to enable a school to provide transportation for  
5 any student to or from the school and a location outside  
6 the approved attendance area of the school.

7       “(e) RESERVATION AS BOUNDARY.—In any case  
8 where there is only one Bureau funded program located  
9 on an Indian reservation, the attendance area for the pro-  
10 gram shall be the boundaries (established by treaty, agree-  
11 ment, legislation, court decisions, or executive decisions  
12 and as accepted by the tribe) of the reservation served,  
13 and those students residing near the reservation shall also  
14 receive services from such program.

15       “(f) OFF-RESERVATION HOME-LIVING (DORMITORY)  
16 SCHOOLS.—Notwithstanding any geographical attendance  
17 areas, attendance at off-reservation home-living (dor-  
18 mitory) schools shall include students requiring special  
19 emphasis programs to be implemented at each off-reserva-  
20 tion home-living (dormitory) school. Such attendance shall  
21 be coordinated between education line officers, the family,  
22 and the referring and receiving programs.

23 **“SEC. 1125. FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION.**

24       “(a) COMPLIANCE WITH HEALTH AND SAFETY  
25 STANDARDS.—The Secretary shall immediately begin to



1 bring all schools, dormitories, and other Indian education-  
2 related facilities operated by the Bureau or under contract  
3 or grant with the Bureau into compliance with all applica-  
4 ble tribal, Federal, or State health and safety standards,  
5 whichever provides greater protection (except that the  
6 tribal standards to be applied shall be no greater than any  
7 otherwise applicable Federal or State standards), with sec-  
8 tion 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, and with the  
9 Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990. Nothing in this  
10 section shall require termination of the operations of any  
11 facility which does not comply with such provisions and  
12 which is in use on the date of the enactment of the No  
13 Child Left Behind Act of 2001.

14       “(b) COMPLIANCE PLAN.—At the time that the an-  
15 nual budget request for Bureau educational services is  
16 presented, the Secretary shall submit to the appropriate  
17 committees of Congress a detailed plan to bring all facili-  
18 ties covered under subsection (a) of this section into com-  
19 pliance with the standards referred to in subsection (a).  
20 Such plan shall include detailed information on the status  
21 of each facility’s compliance with such standards, specific  
22 cost estimates for meeting such standards at each school,  
23 and specific timelines for bringing each school into compli-  
24 ance with such standards.

25       “(c) CONSTRUCTION PRIORITIES.—





1           “(1) SYSTEM TO ESTABLISH PRIORITIES.—On  
2           an annual basis the Secretary shall submit to the  
3           appropriate committees of Congress and cause to be  
4           published in the Federal Register, the system used  
5           to establish priorities for replacement and construc-  
6           tion projects for Bureau funded schools and home-  
7           living schools, including boarding schools and dor-  
8           mitories. At the time any budget request for edu-  
9           cation is presented, the Secretary shall publish in  
10          the Federal Register and submit with the budget re-  
11          quest the current list of all Bureau funded school  
12          construction priorities.

13           “(2) LONG-TERM CONSTRUCTION AND RE-  
14          PLACEMENT LIST.—In addition to the plan sub-  
15          mitted under subsection (b), the Secretary shall—

16                   “(A) not later than 18 months after the  
17                   date of the enactment of the No Child Left Be-  
18                   hind Act of 2001, establish a long-term con-  
19                   struction and replacement list for all Bureau  
20                   funded schools;

21                   “(B) using the list prepared under sub-  
22                   paragraph (A), propose a list for the orderly re-  
23                   placement of all Bureau funded education-re-  
24                   lated facilities over a period of 40 years to en-



1           able planning and scheduling of budget re-  
2           quests;

3           “(C) cause the list prepared under sub-  
4           section (B) to be published in the Federal Reg-  
5           ister and allow a period of not less than 120  
6           days for public comment;

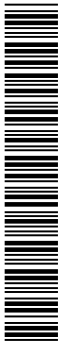
7           “(D) make such revisions to the list pre-  
8           pared under subparagraph (B) as are appro-  
9           priate based on the comments received; and

10          “(E) cause the final list to be published in  
11          the Federal Register.

12          “(3) EFFECT ON OTHER LIST.—Nothing in this  
13          section shall be construed as interfering with or  
14          changing in any way the construction priority list as  
15          it exists on the date of the enactment of the No  
16          Child Left Behind Act of 2001.

17          “(d) HAZARDOUS CONDITION AT BUREAU  
18          SCHOOL.—

19          “(1) CLOSURE OR CONSOLIDATION.—A Bureau  
20          funded school may be closed or consolidated, and the  
21          programs of a Bureau funded school may be sub-  
22          stantially curtailed by reason of plant conditions  
23          that constitute an immediate hazard to health and  
24          safety only if a health and safety officer of the Bu-



1 reau determines that such conditions exist at the  
2 Bureau funded school.

3 “(2) INSPECTION.—(A) After making a deter-  
4 mination described in paragraph (1), the Bureau  
5 health and safety officer shall conduct an inspection  
6 of the condition of such plant accompanied by an ap-  
7 propriate tribal, county, municipal, or State health  
8 and safety officer in order to determine whether con-  
9 ditions at such plant constitute an immediate hazard  
10 to health and safety. Such inspection shall be com-  
11 pleted by not later than the date that is 30 days  
12 after the date on which the action described in para-  
13 graph (1) is taken. No further negative action may  
14 be taken unless the findings are concurred in by the  
15 second, non-Bureau of Indian Affairs inspector.

16 “(B) If the health and safety officer conducting  
17 the inspection of a plant required under subpara-  
18 graph (A) determines that conditions at the plant do  
19 not constitute an immediate hazard to health and  
20 safety, any consolidation or curtailment that was  
21 made under paragraph (1) shall immediately cease  
22 and any school closed by reason of conditions at the  
23 plant shall be reopened immediately.

24 “(C) If a Bureau funded school is temporarily  
25 closed or consolidated or the programs of a Bureau



1 funded school are substantially curtailed under this  
2 subsection and the Secretary determines that the  
3 closure, consolidation, or curtailment will exceed 1  
4 year, the Secretary shall submit to the Congress, by  
5 not later than 6 months after the date on which the  
6 closure, consolidation, or curtailment was initiated, a  
7 report which sets forth the reasons for such tem-  
8 porary actions, the actions the Secretary is taking to  
9 eliminate the conditions that constitute the hazard,  
10 and an estimated date by which such actions will be  
11 concluded.

12 “(e) FUNDING REQUIREMENT.—

13 “(1) DISTRIBUTION OF FUNDS.—Beginning  
14 with the fiscal year following the year of the date of  
15 the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
16 2001, all funds appropriated for the operations and  
17 maintenance of Bureau funded schools shall be dis-  
18 tributed by formula to the schools. No funds from  
19 this account may be retained or segregated by the  
20 Bureau to pay for administrative or other costs of  
21 any facilities branch or office, at any level of the Bu-  
22 reau.

23 “(2) REQUIREMENTS FOR CERTAIN USES.—No  
24 funds shall be withheld from the distribution to the  
25 budget of any school operated under contract or

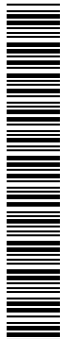


1 grant by the Bureau for maintenance or any other  
2 facilities or road related purpose, unless such school  
3 has consented, as a modification to the contract or  
4 in writing for grants schools, to the withholding of  
5 such funds, including the amount thereof, the pur-  
6 pose for which the funds will be used, and the  
7 timeline for the services to be provided. The school  
8 may, at the end of any fiscal year, cancel an agree-  
9 ment under this paragraph upon giving the Bureau  
10 30 days notice of its intent to do so.

11 “(f) NO REDUCTION IN FEDERAL FUNDING.—Noth-  
12 ing in this section shall be construed to diminish any Fed-  
13 eral funding due to the receipt by the school of funding  
14 for facilities improvement or construction from a State or  
15 any other source.

16 **“SEC. 1126. BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS EDUCATION FUNC-**  
17 **TIONS.**

18 “(a) FORMULATION AND ESTABLISHMENT OF POL-  
19 ICY AND PROCEDURE; SUPERVISION OF PROGRAMS AND  
20 EXPENDITURES.—The Secretary shall vest in the Assist-  
21 ant Secretary for Indian Affairs all functions with respect  
22 to formulation and establishment of policy and procedure  
23 and supervision of programs and expenditures of Federal  
24 funds for the purpose of Indian education administered  
25 by the Bureau. The Assistant Secretary shall carry out



1 such functions through the Director of the Office of Indian  
2 Education Programs.

3 “(b) DIRECTION AND SUPERVISION OF PERSONNEL  
4 OPERATIONS.—Not later than 6 months after the date of  
5 the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001,  
6 the Director of the Office of Indian Education Programs  
7 shall direct and supervise the operations of all personnel  
8 directly and substantially involved in the provision of edu-  
9 cation services by the Bureau, including school or institu-  
10 tion custodial or maintenance personnel, facilities manage-  
11 ment, contracting, procurement, and finance personnel.  
12 The Assistant Secretary for Indian Affairs shall coordi-  
13 nate the transfer of functions relating to procurement,  
14 contracts, operation, and maintenance of schools and  
15 other support functions to the Director.

16 “(c) EVALUATION OF PROGRAMS; SERVICES AND  
17 SUPPORT FUNCTIONS; TECHNICAL AND COORDINATING  
18 ASSISTANCE.—Education personnel who are under the di-  
19 rection and supervision of the Director of the Office of  
20 Indian Education Programs in accordance with the first  
21 sentence of subsection (b) shall—

22 “(1) monitor and evaluate Bureau education  
23 programs;



1           “(2) provide all services and support functions  
2 for education programs with respect to personnel  
3 matters involving staffing actions and functions; and

4           “(3) provide technical and coordinating assist-  
5 ance in areas such as procurement, contracting,  
6 budgeting, personnel, curriculum, and operation and  
7 maintenance of school facilities.

8           “(d) CONSTRUCTION, IMPROVEMENT, OPERATION,  
9 AND MAINTENANCE OF FACILITIES.—

10           “(1) PLAN FOR CONSTRUCTION.—The Assistant  
11 Secretary shall submit in the annual budget a  
12 plan—

13           “(A) for school facilities to be constructed  
14 under section 1125(c);

15           “(B) for establishing priorities among  
16 projects and for the improvement and repair of  
17 educational facilities, which together shall form  
18 the basis for the distribution of appropriated  
19 funds; and

20           “(C) for capital improvements to be made  
21 over the five succeeding years.

22           “(2) PROGRAM FOR OPERATION AND MAINTEN-  
23 NANCE.—

24           “(A) ESTABLISHMENT.—The Assistant  
25 Secretary shall establish a program, including



1 the distribution of appropriated funds, for the  
2 operation and maintenance of education facili-  
3 ties. Such program shall include—

4 “(i) a method of computing the  
5 amount necessary for each educational fa-  
6 cility;

7 “(ii) similar treatment of all Bureau  
8 funded schools;

9 “(iii) a notice of an allocation of ap-  
10 propriated funds from the Director of the  
11 Office of Indian Education Programs di-  
12 rectly to the education line officers and ap-  
13 propriate school officials;

14 “(iv) a method for determining the  
15 need for, and priority of, facilities repair  
16 and maintenance projects, both major and  
17 minor. In making such determination, the  
18 Assistant Secretary shall cause to be con-  
19 ducted a series of meetings at the agency  
20 and area level with representatives of the  
21 Bureau funded schools in those areas and  
22 agencies to receive comment on the lists  
23 and prioritization of such projects; and

24 “(v) a system for the conduct of rou-  
25 tine preventive maintenance.





1           “(B) LOCAL SUPERVISORS.—The appro-  
2           priate education line officers shall make ar-  
3           rangements for the maintenance of education  
4           facilities with the local supervisors of the Bu-  
5           reau maintenance personnel. The local super-  
6           visors of Bureau maintenance personnel shall  
7           take appropriate action to implement the deci-  
8           sions made by the appropriate education line of-  
9           ficers, except that no funds under this chapter  
10          may be authorized for expenditure unless such  
11          appropriate education line officer is assured  
12          that the necessary maintenance has been, or  
13          will be, provided in a reasonable manner.

14          “(3) IMPLEMENTATION.—The requirements of  
15          this subsection shall be implemented as soon as  
16          practicable after the date of the enactment of the No  
17          Child Left Behind Act of 2001.

18          “(e) ACCEPTANCE OF GIFTS AND BEQUESTS.—Not-  
19          withstanding any other provision of law, the Director shall  
20          promulgate guidelines for the establishment of mecha-  
21          nisms for the acceptance of gifts and bequests for the use  
22          and benefit of particular schools or designated Bureau op-  
23          erated education programs, including, where appropriate,  
24          the establishment and administration of trust funds.  
25          When a Bureau operated program is the beneficiary of



1 such a gift or bequest, the Director shall make provisions  
2 for monitoring its use and shall report to the appropriate  
3 committees of Congress the amount and terms of such gift  
4 or bequest, the manner in which such gift or bequest shall  
5 be used, and any results achieved by such action.

6 “(f) FUNCTIONS CLARIFIED.—For the purpose of  
7 this section, the term ‘functions’ includes powers and du-  
8 ties.

9 **“SEC. 1127. ALLOTMENT FORMULA.**

10 “(a) FACTORS CONSIDERED; REVISION TO REFLECT  
11 STANDARDS.—

12 “(1) FORMULA.—The Secretary shall establish,  
13 by regulation adopted in accordance with section  
14 1138A, a formula for determining the minimum an-  
15 nual amount of funds necessary to sustain each Bu-  
16 reau funded school. In establishing such formula,  
17 the Secretary shall consider—

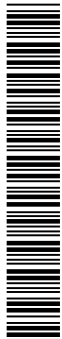
18 “(A) the number of eligible Indian stu-  
19 dents served and total student population of the  
20 school;

21 “(B) special cost factors, such as—

22 “(i) the isolation of the school;

23 “(ii) the need for special staffing,  
24 transportation, or educational programs;

25 “(iii) food and housing costs;



1                   “(iv) maintenance and repair costs as-  
2                   sociated with the physical condition of the  
3                   educational facilities;

4                   “(v) special transportation and other  
5                   costs of isolated and small schools;

6                   “(vi) the costs of home-living (dor-  
7                   mitory) arrangements, where determined  
8                   necessary by a tribal governing body or  
9                   designated school board;

10                  “(vii) costs associated with greater  
11                  lengths of service by education personnel;

12                  “(viii) the costs of therapeutic pro-  
13                  grams for students requiring such pro-  
14                  grams; and

15                  “(ix) special costs for gifted and tal-  
16                  ented students;

17                  “(C) the cost of providing academic serv-  
18                  ices which are at least equivalent to those pro-  
19                  vided by public schools in the State in which  
20                  the school is located; and

21                  “(D) such other relevant factors as the  
22                  Secretary determines are appropriate.

23                  “(2) REVISION OF FORMULA.—Upon the estab-  
24                  lishment of the standards required in sections 1121  
25                  and 1122, the Secretary shall revise the formula es-



1        tablished under this subsection to reflect the cost of  
2        funding such standards. Not later than January 1,  
3        2003, the Secretary shall review the formula estab-  
4        lished under this section and shall take such steps  
5        as are necessary to increase the availability of coun-  
6        seling and therapeutic programs for students in off-  
7        reservation home-living (dormitory) schools and  
8        other Bureau operated residential facilities. Concur-  
9        rent with such action, the Secretary shall review the  
10       standards established under section 1122 to be cer-  
11       tain that adequate provision is made for parental no-  
12       tification regarding, and consent for, such counseling  
13       and therapeutic programs.

14       “(b) PRO RATA ALLOTMENT.—Notwithstanding any  
15       other provision of law, Federal funds appropriated for the  
16       general local operation of Bureau funded schools shall be  
17       allotted pro rata in accordance with the formula estab-  
18       lished under subsection (a).

19       “(c) ANNUAL ADJUSTMENT; RESERVATION OF  
20       AMOUNT FOR SCHOOL BOARD ACTIVITIES.—

21                “(1) ANNUAL ADJUSTMENT.—For fiscal year  
22       2003, and for each subsequent fiscal year, the Sec-  
23       retary shall adjust the formula established under  
24       subsection (a) to ensure that the formula does the  
25       following:



1           “(A) Uses a weighted unit of 1.2 for each  
2 eligible Indian student enrolled in the seventh  
3 and eighth grades of the school in considering  
4 the number of eligible Indian students served  
5 by the school.

6           “(B) Considers a school with an enroll-  
7 ment of less than 50 eligible Indian students as  
8 having an average daily attendance of 50 eligi-  
9 ble Indian students for purposes of imple-  
10 menting the adjustment factor for small  
11 schools.

12           “(C) Takes into account the provision of  
13 residential services on less than a 9-month basis  
14 at a school when the school board and super-  
15 visor of the school determine that a less than  
16 9-month basis will be implemented for the  
17 school year involved.

18           “(D) Uses a weighted unit of 2.0 for each  
19 eligible Indian student that—

20                   “(i) is gifted and talented; and

21                   “(ii) is enrolled in the school on a full-  
22 time basis,

23 in considering the number of eligible Indian  
24 students served by the school.

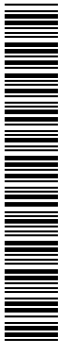


1           “(E) Uses a weighted unit of 0.25 for each  
2 eligible Indian student who is enrolled in a  
3 yearlong credit course in an Indian or Native  
4 language as part of the regular curriculum of a  
5 school, in considering the number of eligible In-  
6 dian students served by such school. The ad-  
7 justment required under this subparagraph  
8 shall be used for such school after—

9           “(i) the certification of the Indian or  
10 Native language curriculum by the school  
11 board of such school to the Secretary, to-  
12 gether with an estimate of the number of  
13 full-time students expected to be enrolled  
14 in the curriculum in the second school year  
15 for which the certification is made; and

16           (ii) the funds appropriated for allot-  
17 ment under this section are designated by  
18 the appropriations Act appropriating such  
19 funds as the amount necessary to imple-  
20 ment such adjustment at such school with-  
21 out reducing allotments made under this  
22 section to any school by virtue of such ad-  
23 justment.

24           “(2) RESERVATION OF AMOUNT.—



1           “(A) IN GENERAL.—From the funds allot-  
2           ted in accordance with the formula established  
3           under subsection (a) for each Bureau school,  
4           the local school board of such school may re-  
5           serve an amount which does not exceed the  
6           greater of—

7                       “(i) \$8,000; or

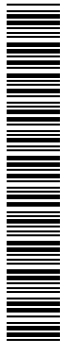
8                       “(ii) the lesser of—

9                               “(I) \$15,000; or

10                               “(II) 1 percent of such allotted  
11                       funds,

12           for school board activities for such school, in-  
13           cluding (notwithstanding any other provision of  
14           law) meeting expenses and the cost of member-  
15           ship in, and support of, organizations engaged  
16           in activities on behalf of Indian education.

17           “(B) TRAINING.—Each school board shall  
18           see that each new member of the school board  
19           receives, within 12 months of the individual’s  
20           assuming a position on the school board, 40  
21           hours of training relevant to that individual’s  
22           service on the board. Such training may include  
23           legal issues pertaining to schools funded by the  
24           Bureau, legal issues pertaining to school



1 boards, ethics, and other topics deemed appro-  
2 priate by the school board.

3 “(d) RESERVATION OF AMOUNT FOR EMER-  
4 GENCIES.—The Secretary shall reserve from the funds  
5 available for distribution for each fiscal year under this  
6 section an amount which, in the aggregate, shall equal 1  
7 percent of the funds available for such purpose for that  
8 fiscal year. Such funds shall be used, at the discretion of  
9 the Director of the Office of Indian Education Programs,  
10 to meet emergencies and unforeseen contingencies affect-  
11 ing the education programs funded under this section.  
12 Funds reserved under this subsection may only be ex-  
13 pended for education services or programs, including  
14 emergency repairs of educational facilities, at a schoolsite  
15 (as defined by section 5204(c)(2) of the Tribally Con-  
16 trolled Schools Act of 1988). Funds reserved under this  
17 subsection shall remain available without fiscal year limi-  
18 tation until expended. However, the aggregate amount  
19 available from all fiscal years may not exceed 1 percent  
20 of the current year funds. Whenever, the Secretary makes  
21 funds available under this subsection, the Secretary shall  
22 report such action to the appropriate committees of Con-  
23 gress within the annual budget submission.

24 “(e) SUPPLEMENTAL APPROPRIATIONS.—Supple-  
25 mental appropriations enacted to meet increased pay costs





1 attributable to school level personnel shall be distributed  
2 under this section.

3 “(f) ELIGIBLE INDIAN STUDENT DEFINED.—For the  
4 purpose of this section, the term ‘eligible Indian student’  
5 means a student who—

6 “(1) is a member of or is at least one-fourth de-  
7 gree Indian blood descendant of a member of an In-  
8 dian tribe which is eligible for the special programs  
9 and services provided by the United States through  
10 the Bureau because of their status as Indians; and

11 “(2) resides on or near an Indian reservation or  
12 meets the criteria for attendance at a Bureau off-  
13 reservation home-living (dormitory) school.

14 “(g) TUITION.—

15 “(1) IN GENERAL.—An eligible Indian student  
16 may not be charged tuition for attendance at a Bu-  
17 reau school or contract or grant school. A student  
18 attending a Bureau school under paragraph (2)(C)  
19 may not be charged tuition for attendance at such  
20 a school.

21 “(2) ATTENDANCE OF NON-INDIAN STUDENTS  
22 AT BUREAU SCHOOLS.—The Secretary may permit  
23 the attendance at a Bureau school of a student who  
24 is not an eligible Indian student if—



1           “(A) the Secretary determines that the  
 2           student’s attendance will not adversely affect  
 3           the school’s program for eligible Indian stu-  
 4           dents because of cost, overcrowding, or violation  
 5           of standards or accreditation;

6           “(B) the school board consents;

7           “(C) the student is a dependent of a Bu-  
 8           reau, Indian Health Service, or tribal govern-  
 9           ment employee who lives on or near the  
 10          schoolsite; or

11          “(D) a tuition is paid for the student that  
 12          is not more than that charged by the nearest  
 13          public school district for out-of-district stu-  
 14          dents, and shall be in addition to the school’s  
 15          allocation under this section.

16          “(3) ATTENDANCE OF NON-INDIAN STUDENTS  
 17          AT CONTRACT AND GRANT SCHOOLS.—The school  
 18          board of a contract or grant school may permit stu-  
 19          dents who are not eligible Indian students under this  
 20          subsection to attend its contract school or grant  
 21          school and any tuition collected for those students  
 22          shall be in addition to funding received under this  
 23          section.

24          “(h) FUNDS AVAILABLE WITHOUT FISCAL YEAR  
 25          LIMITATION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of



1 law, at the election of the school board of a Bureau school  
2 made at any time during the fiscal year, a portion equal  
3 to not more than 15 percent of the funds allocated with  
4 respect to a school under this section for any fiscal year  
5 shall remain available to the school for expenditure with-  
6 out fiscal year limitation. The Assistant Secretary shall  
7 take steps as may be necessary to implement this provi-  
8 sion.

9 “(i) STUDENTS AT RICHFIELD DORMITORY, RICH-  
10 FIELD, UTAH.—Tuition for out-of-State Indian students  
11 in home-living (dormitory) arrangements at the Richfield  
12 dormitory in Richfield, Utah, who attend Sevier County  
13 high schools in Richfield, Utah, shall be paid from the In-  
14 dian school equalization program funds authorized in this  
15 section and section 1130 at a rate not to exceed the  
16 amounts per weighted student unit for that year for the  
17 instruction of such students. No additional administrative  
18 cost funds shall be added to the grant.

19 **“SEC. 1128. ADMINISTRATIVE COST GRANTS.**

20 “(a) GRANTS; EFFECT UPON APPROPRIATED  
21 AMOUNTS.—

22 “(1) GRANTS.—Subject to the availability of  
23 appropriated funds, the Secretary shall provide  
24 grants to each tribe or tribal organization operating  
25 a contract school or grant school in the amount de-



1       terminated under this section with respect to the tribe  
2       or tribal organization for the purpose of paying the  
3       administrative and indirect costs incurred in oper-  
4       ating contract or grant schools, provided that no  
5       school operated as a stand-alone institution shall re-  
6       ceive less than \$200,000 per year for these pur-  
7       poses, in order to—

8               “(A) enable tribes and tribal organizations  
9               operating such schools, without reducing direct  
10              program services to the beneficiaries of the pro-  
11              gram, to provide all related administrative over-  
12              head services and operations necessary to meet  
13              the requirements of law and prudent manage-  
14              ment practice; and

15              “(B) carry out other necessary support  
16              functions which would otherwise be provided by  
17              the Secretary or other Federal officers or em-  
18              ployees, from resources other than direct pro-  
19              gram funds, in support of comparable Bureau  
20              operated programs.

21              “(2)       EFFECT       UPON       APPROPRIATED  
22              AMOUNTS.—Amounts appropriated to fund the  
23              grants provided under this section shall be in addi-  
24              tion to, and shall not reduce, the amounts appro-



1        priated for the program being administered by the  
2        contract or grant school.

3        “(b) DETERMINATION OF GRANT AMOUNT.—

4               “(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount of the grant  
5        provided to each tribe or tribal organization under  
6        this section for each fiscal year shall be determined  
7        by applying the administrative cost percentage rate  
8        of the tribe or tribal organization to the aggregate  
9        of the Bureau elementary and secondary functions  
10       operated by the tribe or tribal organization for which  
11       funds are received from or through the Bureau. The  
12       administrative cost percentage rate determined  
13       under subsection (c) does not apply to other pro-  
14       grams operated by the tribe or tribal organization.

15               “(2) DIRECT COST BASE FUNDS.—The Sec-  
16       retary shall—

17               “(A) reduce the amount of the grant deter-  
18       mined under paragraph (1) to the extent that  
19       payments for administrative costs are actually  
20       received by an Indian tribe or tribal organiza-  
21       tion under any Federal education program in-  
22       cluded in the direct cost base of the tribe or  
23       tribal organization; and

24               “(B) take such actions as may be nec-  
25       essary to be reimbursed by any other depart-



1           ment or agency of the Federal Government for  
 2           the portion of grants made under this section  
 3           for the costs of administering any program for  
 4           Indians that is funded by appropriations made  
 5           to such other department or agency.

6           “(c) ADMINISTRATIVE COST PERCENTAGE RATE.—

7           “(1) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of this sec-  
 8           tion, the administrative cost percentage rate for a  
 9           contract or grant school for a fiscal year is equal to  
 10          the percentage determined by dividing—

11                   “(A) the sum of—

12                           “(i) the amount equal to—

13                                   “(I) the direct cost base of the  
 14                                   tribe or tribal organization for the fis-  
 15                                   cal year, multiplied by

16                                   “(II) the minimum base rate;  
 17                                   plus

18                           “(ii) the amount equal to—

19                                   “(I) the standard direct cost  
 20                                   base; multiplied by

21                                   “(II) the maximum base rate; by

22                   “(B) the sum of—

23                           “(i) the direct cost base of the tribe or  
 24                           tribal organization for the fiscal year; plus

25                           “(ii) the standard direct cost base.



1           “(2) ROUNDING.—The administrative cost per-  
2           centage rate shall be determined to the  $\frac{1}{100}$  of a  
3           decimal point.

4           “(d) COMBINING FUNDS.—

5           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Funds received by a tribe  
6           or contract or grant school as grants under this sec-  
7           tion for tribal elementary or secondary educational  
8           programs may be combined by the tribe or contract  
9           or grant school into a single administrative cost ac-  
10          count without the necessity of maintaining separate  
11          funding source accounting.

12          “(2) INDIRECT COST FUNDS.—Indirect cost  
13          funds for programs at the school which share com-  
14          mon administrative services with tribal elementary  
15          or secondary educational programs may be included  
16          in the administrative cost account described in para-  
17          graph (1).

18          “(e) AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS.—Funds received as  
19          grants under this section with respect to tribal elementary  
20          or secondary education programs shall remain available to  
21          the contract or grant school without fiscal year limitation  
22          and without diminishing the amount of any grants other-  
23          wise payable to the school under this section for any fiscal  
24          year beginning after the fiscal year for which the grant  
25          is provided.



1           “(f) TREATMENT OF FUNDS.—Funds received as  
2 grants under this section for Bureau funded programs op-  
3 erated by a tribe or tribal organization under a contract  
4 or agreement shall not be taken into consideration for pur-  
5 poses of indirect cost underrecovery and overrecovery de-  
6 terminations by any Federal agency for any other funds,  
7 from whatever source derived.

8           “(g) TREATMENT OF ENTITY OPERATING OTHER  
9 PROGRAMS.—In applying this section and section 105 of  
10 the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance  
11 Act with respect to an Indian tribe or tribal organization  
12 that—

13                   “(1) receives funds under this section for ad-  
14 ministrative costs incurred in operating a contract or  
15 grant school or a school operated under the Tribally  
16 Controlled Schools Act of 1988; and

17                   “(2) operates one or more other programs  
18 under a contract or grant provided under the Indian  
19 Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act,  
20 the Secretary shall ensure that the Indian tribe or tribal  
21 organization is provided with the full amount of the ad-  
22 ministrative costs that are associated with operating the  
23 contract or grant school, and of the indirect costs, that  
24 are associated with all of such other programs, provided  
25 that funds appropriated for implementation of this section





1 shall be used only to supply the amount of the grant re-  
2 quired to be provided by this section.

3 “(h) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section:

4 “(1) ADMINISTRATIVE COST.—(A) The term  
5 ‘administrative cost’ means the costs of necessary  
6 administrative functions which—

7 “(i) the tribe or tribal organization incurs  
8 as a result of operating a tribal elementary or  
9 secondary educational program;

10 “(ii) are not customarily paid by com-  
11 parable Bureau operated programs out of direct  
12 program funds; and

13 “(iii) are either—

14 “(I) normally provided for comparable  
15 Bureau programs by Federal officials  
16 using resources other than Bureau direct  
17 program funds; or

18 “(II) are otherwise required of tribal  
19 self-determination program operators by  
20 law or prudent management practice.

21 “(B) The term ‘administrative cost’ may  
22 include—

23 “(i) contract or grant (or other agreement)  
24 administration;



1           “(ii) executive, policy, and corporate lead-  
2           ership and decisionmaking;

3           “(iii) program planning, development, and  
4           management;

5           “(iv) fiscal, personnel, property, and pro-  
6           curement management;

7           “(v) related office services and record  
8           keeping; and

9           “(vi) costs of necessary insurance, audit-  
10          ing, legal, safety and security services.

11          “(2) BUREAU ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY  
12          FUNCTIONS.—The term ‘Bureau elementary and sec-  
13          ondary functions’ means—

14               “(A) all functions funded at Bureau  
15               schools by the Office;

16               “(B) all programs—

17                       “(i) funds for which are appropriated  
18                       to other agencies of the Federal Govern-  
19                       ment; and

20                       “(ii) which are administered for the  
21                       benefit of Indians through Bureau schools;  
22                       and

23                       “(C) all operation, maintenance, and repair  
24                       funds for facilities and government quarters  
25                       used in the operation or support of elementary



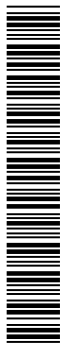
1           and secondary education functions for the ben-  
2           efit of Indians, from whatever source derived.

3           “(3) DIRECT COST BASE.—(A) Except as other-  
4           wise provided in subparagraph (B), the direct cost  
5           base of a tribe or tribal organization for the fiscal  
6           year is the aggregate direct cost program funding  
7           for all tribal elementary or secondary educational  
8           programs operated by the tribe or tribal organization  
9           during—

10                   “(i) the second fiscal year preceding such  
11                   fiscal year; or

12                   “(ii) if such programs have not been oper-  
13                   ated by the tribe or tribal organization during  
14                   the two preceding fiscal years, the first fiscal  
15                   year preceding such fiscal year.

16           “(B) In the case of Bureau elementary or sec-  
17           ondary education functions which have not pre-  
18           viously been operated by a tribe or tribal organiza-  
19           tion under contract, grant, or agreement with the  
20           Bureau, the direct cost base for the initial year shall  
21           be the projected aggregate direct cost program fund-  
22           ing for all Bureau elementary and secondary func-  
23           tions to be operated by the tribe or tribal organiza-  
24           tion during that fiscal year.



1           “(4) MAXIMUM BASE RATE.—The term ‘max-  
2           imum base rate’ means 50 percent.

3           “(5) MINIMUM BASE RATE.—The term ‘min-  
4           imum base rate’ means 11 percent.

5           “(6) STANDARD DIRECT COST BASE.—The term  
6           ‘standard direct cost base’ means \$600,000.

7           “(7) TRIBAL ELEMENTARY OR SECONDARY  
8           EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS.—The term ‘tribal elemen-  
9           tary or secondary educational programs’ means all  
10          Bureau elementary and secondary functions, to-  
11          gether with any other Bureau programs or portions  
12          of programs (excluding funds for social services that  
13          are appropriated to agencies other than the Bureau  
14          and are expended through the Bureau, funds for  
15          major subcontracts, construction, and other major  
16          capital expenditures, and unexpended funds carried  
17          over from prior years) which share common adminis-  
18          trative cost functions, that are operated directly by  
19          a tribe or tribal organization under a contract,  
20          grant, or agreement with the Bureau.

21          “(i) STUDIES FOR DETERMINATION OF FACTORS AF-  
22          FECTING COSTS; BASE RATES LIMITS; STANDARD DI-  
23          RECT COST BASE; REPORT TO CONGRESS.—

24                 “(1) STUDIES.—Not later than 120 days after  
25                 the date of the enactment of the No Child Left Be-



1 hind Act of 2001, the Director of the Office of In-  
2 dian Education Programs shall—

3 “(A) conduct such studies as may be need-  
4 ed to establish an empirical basis for deter-  
5 mining relevant factors substantially affecting  
6 required administrative costs of tribal elemen-  
7 tary and secondary education programs, using  
8 the formula set forth in subsection (c); and

9 “(B) conduct a study to determine—

10 “(i) a maximum base rate which ensures  
11 that the amount of the grants provided under  
12 this section will provide adequate (but not ex-  
13 cessive) funding of the administrative costs of  
14 the smallest tribal elementary or secondary edu-  
15 cational programs;

16 “(ii) a minimum base rate which ensures  
17 that the amount of the grants provided under  
18 this section will provide adequate (but not ex-  
19 cessive) funding of the administrative costs of  
20 the largest tribal elementary or secondary edu-  
21 cational programs; and

22 “(iii) a standard direct cost base which is  
23 the aggregate direct cost funding level for which  
24 the percentage determined under subsection (c)  
25 will—



1                   “(I) be equal to the median between  
2                   the maximum base rate and the minimum  
3                   base rate; and

4                   “(II) ensure that the amount of the  
5                   grants provided under this section will pro-  
6                   vide adequate (but not excessive) funding  
7                   of the administrative costs of tribal ele-  
8                   mentary or secondary educational pro-  
9                   grams closest to the size of the program.

10                   “(2) GUIDELINES.—The studies required under  
11                   paragraph (1) shall—

12                   “(A) be conducted in full consultation (in  
13                   accordance with section 1131) with—

14                   “(i) the tribes and tribal organizations  
15                   that are affected by the application of the  
16                   formula set forth in subsection (c); and

17                   “(ii) all national and regional Indian  
18                   organizations of which such tribes and  
19                   tribal organizations are typically members;

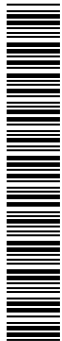
20                   “(B) be conducted onsite with a represent-  
21                   ative statistical sample of the tribal elementary  
22                   or secondary educational programs under a con-  
23                   tract entered into with a nationally reputable  
24                   public accounting and business consulting firm;



1           “(C) take into account the availability of  
2 skilled labor; commodities, business and auto-  
3 matic data processing services, related Indian  
4 preference and Indian control of education re-  
5 quirements, and any other market factors found  
6 substantially to affect the administrative costs  
7 and efficiency of each such tribal elementary or  
8 secondary educational program studied in order  
9 to assure that all required administrative activi-  
10 ties can reasonably be delivered in a cost effec-  
11 tive manner for each such program, given an  
12 administrative cost allowance generated by the  
13 values, percentages, or other factors found in  
14 the studies to be relevant in such formula;

15           “(D) identify, and quantify in terms of  
16 percentages of direct program costs, any gen-  
17 eral factors arising from geographic isolation,  
18 or numbers of programs administered, inde-  
19 pendent of program size factors used to com-  
20 pute a base administrative cost percentage in  
21 such formula; and

22           “(E) identify any other incremental cost  
23 factors substantially affecting the costs of re-  
24 quired administrative cost functions at any of  
25 the tribal elementary or secondary educational



1 programs studied and determine whether the  
2 factors are of general applicability to other such  
3 programs, and (if so) how the factors may ef-  
4 fectively be incorporated into such formula.

5 “(3) CONSULTATION WITH INSPECTOR GEN-  
6 ERAL.—In carrying out the studies required under  
7 this subsection, the Director shall obtain the input  
8 of, and afford an opportunity to participate to, the  
9 Inspector General of the Department of the Interior.

10 “(4) CONSIDERATION OF DELIVERY OF ADMIN-  
11 ISTRATIVE SERVICES.—Determinations described in  
12 paragraph (2)(C) shall be based on what is prac-  
13 ticable at each location studied, given prudent man-  
14 agement practice, irrespective of whether required  
15 administrative services were actually or fully deliv-  
16 ered at these sites, or whether other services were  
17 delivered instead, during the period of the study.

18 “(5) REPORT.—Upon completion of the studies  
19 conducted under paragraph (1), the Director shall  
20 submit to Congress a report on the findings of the  
21 studies, together with determinations based upon  
22 such studies that would affect the definitions set  
23 forth under subsection (e) that are used in the for-  
24 mula set forth in subsection (e).





1           “(6) PROJECTION OF COSTS.—The Secretary  
2 shall include in the Bureau’s justification for each  
3 appropriations request beginning in the first fiscal  
4 year after the completion of the studies conducted  
5 under paragraph (1), a projection of the overall  
6 costs associated with the formula set forth in sub-  
7 section (c) for all tribal elementary or secondary  
8 education programs which the Secretary expects to  
9 be funded in the fiscal year for which the appropria-  
10 tions are sought.

11           “(7) DETERMINATION OF PROGRAM SIZE.—For  
12 purposes of this subsection, the size of tribal elemen-  
13 tary or secondary educational programs is deter-  
14 mined by the aggregate direct cost program funding  
15 level for all Bureau funded programs which share  
16 common administrative cost functions.

17           “(j) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—

18           “(1) IN GENERAL.—There are authorized to be  
19 appropriated such sums as necessary to carry out  
20 this section.

21           “(2) REDUCTIONS.—If the total amount of  
22 funds necessary to provide grants to tribes and trib-  
23 al organizations in the amounts determined under  
24 subsection (b) for a fiscal year exceeds the amount  
25 of funds appropriated to carry out this section for



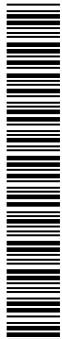
1 such fiscal year, the Secretary shall reduce the  
2 amount of each grant determined under subsection  
3 (b) for such fiscal year by an amount that bears the  
4 same relationship to such excess as the amount of  
5 such grants determined under subsection (b) bears  
6 to the total of all grants determined under sub-  
7 section (b) section for all tribes and tribal organiza-  
8 tions for such fiscal year.

9 “(k) APPLICABILITY TO SCHOOLS OPERATING  
10 UNDER TRIBALLY CONTROLLED SCHOOLS ACT OF  
11 1988.—The provisions of this section shall also apply to  
12 those schools operating under the Tribally Controlled  
13 Schools Act of 1988.

14 **“SEC. 1129. DIVISION OF BUDGET ANALYSIS.**

15 “(a) ESTABLISHMENT.—Not later than 12 months  
16 after the date of the enactment of the No Child Left Be-  
17 hind Act of 2001, the Secretary shall establish within the  
18 Office of Indian Education Programs a Division of Budget  
19 Analysis (hereinafter referred to as the ‘Division’). Such  
20 Division shall be under the direct supervision and control  
21 of the Director of the Office.

22 “(b) FUNCTIONS.—In consultation with the tribal  
23 governing bodies and tribal school boards, the Director of  
24 the Office, through the Division, shall conduct studies,  
25 surveys, or other activities to gather demographic informa-



1 tion on Bureau funded schools and project the amount  
2 necessary to provide Indian students in such schools the  
3 educational program set forth in this part.

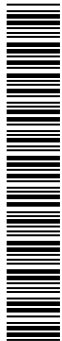
4 “(c) ANNUAL REPORTS.—Not later than the date  
5 that the Assistant Secretary for Indian Affairs makes the  
6 annual budget submission, for each fiscal year after the  
7 date of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act  
8 of 2001, the Director of the Office shall submit to the  
9 appropriate committees of Congress (including the Appro-  
10 priations committees), all Bureau funded schools, and the  
11 tribal governing bodies of such schools, a report which  
12 shall contain—

13 “(1) projections, based upon the information  
14 gathered pursuant to subparagraph (b) and any  
15 other relevant information, of amounts necessary to  
16 provide Indian students in Bureau funded schools  
17 the educational program set forth in this part;

18 “(2) a description of the methods and formulas  
19 used to calculate the amounts projected pursuant to  
20 paragraph (1); and

21 “(3) such other information as the Director of  
22 the Office considers appropriate.

23 “(d) USE OF REPORTS.—The Director of the Office  
24 and the Assistant Secretary for Indian Affairs shall use



1 the annual report required by subsection (c) when pre-  
2 paring their annual budget submissions.

3 **“SEC. 1130. UNIFORM DIRECT FUNDING AND SUPPORT.**

4 “(a) ESTABLISHMENT OF SYSTEM AND FORWARD  
5 FUNDING.—

6 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall estab-  
7 lish, by regulation adopted in accordance with sec-  
8 tion 1138, a system for the direct funding and sup-  
9 port of all Bureau funded schools. Such system shall  
10 allot funds in accordance with section 1127. All  
11 amounts appropriated for distribution under this  
12 section may be made available under paragraph (2).

13 “(2) TIMING FOR USE OF FUNDS.—(A) For the  
14 purposes of affording adequate notice of funding  
15 available pursuant to the allotments made under sec-  
16 tion 1127, amounts appropriated in an appropria-  
17 tions Act for any fiscal year shall become available  
18 for obligation by the affected schools on July 1 of  
19 the fiscal year in which such amounts are appro-  
20 priated without further action by the Secretary, and  
21 shall remain available for obligation through the suc-  
22 ceeding fiscal year.

23 “(B) The Secretary shall, on the basis of the  
24 amount appropriated in accordance with this  
25 paragraph—



1           “(i) publish, not later than July 1 of the  
2           fiscal year for which the funds are appro-  
3           priated, allotments to each affected school made  
4           under section 1127 of 85 percent of such ap-  
5           propriation; and

6           “(ii) publish, not later than September 30  
7           of such fiscal year, the allotments to be made  
8           under section 1127 of the remaining 15 percent  
9           of such appropriation, adjusted to reflect the  
10          actual student attendance.

11          “(3) LIMITATION.—(A) Notwithstanding any  
12          other provision of law or regulation, the supervisor  
13          of a Bureau funded school may expend an aggregate  
14          of not more than \$50,000 of the amount allotted the  
15          school under section 1127 to acquire materials, sup-  
16          plies, equipment, services, operation, and mainte-  
17          nance for the school without competitive bidding if—

18               “(i) the cost for any single item purchased  
19               does not exceed \$15,000;

20               “(ii) the school board approves the pro-  
21               curement;

22               “(iii) the supervisor certifies that the cost  
23               is fair and reasonable;

24               “(iv) the documents relating to the pro-  
25               curement executed by the supervisor or other



1 school staff cite this paragraph as authority for  
2 the procurement; and

3 “(v) the transaction is documented in a  
4 journal maintained at the school clearly identi-  
5 fying when the transaction occurred, what was  
6 acquired and from whom, the price paid, the  
7 quantities acquired, and any other information  
8 the supervisor or school board considers rel-  
9 evant.

10 “(B) Not later than 6 months after the date of  
11 the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
12 2001, the Secretary shall cause to be sent to each  
13 supervisor of a Bureau operated program and school  
14 board chairperson, the education line officer or offi-  
15 cers of each agency and area, and the Bureau Divi-  
16 sion in charge of procurement, at both the local and  
17 national levels, notice of this paragraph.

18 “(C) The Director shall be responsible for de-  
19 termining the application of this paragraph, includ-  
20 ing the authorization of specific individuals to carry  
21 out this paragraph, and shall be responsible for the  
22 provision of guidelines on the use of this paragraph  
23 and adequate training on such guidelines.

24 “(4) EFFECT OF SEQUESTRATION ORDER.—If a  
25 sequestration order issued under the Balanced



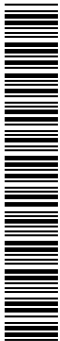
1 Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985  
2 reduces the amount of funds available for allotment  
3 under section 1127 for any fiscal year by more than  
4 7 percent of the amount of funds available for allot-  
5 ment under such section during the preceding fiscal  
6 year—

7 “(A) to fund allotments under section  
8 1127, the Secretary, notwithstanding any other  
9 law, may use—

10 “(i) funds appropriated for the oper-  
11 ation of any Bureau school that is closed  
12 or consolidated; and

13 “(ii) funds appropriated for any pro-  
14 gram that has been curtailed at any Bu-  
15 reau school; and

16 “(B) the Secretary may waive the applica-  
17 tion of the provisions of section 1121(h) with  
18 respect to the closure or consolidation of a  
19 school, or the curtailment of a program at a  
20 school, during such fiscal year if the funds de-  
21 scribed in clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph  
22 (A) with respect to such school are used to fund  
23 allotments made under section 1127 for such  
24 fiscal year.



1       “(b) LOCAL FINANCIAL PLANS FOR EXPENDITURE  
2 OF FUNDS.—

3               “(1) PLAN REQUIRED.—In the case of all Bu-  
4 reau operated schools, allotted funds shall be ex-  
5 pended on the basis of local financial plans which  
6 ensure meeting the accreditation requirements or  
7 standards for the school established pursuant to sec-  
8 tion 1121 and which shall be prepared by the local  
9 school supervisor in active consultation with the local  
10 school board for each school. The local school board  
11 for each school shall have the authority to ratify, re-  
12 ject, or amend such financial plan, and expenditures  
13 thereunder, and, on its own determination or in re-  
14 sponse to the supervisor of the school, to revise such  
15 financial plan to meet needs not foreseen at the time  
16 of preparation of the financial plan.

17               “(2) The supervisor—

18                       “(A) shall put into effect the decisions of  
19 the school board;

20                       “(B) shall provide the appropriate local  
21 union representative of the education employees  
22 with copies of proposed draft financial plans  
23 and all amendments or modifications thereto, at  
24 the same time such copies are submitted to the  
25 local school board; and





1           “(C) may appeal any such action of the  
2           local school board to the appropriate education  
3           line officer of the Bureau agency by filing a  
4           written statement describing the action and the  
5           reasons the supervisor believes such action  
6           should be overturned. A copy of such statement  
7           shall be submitted to the local school board and  
8           such board shall be afforded an opportunity to  
9           respond, in writing, to such appeal. After re-  
10          viewing such written appeal and response, the  
11          appropriate education line officer may, for good  
12          cause, overturn the action of the local school  
13          board. The appropriate education line officer  
14          shall transmit the determination of such appeal  
15          in the form of a written opinion to such board  
16          and to such supervisor identifying the reasons  
17          for overturning such action.

18          “(c) USE OF SELF-DETERMINATION GRANTS  
19 FUNDS.—Funds for self-determination grants under sec-  
20 tion 103(a)(2) of the Indian Self-Determination and Edu-  
21 cation Assistance Act shall not be used for providing tech-  
22 nical assistance and training in the field of education by  
23 the Bureau unless such services are provided in accord-  
24 ance with a plan, agreed to by the tribe or tribes affected  
25 and the Bureau, under which control of education pro-

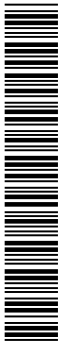


1 grams is intended to be transferred to such tribe or tribes  
2 within a specific period of time negotiated under such  
3 agreement. The Secretary may approve applications for  
4 funding tribal divisions of education and development of  
5 tribal codes of education from funds appropriated pursu-  
6 ant to section 104(a) of such Act.

7 “(d) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE AND TRAINING.—In  
8 the exercise of its authority under this section, a local  
9 school board may request technical assistance and training  
10 from the Secretary, and the Secretary shall, to the great-  
11 est extent possible, provide such services, and make appro-  
12 priate provisions in the budget of the Office for such serv-  
13 ices.

14 “(e) SUMMER PROGRAM OF ACADEMIC AND SUPPORT  
15 SERVICES.—

16 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A financial plan under sub-  
17 section (b) for a school may include, at the discre-  
18 tion of the local administrator and the school board  
19 of such school, a provision for a summer program of  
20 academic and support services for students of the  
21 school. Any such program may include activities re-  
22 lated to the prevention of alcohol and substance  
23 abuse. The Assistant Secretary for Indian Affairs  
24 shall provide for the utilization of any such school



1 facility during any summer in which such utilization  
2 is requested.

3 “(2) USE OF OTHER FUNDS.—Notwithstanding  
4 any other provision of law, funds authorized under  
5 the Act of April 16, 1934, and this Act may be used  
6 to augment the services provided in each summer  
7 program at the option, and under the control, of the  
8 tribe or Indian controlled school receiving such  
9 funds.

10 “(3) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE AND PROGRAM  
11 COORDINATION.—The Assistant Secretary for Indian  
12 Affairs, acting through the Director of the Office,  
13 shall provide technical assistance and coordination  
14 for any program described in paragraph (1) and  
15 shall, to the extent possible, encourage the coordina-  
16 tion of such programs with any other summer pro-  
17 grams that might benefit Indian youth, regardless of  
18 the funding source or administrative entity of any  
19 such program.

20 “(f) COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS.—

21 “(1) IN GENERAL.—From funds allotted to a  
22 Bureau school under section 1127, the Secretary  
23 shall, if specifically requested by the tribal governing  
24 body (as defined in section 1141), implement any co-  
25 operative agreement entered into between the tribe,



1 the Bureau school board, and the local public school  
2 district which meets the requirements of paragraph  
3 (2) and involves the school. The tribe, the Bureau  
4 school board, and the local public school district  
5 shall determine the terms of the agreement. Such  
6 agreement may encompass coordination of all or any  
7 part of the following:

8 “(A) Academic program and curriculum,  
9 unless the Bureau school is currently accredited  
10 by a State or regional accrediting entity and  
11 would not continue to be so accredited.

12 “(B) Support services, including procure-  
13 ment and facilities maintenance.

14 “(C) Transportation.

15 “(2) EQUAL BENEFIT AND BURDEN.—Each  
16 agreement entered into pursuant to the authority  
17 provided in paragraph (1) shall confer a benefit  
18 upon the Bureau school commensurate with the bur-  
19 den assumed, though this requirement shall not be  
20 construed so as to require equal expenditures or an  
21 exchange of similar services.

22 “(g) PRODUCT OR RESULT OF STUDENT  
23 PROJECTS.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law,  
24 where there is agreement on action between the super-  
25 intendent and the school board of a Bureau funded school,



1 the product or result of a project conducted in whole or  
2 in major part by a student may be given to that student  
3 upon the completion of such project.

4 “(h) NOT CONSIDERED FEDERAL FUNDS FOR  
5 MATCHING REQUIREMENTS.—Notwithstanding any other  
6 provision of law, funds received by a Bureau funded school  
7 under this part shall not be considered Federal funds for  
8 the purposes of meeting a matching funds requirement for  
9 any Federal program.

10 **“SEC. 1131. POLICY FOR INDIAN CONTROL OF INDIAN EDU-**  
11 **CATION.**

12 “(a) FACILITATION OF INDIAN CONTROL.—It shall  
13 be the policy of the Secretary and the Bureau, in carrying  
14 out the functions of the Bureau, to facilitate tribal control  
15 of Indian affairs in all matters relating to education.

16 “(b) CONSULTATION WITH TRIBES.—

17 “(1) IN GENERAL.—All actions under this Act  
18 shall be done with active consultation with tribes.

19 “(2) REQUIREMENTS.—The consultation re-  
20 quired under paragraph (1) means a process involv-  
21 ing the open discussion and joint deliberation of all  
22 options with respect to potential issues or changes  
23 between the Bureau and all interested parties. Dur-  
24 ing such discussions and joint deliberations, inter-  
25 ested parties (including tribes and school officials)



1 shall be given an opportunity to present issues in-  
2 cluding proposals regarding changes in current prac-  
3 tices or programs which will be considered for future  
4 action by the Bureau. All interested parties shall be  
5 given an opportunity to participate and discuss the  
6 options presented or to present alternatives, with the  
7 views and concerns of the interested parties given ef-  
8 fect unless the Secretary determines, from informa-  
9 tion available from or presented by the interested  
10 parties during one or more of the discussions and  
11 deliberations, that there is a substantial reason for  
12 another course of action. The Secretary shall submit  
13 to any Member of Congress, within 18 days of the  
14 receipt of a written request by such Member, a writ-  
15 ten explanation of any decision made by the Sec-  
16 retary which is not consistent with the views of the  
17 interested parties.

18 **“SEC. 1132. INDIAN EDUCATION PERSONNEL.**

19 “(a) IN GENERAL.—Chapter 51, subchapter III of  
20 chapter 53, and chapter 63 of title 5, United States Code,  
21 relating to classification, pay and leave, respectively, and  
22 the sections of such title relating to the appointment, pro-  
23 motion, hours of work, and removal of civil service employ-  
24 ees, shall not apply to educators or to education positions  
25 (as defined in subsection (p)).



1 “(b) REGULATIONS.—Not later than 60 days after  
2 the date of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind  
3 Act of 2001, the Secretary shall prescribe regulations to  
4 carry out this section. Such regulations shall include—

5 “(1) the establishment of education positions;

6 “(2) the establishment of qualifications for edu-  
7 cators and education personnel;

8 “(3) the fixing of basic compensation for edu-  
9 cators and education positions;

10 “(4) the appointment of educators;

11 “(5) the discharge of educators;

12 “(6) the entitlement of educators to compensa-  
13 tion;

14 “(7) the payment of compensation to educators;

15 “(8) the conditions of employment of educators;

16 “(9) the leave system for educators;

17 “(10) the annual leave and sick leave for edu-  
18 cators; and

19 “(11) such matters as may be appropriate.

20 “(c) QUALIFICATIONS OF EDUCATORS.—

21 “(1) REQUIREMENTS.—In prescribing regula-  
22 tions to govern the qualifications of educators, the  
23 Secretary shall require—

24 “(A)(i) that lists of qualified and inter-  
25 viewed applicants for education positions be



1 maintained in each agency and area office of  
2 the Bureau from among individuals who have  
3 applied at the agency or area level for an edu-  
4 cation position or who have applied at the na-  
5 tional level and have indicated in such applica-  
6 tion an interest in working in certain areas or  
7 agencies; and

8 “(ii) that a list of qualified and interviewed  
9 applicants for education positions be main-  
10 tained in the Office from among individuals  
11 who have applied at the national level for an  
12 education position and who have expressed in-  
13 terest in working in an education position any-  
14 where in the United States;

15 “(B) that a local school board shall have  
16 the authority to waive on a case-by-case basis,  
17 any formal education or degree qualifications  
18 established by regulation pursuant to subsection  
19 (b)(2), in order for a tribal member to be hired  
20 in an education position to teach courses on  
21 tribal culture and language and that subject to  
22 subsection (e)(2), a determination by a school  
23 board that such a person be hired shall be insti-  
24 tuted supervisor; and





1           “(C) that it shall not be a prerequisite to  
2           the employment of an individual in an edu-  
3           cation position at the local level that such indi-  
4           vidual’s name appear on the national list main-  
5           tained pursuant to subparagraph (A)(ii) or that  
6           such individual has applied at the national level  
7           for an education position.

8           “(2) EXCEPTION FOR CERTAIN TEMPORARY EM-  
9           PLOYMENT.—The Secretary may authorize the tem-  
10          porary employment in an education position of an  
11          individual who has not met the certification stand-  
12          ards established pursuant to regulations, if the Sec-  
13          retary determines that failure to do so would result  
14          in that position remaining vacant.

15          “(d) HIRING OF EDUCATORS.—

16                 “(1) REQUIREMENTS.—In prescribing regula-  
17                 tions to govern the appointment of educators, the  
18                 Secretary shall require—

19                         “(A)(i) that educators employed in a Bu-  
20                         reau operated school (other than the supervisor  
21                         of the school) shall be hired by the supervisor  
22                         of the school. In cases where there are no quali-  
23                         fied applicants available, such supervisor may  
24                         consult the national list maintained pursuant to  
25                         subsection (c)(1)(A)(ii);



1           “(ii) each school supervisor shall be hired  
2 by the education line officer of the agency office  
3 of the Bureau in which the school is located;

4           “(iii) educators employed in an agency of-  
5 fice of the Bureau shall be hired by the super-  
6 intendent for education of the agency office;  
7 and

8           “(iv) each education line officer and edu-  
9 cators employed in the Office of the Director of  
10 Indian Education Programs shall be hired by  
11 the Director;

12           “(B) that before an individual is employed  
13 in an education position in a school by the su-  
14 pervisor of a school (or with respect to the posi-  
15 tion of supervisor, by the appropriate agency  
16 education line officer), the local school board  
17 for the school shall be consulted. A determina-  
18 tion by such school board that such individual  
19 should or should not be so employed shall be in-  
20 stituted by the supervisor (or with respect to  
21 the position of supervisor, by the agency super-  
22 intendent for education);

23           “(C) that before an individual may be em-  
24 ployed in an education position at the agency  
25 level, the appropriate agency school board shall



1 be consulted, and that a determination by such  
2 school board that such individual should or  
3 should not be employed shall be instituted by  
4 the agency superintendent for education; and

5 “(D) that before an individual may be em-  
6 ployed in an education position in the Office of  
7 the Director (other than the position of Direc-  
8 tor), the national school boards representing all  
9 Bureau schools shall be consulted.

10 “(2) INFORMATION REGARDING APPLICATION  
11 AT NATIONAL LEVEL.—Any individual who applies  
12 at the local level for an education position shall state  
13 on such individual’s application whether or not such  
14 individual has applied at the national level for an  
15 education position in the Bureau. If such individual  
16 is employed at the local level, such individual’s name  
17 shall be immediately forwarded to the Secretary,  
18 who shall, as soon as practicable but in no event in  
19 more than 30 days, ascertain the accuracy of the  
20 statement made by such individual pursuant to the  
21 first sentence of this paragraph. Notwithstanding  
22 subsection (e), if the individual’s statement is found  
23 to have been false, such individual, at the Sec-  
24 retary’s discretion, may be disciplined or discharged.  
25 If the individual has applied at the national level for



1 an education position in the Bureau, the appoint-  
2 ment of such individual at the local level shall be  
3 conditional for a period of 90 days, during which pe-  
4 riod the Secretary may appoint a more qualified in-  
5 dividual (as determined by the Secretary) from the  
6 list maintained at the national level pursuant to sub-  
7 section (c)(1)(A)(ii) to the position to which such in-  
8 dividual was appointed.

9 “(3) STATUTORY CONSTRUCTION.—Except as  
10 expressly provided, nothing in this section shall be  
11 construed as conferring upon local school boards au-  
12 thority over, or control of, educators at Bureau  
13 funded schools or the authority to issue management  
14 decisions.

15 “(e) DISCHARGE AND CONDITIONS OF EMPLOYMENT  
16 OF EDUCATORS.—

17 “(1) REGULATIONS.—In prescribing regulations  
18 to govern the discharge and conditions of employ-  
19 ment of educators, the Secretary shall require—

20 “(A) that procedures be established for the  
21 rapid and equitable resolution of grievances of  
22 educators;

23 “(B) that no educator may be discharged  
24 without notice of the reasons therefore and op-  
25 portunity for a hearing under procedures that



1           comport with the requirements of due process;  
2           and

3           “(C) that educators employed in Bureau  
4           schools be notified 30 days prior to the end of  
5           the school year whether their employment con-  
6           tract will be renewed for the following year.

7           “(2) PROCEDURES FOR DISCHARGE.—The su-  
8           pervisor of a Bureau school may discharge (subject  
9           to procedures established under paragraph (1)(B))  
10          for cause (as determined under regulations pre-  
11          scribed by the Secretary) any educator employed in  
12          such school. Upon giving notice of proposed dis-  
13          charge to an educator, the supervisor involved shall  
14          immediately notify the local school board for the  
15          school of such action. A determination by the local  
16          school board that such educator shall not be dis-  
17          charged shall be followed by the supervisor. The su-  
18          pervisor shall have the right to appeal such action  
19          to the education line officer of the appropriate agen-  
20          cy office of the Bureau. Upon such an appeal, the  
21          agency education line officer may, for good cause  
22          and in writing to the local school board, overturn the  
23          determination of the local school board with respect  
24          to the employment of such individual.



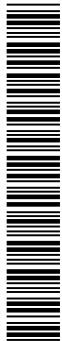
1           “(3) RECOMMENDATIONS OF SCHOOL BOARDS  
2 FOR DISCHARGE.—Each local school board for a Bu-  
3 reau school shall have the right—

4                   “(A) to recommend to the supervisor of  
5 such school that an educator employed in the  
6 school be discharged; and

7                   “(B) to recommend to the education line  
8 officer of the appropriate agency office of the  
9 Bureau and to the Director of the Office, that  
10 the supervisor of the school be discharged.

11           “(f) APPLICABILITY OF INDIAN PREFERENCE  
12 LAWS.—

13                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any provi-  
14 sion of the Indian preference laws, such laws shall  
15 not apply in the case of any personnel action under  
16 this section respecting an applicant or employee not  
17 entitled to Indian preference if each tribal organiza-  
18 tion concerned grants a written waiver of the appli-  
19 cation of such laws with respect to such personnel  
20 action and states that such waiver is necessary. This  
21 paragraph shall not relieve the Bureau’s responsi-  
22 bility to issue timely and adequate announcements  
23 and advertisements concerning any such personnel  
24 action if such action is intended to fill a vacancy (no  
25 matter how such vacancy is created).



1           “(2) TRIBAL ORGANIZATION DEFINED.—For  
2 purposes of this subsection, the term ‘tribal organi-  
3 zation’ means—

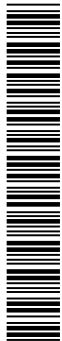
4           “(A) the recognized governing body of any  
5 Indian tribe, band, nation, pueblo, or other or-  
6 ganized community, including a Native village  
7 (as defined in section 3(c) of the Alaska Native  
8 Claims Settlement Act); or

9           “(B) in connection with any personnel ac-  
10 tion referred to in this subsection, any local  
11 school board as defined in section 1141 which  
12 has been delegated by such governing body the  
13 authority to grant a waiver under this sub-  
14 section with respect to personnel action.

15           “(3) INDIAN PREFERENCE LAW DEFINED.—The  
16 term ‘Indian preference laws’ means section 12 of  
17 the Act of June 18, 1934, or any other provision of  
18 law granting a preference to Indians in promotions  
19 and other personnel actions. Such term shall not in-  
20 clude section 7(b) of the Indian Self-Determination  
21 and Education Assistance Act.

22           “(g) COMPENSATION OR ANNUAL SALARY.—

23           “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) Except as otherwise  
24 provided in this section, the Secretary shall fix the  
25 basic compensation for educators and education po-



1       sitions at rates in effect under the General Schedule  
2       for individuals with comparable qualifications, and  
3       holding comparable positions, to whom chapter 51 of  
4       title 5, United States Code, is applicable or on the  
5       basis of the Federal Wage System schedule in effect  
6       for the locality, and for the comparable positions,  
7       the rates of compensation in effect for the senior ex-  
8       ecutive service.

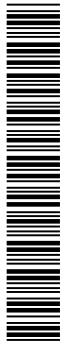
9               “(B) The Secretary shall establish the rate of  
10       basic compensation, or annual salary rates, for the  
11       positions of teachers and counselors (including dor-  
12       mitory counselors and home-living counselors) at the  
13       rates of basic compensation applicable (on the date  
14       of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act  
15       of 2001 and thereafter) to comparable positions in  
16       the overseas schools under the Defense Department  
17       Overseas Teachers Pay Act. The Secretary shall  
18       allow the local school boards authority to implement  
19       only the aspects of the Defense Department Over-  
20       seas Teacher pay provisions that are considered es-  
21       sential for recruitment and retention. Implementa-  
22       tion of such provisions shall not be construed to re-  
23       quire the implementation of the Act in its entirety.

24               “(C)(i) Beginning with the fiscal year following  
25       the date of the enactment of the No Child Left Be-





1 hind Act of 2001, each school board may set the  
2 rate of compensation or annual salary rate for teach-  
3 ers and counselors (including academic counselors)  
4 who are new hires at the school and who have not  
5 worked at the school on the date of implementation  
6 of this provision, at rates consistent with the rates  
7 paid for individuals in the same positions, with the  
8 same tenure and training, in any other school within  
9 whose boundaries the Bureau school lies. In in-  
10 stances where the adoption of such rates cause a re-  
11 duction in the payment of compensation from that  
12 which was in effect for the fiscal year following the  
13 date of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind  
14 Act of 2001, the new rate may be applied to the  
15 compensation of employees of the school who worked  
16 at the school on of the date of the enactment of that  
17 Act by applying those rates to each contract renewal  
18 such that the reduction takes effect in three equal  
19 installments. Where adoption of such rates lead to  
20 an increase in the payment of compensation from  
21 that which was in effect for the fiscal year following  
22 the date of the enactment of the No Child Left Be-  
23 hind Act of 2001, the school board may make such  
24 rates applicable at the next contract renewal such  
25 that either—



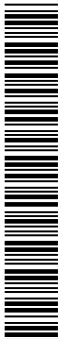
1                   “(I) the increase occurs in its entirety; or

2                   “(II) the increase is applied in three equal  
3                   installments.

4                   “(ii) The establishment of rates of basic com-  
5                   pensation and annual salary rates under subpara-  
6                   graphs (B) and (C) shall not preclude the use of  
7                   regulations and procedures used by the Bureau prior  
8                   to April 28, 1988, in making determinations regard-  
9                   ing promotions and advancements through levels of  
10                  pay that are based on the merit, education, experi-  
11                  ence, or tenure of the educator.

12                  “(D) The establishment of rates of basic com-  
13                  pensation and annual salary rates under subpara-  
14                  graphs (B) and (C) shall not affect the continued  
15                  employment or compensation of an educator who  
16                  was employed in an education position on October  
17                  31, 1979, and who did not make an election under  
18                  subsection (p) is in effect on January 1, 1990.

19                  “(2) POST-DIFFERENTIAL RATES.—(A) The  
20                  Secretary may pay a post-differential rate not to ex-  
21                  ceed 25 percent of the rate of basic compensation,  
22                  on the basis of conditions of environment or work  
23                  which warrant additional pay as a recruitment and  
24                  retention incentive.



1           “(B)(i) Upon the request of the supervisor and  
2           the local school board of a Bureau school, the Sec-  
3           retary shall grant the supervisor of the school au-  
4           thorization to provide one or more post-differentials  
5           under subparagraph (A) unless the Secretary deter-  
6           mines for clear and convincing reasons (and advises  
7           the board in writing of those reasons) that certain  
8           of the requested post-differentials should be dis-  
9           approved or decreased because there is no disparity  
10          of compensation for the involved employees or posi-  
11          tions in the Bureau school, as compared with the  
12          nearest public school, that is either—

13                       “(I) at least 5 percent; or

14                       “(II) less than 5 percent and affects the  
15          recruitment or retention of employees at the  
16          school.

17           “(ii) A request under clause (i) shall be deemed  
18          granted at the end of the 60th day after the request  
19          is received in the Central Office of the Bureau un-  
20          less before that time the request is approved, ap-  
21          proved with modification, or disapproved by the Sec-  
22          retary.

23           “(iii) The Secretary or the supervisor of a Bu-  
24          reau school may discontinue or decrease a post-dif-



1 differential authorized under this subparagraph at the  
2 beginning of a school year if—

3 “(I) the local school board requests that  
4 such differential be discontinued or decreased;  
5 or

6 “(II) the Secretary or the supervisor deter-  
7 mines for clear and convincing reasons (and ad-  
8 vises the board in writing of those reasons) that  
9 there is no disparity of compensation that  
10 would affect the recruitment or retention of em-  
11 ployees at the school after the differential is  
12 discontinued or decreased.

13 “(iv) On or before February 1 of each year, the  
14 Secretary shall submit to Congress a report describ-  
15 ing the requests and grants of authority under this  
16 subparagraph during the previous year and listing  
17 the positions contracted under those grants of au-  
18 thority.

19 “(h) LIQUIDATION OF REMAINING LEAVE UPON  
20 TERMINATION.—Upon termination of employment with  
21 the Bureau, any annual leave remaining to the credit of  
22 an individual within the purview of this section shall be  
23 liquidated in accordance with sections 5551(a) and 6306  
24 of title 5, United States Code, except that leave earned



1 or accrued under regulations prescribed pursuant to sub-  
2 section (b)(10) of this section shall not be so liquidated.

3 “(i) TRANSFER OF REMAINING SICK LEAVE UPON  
4 TRANSFER, PROMOTION, OR REEMPLOYMENT.—In the  
5 case of any educator who is transferred, promoted, or re-  
6 appointed, without break in service, to a position in the  
7 Federal Government under a different leave system, any  
8 remaining leave to the credit of such person earned or  
9 credited under the regulations prescribed pursuant to sub-  
10 section (b)(10) shall be transferred to such person’s credit  
11 in the employing agency on an adjusted basis in accord-  
12 ance with regulations which shall be prescribed by the Of-  
13 fice of Personnel Management.

14 “(j) INELIGIBILITY FOR EMPLOYMENT OF VOLUN-  
15 TARILY TERMINATED EDUCATORS.—An educator who vol-  
16 untarily terminates employment with the Bureau before  
17 the expiration of the existing employment contract be-  
18 tween such educator and the Bureau shall not be eligible  
19 to be employed in another education position in the Bu-  
20 reau during the remainder of the term of such contract.

21 “(k) DUAL COMPENSATION.—In the case of any edu-  
22 cator employed in an education position described in sub-  
23 section (l)(1)(A) who—

24 “(1) is employed at the close of a school year;



1           “(2) agrees in writing to serve in such position  
2           for the next school year; and

3           “(3) is employed in another position during the  
4           recess period immediately preceding such next school  
5           year, or during such recess period receives additional  
6           compensation referred to in section 5533 of title 5,  
7           United States Code, relating to dual compensation,  
8           shall not apply to such educator by reason of any such  
9           employment during a recess period for any receipt of addi-  
10          tional compensation.

11          “(1) VOLUNTARY SERVICES.—Notwithstanding sec-  
12          tion 1342 of title 31, United States Code, the Secretary  
13          may, subject to the approval of the local school board con-  
14          cerned, accept voluntary services on behalf of Bureau  
15          schools. Nothing in this part shall be construed to require  
16          Federal employees to work without compensation or to  
17          allow the use of volunteer services to displace or replace  
18          Federal employees. An individual providing volunteer serv-  
19          ices under this section is a Federal employee only for pur-  
20          poses of chapter 81 of title 5, United States Code, and  
21          chapter 171 of title 28, United States Code.

22          “(m) PRORATION OF PAY.—

23                 “(1) ELECTION OF EMPLOYEE.—Notwith-  
24                 standing any other provision of law, including laws  
25                 relating to dual compensation, the Secretary, at the



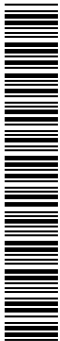
1 election of the employee, shall prorate the salary of  
2 an employee employed in an education position for  
3 the academic school year over the entire 12-month  
4 period. Each educator employed for the academic  
5 school year shall annually elect to be paid on a 12-  
6 month basis or for those months while school is in  
7 session. No educator shall suffer a loss of pay or  
8 benefits, including benefits under unemployment or  
9 other Federal or federally assisted programs, be-  
10 cause of such election.

11 “(2) CHANGE OF ELECTION.—During the  
12 course of such year the employee may change elec-  
13 tion once.

14 “(3) LUMP SUM PAYMENT.—That portion of  
15 the employee’s pay which would be paid between  
16 academic school years may be paid in a lump sum  
17 at the election of the employee.

18 “(4) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this sub-  
19 section, the terms ‘educator’ and ‘education position’  
20 have the meanings contained in paragraphs (1) and  
21 (2) of subsection (o). This subsection applies to  
22 those individuals employed under the provisions of  
23 section 1132 of this title or title 5, United States  
24 Code.

25 “(n) EXTRACURRICULAR ACTIVITIES.—



1           “(1) STIPEND.—Notwithstanding any other  
2 provision of law, the Secretary may provide, for each  
3 Bureau area, a stipend in lieu of overtime premium  
4 pay or compensatory time off. Any employee of the  
5 Bureau who performs additional activities to provide  
6 services to students or otherwise support the school’s  
7 academic and social programs may elect to be com-  
8 pensated for all such work on the basis of the sti-  
9 pend. Such stipend shall be paid as a supplement to  
10 the employee’s base pay.

11           “(2) ELECTION NOT TO RECEIVE STIPEND.—If  
12 an employee elects not to be compensated through  
13 the stipend established by this subsection, the appro-  
14 priate provisions of title 5, United States Code, shall  
15 apply.

16           “(3) APPLICABILITY OF SUBSECTION.—This  
17 subsection applies to all Bureau employees, whether  
18 employed under section 1132 of this title or title 5,  
19 United States Code.

20           “(o) DEFINITIONS.—For the purpose of this  
21 section—

22           “(1) EDUCATION POSITION.—The term ‘edu-  
23 cation position’ means a position in the Bureau the  
24 duties and responsibilities of which—





1           “(A) are performed on a school-year basis  
2           principally in a Bureau school and involve—

3                   “(i) classroom or other instruction or  
4                   the supervision or direction of classroom or  
5                   other instruction;

6                   “(ii) any activity (other than teach-  
7                   ing) which requires academic credits in  
8                   educational theory and practice equal to  
9                   the academic credits in educational theory  
10                  and practice required for a bachelor’s de-  
11                  gree in education from an accredited insti-  
12                  tution of higher education;

13                  “(iii) any activity in or related to the  
14                  field of education notwithstanding that  
15                  academic credits in educational theory and  
16                  practice are not a formal requirement for  
17                  the conduct of such activity; or

18                  “(iv) support services at, or associated  
19                  with, the site of the school; or

20                  “(B) are performed at the agency level of  
21                  the Bureau and involve the implementation of  
22                  education-related programs other than the posi-  
23                  tion for agency superintendent for education.



1           “(2) EDUCATOR.—The term ‘educator’ means  
2           an individual whose services are required, or who is  
3           employed, in an education position.

4           “(p) COVERED INDIVIDUALS; ELECTION.—This sec-  
5           tion shall apply with respect to any educator hired after  
6           November 1, 1979 (and to any educator who elected for  
7           coverage under that provision after November 1, 1979)  
8           and to the position in which such individual is employed.  
9           The enactment of this section shall not affect the contin-  
10          ued employment of an individual employed on October 31,  
11          1979 in an education position, or such person’s right to  
12          receive the compensation attached to such position.

13          **“SEC. 1133. COMPUTERIZED MANAGEMENT INFORMATION**  
14                                    **SYSTEM.**

15          “(a) ESTABLISHMENT OF SYSTEM.—Not later than  
16          July 1, 2003, the Secretary shall establish within the Of-  
17          fice, a computerized management information system,  
18          which shall provide processing and information to the Of-  
19          fice. The information provided shall include information  
20          regarding—

- 21                 “(1) student enrollment;  
22                 “(2) curriculum;  
23                 “(3) staffing;  
24                 “(4) facilities;  
25                 “(5) community demographics;





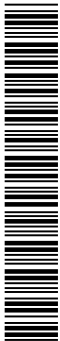
1 shall include opportunities for acquiring work experience  
2 prior to actual work assignment.

3 **“SEC. 1136. BIENNIAL REPORT; AUDITS.**

4 “(a) BIENNIAL REPORTS.—The Secretary shall sub-  
5 mit to each appropriate committee of Congress, all Bureau  
6 funded schools, and the tribal governing bodies of such  
7 schools, a detailed biennial report on the state of education  
8 within the Bureau and any problems encountered in In-  
9 dian education during the 2-year period covered by the  
10 report. Such report shall contain suggestions for the im-  
11 provement of the Bureau educational system and for in-  
12 creasing tribal or local Indian control of such system. Such  
13 report shall also include the current status of tribally con-  
14 trolled community colleges. The annual budget submission  
15 for the Bureau’s education programs shall include—

16 “(1) information on the funds provided to pre-  
17 viously private schools under section 208 of the In-  
18 dian Self-Determination and Education Assistance  
19 Act, and recommendations with respect to the future  
20 use of such funds;

21 “(2) the needs and costs of operations and  
22 maintenance of tribally controlled community col-  
23 leges eligible for assistance under the Tribally Con-  
24 trolled Community College Assistance Act of 1978



1 and recommendations with respect to meeting such  
2 needs and costs; and

3 “(3) the plans required by sections 1121 (g),  
4 1122(e), and 1125(b).

5 “(b) FINANCIAL AND COMPLIANCE AUDITS.—The  
6 Inspector General of the Department of the Interior shall  
7 establish a system to ensure that financial and compliance  
8 audits are conducted of each Bureau operated school at  
9 least once in every 3 years. Audits of Bureau schools shall  
10 be based upon the extent to which such school has com-  
11 plied with its local financial plan under section 1130.

12 **“SEC. 1137. RIGHTS OF INDIAN STUDENTS.**

13 “The Secretary shall prescribe such rules and regula-  
14 tions as are necessary to ensure the constitutional and civil  
15 rights of Indian students attending Bureau funded  
16 schools, including such students’ right to privacy under  
17 the laws of the United States, such students’ right to free-  
18 dom of religion and expression, and such students’ right  
19 to due process in connection with disciplinary actions, sus-  
20 pensions, and expulsions.

21 **“SEC. 1138. REGULATIONS.**

22 “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized to  
23 issue only such regulations as are necessary to ensure  
24 compliance with the specific provision of this Act. The Sec-  
25 retary shall publish proposed regulations in the Federal



1 Register, shall provide a period of not less than 90 days  
2 for public comment thereon, and shall place in parentheses  
3 after each regulatory section the citation to any statutory  
4 provision providing authority to promulgate such regu-  
5 latory provision.

6 “(b) MISCELLANEOUS.—

7 “(1) CONSTRUCTION.—The provisions of this  
8 Act shall supersede any conflicting provisions of law  
9 (including any conflicting regulations) in effect on  
10 the day before the date of the enactment of this Act  
11 and the Secretary is authorized to repeal any regula-  
12 tion inconsistent with the provisions of this Act.

13 “(2) LEGAL AUTHORITY TO BE STATED.—Reg-  
14 ulations issued to implement this Act shall contain,  
15 immediately following each substantive provision of  
16 such regulations, citations to the particular section  
17 or sections of statutory law or other legal authority  
18 upon which provision is based.

19 **“SEC. 1138A. REGIONAL MEETINGS AND NEGOTIATED**  
20 **RULEMAKING.**

21 “(a) MEETINGS.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall obtain  
23 tribal involvement in the development of proposed  
24 regulations under this part and the Tribally Con-  
25 trolled Schools Act of 1988. The Secretary shall ob-



1       tain the advice of and recommendations from rep-  
2       resentatives of Indian tribes with Bureau funded  
3       schools on their reservations, Indian tribes whose  
4       children attend Bureau funded off-reservation board-  
5       ing schools, school boards, administrators or employ-  
6       ees of Bureau funded schools, and parents and  
7       teachers of students enrolled in Bureau funded  
8       schools.

9               “(2) ISSUES.—The Secretary shall provide for a  
10       comprehensive discussion and exchange of informa-  
11       tion concerning the implementation of this part and  
12       the Tribally Controlled Schools Act of 1988 through  
13       such mechanisms as regional meetings and electronic  
14       exchanges of information. The Secretary shall take  
15       into account the information received through such  
16       mechanisms in the development of proposed regula-  
17       tions and shall publish a summary of such informa-  
18       tion in the Federal Register together with such pro-  
19       posed regulations.

20       “(b) DRAFT REGULATIONS.—

21               “(1) IN GENERAL.—After obtaining the advice  
22       and recommendations described in subsection (a)(1)  
23       and before publishing proposed regulations in the  
24       Federal Register, the Secretary shall prepare draft  
25       regulations implementing this part and the Tribally



1 Controlled Schools Act of 1988 and shall submit  
2 such regulations to a negotiated rulemaking process.  
3 Participants in the negotiations process shall be cho-  
4 sen by the Secretary from individuals nominated by  
5 the entities described in subsection (a)(1). To the  
6 maximum extent possible, the Secretary shall ensure  
7 that the tribal representative membership chosen  
8 pursuant to the preceding sentence reflects the pro-  
9 portionate share of students from tribes served by  
10 the Bureau funded school system. The negotiation  
11 process shall be conducted in a timely manner in  
12 order that the final regulations may issued by the  
13 Secretary no later than 18 months after the enact-  
14 ment of this section.

15 “(2) NOTIFICATION TO CONGRESS.—If draft  
16 regulations implementing this part and the Tribally  
17 Controlled Schools Act of 1988 are not issued in  
18 final form by the deadline provided in paragraph  
19 (1), the Secretary shall notify the appropriate com-  
20 mittees of Congress of which draft regulations were  
21 not issued in final form by the deadline and the rea-  
22 son such final regulations were not issued.

23 “(3) EXPANSION OF NEGOTIATED RULE-  
24 MAKING.—All regulations pertaining to this part and  
25 the Tribally Controlled Schools Act of 1988 that are





1 promulgated after the date of the enactment of this  
2 subsection shall be subject to a negotiated rule-  
3 making (including the selection of the regulations to  
4 be negotiated), unless the Secretary determines that  
5 applying such a requirement with respect to given  
6 regulations is impracticable, unnecessary, or con-  
7 trary to the public interest (within the meaning of  
8 section 553(b)(3)(B) of title 5), and publishes the  
9 basis for such determination in the Federal Register  
10 at the same time as the proposed regulations in  
11 question are first published. All published proposed  
12 regulations shall conform to agreements resulting  
13 from such negotiated rulemaking unless the Sec-  
14 retary reopens the negotiated rulemaking process or  
15 provides a written explanation to the participants in  
16 that process why the Secretary has decided to depart  
17 from such agreements. Such negotiated rulemaking  
18 shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions  
19 of subsection (a), and the Secretary shall ensure  
20 that a clear and reliable record of agreements  
21 reached during the negotiation process is main-  
22 tained.

23 “(c) APPLICABILITY OF FEDERAL ADVISORY COM-  
24 MITTEE ACT.—The Federal Advisory Committee Act shall  
25 apply to activities carried out under this section.



1 **“SEC. 1139. EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM.**

2 “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall provide  
3 grants to tribes, tribal organizations, and consortia of  
4 tribes and tribal organizations to fund early childhood de-  
5 velopment programs that are operated by such tribes, or-  
6 ganizations, or consortia.

7 “(b) AMOUNT OF GRANTS.—

8 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The total amount of the  
9 grants provided under subsection (a) with respect to  
10 each tribe, tribal organization, or consortium of  
11 tribes or tribal organizations for each fiscal year  
12 shall be equal to the amount which bears the same  
13 relationship to the total amount appropriated under  
14 the authority of subsection (g) for such fiscal year  
15 (less amounts provided under subsection (f)) as—

16 “(A) the total number of children under 6  
17 years of age who are members of—

18 “(i) such tribe;

19 “(ii) the tribe that authorized such  
20 tribal organization; or

21 “(iii) any tribe that—

22 “(I) is a member of such consor-  
23 tium; or

24 “(II) authorizes any tribal orga-  
25 nization that is a member of such con-  
26 sortium; bears to



1           “(B) the total number of all children under  
2           6 years of age who are members of any tribe  
3           that—

4                   “(i) is eligible to receive funds under  
5                   subsection (a);

6                   “(ii) is a member of a consortium that  
7                   is eligible to receive such funds; or

8                   “(iii) authorizes a tribal organization  
9                   that is eligible to receive such funds.

10           “(2) LIMITATION.—No grant may be provided  
11           under subsection (a)—

12                   “(A) to any tribe that has less than 500  
13                   members;

14                   “(B) to any tribal organization which is  
15                   authorized—

16                           “(i) by only one tribe that has less  
17                           than 500 members; or

18                           “(ii) by one or more tribes that have  
19                           a combined total membership of less than  
20                           500 members; or

21                   “(C) to any consortium composed of tribes,  
22                   or tribal organizations authorized by tribes,  
23                   that have a combined total tribal membership of  
24                   less than 500 members.

25           “(c) APPLICATION.



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—A grant may be provided  
2           under subsection (a) to a tribe, tribal organization,  
3           or consortia of tribes and tribal organizations only  
4           if the tribe, organization, or consortia submits to the  
5           Secretary an application for the grant at such time  
6           and in such form as the Secretary shall prescribe.

7           “(2) CONTENTS.—Applications submitted under  
8           paragraph (1) shall set forth the early childhood de-  
9           velopment program that the applicant desires to op-  
10          erate.

11          “(d) REQUIREMENT OF PROGRAMS FUNDED.—The  
12          early childhood development programs that are funded by  
13          grants provided under subsection (a)—

14                 “(1) shall coordinate existing programs and  
15                 may provide services that meet identified needs of  
16                 parents and children under 6 years of age which are  
17                 not being met by existing programs, including—

18                         “(A) prenatal care;

19                         “(B) nutrition education;

20                         “(C) health education and screening;

21                         “(D) family literacy services;

22                         “(E) educational testing; and

23                         “(F) other educational services;

24                 “(2) may include instruction in the language,  
25                 art, and culture of the tribe; and



1           “(3) shall provide for periodic assessment of the  
2           program.

3           “(e) COORDINATION OF FAMILY LITERACY PRO-  
4 GRAMS.—Family literacy programs operated under this  
5 section and other family literacy programs operated by the  
6 Bureau of Indian Affairs shall be coordinated with family  
7 literacy programs for Indian children under part B of title  
8 I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965  
9 in order to avoid duplication and to encourage the dissemi-  
10 nation of information on quality family literacy programs  
11 serving Indians.

12          “(f) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—The Secretary shall,  
13 out of funds appropriated under subsection (g), include  
14 in the grants provided under subsection (a) amounts for  
15 administrative costs incurred by the tribe, tribal organiza-  
16 tion, or consortium of tribes in establishing and maintain-  
17 ing the early childhood development program.

18          “(g) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—For the  
19 purpose of carrying out the provisions of this section,  
20 there are authorized to be appropriated \$10,000,000 for  
21 fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for  
22 each of the fiscal years 2003, 2004, 2005, and 2006.



1 **“SEC. 1140. TRIBAL DEPARTMENTS OR DIVISIONS OF EDU-**  
2 **CATION.**

3 “(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the availability of ap-  
4 propriations, the Secretary shall provide grants and tech-  
5 nical assistance to tribes for the development and oper-  
6 ation of tribal departments of education for the purpose  
7 of planning and coordinating all educational programs of  
8 the tribe.

9 “(b) GRANTS.—Grants provided under this section  
10 shall—

11 “(1) be based on applications from the gov-  
12 erning body of the tribe;

13 “(2) reflect factors such as geographic and pop-  
14 ulation diversity;

15 “(3) facilitate tribal control in all matters relat-  
16 ing to the education of Indian children on Indian  
17 reservations (and on former Indian reservations in  
18 Oklahoma);

19 “(4) provide for the development of coordinated  
20 educational programs on Indian reservations (and on  
21 former Indian reservations in Oklahoma) (including  
22 all preschool, elementary, secondary, and higher or  
23 vocational educational programs funded by tribal,  
24 Federal, or other sources) by encouraging tribal ad-  
25 ministrative support of all Bureau funded edu-  
26 cational programs as well as encouraging tribal co-



1 operation and coordination with all educational pro-  
2 grams receiving financial support from State agen-  
3 cies, other Federal agencies, or private entities;

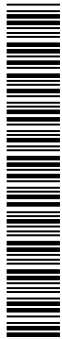
4 “(5) provide for the development and enforce-  
5 ment of tribal educational codes, including tribal  
6 educational policies and tribal standards applicable  
7 to curriculum, personnel, students, facilities, and  
8 support programs; and

9 “(6) otherwise comply with regulations for  
10 grants under section 103(a) of the Indian Self-De-  
11 termination and Educational Assistance Act that are  
12 in effect on the date that application for such grants  
13 are made.

14 “(c) PRIORITIES.—

15 “(1) IN GENERAL.—In making grants under  
16 this section, the Secretary shall give priority to any  
17 application that—

18 “(A) includes assurances from the majority  
19 of Bureau funded schools located within the  
20 boundaries of the reservation of the applicant  
21 that the tribal department of education to be  
22 funded under this section will provide coordi-  
23 nating services and technical assistance to all of  
24 such schools, including the submission to each  
25 applicable agency of a unified application for



1 funding for all of such schools which provides  
2 that—

3 “(i) no administrative costs other  
4 than those attributable to the individual  
5 programs of such schools will be associated  
6 with the unified application; and

7 “(ii) the distribution of all funds re-  
8 ceived under the unified application will be  
9 equal to the amount of funds provided by  
10 the applicable agency to which each of  
11 such schools is entitled under law;

12 “(B) includes assurances from the tribal  
13 governing body that the tribal department of  
14 education funded under this section will admin-  
15 ister all contracts or grants (except those cov-  
16 ered by the other provisions of this title and the  
17 Tribally Controlled Community College Assist-  
18 ance Act of 1978) for education programs ad-  
19 ministered by the tribe and will coordinate all  
20 of the programs to the greatest extent possible;

21 “(C) includes assurances for the moni-  
22 toring and auditing by or through the tribal de-  
23 partment of education of all education pro-  
24 grams for which funds are provided by contract





1 or grant to ensure that the programs meet the  
2 requirements of law; and

3 “(D) provides a plan and schedule for—

4 “(i) the assumption over the term of  
5 the grant by the tribal department of edu-  
6 cation of all assets and functions of the  
7 Bureau agency office associated with the  
8 tribe, insofar as those responsibilities re-  
9 late to education; and

10 “(ii) the termination by the Bureau of  
11 such operations and office at the time of  
12 such assumption,

13 except that when mutually agreeable between  
14 the tribal governing body and the Assistant  
15 Secretary, the period in which such assumption  
16 is to occur may be modified, reduced, or ex-  
17 tended after the initial year of the grant.

18 “(2) TIME PERIOD OF GRANT.—Subject to the  
19 availability of appropriated funds, grants provided  
20 under this section shall be provided for a period of  
21 3 years and the grant may, if performance by the  
22 grantee is satisfactory to the Secretary, be renewed  
23 for additional 3-year terms.

24 “(d) TERMS, CONDITIONS, OR REQUIREMENTS.—The  
25 Secretary shall not impose any terms, conditions, or re-



1 requirements on the provision of grants under this section  
2 that are not specified in this section.

3 “(e) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—For the  
4 purpose of carrying out the provisions of this section,  
5 there are authorized to be appropriated \$2,000,000 for fis-  
6 cal year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for each  
7 of the fiscal years 2003, 2004, 2005, and 2006.

8 **“SEC. 1141. DEFINITIONS.**

9 “For the purposes of this part, unless otherwise spec-  
10 ified:

11 “(1) AGENCY SCHOOL BOARD.—The term  
12 ‘agency school board’ means a body, the members of  
13 which are appointed by all of the school boards of  
14 the schools located within an agency, including  
15 schools operated under contract or grant, and the  
16 number of such members shall be determined by the  
17 Secretary in consultation with the affected tribes, ex-  
18 cept that, in agencies serving a single school, the  
19 school board of such school shall fulfill these duties,  
20 and in agencies having schools or a school operated  
21 under contract or grant, one such member at least  
22 shall be from such a school.

23 “(2) BUREAU.—The term ‘Bureau’ means the  
24 Bureau of Indian Affairs of the Department of the  
25 Interior.



1           “(3) BUREAU FUNDED SCHOOL.—The term  
2           ‘Bureau funded school’ means—

3                   “(A) a Bureau school;

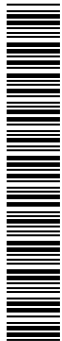
4                   “(B) a contract or grant school; or

5                   “(C) a school for which assistance is pro-  
6           vided under the Tribally Controlled Schools Act  
7           of 1988.

8           “(4) BUREAU SCHOOL.—The term ‘Bureau  
9           school’ means a Bureau operated elementary or sec-  
10          ondary day or boarding school or a Bureau operated  
11          dormitory for students attending a school other than  
12          a Bureau school.

13          “(5) CONTRACT OR GRANT SCHOOL.—The term  
14          ‘contract or grant school’ means an elementary or  
15          secondary school or dormitory which receives finan-  
16          cial assistance for its operation under a contract,  
17          grant or agreement with the Bureau under section  
18          102, 103(a), or 208 of the Indian Self-Determina-  
19          tion and Education Assistance Act, or under the  
20          Tribally Controlled Schools Act of 1988.

21          “(6) EDUCATION LINE OFFICER.—The term  
22          ‘education line officer’ means education personnel  
23          under the supervision of the Director, whether lo-  
24          cated in the central, area, or agency offices.



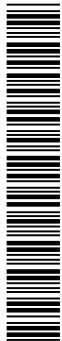
1           “(7) FAMILY LITERACY SERVICES.—The term  
2           ‘family literacy services’ has the meaning given that  
3           term in section 8101 of the Elementary and Sec-  
4           ondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 8801).

5           “(8) FINANCIAL PLAN.—The term ‘financial  
6           plan’ means a plan of services provided by each Bu-  
7           reau school.

8           “(9) INDIAN ORGANIZATION.—the term ‘Indian  
9           organization’ means any group, association, partner-  
10          ship, corporation, or other legal entity owned or con-  
11          trolled by a federally recognized Indian tribe or  
12          tribes, or a majority of whose members are members  
13          of federally recognized tribes.

14          “(10) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY.—The  
15          term ‘local educational agency’ means a board of  
16          education or other legally constituted local school  
17          authority having administrative control and direction  
18          of free public education in a county, township, inde-  
19          pendent, or other school district located within a  
20          State, and includes any State agency which directly  
21          operates and maintains facilities for providing free  
22          public education.

23          “(11) LOCAL SCHOOL BOARD.—The term ‘local  
24          school board’, when used with respect to a Bureau  
25          school, means a body chosen in accordance with the



1 laws of the tribe to be served or, in the absence of  
2 such laws, elected by the parents of the Indian chil-  
3 dren attending the school, except that in schools  
4 serving a substantial number of students from dif-  
5 ferent tribes, the members shall be appointed by the  
6 governing bodies of the tribes affected, and the num-  
7 ber of such members shall be determined by the Sec-  
8 retary in consultation with the affected tribes.

9 “(12) OFFICE.—The term ‘Office’ means the  
10 Office of Indian Education Programs within the Bu-  
11 reau.

12 “(13) SECRETARY.—The term ‘Secretary’  
13 means the Secretary of the Interior.

14 “(14) SUPERVISOR.—The term ‘supervisor’  
15 means the individual in the position of ultimate au-  
16 thority at a Bureau school.

17 “(15) TRIBAL GOVERNING BODY.—The term  
18 ‘tribal governing body’ means, with respect to any  
19 school, the tribal governing body, or tribal governing  
20 bodies, that represent at least 90 percent of the stu-  
21 dents served by such school.

22 “(16) TRIBE.—The term ‘tribe’ means any In-  
23 dian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or  
24 community, including any Alaska Native village or  
25 regional or village corporation as defined in or estab-



1 lished pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settle-  
2 ment Act, which is recognized as eligible for the spe-  
3 cial programs and services provided by the United  
4 States to Indians because of their status as Indi-  
5 ans.”.

6 **SEC. 314. TRIBALLY CONTROLLED SCHOOLS ACT OF 1988.**

7 Sections 5202 through 5212 of Public Law 100–297  
8 (25 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.) are amended to read as follows:

9 **“SEC. 5202. FINDINGS.**

10 “Congress, after careful review of the Federal Gov-  
11 ernment’s historical and special legal relationship with,  
12 and resulting responsibilities to, Indians, finds that—

13 “(1) the Indian Self-Determination and Edu-  
14 cation Assistance Act, which was a product of the le-  
15 gitimate aspirations and a recognition of the inher-  
16 ent authority of Indian nations, was and is a crucial  
17 positive step towards tribal and community control;

18 “(2) the Bureau of Indian Affairs’ administra-  
19 tion and domination of the contracting process  
20 under such Act has not provided the full opportunity  
21 to develop leadership skills crucial to the realization  
22 of self-government and has denied Indians an effec-  
23 tive voice in the planning and implementation of  
24 programs for the benefit of Indians which are re-  
25 sponsive to the true needs of Indian communities;



1           “(3) Indians will never surrender their desire to  
2 control their relationships both among themselves  
3 and with non-Indian governments, organizations,  
4 and persons;

5           “(4) true self-determination in any society of  
6 people is dependent upon an educational process  
7 which will ensure the development of qualified people  
8 to fulfill meaningful leadership roles;

9           “(5) the Federal administration of education  
10 for Indian children has not effected the desired level  
11 of educational achievement or created the diverse op-  
12 portunities and personal satisfaction that education  
13 can and should provide;

14           “(6) true local control requires the least pos-  
15 sible Federal interference; and

16           “(7) the time has come to enhance the concepts  
17 made manifest in the Indian Self-Determination and  
18 Education Assistance Act.

19 **“SEC. 5203. DECLARATION OF POLICY.**

20           “(a) **RECOGNITION.**—Congress recognizes the obliga-  
21 tion of the United States to respond to the strong expres-  
22 sion of the Indian people for self-determination by assur-  
23 ing maximum Indian participation in the direction of edu-  
24 cational services so as to render such services more re-  
25 sponsive to the needs and desires of those communities.



1           “(b) COMMITMENT.—Congress declares its commit-  
2 ment to the maintenance of the Federal Government’s  
3 unique and continuing trust relationship with and respon-  
4 sibility to the Indian people through the establishment of  
5 a meaningful Indian self-determination policy for edu-  
6 cation which will deter further perpetuation of Federal bu-  
7 reaucratic domination of programs.

8           “(c) NATIONAL GOAL.—Congress declares that a  
9 major national goal of the United States is to provide the  
10 resources, processes, and structure which will enable tribes  
11 and local communities to effect the quantity and quality  
12 of educational services and opportunities which will permit  
13 Indian children to compete and excel in the life areas of  
14 their choice and to achieve the measure of self-determina-  
15 tion essential to their social and economic well-being.

16           “(d) EDUCATIONAL NEEDS.—Congress affirms the  
17 reality of the special and unique educational needs of In-  
18 dian peoples, including the need for programs to meet the  
19 linguistic and cultural aspirations of Indian tribes and  
20 communities. These may best be met through a grant  
21 process.

22           “(e) FEDERAL RELATIONS.—Congress declares its  
23 commitment to these policies and its support, to the full  
24 extent of its responsibility, for Federal relations with the  
25 Indian Nations.





1           “(f) TERMINATION.—Congress hereby repudiates and  
2 rejects House Resolution 108 of the 83d Congress and any  
3 policy of unilateral termination of Federal relations with  
4 any Indian Nation.

5 **“SEC. 5204. GRANTS AUTHORIZED.**

6           “(a) IN GENERAL.—

7                   “(1) ELIGIBILITY.—The Secretary shall provide  
8 grants to Indian tribes, and tribal organizations  
9 that—

10                           “(A) operate contract schools under title  
11 XI of the Education Amendments of 1978 and  
12 notify the Secretary of their election to operate  
13 the schools with assistance under this part  
14 rather than continuing as contract school;

15                           “(B) operate other tribally controlled  
16 schools eligible for assistance under this part  
17 and submit applications (which are approved by  
18 their tribal governing bodies) to the Secretary  
19 for such grants; or

20                           “(C) elect to assume operation of Bureau  
21 funded schools with the assistance under this  
22 part and submit applications (which are ap-  
23 proved by their tribal governing bodies) to the  
24 Secretary for such grants.



1           “(2) DEPOSIT OF FUNDS.—Grants provided  
2 under this part shall be deposited into the general  
3 operating fund of the tribally controlled school with  
4 respect to which the grant is made.

5           “(3) USE OF FUNDS.—(A) Except as otherwise  
6 provided in this paragraph, grants provided under  
7 this part shall be used to defray, at the discretion  
8 of the school board of the tribally controlled school  
9 with respect to which the grant is provided, any ex-  
10 penditures for education related activities for which  
11 any funds that compose the grant may be used  
12 under the laws described in section 5205(a), includ-  
13 ing, but not limited to, expenditures for—

14                   “(i) school operations, academic, edu-  
15 cational, residential, guidance and counseling,  
16 and administrative purposes; and

17                   “(ii) support services for the school, includ-  
18 ing transportation.

19           “(B) Grants provided under this part may, at  
20 the discretion of the school board of the tribally con-  
21 trolled school with respect to which such grant is  
22 provided, be used to defray operations and mainte-  
23 nance expenditures for the school if any funds for  
24 the operation and maintenance of the school are al-



1 located to the school under the provisions of any of  
2 the laws described in section 5205(a).

3 “(b) LIMITATIONS.—

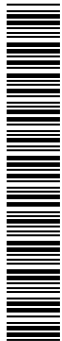
4 “(1) ONE GRANT PER TRIBE OR ORGANIZATION  
5 PER FISCAL YEAR.—Not more than one grant may  
6 be provided under this part with respect to any In-  
7 dian tribe or tribal organization for any fiscal year.

8 “(2) NONSECTARIAN USE.—Funds provided  
9 under any grant made under this part may not be  
10 used in connection with religious worship or sec-  
11 tarian instruction.

12 “(3) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS LIMITATION.—  
13 Funds provided under any grant under this part  
14 may not be expended for administrative costs (as de-  
15 fined in section 1128(h)(1) of the Education Amend-  
16 ments of 1978) in excess of the amount generated  
17 for such costs under section 1128 of such Act.

18 “(c) LIMITATION ON TRANSFER OF FUNDS AMONG  
19 SCHOOLSITES.—

20 “(1) IN GENERAL.—In the case of a grantee  
21 that operates schools at more than one schoolsite,  
22 the grantee may expend not more than the lesser  
23 of—



1           “(A) 10 percent of the funds allocated for  
2           such schoolsite under section 1128 of the Edu-  
3           cation Amendments of 1978; or

4           “(B) \$400,000 of such funds, at any other  
5           schoolsite.

6           “(2) DEFINITION OF SCHOOLSITE.—For pur-  
7           poses of this subsection, the term ‘schoolsite’ means  
8           the physical location and the facilities of an elemen-  
9           tary or secondary educational or residential program  
10          operated by, or under contract or grant with, the  
11          Bureau for which a discreet student count is identi-  
12          fied under the funding formula established under  
13          section 1127 of the Education Amendments of 1978.

14          “(d) NO REQUIREMENT TO ACCEPT GRANTS.—  
15          Nothing in this part may be construed—

16                 “(1) to require a tribe or tribal organization to  
17                 apply for or accept; or

18                 “(2) to allow any person to coerce any tribe or  
19                 tribal organization to apply for, or accept,

20          a grant under this part to plan, conduct, and administer  
21          all of, or any portion of, any Bureau program. Such appli-  
22          cations and the timing of such applications shall be strictly  
23          voluntary. Nothing in this part may be construed as allow-  
24          ing or requiring any grant with any entity other than the  
25          entity to which the grant is provided.



1       “(e) NO EFFECT ON FEDERAL RESPONSIBILITY.—  
2 Grants provided under this part shall not terminate, mod-  
3 ify, suspend, or reduce the responsibility of the Federal  
4 Government to provide a program.

5       “(f) RETROCESSION.—

6           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Whenever a tribal gov-  
7 erning body requests retrocession of any program for  
8 which assistance is provided under this part, such  
9 retrocession shall become effective upon a date speci-  
10 fied by the Secretary that is not later than 120 days  
11 after the date on which the tribal governing body re-  
12 quests the retrocession. A later date as may be spec-  
13 ified if mutually agreed upon by the Secretary and  
14 the tribal governing body. If such a program is  
15 retroceded, the Secretary shall provide to any Indian  
16 tribe served by such program at least the same  
17 quantity and quality of services that would have  
18 been provided under such program at the level of  
19 funding provided under this part prior to the ret-  
20 rocession.

21           “(2) STATUS AFTER RETROCESSION.—The tribe  
22 requesting retrocession shall specify whether the ret-  
23 rocession is to status as a Bureau operated school  
24 or as a school operated under contract under title XI  
25 of the Education Amendments of 1978.



1           “(3) TRANSFER OF EQUIPMENT AND MATE-  
2           RIALS.—Except as otherwise determined by the Sec-  
3           retary, the tribe or tribal organization operating the  
4           program to be retroceded must transfer to the Sec-  
5           retary (or to the tribe or tribal organization which  
6           will operate the program as a contract school) the  
7           existing equipment and materials which were  
8           acquired—

9                   “(A) with assistance under this part; or

10                   “(B) upon assumption of operation of the  
11           program under this part if the school was a Bu-  
12           reau funded school under title XI of the Edu-  
13           cation Amendments of 1978 before receiving as-  
14           sistance under this part.

15           “(g) PROHIBITION OF TERMINATION FOR ADMINIS-  
16           TRATIVE CONVENIENCE.—Grants provided under this  
17           part may not be terminated, modified, suspended, or re-  
18           duced solely for the convenience of the administering agen-  
19           cy.

20           **“SEC. 5205. COMPOSITION OF GRANTS.**

21           “(a) IN GENERAL.—The grant provided under this  
22           part to an Indian tribe or tribal organization for any fiscal  
23           year shall consist of—

24                   “(1) the total amount of funds allocated for  
25           such fiscal year under sections 1127 and 1128 of the



1 Education Amendments of 1978 with respect to the  
2 tribally controlled schools eligible for assistance  
3 under this part which are operated by such Indian  
4 tribe or tribal organization, including, but not lim-  
5 ited to, funds provided under such sections, or under  
6 any other provision of law, for transportation costs;

7 “(2) to the extent requested by such Indian  
8 tribe or tribal organization, the total amount of  
9 funds provided from operations and maintenance ac-  
10 counts and, notwithstanding section 105 of the In-  
11 dian Self-Determination Act, or any other provision  
12 of law, other facilities accounts for such schools for  
13 such fiscal year (including but not limited to those  
14 referenced under section 1126(d) of the Education  
15 Amendments of 1978 or any other law); and

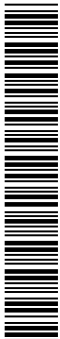
16 “(3) the total amount of funds that are allo-  
17 cated to such schools for such fiscal year under—

18 “(A) title I of the Elementary and Sec-  
19 ondary Education Act of 1965;

20 “(B) the Individuals with Disabilities Edu-  
21 cation Act; and

22 “(C) any other Federal education law, that  
23 are allocated to such schools for such fiscal  
24 year.

25 “(b) SPECIAL RULES.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) Funds allocated to a  
2 tribally controlled school by reason of paragraph (1)  
3 or (2) of subsection (a) shall be subject to the provi-  
4 sions of this part and shall not be subject to any ad-  
5 ditional restriction, priority, or limitation that is im-  
6 posed by the Bureau with respect to funds provided  
7 under—

8                   “(i) title I of the Elementary and Sec-  
9                   ondary Education Act of 1965;

10                   “(ii) the Individuals with Disabilities Edu-  
11                   cation Act; or

12                   “(iii) any Federal education law other than  
13                   title XI of the Education Amendments of 1978.

14           “(B) Indian tribes and tribal organizations to  
15 which grants are provided under this part, and trib-  
16 ally controlled schools for which such grants are pro-  
17 vided, shall not be subject to any requirements, obli-  
18 gations, restrictions, or limitations imposed by the  
19 Bureau that would otherwise apply solely by reason  
20 of the receipt of funds provided under any law re-  
21 ferred to in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph  
22 (A).

23           “(2) SCHOOLS CONSIDERED CONTRACT  
24 SCHOOLS.—Tribally controlled schools for which  
25 grants are provided under this part shall be treated





1 as contract schools for the purposes of allocation of  
2 funds under sections 1126(d), 1127, and 1128 of  
3 the Education Amendments of 1978.

4 “(3) SCHOOLS CONSIDERED BUREAU  
5 SCHOOLS.—Tribally controlled schools for which  
6 grants are provided under this chapter shall be  
7 treated as Bureau schools for the purposes of alloca-  
8 tion of funds provided under—

9 “(A) title I of the Elementary and Sec-  
10 ondary Education Act of 1965;

11 “(B) the Individuals with Disabilities Edu-  
12 cation Act; and

13 “(C) any other Federal education law, that  
14 are distributed through the Bureau.

15 “(4) ACCOUNTS; USE OF CERTAIN FUNDS.—(A)  
16 Notwithstanding section 5204(a)(2), with respect to  
17 funds from facilities improvement and repair, alter-  
18 ation and renovation (major or minor), health and  
19 safety, or new construction accounts included in the  
20 grant under section 5204(a), the grantee shall main-  
21 tain a separate account for such funds. At the end  
22 of the period designated for the work covered by the  
23 funds received, the grantee shall submit to the Sec-  
24 retary a separate accounting of the work done and  
25 the funds expended to the Secretary. Funds received



1 from these accounts may only be used for the pur-  
2 pose for which they were appropriated and for the  
3 work encompassed by the application or submission  
4 under which they were received.

5 “(B) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), a  
6 school receiving a grant under this part for facilities  
7 improvement and repair may use such grant funds  
8 for new construction if the tribal government or  
9 other organization provides funding for the new con-  
10 struction equal to at least 25 percent of the total  
11 cost of such new construction.

12 “(C) Where the appropriations measure or the  
13 application submission does not stipulate a period  
14 for the work covered by the funds so designated, the  
15 Secretary and the grantee shall consult and deter-  
16 mine such a period prior to the transfer of the  
17 funds. A period so determined may be extended  
18 upon mutual agreement of the Secretary and the  
19 grantee.

20 “(5) ENFORCEMENT OF REQUEST TO INCLUDE  
21 FUNDS.—If the Secretary fails to carry out a re-  
22 quest made under subsection (a)(2) within 180 days  
23 of a request filed by an Indian tribe or tribal organi-  
24 zation to include in such tribe or organization’s  
25 grant the funds described in subsection (a)(2), the



1 Secretary shall be deemed to have approved such re-  
2 quest and the Secretary shall immediately amend  
3 the grant accordingly. Such tribe or organization  
4 may enforce its rights under subsection (a)(2) and  
5 this paragraph, including any denial or failure to act  
6 on such tribe or organization's request, pursuant to  
7 the disputes authority described in section 5209(e).

8 **“SEC. 5206. ELIGIBILITY FOR GRANTS.**

9 “(a) RULES.—

10 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A tribally controlled school  
11 is eligible for assistance under this part if the  
12 school—

13 “(A) on April 28, 1988, was a contract  
14 school under title XI of the Education Amend-  
15 ments of 1978 and the tribe or tribal organiza-  
16 tion operating the school submits to the Sec-  
17 retary a written notice of election to receive a  
18 grant under this part;

19 “(B) was a Bureau operated school under  
20 title XI of the Education Amendments of 1978  
21 and has met the requirements of subsection (b);

22 “(C) is a school for which the Bureau has  
23 not provided funds, but which has met the re-  
24 quirements of subsection (c); or



1           “(D) is a school with respect to which an  
2           election has been made under paragraph (2)  
3           and which has met the requirements of sub-  
4           section (b).

5           “(2) NEW SCHOOLS.—Any application which  
6           has been submitted under the Indian Self-Deter-  
7           mination and Education Assistance Act by an Indian  
8           tribe for a school which is not in operation on the  
9           date of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind  
10          Act of 2001 shall be reviewed under the guidelines  
11          and regulations for applications submitted under the  
12          Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance  
13          Act that were in effect at the time the application  
14          was submitted, unless the Indian tribe or tribal or-  
15          ganization elects to have the application reviewed  
16          under the provisions of subsection (b).

17          “(b) ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR BUREAU  
18          FUNDED SCHOOLS AND CERTAIN ELECTING SCHOOLS.—

19               “(1) BUREAU FUNDED SCHOOLS.—A school  
20               that was a Bureau funded school under title XI of  
21               the Education Amendments of 1978 on the date of  
22               the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act of  
23               2001, and any school with respect to which an elec-  
24               tion is made under subsection (a)(2), meets the re-  
25               quirements of this subsection if—



1           “(A) the Indian tribe or tribal organization  
2 that operates, or desires to operate, the school  
3 submits to the Secretary an application request-  
4 ing that the Secretary—

5           “(i) transfer operation of the school to  
6 the Indian tribe or tribal organization, if  
7 the Indian tribe or tribal organization is  
8 not already operating the school; and

9           “(ii) make a determination as to  
10 whether the school is eligible for assistance  
11 under this part; and

12           “(B) the Secretary makes a determination  
13 that the school is eligible for assistance under  
14 this part.

15           “(2) CERTAIN ELECTING SCHOOLS.—(A) By  
16 not later than the date that is 120 days after the  
17 date on which an application is submitted to the  
18 Secretary under paragraph (1)(A), the Secretary  
19 shall determine—

20           “(i) in the case of a school which is not  
21 being operated by the Indian tribe or tribal or-  
22 ganization, whether to transfer operation of the  
23 school to the Indian tribe or tribal organization;  
24 and



1           “(ii) whether the school is eligible for as-  
2           sistance under this part.

3           “(B) In considering applications submitted  
4           under paragraph (1)(A), the Secretary—

5           “(i) shall transfer operation of the school  
6           to the Indian tribe or tribal organization, if the  
7           tribe or tribal organization is not already oper-  
8           ating the school; and

9           “(ii) shall determine that the school is eli-  
10          gible for assistance under this part, unless the  
11          Secretary finds by clear and convincing evidence  
12          that the services to be provided by the Indian  
13          tribe or tribal organization will be deleterious to  
14          the welfare of the Indians served by the school.

15          “(C) In considering applications submitted  
16          under paragraph (1)(A), the Secretary shall consider  
17          whether the Indian tribe or tribal organization would  
18          be deficient in operating the school with respect to—

19                 “(i) equipment;

20                 “(ii) bookkeeping and accounting proce-  
21                 dures;

22                 “(iii) ability to adequately manage a  
23                 school; or

24                 “(iv) adequately trained personnel.



1           “(c) ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR A SCHOOL  
2 WHICH IS NOT A BUREAU FUNDED SCHOOL.—

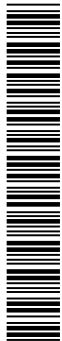
3           “(1) IN GENERAL.—A school which is not a Bu-  
4 reau funded school under title XI of the Education  
5 Amendments of 1978 meets the requirements of this  
6 subsection if—

7           “(A) the Indian tribe or tribal organization  
8 that operates, or desires to operate, the school  
9 submits to the Secretary an application request-  
10 ing a determination by the Secretary as to  
11 whether the school is eligible for assistance  
12 under this part; and

13           “(B) the Secretary makes a determination  
14 that a school is eligible for assistance under this  
15 part.

16           “(2) DEADLINE FOR DETERMINATION BY SEC-  
17 RETARY.—(A) By not later than the date that is  
18 180 days after the date on which an application is  
19 submitted to the Secretary under paragraph (1)(A),  
20 the Secretary shall determine whether the school is  
21 eligible for assistance under this part.

22           “(B) In making the determination under sub-  
23 paragraph (A), the Secretary shall give equal consid-  
24 eration to each of the following factors:



1                   “(i) with respect to the applicant’s  
2                   proposal—

3                   “(I) the adequacy of facilities or the  
4                   potential to obtain or provide adequate fa-  
5                   cilities;

6                   “(II) geographic and demographic fac-  
7                   tors in the affected areas;

8                   “(III) adequacy of the applicant’s pro-  
9                   gram plans;

10                  “(IV) geographic proximity of com-  
11                  parable public education; and

12                  “(V) the needs as expressed by all af-  
13                  fected parties, including but not limited to  
14                  students, families, tribal governments at  
15                  both the central and local levels, and  
16                  school organizations; and

17                  “(ii) with respect to all education services  
18                  already available—

19                  “(I) geographic and demographic fac-  
20                  tors in the affected areas;

21                  “(II) adequacy and comparability of  
22                  programs already available;

23                  “(III) consistency of available pro-  
24                  grams with tribal education codes or tribal  
25                  legislation on education; and





1                   “(IV) the history and success of these  
2                   services for the proposed population to be  
3                   served, as determined from all factors in-  
4                   cluding, if relevant, standardized examina-  
5                   tion performance.

6                   “(C) The Secretary may not make a deter-  
7                   mination under this paragraph that is primarily  
8                   based upon the geographic proximity of com-  
9                   parable public education.

10                  “(D) Applications submitted under para-  
11                  graph (1)(A) shall include information on the  
12                  factors described in subparagraph (B)(i), but  
13                  the applicant may also provide the Secretary  
14                  such information relative to the factors de-  
15                  scribed in subparagraph (B)(ii) as the applicant  
16                  considers appropriate.

17                  “(E) If the Secretary fails to make a de-  
18                  termination under subparagraph (A) with re-  
19                  spect to an application within 180 days after  
20                  the date on which the Secretary received the  
21                  application, the Secretary shall be treated as  
22                  having made a determination that the tribally  
23                  controlled school is eligible for assistance under  
24                  the title and the grant shall become effective 18  
25                  months after the date on which the Secretary



1 received the application, or on an earlier date,  
2 at the Secretary's discretion.

3 “(d) FILING OF APPLICATIONS AND REPORTS.—

4 “(1) IN GENERAL.—All applications and reports  
5 submitted to the Secretary under this part, and any  
6 amendments to such applications or reports, shall be  
7 filed with the education line officer designated by  
8 the Director of the Office of Indian Education Pro-  
9 grams of the Bureau of Indian Affairs. The date on  
10 which such filing occurs shall, for purposes of this  
11 part, be treated as the date on which the application  
12 or amendment was submitted to the Secretary.

13 “(2) SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION.—Any ap-  
14 plication that is submitted under this chapter shall  
15 be accompanied by a document indicating the action  
16 taken by the tribal governing body in authorizing  
17 such application.

18 “(e) EFFECTIVE DATE FOR APPROVED APPLICA-  
19 TIONS.—Except as provided by subsection (c)(2)(E), a  
20 grant provided under this part, and any transfer of the  
21 operation of a Bureau school made under subsection (b),  
22 shall become effective beginning the academic year suc-  
23 ceeding the fiscal year in which the application for the  
24 grant or transfer is made, or at an earlier date determined  
25 by the Secretary.



1 “(f) DENIAL OF APPLICATIONS.—

2 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Whenever the Secretary re-  
3 fuses to approve a grant under this chapter, to  
4 transfer operation of a Bureau school under sub-  
5 section (b), or determines that a school is not eligi-  
6 ble for assistance under this part, the Secretary  
7 shall—

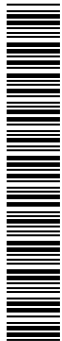
8 “(A) state the objections in writing to the  
9 tribe or tribal organization within the allotted  
10 time;

11 “(B) provide assistance to the tribe or trib-  
12 al organization to overcome all stated objec-  
13 tions.

14 “(C) at the request of the tribe or tribal  
15 organization, provide the tribe or tribal organi-  
16 zation a hearing on the record under the same  
17 rules and regulations that apply under the In-  
18 dian Self-Determination and Education Assist-  
19 ance Act; and

20 “(D) provide an opportunity to appeal the  
21 objection raised.

22 “(2) TIMELINE FOR RECONSIDERATION OF  
23 AMENDED APPLICATIONS.—The Secretary shall re-  
24 consider any amended application submitted under



1       this part within 60 days after the amended applica-  
2       tion is submitted to the Secretary.

3       “(g) REPORT.—The Bureau shall submit an annual  
4 report to the Congress on all applications received, and  
5 actions taken (including the costs associated with such ac-  
6 tions), under this section at the same time that the Presi-  
7 dent is required to submit to Congress the budget under  
8 section 1105 of title 31, United States Code.

9       **“SEC. 5207. DURATION OF ELIGIBILITY DETERMINATION.**

10       “(a) IN GENERAL.—If the Secretary determines that  
11 a tribally controlled school is eligible for assistance under  
12 this part, the eligibility determination shall remain in ef-  
13 fect until the determination is revoked by the Secretary,  
14 and the requirements of subsection (b) or (c) of section  
15 5206, if applicable, shall be considered to have been met  
16 with respect to such school until the eligibility determina-  
17 tion is revoked by the Secretary.

18       “(b) ANNUAL REPORTS.—

19               “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each recipient of a grant  
20 provided under this part shall complete an annual  
21 report which shall be limited to—

22                       “(A) an annual financial statement report-  
23                       ing revenue and expenditures as defined by the  
24                       cost accounting established by the grantee;



1           “(B) an annual financial audit conducted  
2           pursuant to the standards of the Single Audit  
3           Act of 1984;

4           “(C) an annual submission to the Sec-  
5           retary of the number of students served and a  
6           brief description of programs offered under the  
7           grant; and

8           “(D) a program evaluation conducted by  
9           an impartial evaluation review team, to be  
10          based on the standards established for purposes  
11          of subsection (c)(1)(A)(ii).

12          “(2) EVALUATION REVIEW TEAMS.—Where ap-  
13          propriate, other tribally controlled schools and rep-  
14          resentatives of tribally controlled community colleges  
15          shall make up members of the evaluation review  
16          teams.

17          “(3) EVALUATIONS.—In the case of a school  
18          which is accredited, evaluations will be conducted at  
19          intervals under the terms of accreditation.

20          “(4) SUBMISSION OF REPORT.—

21                 “(A) TO TRIBALLY GOVERNING BODY.—  
22                 Upon completion of the report required under  
23                 paragraph (a), the recipient of the grant shall  
24                 send (via first class mail, return receipt re-  
25                 quested) a copy of such annual report to the



1 tribal governing body (as defined in section  
2 1132(f) of the Education Amendments of 1978)  
3 of the tribally controlled school.

4 “(B) TO SECRETARY.—Not later than 30  
5 days after receiving written confirmation that  
6 the tribal governing body has received the re-  
7 port send pursuant to subsection (A), the re-  
8 cipient of the grant shall send a copy of the re-  
9 port to the Secretary.

10 “(c) REVOCATION OF ELIGIBILITY.—

11 “(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) The Secretary shall not  
12 revoke a determination that a school is eligible for  
13 assistance under this part if—

14 “(i) the Indian tribe or tribal organization  
15 submits the reports required under subsection  
16 (b) with respect to the school; and

17 “(ii) at least one of the following sub-  
18 clauses applies with respect to the school:

19 “(I) The school is certified or accred-  
20 ited by a State or regional accrediting as-  
21 sociation or is a candidate in good stand-  
22 ing for such accreditation under the rules  
23 of the State or regional accrediting asso-  
24 ciation, showing that credits achieved by  
25 the students within the education pro-



1           grams are, or will be, accepted at grade  
2           level by a State certified or regionally ac-  
3           credited institution.

4                   “(II) A determination made by the  
5           Secretary that there is a reasonable expect-  
6           ation that the accreditation described in  
7           subclause (I), or the candidacy in good  
8           standing for such accreditation, will be  
9           reached by the school within 3 years and  
10          that the program offered by the school is  
11          beneficial to the Indian students.

12                   “(III) The school is accredited by a  
13          tribal department of education if such ac-  
14          creditation is accepted by a generally rec-  
15          ognized regional or State accreditation  
16          agency.

17                   “(IV) The schools accept the stand-  
18          ards promulgated under section 1121 of  
19          the Education Amendments of 1978 and  
20          an evaluation of performance is conducted  
21          under this section in conformance with the  
22          regulations pertaining to Bureau operated  
23          schools by an impartial evaluator chosen  
24          by the grantee, but no grantee shall be re-  
25          quired to comply with these standards to a



1 higher degree than a comparable Bureau  
2 operated school.

3 “(V) A positive evaluation of the  
4 school is conducted by an impartial eval-  
5 uator agreed upon by the Secretary and  
6 the grantee every 2 years under standards  
7 adopted by the contractor under a contract  
8 for a school entered into under the Indian  
9 Self-Determination and Education Assist-  
10 ance Act (or revisions of such standards  
11 agreed to by the Secretary and the grant-  
12 ee) prior to the date of the enactment of  
13 this Act. If the Secretary and the grantee  
14 other than the tribal governing body fail to  
15 agree on such an evaluator, the tribal gov-  
16 erning body shall choose the evaluator or  
17 perform the evaluation. If the Secretary  
18 and a grantee which is the tribal governing  
19 body fail to agree on such an evaluator,  
20 this subclause shall not apply.

21 “(B) The choice of standards employed for the  
22 purpose of subparagraph (A)(ii) shall be consistent  
23 with section 1121(e) of the Education Amendments  
24 of 1978.





1           “(2) NOTICE REQUIREMENTS FOR REVOCA-  
2           TION.—The Secretary shall not revoke a determina-  
3           tion that a school is eligible for assistance under this  
4           part, or reassume control of a school that was a Bu-  
5           reau school prior to approval of an application sub-  
6           mitted under section 5206(b)(1)(A) until the  
7           Secretary—

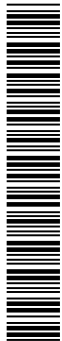
8                   “(A) provides notice to the tribally con-  
9                   trolled school and the tribal governing body  
10                  (within the meaning of section 1141(14) of the  
11                  Education Amendments of 1978) of the tribally  
12                  controlled school which states—

13                           “(i) the specific deficiencies that led  
14                           to the revocation or resumption determina-  
15                           tion; and

16                           “(ii) the actions that are needed to  
17                           remedy such deficiencies; and

18                           “(B) affords such authority an opportunity  
19                           to effect the remedial actions.

20           “(3) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary  
21           shall provide such technical assistance as is prac-  
22           ticable to effect such remedial actions. Such notice  
23           and technical assistance shall be in addition to a  
24           hearing and appeal to be conducted pursuant to the  
25           regulations described in section 5206(f)(1)(C).



1       “(d) APPLICABILITY OF SECTION PURSUANT TO  
2 ELECTION UNDER SECTION 5209(b).—With respect to a  
3 tribally controlled school which receives assistance under  
4 this part pursuant to an election made under section  
5 5209(b)—

6           “(1) subsection (b) of this section shall apply;  
7       and

8           “(2) the Secretary may not revoke eligibility for  
9       assistance under this part except in conformance  
10       with subsection (c) of this section.

11 **“SEC. 5208. PAYMENT OF GRANTS; INVESTMENT OF FUNDS.**

12       “(a) PAYMENTS.—

13           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise pro-  
14       vided in this subsection, the Secretary shall make  
15       payments to grantees under this part in two pay-  
16       ments, of which—

17           “(A) the first payment shall be made not  
18       later than July 15 of each year in an amount  
19       equal to 85 percent of the amount which the  
20       grantee was entitled to receive during the pre-  
21       ceding academic year; and

22           “(B) the second payment, consisting of the  
23       remainder to which the grantee is entitled for  
24       the academic year, shall be made not later than  
25       December 1 of each year.



1           “(2) NEWLY FUNDED SCHOOLS.—For any  
2 school for which no payment under this part was  
3 made from Bureau funds in the preceding academic  
4 year, full payment of the amount computed for the  
5 first academic year of eligibility under this part shall  
6 be made not later than December 1 of the academic  
7 year.

8           “(3) LATE FUNDING.—With regard to funds for  
9 grantees that become available for obligation on Oc-  
10 tober 1 of the fiscal year for which such funds are  
11 appropriated, the Secretary shall make payments to  
12 grantees not later than December 1 of the fiscal  
13 year.

14           “(4) APPLICABILITY OF CERTAIN TITLE 31 PRO-  
15 VISIONS.—The provisions of chapter 39 of Title 31,  
16 United States Code, shall apply to the payments re-  
17 quired to be made by paragraphs (1), (2), and (3).

18           “(5) RESTRICTIONS.—Paragraphs (1), (2), and  
19 (3) shall be subject to any restriction on amounts of  
20 payments under this part that are imposed by a con-  
21 tinuing resolution or other Act appropriating the  
22 funds involved.

23           “(b) INVESTMENT OF FUNDS.—

24           “(1) TREATMENT OF INTEREST AND INVEST-  
25 MENT INCOME.—Notwithstanding any other provi-



1 sion of law, any interest or investment income that  
2 accrues to any funds provided under this part after  
3 such funds are paid to the Indian tribe or tribal or-  
4 ganization and before such funds are expended for  
5 the purpose for which such funds were provided  
6 under this part shall be the property of the Indian  
7 tribe or tribal organization and shall not be taken  
8 into account by any officer or employee of the Fed-  
9 eral Government in determining whether to provide  
10 assistance, or the amount of assistance, under any  
11 provision of Federal law. Such interest income shall  
12 be spent on behalf of the school.

13 “(2) PERMISSIBLE INVESTMENTS.—Funds pro-  
14 vided under this part may be invested by the Indian  
15 tribe or tribal organization before such funds are ex-  
16 pended for the purposes of this part so long as such  
17 funds are—

18 “(A) invested by the Indian tribe or tribal  
19 organization only in obligations of the United  
20 States, or in obligations or securities that are  
21 guaranteed or insured by the United States, or  
22 mutual (or other) funds registered with the Se-  
23 curities and Exchange Commission and which  
24 only invest in obligations of the United States,



1 or securities that are guaranteed or insured by  
2 the United States; or

3 “(B) deposited only into accounts that are  
4 insure by and agency or instrumentality of the  
5 United States, or are fully collateralized to en-  
6 sure protection of the funds, even in the event  
7 of a bank failure.

8 “(c) RECOVERIES.—For the purposes of under-  
9 recovery and overrecovery determinations by any Federal  
10 agency for any other funds, from whatever source derived,  
11 funds received under this part shall not be taken into con-  
12 sideration.

13 **“SEC. 5209. APPLICATION WITH RESPECT TO INDIAN SELF-  
14 DETERMINATION AND EDUCATION ASSIST-  
15 ANCE ACT.**

16 “(a) CERTAIN PROVISIONS TO APPLY TO GRANTS.—  
17 The following provisions of the Indian Self-Determination  
18 and Education Assistance Act (and any subsequent revi-  
19 sions thereto or renumbering thereof), shall apply to  
20 grants provided under this part:

21 “(1) Section 5(f) (relating to single agency  
22 audit).

23 “(2) Section 6 (relating to criminal activities;  
24 penalties).



1           “(3) Section 7 (relating to wage and labor  
2 standards).

3           “(4) Section 104 (relating to retention of Fed-  
4 eral employee coverage).

5           “(5) Section 105(f) (relating to Federal prop-  
6 erty).

7           “(6) Section 105(k) (relating to access to Fed-  
8 eral sources of supply).

9           “(7) Section 105(l) (relating to lease of facility  
10 used for administration and delivery of services).

11           “(8) Section 106(e) (relating to limitation on  
12 remedies relating to cost allowances).

13           “(9) Section 106(i) (relating to use of funds for  
14 matching or cost participation requirements).

15           “(10) Section 106(j) (relating to allowable uses  
16 of funds).

17           “(11) Section 108(c) (Model Agreements provi-  
18 sions (1)(a)(5) (relating to limitations of costs),  
19 (1)(a)(7) (relating to records and monitoring),  
20 (1)(a)(8) (relating to property), and (a)(1)(9) (relat-  
21 ing to availability of funds).

22           “(12) Section 109 (relating to reassumption).

23           “(13) Section 111 (relating to sovereign immu-  
24 nity and trusteeship rights unaffected).



1       “(b) ELECTION FOR GRANT IN LIEU OF CON-  
2 TRACT.—

3               “(1) IN GENERAL.—Contractors for activities to  
4 which this part applies who have entered into a con-  
5 tract under the Indian Self-Determination and Edu-  
6 cation Assistance Act that is in effect upon the date  
7 of the enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act  
8 of 2001 may, by giving notice to the Secretary, elect  
9 to have the provisions of this part apply to such ac-  
10 tivity in lieu of such contract.

11               “(2) EFFECTIVE DATE OF ELECTION.—Any  
12 election made under paragraph (1) shall take effect  
13 on the later of—

14                       “(A) October 1 of the fiscal year suc-  
15 ceeding the fiscal year in which such election is  
16 made; or

17                       “(B) 60 days after the date of such elec-  
18 tion.

19               “(3) EXCEPTION.—In any case in which the 60-  
20 day period referred to in paragraph (2)(B) is less  
21 than 60 days before the beginning of the succeeding  
22 fiscal year, such election shall not take effect until  
23 the fiscal year after the fiscal year succeeding the  
24 election.



1           “(c) NO DUPLICATION.—No funds may be provided  
2 under any contract entered into under the Indian Self-De-  
3 termination and Education Assistance Act to pay any ex-  
4 penses incurred in providing any program or services if  
5 a grant has been made under this part to pay such ex-  
6 penses.

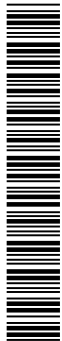
7           “(d) TRANSFERS AND CARRYOVERS.—

8                   “(1) BUILDINGS, EQUIPMENT, SUPPLIES, MATE-  
9 RIALS.—A tribe or tribal organization assuming the  
10 operation of—

11                           “(A) a Bureau school with assistance  
12 under this part shall be entitled to the transfer  
13 or use of buildings, equipment, supplies, and  
14 materials to the same extent as if it were con-  
15 tracting under the Indian Self-Determination  
16 and Education Assistance Act; or

17                           “(B) a contract school with assistance  
18 under this part shall be entitled to the transfer  
19 or use of buildings, equipment, supplies and  
20 materials that were used in the operation of the  
21 contract school to the same extent as if it were  
22 contracting under the Indian Self-Determina-  
23 tion and Education Assistance Act.

24                   “(2) FUNDS.—Any tribe or tribal organization  
25 which assumes operation of a Bureau school with as-



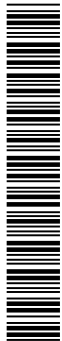


1       sistance under this part and any tribe or tribal orga-  
2       nization which elects to operate a school with assist-  
3       ance under this part rather than to continue as a  
4       contract school shall be entitled to any funds which  
5       would carryover from the previous fiscal year as if  
6       such school were operated as a contract school.

7       “(e) EXCEPTIONS, PROBLEMS, AND DISPUTES.—Any  
8       exception or problem cited in an audit conducted pursuant  
9       to section 5207(b)(2), any dispute regarding a grant au-  
10      thorized to be made pursuant to this part or any amend-  
11      ment to such grant, and any dispute involving an adminis-  
12      trative cost grant under section 1128 of the Education  
13      Amendments of 1978 shall be administered under the pro-  
14      visions governing such exceptions, problems, or disputes  
15      in the case of contracts under the Indian Self-Determina-  
16      tion and Education Assistance Act of 1975. The Equal  
17      Access to Justice Act shall apply to administrative appeals  
18      filed after September 8, 1988, by grantees regarding a  
19      grant under this part, including an administrative cost  
20      grant.

21      **“SEC. 5210. ROLE OF THE DIRECTOR.**

22      “Applications for grants under this part, and all ap-  
23      plication modifications, shall be reviewed and approved by  
24      personnel under the direction and control of the Director  
25      of the Office of Indian Education Programs. Required re-



1 ports shall be submitted to education personnel under the  
2 direction and control of the Director of such Office.

3 **“SEC. 5211. REGULATIONS.**

4 “The Secretary is authorized to issue regulations re-  
5 lating to the discharge of duties specifically assigned to  
6 the Secretary by this part. In all other matters relating  
7 to the details of planning, development, implementing, and  
8 evaluating grants under this part, the Secretary shall not  
9 issue regulations. Regulations issued pursuant to this part  
10 shall not have the standing of a Federal statute for the  
11 purposes of judicial review.

12 **“SEC. 5212. THE TRIBALLY CONTROLLED GRANT SCHOOL**  
13 **ENDOWMENT PROGRAM.**

14 “(a) IN GENERAL.—

15 “(1) TRUST FUNDS.—Each school receiving  
16 grants under this part may establish, at a Federally  
17 insured banking and savings institution, a trust fund  
18 for the purposes of this section.

19 “(2) AUTHORITY OF SCHOOLS REGARDING  
20 TRUST FUNDS.—The school may provide—

21 “(A) for the deposit into the trust fund,  
22 only funds from non-Federal sources, except  
23 that the interest on funds received from grants  
24 under this part may be used for this purpose;



1           “(B) for the deposit in the account of any  
2 earnings on funds deposited in the account; and

3           “(C) for the sole use of the school any  
4 noncash, in-kind contributions of real or per-  
5 sonal property, such property may at any time  
6 be converted to cash.

7           “(b) INTEREST.—Interest from the fund established  
8 under subsection (a) may periodically be withdrawn and  
9 used, at the discretion of the school, to defray any ex-  
10 penses associated with the operation of the school.

11 **“SEC. 5213. DEFINITIONS.**

12           “For the purposes of this part:

13           “(1) BUREAU.—The term ‘Bureau’ means the  
14 Bureau of Indian Affairs of the Department of the  
15 Interior.

16           “(2) ELIGIBLE INDIAN STUDENT.—The term  
17 ‘eligible Indian student’ has the meaning of such  
18 term in section 1127(f) of the Education Amend-  
19 ments of 1978.

20           “(3) INDIAN TRIBE.—The term ‘Indian tribe’  
21 means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other orga-  
22 nized group or community, including Alaska Native  
23 Village or regional corporations (as defined in or es-  
24 tablished pursuant to the Alaskan Native Claims  
25 Settlement Act, which is recognized as eligible for



1 the special programs and services provided by the  
2 United States to Indians because of their status as  
3 Indians.

4 “(4) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY.—The term  
5 ‘local educational agency’ means a public board of  
6 education or other public authority legally con-  
7 stituted within a State for either administrative con-  
8 trol or direction of, or to perform a service function  
9 for, public elementary or secondary schools in a city,  
10 county, township, school district, or other political  
11 subdivision of a State or such combination of school  
12 districts or counties as are recognized in a State as  
13 an administrative agency for its public elementary or  
14 secondary schools. Such term includes any other  
15 public institution or agency having administrative  
16 control and direction of a public elementary or sec-  
17 ondary school.

18 “(5) SECRETARY.—The term ‘Secretary’ means  
19 the Secretary of the Interior.

20 “(6) TRIBAL ORGANIZATION.—(A) The term  
21 ‘tribal organization’ means—

22 “(i) the recognized governing body of any  
23 Indian tribe; or

24 “(ii) any legally established organization of  
25 Indians which—

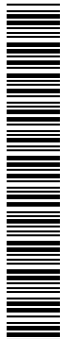


1                   “(I) is controlled, sanctioned, or char-  
2                   tered by such governing body or is demo-  
3                   cratically elected by the adult members of  
4                   the Indian community to be served by such  
5                   organization; and

6                   “(II) includes the maximum participa-  
7                   tion of Indians in all phases of its activi-  
8                   ties.

9                   “(B) In any case in which a grant is provided  
10                  under this part to an organization to provide serv-  
11                  ices benefiting more than one Indian tribe, the ap-  
12                  proval of the governing bodies of Indian tribes rep-  
13                  resenting 80 percent of those students attending the  
14                  tribally controlled school shall be considered a suffi-  
15                  cient tribal authorization for such grant.

16                  “(7) TRIBALLY CONTROLLED SCHOOL.—The  
17                  term ‘tribally controlled school’ means a school oper-  
18                  ated by a tribe or a tribal organization, enrolling  
19                  students in kindergarten through grade 12, includ-  
20                  ing preschools, which is not a local educational agen-  
21                  cy and which is not directly administered by the Bu-  
22                  reau of Indian Affairs.”.



1 **TITLE IV—PROMOTING IN-**  
 2 **FORMED PARENTAL CHOICE**  
 3 **AND INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS**

4 **SEC. 401. PROMOTING INFORMED PARENTAL CHOICE AND**  
 5 **INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS.**

6 Title IV is amended to read as follows:

7 **“TITLE IV—PROMOTING IN-**  
 8 **FORMED PARENTAL CHOICE**  
 9 **AND INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS**

10 **“PART A—INNOVATIVE PROGRAMS**

11 **“Subpart 1—State and Local Innovative Programs**

12 **“SEC. 4101. FINDINGS AND STATEMENT OF PURPOSE.**

13 “(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds that this subpart—

14 “(1) provides flexibility to meet local needs;

15 “(2) promotes local and State education re-  
 16 forms;

17 “(3) contributes to the improvement of aca-  
 18 demic achievement for all students;

19 “(4) provides funding for critical activities; and

20 “(5) provides services for private school stu-  
 21 dents.

22 “(b) STATEMENT OF PURPOSE.—It is the purpose of  
 23 programs under this subpart—

24 “(1) to provide funding to enable States and  
 25 local educational agencies to implement promising



1 educational reform programs and school improve-  
2 ment initiatives based on scientifically based re-  
3 search;

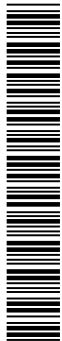
4 “(2) to provide a continuing source of innova-  
5 tion and educational improvement, including support  
6 for library services and instructional and media ma-  
7 terials; and

8 “(3) to meet the educational needs of all stu-  
9 dents, including at-risk youth.

10 “(c) STATE AND LOCAL RESPONSIBILITY.—

11 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The States shall have the  
12 basic responsibility for the administration of funds  
13 made available under this subpart, but such admin-  
14 istration shall be carried out with a minimum of pa-  
15 perwork.

16 “(2) DESIGN AND IMPLEMENTATION.—Not-  
17 withstanding paragraph (1), local educational agen-  
18 cies, school superintendents and principals, and  
19 classroom teachers and supporting personnel shall be  
20 mainly responsible for the design and implementa-  
21 tion of programs assisted under this subpart, be-  
22 cause such agencies and individuals have the most  
23 direct contact with students and are most likely to  
24 be able to design programs to meet the educational  
25 needs of students in their own school districts.



1           **“CHAPTER I—STATE AND LOCAL**  
2                                   **PROGRAMS**

3   **“SEC. 4111. ALLOCATION TO STATES.**

4           “(a) RESERVATIONS.—From the sums appropriated  
5 to carry out this subpart for each fiscal year, the Secretary  
6 shall reserve not more than 1 percent for payments to out-  
7 lying areas to be allotted in accordance with their respec-  
8 tive needs.

9           “(b) ALLOCATION OF REMAINDER.—From the re-  
10 mainder of such sums, the Secretary shall allocate, and  
11 make available in accordance with this subpart, to each  
12 State an amount which bears the same ratio to the  
13 amount of such remainder as the school-age population  
14 of the State bears to the school-age population of all  
15 States, except that no State shall receive less than an  
16 amount equal to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent of such remainder.

17   **“SEC. 4112. ALLOCATION TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-**  
18                                   **CIES.**

19           “(a) DISTRIBUTION RULE.—

20                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2),  
21 from the sums made available each year to carry out  
22 this subpart, the State shall distribute not less than  
23 85 percent to local educational agencies within such  
24 State according to the relative enrollments in public  
25 and private, nonprofit schools within the jurisdic-





1 tions of such agencies, adjusted, in accordance with  
2 criteria approved by the Secretary, to provide higher  
3 per-pupil allocations to local educational agencies  
4 that have the greatest numbers or percentages of  
5 children whose education imposes a higher than av-  
6 erage cost per child, such as—

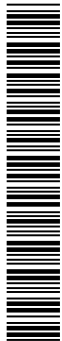
7 “(A) children living in areas with high con-  
8 centrations of economically disadvantaged fami-  
9 lies;

10 “(B) children from economically disadvan-  
11 taged families; and

12 “(C) children living in sparsely populated  
13 areas.

14 “(2) EXCEPTION.—100 percent of any amount  
15 by which the funds paid to a State under this sub-  
16 part for a fiscal year exceed the amount of such  
17 funds paid to the State for fiscal year 2001 shall be  
18 distributed to local educational agencies and used lo-  
19 cally for innovative assistance described in section  
20 4131(b).

21 “(3) LIMITATION ON USE OF FUNDS FOR AD-  
22 MINISTRATION.—In each fiscal year, a State may  
23 use not more than 25 percent of the funds available  
24 for State programs under this subpart for State ad-  
25 ministration under section 4121.



1 “(b) CALCULATION OF ENROLLMENTS.—

2 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The calculation of relative  
3 enrollments under subsection (a)(1) shall be on the  
4 basis of the total of—

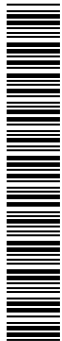
5 “(A) the number of children enrolled in  
6 public schools; and

7 “(B) the number of children enrolled in  
8 private, nonprofit schools whose parents would  
9 like their children to participate in programs or  
10 projects assisted under this subpart, for the fis-  
11 cal year preceding the fiscal year for which the  
12 determination is made.

13 “(2) CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this sub-  
14 section shall diminish the responsibility of each local  
15 educational agency to contact, on an annual basis,  
16 appropriate officials from private nonprofit schools  
17 within the areas served by such agencies in order to  
18 determine whether such schools desire that their  
19 children participate in programs assisted under this  
20 chapter.

21 “(3) ADJUSTMENTS.—

22 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Relative enrollments  
23 calculated under subsection (a)(1) shall be ad-  
24 justed, in accordance with criteria approved by  
25 the Secretary under subparagraph (B), to pro-



1           vide higher per-pupil allocations only to local  
2           educational agencies that serve the greatest  
3           numbers or percentages of—

4                   “(i) children living in areas with high  
5                   concentrations of economically disadvan-  
6                   taged families;

7                   “(ii) children from economically dis-  
8                   advantaged families; or

9                   “(iii) children living in sparsely popu-  
10                  lated areas.

11               “(B) CRITERIA.—The Secretary shall re-  
12               view criteria submitted by a State for adjusting  
13               allocations under paragraph (1) and shall ap-  
14               prove such criteria only if the Secretary deter-  
15               mines that such criteria are reasonably cal-  
16               culated to produce an adjusted allocation that  
17               reflects the relative needs of the State’s local  
18               educational agencies based on the factors set  
19               forth in subparagraph (A).

20               “(c) PAYMENT OF ALLOCATIONS.—

21                   “(1) DISTRIBUTION.—From the funds paid to a  
22               State under this subpart for a fiscal year, a State  
23               shall distribute to each eligible local educational  
24               agency that has submitted an application as required  
25               in section 4133 the amount of such local educational



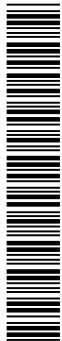
1 agency's allocation, as determined under subsection  
2 (a).

3 “(2) ADDITIONAL FUNDS.—

4 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Additional funds re-  
5 sulting from higher per-pupil allocations pro-  
6 vided to a local educational agency on the basis  
7 of adjusted enrollments of children described in  
8 subsection (a)(1) may, in the discretion of the  
9 local educational agency, be allocated for ex-  
10 penditures to provide services for children en-  
11 rolled in public and private, nonprofit schools in  
12 direct proportion to the number of children de-  
13 scribed in subsection (a)(1) and enrolled in  
14 such schools within the local educational agen-  
15 cy.

16 “(B) ELECTION.—In any fiscal year, any  
17 local educational agency that elects to allocate  
18 such additional funds in the manner described  
19 in subparagraph (A) shall allocate all additional  
20 funds to schools within the local educational  
21 agency in such manner.

22 “(C) CONSTRUCTION.—Subparagraphs (A)  
23 and (B) may not be construed to require any  
24 school to limit the use of the additional funds  
25 described in subparagraph (A) to the provision



1 of services to specific students or categories of  
2 students.

3 **“CHAPTER II—STATE PROGRAMS**

4 **“SEC. 4121. STATE USE OF FUNDS.**

5 “A State may use funds made available for State use  
6 under this subpart only for—

7 “(1) State administration of programs under  
8 this subpart including—

9 “(A) supervision of the allocation of funds  
10 to local educational agencies;

11 “(B) planning, supervision, and processing  
12 of State funds; and

13 “(C) monitoring and evaluation of pro-  
14 grams and activities under this subpart;

15 “(2) support for planning, designing, and initial  
16 implementation of charter schools as described in  
17 part B;

18 “(3) statewide education reform and school im-  
19 provement activities and technical assistance and di-  
20 rect grants to local educational agencies which assist  
21 such agencies under section 4131; and

22 “(4) support for arrangements that provide for  
23 independent analysis to measure and report on  
24 school district achievement.



1 **“SEC. 4122. STATE APPLICATIONS.**

2 “(a) APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS.—If a State  
3 seeks to receive assistance under this subpart, the indi-  
4 vidual, entity, or agency responsible for public elementary  
5 and secondary education policy under the State constitu-  
6 tion or State law shall submit to the Secretary an applica-  
7 tion that—

8 “(1) provides for an annual statewide summary  
9 of how assistance under this subpart is contributing  
10 toward improving student achievement or improving  
11 the quality of education for students;

12 “(2) provides information setting forth the allo-  
13 cation of such funds required to implement section  
14 4142;

15 “(3) provides that the State will keep such  
16 records and provide such information to the Sec-  
17 retary as may be required for fiscal audit and pro-  
18 gram evaluation (consistent with the responsibilities  
19 of the Secretary under this section);

20 “(4) provides assurance that, apart from tech-  
21 nical and advisory assistance and monitoring compli-  
22 ance with this subpart, the State has not exercised  
23 and will not exercise any influence in the decision-  
24 making processes of local educational agencies as to  
25 the expenditure made pursuant to an application  
26 under section 4133;



1           “(5) contains assurances that there is compli-  
2           ance with the specific requirements of this subpart;  
3           and

4           “(6) provides for timely public notice and public  
5           dissemination of the information provided under  
6           paragraph (2).

7           “(b) STATEWIDE SUMMARY.—The statewide sum-  
8           mary referred to in subsection (a)(1) shall be submitted  
9           to the Secretary and shall be derived from the evaluation  
10          information submitted by local educational agencies to the  
11          State under section 4133(a)(8). The format and content  
12          of such summary shall be in the discretion of the State  
13          and may include statistical measures such as the number  
14          of students served by each type of innovative assistance  
15          described in section 4131(b), including the number of  
16          teachers trained.

17          “(c) PERIOD OF APPLICATION.—An application filed  
18          by the State under subsection (a) shall be for a period  
19          not to exceed 3 years, and may be amended annually as  
20          may be necessary to reflect changes without filing a new  
21          application.

22          “(d) AUDIT LIMITATION.—Each local educational  
23          agency receiving less than an average of \$5,000 under this  
24          subpart may not be audited more frequently than once  
25          every 5 years.



1           **“CHAPTER III—LOCAL INNOVATIVE**  
2                           **EDUCATION PROGRAMS**

3   **“SEC. 4131. USE OF FUNDS.**

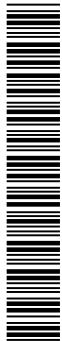
4           “(a) IN GENERAL.—Funds made available to local  
5 educational agencies under section 4112 shall be used for  
6 innovative assistance described in subsection (b).

7           “(b) INNOVATIVE ASSISTANCE.—The innovative as-  
8 sistance programs referred to in subsection (a) may  
9 include—

10                   “(1) professional development activities and the  
11 hiring of teachers, including activities carried out in  
12 accordance with title II, that give teachers, prin-  
13 cipals, and administrators the knowledge and skills  
14 to provide students with the opportunity to meet  
15 challenging State or local academic content stand-  
16 ards and student achievement standards;

17                   “(2) technology related to the implementation  
18 of school-based reform programs, including profes-  
19 sional development to assist teachers, and other  
20 school officials, regarding how to use effectively such  
21 equipment and software;

22                   “(3) programs for the development or acquisi-  
23 tion and use of instructional and educational mate-  
24 rials, including library services and materials (in-  
25 cluding media materials), academic assessments, ref-





1       erence materials, computer software and hardware  
2       for instructional use, and other curricular materials  
3       that are tied to high academic standards, that will  
4       be used to improve student achievement, and that  
5       are part of an overall education reform program;

6               “(4) promising education reform projects, in-  
7       cluding effective schools and magnet schools;

8               “(5) programs to improve the academic skills of  
9       disadvantaged elementary and secondary school stu-  
10      dents and to prevent students from dropping out of  
11      school;

12              “(6) programs to combat illiteracy;

13              “(7) programs to provide for the educational  
14      needs of gifted and talented children;

15              “(8) planning, designing, and initial implemen-  
16      tation of charter schools as described in part B;

17              “(9) school improvement programs or activities  
18      under sections 1116 and 1117;

19              “(10) community service programs that use  
20      qualified school personnel to train and mobilize  
21      young people to measurably strengthen their com-  
22      munities through nonviolence, responsibility, com-  
23      passion, respect, and moral courage;

24              “(11) activities to promote consumer, economic,  
25      and personal finance education, such as dissemi-



1 nating and encouraging the best practices for teach-  
2 ing the basic principles of economics and promoting  
3 the concept of achieving financial literacy through  
4 the teaching of personal financial management skills  
5 (including the basic principles involved with earning,  
6 spending, saving, and investing);

7 “(12) activities to promote, implement, or ex-  
8 pand public school choice;

9 “(13) programs to hire and support school  
10 nurses;

11 “(14) expanding and improving school-based  
12 mental health services, including early identification  
13 of drug use and violence, assessment, and direct in-  
14 dividual or group counseling services provided to stu-  
15 dents, parents, and school personnel by qualified  
16 school based mental health services personnel; and

17 “(15) alternative educational programs for  
18 those students who have been expelled or suspended  
19 from their regular educational setting, including pro-  
20 grams to assist students to reenter the regular edu-  
21 cational setting upon return from treatment or alter-  
22 native educational programs.

23 **“SEC. 4132. ADMINISTRATIVE AUTHORITY.**

24 “In order to conduct the activities authorized by this  
25 subpart, each State or local educational agency may use



1 funds made available under this subpart to make grants  
2 to, and to enter into contracts with, local educational  
3 agencies, institutions of higher education, libraries, muse-  
4 ums, and other public and private nonprofit agencies, or-  
5 ganizations, and institutions, including religious organiza-  
6 tions.

7 **“SEC. 4133. LOCAL APPLICATIONS.**

8 “(a) CERTIFICATION.—

9 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency  
10 or a consortium of such agencies may receive an al-  
11 location of funds under this subpart for any year for  
12 which the agency or consortium submits an applica-  
13 tion under this section that is certified by the State  
14 under paragraph (2) to meet the requirements of  
15 this section.

16 (2) CONTENTS OF APPLICATION.—The State  
17 shall certify each application that—

18 “(1) describes locally identified needs relative to  
19 the purposes of this subpart and to the innovative  
20 assistance described in section 4131(b);

21 “(2) based on the needs identified in paragraph  
22 (1), sets forth the planned allocation of funds among  
23 innovative assistance programs described in section  
24 4131 and describes the programs, projects, and ac-  
25 tivities designed to carry out such innovative assist-



1       ance programs that the local educational agency in-  
2       tends to support;

3               “(3) contains information setting forth the allo-  
4       cation of such funds required to implement section  
5       4142;

6               “(4) describes how assistance under this sub-  
7       part will contribute to improving student academic  
8       achievement;

9               “(5) provides assurances of compliance with the  
10      provisions of this subpart, including the participa-  
11      tion of children enrolled in private, nonprofit schools  
12      in accordance with section 4142;

13              “(6) provides assurance that the local edu-  
14      cational agency will keep such records, and provide  
15      such information to the State as may be reasonably  
16      required for fiscal audit and program evaluation,  
17      consistent with the responsibilities of the State  
18      under this subpart;

19              “(7) provides in the allocation of funds for the  
20      assistance authorized by this subpart, and in the de-  
21      sign, planning, and implementation of such pro-  
22      grams, for systematic consultation with parents of  
23      children attending elementary and secondary schools  
24      in the area served by the local educational agency,  
25      with teachers and administrative personnel in such



1 schools, and with other groups involved in the imple-  
2 mentation of this subpart (such as librarians, school  
3 counselors, and other pupil services personnel) as  
4 may be considered appropriate by the local edu-  
5 cational agency; and

6 “(8) provides assurance that—

7 “(A) programs, services, and activities will  
8 be evaluated annually;

9 “(B) such evaluation will be used to deter-  
10 mine and implement appropriate changes in  
11 program services and activities for the subse-  
12 quent year;

13 “(C) such evaluation will describe how as-  
14 sistance under this subpart contributed toward  
15 improving student academic achievement; and

16 “(D) such evaluation will be submitted to  
17 the State in the time and manner requested by  
18 the State.

19 “(b) TIME PERIOD TO WHICH APPLICATION RE-  
20 LATES.—An application submitted by a local educational  
21 agency under subsection (a) may seek allocations under  
22 this part for a period of time not to exceed 3 fiscal years  
23 and may be amended annually as may be necessary to re-  
24 flect changes without the filing of a new application.

25 “(c) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY DISCRETION.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the limitations  
2           and requirements of this subpart, a local educational  
3           agency shall have complete discretion in determining  
4           how funds made available under this chapter will be  
5           divided among programs and activities described in  
6           section 4131.

7           “(2) LIMITATION.—In exercising the discretion  
8           described in paragraph (1), a local educational agen-  
9           cy shall ensure that expenditures under this chapter  
10          carry out the purposes of this subpart and are used  
11          to meet the educational needs within the schools of  
12          such local educational agency.

13           **“CHAPTER IV—GENERAL PROVISIONS**

14           **“SEC. 4141. MAINTENANCE OF EFFORT; FEDERAL FUNDS**  
15                           **SUPPLEMENTARY.**

16           “(a) MAINTENANCE OF EFFORT.—

17           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in para-  
18           graph (2), a State is entitled to receive its full allo-  
19           cation of funds under this subpart for any fiscal  
20           year only if the Secretary determines that either the  
21           combined fiscal effort per student or the aggregate  
22           expenditures within the State with respect to the  
23           provision of free public education for the fiscal year  
24           preceding the fiscal year for which the determination  
25           is made was not less than 90 percent of such com-



1 bined fiscal effort or aggregate expenditures for the  
2 fiscal year that is 2 fiscal years before the fiscal year  
3 for which the determination is made.

4 “(2) REDUCTION OF FUNDS.—The Secretary  
5 shall reduce the amount of the allocation of funds  
6 under this subpart in any fiscal year in the exact  
7 proportion to which the State fails to meet the re-  
8 quirements of paragraph (1) by falling below 90 per-  
9 cent of both the fiscal effort per student and aggre-  
10 gate expenditures (using the measure most favorable  
11 to the State), and no such lesser amount shall be  
12 used for computing the effort required under para-  
13 graph (1) for subsequent years.

14 “(3) WAIVER.—The Secretary may waive, for 1  
15 fiscal year only, the requirements of this section if  
16 the Secretary determines that such a waiver would  
17 be equitable due to exceptional or uncontrollable cir-  
18 cumstances such as a natural disaster or a precipi-  
19 tous and unforeseen decline in the financial re-  
20 sources of the State.

21 “(b) FEDERAL FUNDS SUPPLEMENTARY.—A State  
22 or local educational agency may use and allocate funds  
23 received under this subpart only to supplement and, to the  
24 extent practical, to increase the level of funds that would,  
25 in the absence of Federal funds made available under this



1 subpart, be made available from non-Federal sources, and  
2 in no case may such funds be used so as to supplant funds  
3 from non-Federal sources.

4 **“SEC. 4142. PARTICIPATION OF CHILDREN ENROLLED IN**  
5 **PRIVATE SCHOOLS.**

6 “(a) PARTICIPATION ON EQUITABLE BASIS.—

7 “(1) IN GENERAL.—To the extent consistent  
8 with the number of children in the school district of  
9 a local educational agency which is eligible to receive  
10 funds under this subpart or which serves the area in  
11 which a program or project assisted under this sub-  
12 part is located, who are enrolled in private nonprofit  
13 elementary and secondary schools, or with respect to  
14 instructional or personnel training programs funded  
15 by the State from funds made available for State  
16 use, such agency, after consultation with appropriate  
17 private school officials—

18 “(A) shall provide for the benefit of such  
19 children in such schools secular, neutral, and  
20 nonideological services, materials, and equip-  
21 ment, including the participation of the teach-  
22 ers of such children (and other educational per-  
23 sonnel serving such children) in training pro-  
24 grams, and the repair or minor remodeling of  
25 public facilities as may be necessary for their



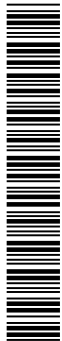


1 provision (consistent with subsection (c) of this  
2 section); or

3 “(B) if such services, materials, and equip-  
4 ment are not feasible or necessary in 1 or more  
5 such private schools as determined by the local  
6 educational agency after consultation with the  
7 appropriate private school officials, shall pro-  
8 vide such other arrangements as will assure eq-  
9 uitable participation of such children in the  
10 purposes and benefits of this subpart.

11 “(2) OTHER PROVISIONS FOR SERVICES.—If no  
12 program or project is carried out under paragraph  
13 (1) in the school district of a local educational agen-  
14 cy, the State shall make arrangements, such as  
15 through contracts with nonprofit agencies or organi-  
16 zations, under which children in private schools in  
17 such district are provided with services and mate-  
18 rials to the extent that would have occurred if the  
19 local educational agency had received funds under  
20 this subpart.

21 “(3) APPLICATION OF REQUIREMENTS.—The  
22 requirements of this section relating to the participa-  
23 tion of children, teachers, and other personnel serv-  
24 ing such children shall apply to programs and  
25 projects carried out under this subpart by a State or



1 local educational agency, whether directly or through  
2 grants to or contracts with other public or private  
3 agencies, institutions, or organizations.

4 “(b) EQUAL EXPENDITURES.—

5 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Expenditures for programs  
6 pursuant to subsection (a) shall be equal (consistent  
7 with the number of children to be served) to expend-  
8 itures for programs under this subpart for children  
9 enrolled in the public schools of the local educational  
10 agency.

11 “(2) CONCENTRATED PROGRAMS.—Taking into  
12 account the needs of the individual children and  
13 other factors which relate to the expenditures re-  
14 ferred to in paragraph (1), and when funds available  
15 to a local educational agency under this subpart are  
16 used to concentrate programs or projects on a par-  
17 ticular group, attendance area, or grade or age level,  
18 children enrolled in private schools who are included  
19 within the group, attendance area, or grade or age  
20 level selected for such concentration shall, after con-  
21 sultation with the appropriate private school offi-  
22 cials, be assured equitable participation in the pur-  
23 poses and benefits of such programs or projects.

24 “(c) ADMINISTRATIVE RULES.—

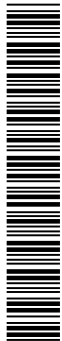


1           “(1) FUNDS AND PROPERTY.—The control of  
2 funds provided under this subpart, and title to mate-  
3 rials, equipment, and property repaired, remodeled,  
4 or constructed with such funds, shall be in a public  
5 agency for the uses and purposes provided in this  
6 subpart, and a public agency shall administer such  
7 funds and property.

8           “(2) PROVISION OF SERVICES.—The provision  
9 of services pursuant to this subpart shall be provided  
10 by employees of a public agency or through contract  
11 by such public agency with a person, an association,  
12 agency, or corporation who or which, in the provi-  
13 sion of such services, is independent of such private  
14 school and of any religious organizations, and such  
15 employment or contract shall be under the control  
16 and supervision of such public agency, and the funds  
17 provided under this subpart shall not be commingled  
18 with State or local funds.

19           “(d) WAIVER.—

20           “(1) STATE PROHIBITION WAIVER.—If by rea-  
21 son of any provision of law a State or local edu-  
22 cational agency is prohibited from providing for the  
23 participation in programs of children enrolled in pri-  
24 vate elementary and secondary schools, as required  
25 by this section, the Secretary shall waive such re-



1        requirements and shall arrange for the provision of  
2        services to such children through arrangements  
3        which shall be subject to the requirements of this  
4        section.

5            “(2) FAILURE TO COMPLY.—If the Secretary  
6        determines that a State or a local educational agen-  
7        cy has substantially failed or is unwilling to provide  
8        for the participation on an equitable basis of chil-  
9        dren enrolled in private elementary and secondary  
10       schools as required by this section, the Secretary  
11       may waive such requirements and shall arrange for  
12       the provision of services to such children through ar-  
13       rangements which shall be subject to the require-  
14       ments of this section.

15           “(e) WITHHOLDING OF ALLOCATION.—Pending final  
16       resolution of any investigation or complaint that could re-  
17       sult in a waiver under subsection (d)(1) or (d)(2), the Sec-  
18       retary may withhold from the allocation of the affected  
19       State or local educational agency the amount estimated  
20       by the Secretary to be necessary to pay the cost of services  
21       to be provided by the Secretary under such subsection.

22           “(f) TERM OF DETERMINATIONS.—Any determina-  
23       tion by the Secretary under this section shall continue in  
24       effect until the Secretary determines that there will no  
25       longer be any failure or inability on the part of the State



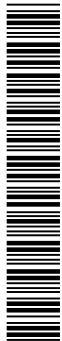
1 or local educational agency to meet the requirements of  
2 subsections (a) and (b).

3 “(g) PAYMENT FROM STATE ALLOTMENT.—When  
4 the Secretary arranges for services pursuant to this sec-  
5 tion, the Secretary shall, after consultation with the ap-  
6 propriate public and private school officials, pay the cost  
7 of such services, including the administrative costs of ar-  
8 ranging for those services, from the appropriate allotment  
9 of the State under this subpart.

10 “(h) REVIEW.—

11 “(1) WRITTEN OBJECTIONS.—The Secretary  
12 shall not take any final action under this section  
13 until the State and the local educational agency af-  
14 fected by such action have had an opportunity, for  
15 not less than 45 days after receiving written notice  
16 thereof, to submit written objections and to appear  
17 before the Secretary or the Secretary’s designee to  
18 show cause why that action should not be taken.

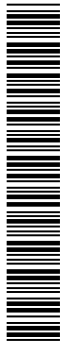
19 “(2) COURT ACTION.—If a State or local edu-  
20 cational agency is dissatisfied with the Secretary’s  
21 final action after a proceeding under paragraph (1),  
22 such agency may, not later than 60 days after notice  
23 of such action, file with the United States court of  
24 appeals for the circuit in which such State is located  
25 a petition for review of that action. A copy of the



1 petition shall be transmitted by the clerk of the  
2 court to the Secretary. The Secretary thereupon  
3 shall file in the court the record of the proceedings  
4 on which the Secretary based this action, as pro-  
5 vided in section 2112 of title 28, United States  
6 Code.

7 “(3) REMAND TO SECRETARY.—The findings of  
8 fact by the Secretary, if supported by substantial  
9 evidence, shall be conclusive; but the court, for good  
10 cause shown, may remand the case to the Secretary  
11 to take further evidence and the Secretary may  
12 make new or modified findings of fact and may mod-  
13 ify the Secretary’s previous action, and shall file in  
14 the court the record of the further proceedings. Such  
15 new or modified findings of fact shall likewise be  
16 conclusive if supported by substantial evidence.

17 “(4) COURT REVIEW.—Upon the filing of such  
18 petition, the court shall have jurisdiction to affirm  
19 the action of the Secretary or to set such action  
20 aside, in whole or in part. The judgment of the court  
21 shall be subject to review by the Supreme Court of  
22 the United States upon certiorari or certification as  
23 provided in section 1254 of title 28, United States  
24 Code.



1       “(i) PRIOR DETERMINATION.—Any bypass deter-  
2 mination by the Secretary under chapter 2 of title I of  
3 this Act (as such chapter was in effect on the day pre-  
4 ceding the date of enactment of the Improving America’s  
5 Schools Act of 1994) shall, to the extent consistent with  
6 the purposes of this title, apply to programs under this  
7 title.

8       **“SEC. 4143. FEDERAL ADMINISTRATION.**

9       “(a) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary, upon  
10 request, shall provide technical assistance to States and  
11 local educational agencies under this subpart.

12       “(b) RULEMAKING.—The Secretary shall issue regu-  
13 lations under this subpart only to the extent that such  
14 regulations are necessary to ensure that there is compli-  
15 ance with the specific requirements and assurances re-  
16 quired by this subpart.

17       “(c) AVAILABILITY OF APPROPRIATIONS.—Notwith-  
18 standing any other provision of law, unless expressly in  
19 limitation of this subsection, funds appropriated in any  
20 fiscal year to carry out activities under this subpart shall  
21 become available for obligation on July 1 of such fiscal  
22 year and shall remain available for obligation until the end  
23 of the subsequent fiscal year.

24       **“SEC. 4144. DEFINITIONS.**

25       “‘In this subpart, the following definitions apply:



1           “(1) SCHOOL-AGE POPULATION.—The term  
2           ‘school-age population’ means the population aged 5  
3           through 17.

4           “(2) STATE.—The term ‘State’ means each of  
5           the 50 States, the District of Columbia, and the  
6           Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

7           **“SEC. 4145. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

8           “‘There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out  
9           this subpart \$450,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such  
10          sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003  
11          through 2006.

12                           **“Subpart 2—Arts Education**

13          **“SEC. 4151. ASSISTANCE FOR ARTS EDUCATION.**

14          “(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

15                 “(1) every student can benefit from an edu-  
16                 cation in the arts;

17                 “(2) a growing body of research indicates that  
18                 education in the arts may provide cognitive benefits  
19                 and bolster academic achievement, beginning at an  
20                 early age and continuing through secondary school;

21                 “(3) qualified arts teachers and a sequential  
22                 curriculum are the basis and core for substantive  
23                 arts education for students;

24                 “(4) the arts should be taught according to rig-  
25                 orous academic standards under arts education pro-





1       grams that provide mechanisms under which edu-  
2       cators are accountable to parents, school officials,  
3       and the community;

4               “(5) opportunities to participate in the arts  
5       have enabled individuals with disabilities of all ages  
6       to participate more fully in school and community  
7       activities; and

8               “(6) arts education is a valuable part of the ele-  
9       mentary and secondary school curriculum.

10       “(b) PURPOSES.—The purposes of this subpart are  
11   to—

12               “(1) support systemic education reform by  
13       strengthening arts education as an integral part of  
14       the elementary and secondary school curriculum;  
15       and

16               “(2) help ensure that all students meet chal-  
17       lenging State academic content standards and chal-  
18       lenging State student academic achievement stand-  
19       ards in the arts.

20       “(c) AUTHORITY.—In accordance with this subpart,  
21   the Secretary may make grants to, or enter into contracts  
22   or cooperative agreements with, eligible entities described  
23   in subsection (d).



1           “(d) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—The Secretary may make  
2 assistance available under subsection (c) to each of the  
3 following entities:

4           “(1) States.

5           “(2) Local educational agencies.

6           “(3) Institutions of higher education.

7           “(4) Museums or other cultural institutions.

8           “(5) Any other public or private agencies, insti-  
9 tutions, and organizations.

10          “(e) USE OF FUNDS.—Assistance made available  
11 under this subpart may be used only for—

12           “(1) research on arts education;

13           “(2) planning, developing, acquiring, expanding,  
14 improving, or disseminating model school-based arts  
15 education programs;

16           “(3) the development of model State arts edu-  
17 cation assessments based on State academic stand-  
18 ards;

19           “(4) the development and implementation of  
20 curriculum frameworks for arts education;

21           “(5) the development of model inservice profes-  
22 sional development programs for arts educators and  
23 other instructional staff;

24           “(6) supporting collaborative activities with  
25 Federal agencies or institutions, arts educators, and



1 organizations representing the arts, including State  
2 and local arts agencies involved in arts education;

3 “(7) supporting model projects or programs in  
4 the performing arts for children and youth or pro-  
5 grams which assure the participation in mainstream  
6 settings in arts and education programs of individ-  
7 uals with disabilities through arrangements made  
8 with organizations such as the John F. Kennedy  
9 Center for the Performing Arts and VSA arts;

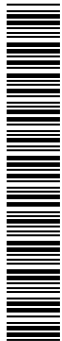
10 “(8) supporting model projects or programs to  
11 integrate arts education into the regular elementary  
12 and secondary school curriculum; or

13 “(9) other activities that further the purposes  
14 of this subpart.

15 “(f) CONDITIONS.—As conditions of receiving assist-  
16 ance made available under this subpart, the Secretary  
17 shall require each entity receiving such assistance—

18 “(1) to coordinate, to the extent practicable,  
19 each project or program carried out with such assist-  
20 ance with appropriate activities of public or private  
21 cultural agencies, institutions, and organizations, in-  
22 cluding museums, arts education associations, librar-  
23 ies, and theaters.

24 “(2) to use such assistance only to supplement  
25 and not to supplant any other assistance or funds



1 made available from non-Federal sources for the ac-  
2 tivities assisted under this subpart.

3 “(g) CONSULTATION.—In carrying out this part, the  
4 Secretary shall consult with Federal agencies or institu-  
5 tions, arts educators (including professional arts education  
6 associations), and organizations representing the arts in-  
7 cluding State and local arts agencies involved in arts edu-  
8 cation.

9 “(h) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There  
10 are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this subpart  
11 such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years  
12 2002 through 2006.

13 **“Subpart 3—Gifted and Talented Children**

14 **“SEC. 4161. SHORT TITLE.**

15 “This subpart may be cited as the ‘Jacob K. Javits  
16 Gifted and Talented Students Education Act of 2001’.

17 **“SEC. 4162. FINDINGS AND PURPOSE.**

18 “(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds the following:

19 “(1) While the families and communities of  
20 some gifted and talented students can provide pri-  
21 vate educational programs with appropriately  
22 trained staff to supplement public educational offer-  
23 ings, most gifted and talented students, especially  
24 those from inner cities, rural communities, or low-in-  
25 come families, must rely on the services and per-

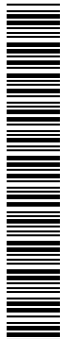


1       sonnel available in public schools. In order to ensure  
2       that there are equal educational opportunities for all  
3       gifted and talented students in the United States,  
4       the public schools should provide gifted and talented  
5       education programs carried out by qualified profes-  
6       sionals.

7               “(2) Due to the wide dispersal of students who  
8       are gifted and talented and the national interest in  
9       a well-educated populace, it is the Federal Govern-  
10      ment that can most effectively and appropriately  
11      conduct scientifically based research and develop-  
12      ment to ensure that there is a national capacity to  
13      educate students who are gifted and talented in the  
14      21st century.

15              “(3) Many State and local educational agencies  
16      lack the specialized resources and trained personnel  
17      necessary to consistently plan and implement effec-  
18      tive programs for the identification of gifted and tal-  
19      ented students and for the provision of educational  
20      services and programs appropriate for the needs of  
21      such students.

22              “(4) Because gifted and talented students are  
23      generally more advanced academically, are generally  
24      able to learn more quickly, and generally study in  
25      more depth and complexity than others their age,

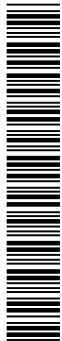


1 they require educational opportunities and experi-  
2 ences that are different from those usually available  
3 to other students.

4 “(5) A typical elementary school student who is  
5 academically gifted and talented has already mas-  
6 tered 35 to 50 percent of the content to be learned  
7 in several subjects in any school year before that  
8 year begins. Without an advanced and challenging  
9 curriculum, such a student may lose motivation and  
10 develop poor study habits that are difficult to break.

11 “(6) Classes in elementary and secondary  
12 schools in the United States consist of students with  
13 a wide variety of traits, characteristics, and needs.  
14 Although most teachers receive some training to  
15 meet the needs of students with limited English pro-  
16 ficiency, students with disabilities, and students  
17 from diverse cultural and racial backgrounds, few re-  
18 ceive training to meet the needs of students who are  
19 gifted and talented.

20 “(b) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this subpart is to  
21 initiate a coordinated program of scientifically based re-  
22 search, demonstration projects, innovative strategies, and  
23 similar activities designed to build and enhance the ability  
24 of elementary and secondary schools nationwide to meet



1 the special educational needs of gifted and talented stu-  
2 dents.

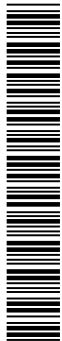
3 **“SEC. 4163. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.**

4 Nothing in this subpart shall be construed to prohibit  
5 a recipient of funds under this subpart from serving gifted  
6 and talented students simultaneously with students with  
7 similar educational needs, in the same educational settings  
8 where appropriate.

9 **“SEC. 4164. AUTHORIZED PROGRAMS.**

10 “(a) ESTABLISHMENT OF PROGRAM.—

11 “(1) IN GENERAL.—From the sums available to  
12 carry out this subpart in any fiscal year, the Sec-  
13 retary (after consultation with experts in the field of  
14 the education of gifted and talented students) shall  
15 make grants to, or enter into contracts with, State  
16 educational agencies, local educational agencies, in-  
17 stitutions of higher education, other public agencies,  
18 and other private agencies and organizations (includ-  
19 ing Indian tribes and Indian organizations (as such  
20 terms are defined in section 4 of the Indian Self-De-  
21 termination and Education Assistance Act (25  
22 U.S.C. 450b)) and Native Hawaiian organizations)  
23 to assist such agencies, institutions, and organiza-  
24 tions in carrying out programs or projects author-  
25 ized by this subpart that are designed to meet the



1 educational needs of gifted and talented students, in-  
2 cluding the training of personnel in the education of  
3 gifted and talented students and in the use, where  
4 appropriate, of gifted and talented services, mate-  
5 rials, and methods for all students.

6 “(2) APPLICATION.—

7 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each entity seeking  
8 assistance under this subpart shall submit an  
9 application to the Secretary at such time, in  
10 such manner, and containing such information  
11 as the Secretary may reasonably require.

12 “(B) CONTENTS.—Each application sub-  
13 mitted under this paragraph shall describe  
14 how—

15 “(i) the proposed gifted and talented  
16 services, materials, and methods can be  
17 adapted, if appropriate, for use by all stu-  
18 dents; and

19 “(ii) the proposed programs can be  
20 evaluated.

21 “(b) USE OF FUNDS.—Programs and projects as-  
22 sisted under this section may include each of the following:

23 “(1) Conducting—

24 “(A) scientifically based research on meth-  
25 ods and techniques for identifying and teaching





1           gifted and talented students, and for using gift-  
2           ed and talented programs and methods to serve  
3           all students; and

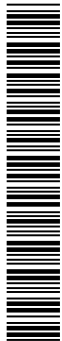
4                   “(B) program evaluations, surveys, and the  
5           collection, analysis, and development of infor-  
6           mation needed to accomplish the purpose of this  
7           subpart.

8                   “(2) Professional development (including fellow-  
9           ships) for personnel (including leadership personnel)  
10          involved in the education of gifted and talented stu-  
11          dents.

12                   “(3) Establishment and operation of model  
13          projects and exemplary programs for serving gifted  
14          and talented students, including innovative methods  
15          for identifying and educating students who may not  
16          be served by traditional gifted and talented pro-  
17          grams, including summer programs, mentoring pro-  
18          grams, service learning programs, and cooperative  
19          programs involving business, industry, and edu-  
20          cation.

21                   “(4) Implementing innovative strategies, such  
22          as cooperative learning, peer tutoring, and service  
23          learning.

24                   “(5) Programs of technical assistance and in-  
25          formation dissemination, including assistance and

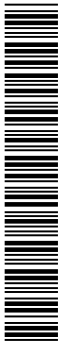


1 information with respect to how gifted and talented  
2 programs and methods, where appropriate, may be  
3 adapted for use by all students.

4 “(c) ESTABLISHMENT OF NATIONAL CENTER.—

5 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary (after con-  
6 sultation with experts in the field of the education  
7 of gifted and talented students) shall establish a Na-  
8 tional Center for Research and Development in the  
9 Education of Gifted and Talented Children and  
10 Youth through grants to or contracts with one or  
11 more institutions of higher education or State edu-  
12 cational agencies, or a combination or consortium of  
13 such institutions and agencies and other public or  
14 private agencies and organizations, for the purpose  
15 of carrying out activities described in paragraph (1)  
16 of subsection (b).

17 “(2) DIRECTOR.—The National Center estab-  
18 lished under paragraph (1) shall be headed by a Di-  
19 rector. The Secretary may authorize the Director to  
20 carry out such functions of the National Center as  
21 may be agreed upon through arrangements with in-  
22 stitutions of higher education, State or local edu-  
23 cational agencies, or other public or private agencies  
24 and organizations.



1           “(d) LIMITATION.—Not more than 30 percent of the  
2 funds available in any fiscal year to carry out the pro-  
3 grams and projects authorized by this section may be used  
4 to conduct activities pursuant to subsection (b)(1) or sub-  
5 section (c).

6           “(e) COORDINATION.—Scientifically based research  
7 activities supported under this subpart—

8                   “(1) shall be carried out in consultation with  
9 the Office of Educational Research and Improve-  
10 ment to ensure that such activities are coordinated  
11 with and enhance the research and development ac-  
12 tivities supported by such Office; and

13                   “(2) may include collaborative scientifically  
14 based research activities which are jointly funded  
15 and carried out with such Office.

16 **“SEC. 4165. PROGRAM PRIORITIES.**

17           “(a) GENERAL PRIORITY.—In carrying out this sub-  
18 part, the Secretary shall give highest priority to programs  
19 and projects designed to develop new information that—

20                   “(1) improves the capability of schools to plan,  
21 conduct, and improve programs to identify and serve  
22 gifted and talented students; and

23                   “(2) assists schools in the identification of, and  
24 provision of services to, gifted and talented students  
25 who may not be identified and served through tradi-



1 tional assessment methods (including economically  
2 disadvantaged individuals, individuals of limited  
3 English proficiency, and individuals with disabili-  
4 ties).

5 “(b) SERVICE PRIORITY.—In approving applications  
6 for assistance under section 4164(a)(2), the Secretary  
7 shall ensure that in each fiscal year not less than 50 per-  
8 cent of the applications approved under such section ad-  
9 dress the priority described in subsection (a)(2) of this  
10 section.

11 **“SEC. 4166. GENERAL PROVISIONS.**

12 “(a) PARTICIPATION OF PRIVATE SCHOOL CHILDREN  
13 AND TEACHERS.—In making grants and entering into  
14 contracts under this subpart, the Secretary shall ensure,  
15 where appropriate, that provision is made for the equitable  
16 participation of students and teachers in private nonprofit  
17 elementary and secondary schools, including the participa-  
18 tion of teachers and other personnel in professional devel-  
19 opment programs serving such children.

20 “(b) REVIEW, DISSEMINATION, AND EVALUATION.—  
21 The Secretary shall—

22 “(1) use a peer review process in reviewing ap-  
23 plications under this subpart;

24 “(2) ensure that information on the activities  
25 and results of programs and projects funded under



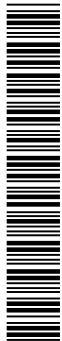
1 this subpart is disseminated to appropriate State  
2 and local educational agencies and other appropriate  
3 organizations, including nonprofit private organiza-  
4 tions; and

5 “(3) evaluate the effectiveness of programs  
6 under this subpart in accordance with section 8651,  
7 both in terms of the impact on students traditionally  
8 served in separate gifted and talented programs and  
9 on other students, and submit the results of such  
10 evaluation to the Congress not later than 2 years  
11 after the date of the enactment of the No Child Left  
12 Behind Act of 2001.

13 “(c) PROGRAM OPERATIONS.—The Secretary shall  
14 ensure that the programs under this subpart are adminis-  
15 tered within the Department by a person who has recog-  
16 nized professional qualifications and experience in the field  
17 of the education of gifted and talented students and who  
18 shall—

19 “(1) administer and coordinate the programs  
20 authorized under this subpart;

21 “(2) serve as a focal point of national leader-  
22 ship and information on the educational needs of  
23 gifted and talented students and the availability of  
24 educational services and programs designed to meet  
25 such needs; and



1           “(3) assist the Assistant Secretary of the Office  
2           of Educational Research and Improvement in identi-  
3           fying research priorities which reflect the needs of  
4           gifted and talented students.

5   **“SEC. 4167. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

6           “‘There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out  
7           this subpart such sums as may be necessary for each of  
8           fiscal years 2002 through 2006.’”.

9   **SEC. 402. CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.**

10          Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, any  
11          person or agency that was awarded a grant under part  
12          B or D of title X (20 U.S.C. 8031 et seq., 8091 et seq.)  
13          prior to the date of the enactment of this Act shall con-  
14          tinue to receive funds in accordance with the terms of such  
15          award until the date on which the award period terminates  
16          under such terms.

17                   **PART B—PUBLIC CHARTER SCHOOLS**

18   **SEC. 411. PUBLIC CHARTER SCHOOLS.**

19          Part B of title IV is amended to read as follows:

20                   **“PART B—PUBLIC CHARTER SCHOOLS**

21   **“SEC. 4201. FINDINGS AND PURPOSE.**

22          “(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

23                   “(1) enhancement of parent and student choices  
24                   among public schools can assist in promoting com-  
25                   prehensive educational reform and give more stu-



1 dents the opportunity to meet challenging State aca-  
2 demic content standards and State student academic  
3 achievement standards, if sufficiently diverse and  
4 high-quality choices, and genuine opportunities to  
5 take advantage of such choices, are available to all  
6 students;

7 “(2) useful examples of such choices can come  
8 from States and communities that experiment with  
9 methods of offering teachers and other educators,  
10 parents, and other members of the public the oppor-  
11 tunity to design and implement new public schools  
12 and to transform existing public schools;

13 “(3) charter schools are a mechanism for test-  
14 ing a variety of educational approaches and should,  
15 therefore, be exempted from restrictive rules and  
16 regulations if the leadership of such schools commits  
17 to attaining specific and ambitious educational re-  
18 sults for educationally disadvantaged students con-  
19 sistent with challenging State academic content  
20 standards and State student academic achievement  
21 standards for all students;

22 “(4) charter schools can embody the necessary  
23 mixture of enhanced choice, exemption from restric-  
24 tive regulations, and a focus on learning gains;



1           “(5) charter schools, including charter schools  
2 that are schools-within-schools, can help reduce  
3 school size, and this reduction can have a significant  
4 effect on student achievement;

5           “(6) the Federal Government should test, evalu-  
6 ate, and disseminate information on a variety of  
7 charter school models in order to help demonstrate  
8 the benefits of this promising educational reform;  
9 and

10           “(7) there is a strong documented need for  
11 cash-flow assistance to charter schools that are  
12 starting up, because State and local operating rev-  
13 enue streams are not immediately available.

14           “(b) PURPOSE.—It is the purpose of this part to in-  
15 crease national understanding of the charter schools model  
16 by—

17           “(1) providing financial assistance for the plan-  
18 ning, program design and initial implementation of  
19 charter schools;

20           “(2) evaluating the effects of such schools, in-  
21 cluding the effects on students, student achievement,  
22 staff, and parents; and

23           “(3) expanding the number of high-quality  
24 charter schools available to students across the Na-  
25 tion.





1 **“SEC. 4202. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.**

2 “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may award grants  
3 to State educational agencies having applications approved  
4 pursuant to section 4203 to enable such agencies to con-  
5 duct a charter school grant program in accordance with  
6 this part.

7 “(b) SPECIAL RULE.—If a State educational agency  
8 elects not to participate in the program authorized by this  
9 part or does not have an application approved under sec-  
10 tion 4203, the Secretary may award a grant to an eligible  
11 applicant that serves such State and has an application  
12 approved pursuant to section 4203(c).

13 “(c) PROGRAM PERIODS.—

14 “(1) GRANTS TO STATES.—Grants awarded to  
15 State educational agencies under this part shall be  
16 awarded for a period of not more than 3 years.

17 “(2) GRANTS TO ELIGIBLE APPLICANTS.—  
18 Grants awarded by the Secretary to eligible appli-  
19 cants or subgrants awarded by State educational  
20 agencies to eligible applicants under this part shall  
21 be awarded for a period of not more than 3 years,  
22 of which the eligible applicant may use—

23 “(A) not more than 18 months for plan-  
24 ning and program design;

25 “(B) not more than 2 years for the initial  
26 implementation of a charter school; and



1                   “(C) not more than 2 years to carry out  
2                   dissemination activities described in section  
3                   4204(f)(6)(B).

4           “(d) LIMITATION.—A charter school may not  
5 receive—

6                   “(1) more than one grant for activities de-  
7                   scribed in subparagraphs (A) and (B) of subsection  
8                   (c)(2); or

9                   “(2) more than one grant for activities under  
10                  subparagraph (C) of subsection (c)(2).

11           “(e) PRIORITY TREATMENT.—In awarding grants  
12 under this part from any funds appropriated under section  
13 4211, the Secretary shall give priority to States to the ex-  
14 tent that the States meet the criteria described in para-  
15 graph (2) and one or more of the criteria described in sub-  
16 paragraph (A), (B), or (C) of paragraph (3).

17                   “(2) REVIEW AND EVALUATION PRIORITY CRI-  
18                   TERIA.—The criteria referred to in paragraph (1) is  
19                   that the State provides for periodic review and eval-  
20                   uation by the authorized public chartering agency of  
21                   each charter school, at least once every 5 years un-  
22                   less required more frequently by State law, to deter-  
23                   mine whether the charter school is meeting the  
24                   terms of the school’s charter, and is meeting or ex-  
25                   ceeding the academic performance requirements and



1 goals for charter schools as set forth under State  
2 law or the school's charter.

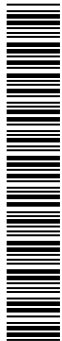
3 “(3) PRIORITY CRITERIA.—The criteria referred  
4 to in paragraph (1) are the following:

5 “(A) The State has demonstrated progress,  
6 in increasing the number of high quality charter  
7 schools that are held accountable in the terms  
8 of the schools' charters for meeting clear and  
9 measurable objectives for the educational  
10 progress of the students attending the schools,  
11 in the period prior to the period for which a  
12 State educational agency or eligible applicant  
13 applies for a grant under this part.

14 “(B) The State—

15 “(i) provides for one authorized public  
16 chartering agency that is not a local edu-  
17 cational agency, such as a State chartering  
18 board, for each individual or entity seeking  
19 to operate a charter school pursuant to  
20 such State law; or

21 “(ii) in the case of a State in which  
22 local educational agencies are the only au-  
23 thorized public chartering agencies, allows  
24 for an appeals process for the denial of an  
25 application for a charter school.



1                   “(C) The State ensures that each charter  
2                   school has a high degree of autonomy over the  
3                   charter school’s budgets and expenditures.

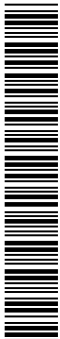
4                   “(f) AMOUNT CRITERIA.—In determining the amount  
5 of a grant to be awarded under this part to a State edu-  
6 cational agency, the Secretary shall take into consider-  
7 ation the number of charter schools that are operating,  
8 or are approved to open, in the State.

9                   **“SEC. 4203. APPLICATIONS.**

10                  “(a) APPLICATIONS FROM STATE AGENCIES.—Each  
11 State educational agency desiring a grant from the Sec-  
12 retary under this part shall submit to the Secretary an  
13 application at such time, in such manner, and containing  
14 or accompanied by such information as the Secretary may  
15 require.

16                  “(b) CONTENTS OF A STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY  
17 APPLICATION.—Each application submitted pursuant to  
18 subsection (a) shall—

19                         “(1) describe the objectives of the State edu-  
20 cational agency’s charter school grant program and  
21 how such objectives will be fulfilled, including steps  
22 taken by the State educational agency to inform  
23 teachers, parents, and communities of the State edu-  
24 cational agency’s charter school grant program; and



1           “(2) describe how the State educational  
2 agency—

3           “(A) will inform each charter school in the  
4 State regarding—

5           “(i) Federal funds that the charter  
6 school is eligible to receive; and

7           “(ii) Federal programs in which the  
8 charter school may participate;

9           “(B) will ensure that each charter school  
10 in the State receives the charter school’s com-  
11 mensurate share of Federal education funds  
12 that are allocated by formula each year, includ-  
13 ing during the first year of operation of the  
14 charter school; and

15           “(C) will disseminate best or promising  
16 practices of charter schools to each local edu-  
17 cational agency in the State; and

18           “(3) contain assurances that the State edu-  
19 cational agency will require each eligible applicant  
20 desiring to receive a subgrant to submit an applica-  
21 tion to the State educational agency containing—

22           “(A) a description of the educational pro-  
23 gram to be implemented by the proposed char-  
24 ter school, including—



1                   “(i) how the program will enable all  
2                   students to meet challenging State student  
3                   academic achievement standards;

4                   “(ii) the grade levels or ages of chil-  
5                   dren to be served; and

6                   “(iii) the curriculum and instructional  
7                   practices to be used;

8                   “(B) a description of how the charter  
9                   school will be managed;

10                  “(C) a description of—

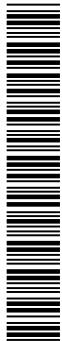
11                   “(i) the objectives of the charter  
12                   school; and

13                   “(ii) the methods by which the charter  
14                   school will determine its progress toward  
15                   achieving those objectives;

16                  “(D) a description of the administrative re-  
17                  lationship between the charter school and the  
18                  authorized public chartering agency;

19                  “(E) a description of how parents and  
20                  other members of the community will be in-  
21                  volved in the planning, program design and im-  
22                  plementation of the charter school;

23                  “(F) a description of how the authorized  
24                  public chartering agency will provide for contin-  
25                  ued operation of the school once the Federal



1 grant has expired, if such agency determines  
2 that the school has met the objectives described  
3 in subparagraph (C)(i);

4 “(G) a request and justification for waivers  
5 of any Federal statutory or regulatory provi-  
6 sions that the applicant believes are necessary  
7 for the successful operation of the charter  
8 school, and a description of any State or local  
9 rules, generally applicable to public schools,  
10 that will be waived for, or otherwise not apply  
11 to, the school;

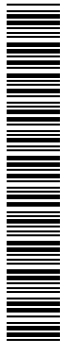
12 “(H) a description of how the subgrant  
13 funds or grant funds, as appropriate, will be  
14 used, including a description of how such funds  
15 will be used in conjunction with other Federal  
16 programs administered by the Secretary;

17 “(I) a description of how students in the  
18 community will be—

19 “(i) informed about the charter  
20 school; and

21 “(ii) given an equal opportunity to at-  
22 tend the charter school;

23 “(J) an assurance that the eligible appli-  
24 cant will annually provide the Secretary and the  
25 State educational agency such information as



1           may be required to determine if the charter  
2           school is making satisfactory progress toward  
3           achieving the objectives described in subpara-  
4           graph (C)(i);

5           “(K) an assurance that the applicant will  
6           cooperate with the Secretary and the State edu-  
7           cational agency in evaluating the program as-  
8           sisted under this part;

9           “(L) a description of how a charter school  
10          that is considered a local educational agency  
11          under State law, or a local educational agency  
12          in which a charter school is located, will comply  
13          with sections 613(a)(5) and 613(e)(1)(B) of the  
14          Individuals with Disabilities Education Act;

15          “(M) if the eligible applicant desires to use  
16          subgrant funds for dissemination activities  
17          under section 4202(c)(2)(C), a description of  
18          those activities and how those activities will in-  
19          volve charter schools and other public schools,  
20          local educational agencies, developers, and po-  
21          tential developers; and

22          “(N) such other information and assur-  
23          ances as the Secretary and the State edu-  
24          cational agency may require.





1           “(c) CONTENTS OF ELIGIBLE APPLICANT APPLICA-  
2 TION.—Each eligible applicant desiring a grant pursuant  
3 to section 4202(b) shall submit an application to the State  
4 educational agency or Secretary, respectively, at such  
5 time, in such manner, and accompanied by such informa-  
6 tion as the State educational agency or Secretary, respec-  
7 tively, may reasonably require.

8           “(d) CONTENTS OF APPLICATION.—Each application  
9 submitted pursuant to subsection (c) shall contain—

10           “(1) the information and assurances described  
11 in subparagraphs (A) through (N) of subsection  
12 (b)(3), except that for purposes of this subsection  
13 subparagraphs (J), (K), and (N) of such subsection  
14 shall be applied by striking ‘and the State edu-  
15 cational agency’ each place such term appears;

16           “(2) assurances that the State educational  
17 agency—

18           “(A) will grant, or will obtain, waivers of  
19 State statutory or regulatory requirements; and

20           “(B) will assist each subgrantee in the  
21 State in receiving a waiver under section  
22 4204(e); and

23           “(3) assurances that the eligible applicant has  
24 provided its authorized public chartering authority  
25 timely notice, and a copy, of the application, except



1 that the State educational agency (or the Secretary,  
2 in the case of an application submitted to the Sec-  
3 retary) may waive this requirement in the case of an  
4 application for a precharter planning grant or  
5 subgrant if the authorized public chartering author-  
6 ity to which a charter school proposal will be sub-  
7 mitted has not been determined at the time the  
8 grant or subgrant application is submitted.

9 **“SEC. 4204. ADMINISTRATION.**

10 “(a) SELECTION CRITERIA FOR STATE EDU-  
11 CATIONAL AGENCIES.—The Secretary shall award grants  
12 to State educational agencies under this part on the basis  
13 of the quality of the applications submitted under section  
14 4203(b), after taking into consideration such factors as—

15 “(1) the contribution that the charter schools  
16 grant program will make to assisting educationally  
17 disadvantaged and other students to achieving State  
18 academic content standards and State student aca-  
19 demic achievement standards and, in general, a  
20 State’s education improvement plan;

21 “(2) the degree of flexibility afforded by the  
22 State educational agency to charter schools under  
23 the State’s charter schools law;

24 “(3) the ambitiousness of the objectives for the  
25 State charter school grant program;



1           “(4) the quality of the strategy for assessing  
2 achievement of those objectives;

3           “(5) the likelihood that the charter school grant  
4 program will meet those objectives and improve edu-  
5 cational results for students;

6           “(6) the number of high quality charter schools  
7 created under this part in the State; and

8           “(7) in the case of State educational agencies  
9 that propose to use grant funds to support dissemi-  
10 nation activities under section 4202(c)(2)(C), the  
11 quality of those activities and the likelihood that  
12 those activities will improve student academic  
13 achievement.

14       “(b) SELECTION CRITERIA FOR ELIGIBLE APPLI-  
15 CANTS.—The Secretary shall award grants to eligible ap-  
16 plicants under this part on the basis of the quality of the  
17 applications submitted under section 4203(c), after taking  
18 into consideration such factors as—

19           “(1) the quality of the proposed curriculum and  
20 instructional practices;

21           “(2) the degree of flexibility afforded by the  
22 State educational agency and, if applicable, the local  
23 educational agency to the charter school;

24           “(3) the extent of community support for the  
25 application;



1           “(4) the ambitiousness of the objectives for the  
2 charter school;

3           “(5) the quality of the strategy for assessing  
4 achievement of those objectives;

5           “(6) the likelihood that the charter school will  
6 meet those objectives and improve educational re-  
7 sults for students; and

8           “(7) in the case of an eligible applicant that  
9 proposes to use grant funds to support dissemina-  
10 tion activities under section 4202(c)(2)(C), the qual-  
11 ity of those activities and the likelihood that those  
12 activities will improve student achievement.

13          “(c) PEER REVIEW.—The Secretary, and each State  
14 educational agency receiving a grant under this part, shall  
15 use a peer review process to review applications for assist-  
16 ance under this part.

17          “(d) DIVERSITY OF PROJECTS.—The Secretary and  
18 each State educational agency receiving a grant under this  
19 part, shall award subgrants under this part in a manner  
20 that, to the extent possible, ensures that such grants and  
21 subgrants—

22           “(1) are distributed throughout different areas  
23 of the Nation and each State, including urban and  
24 rural areas; and



1           “(2) will assist charter schools representing a  
2           variety of educational approaches, such as ap-  
3           proaches designed to reduce school size.

4           “(e) WAIVERS.—The Secretary may waive any statu-  
5           tory or regulatory requirement over which the Secretary  
6           exercises administrative authority except any such require-  
7           ment relating to the elements of a charter school described  
8           in section 4210(1), if—

9           “(1) the waiver is requested in an approved ap-  
10          plication under this part; and

11          “(2) the Secretary determines that granting  
12          such a waiver will promote the purpose of this part.

13          “(f) USE OF FUNDS.—

14          “(1) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.—Each  
15          State educational agency receiving a grant under  
16          this part shall use such grant funds to award sub-  
17          grants to one or more eligible applicants in the State  
18          to enable such applicant to plan and implement a  
19          charter school in accordance with this part, except  
20          that the State educational agency may reserve not  
21          more than 10 percent of the grant funds to support  
22          dissemination activities described in paragraph (6).

23          “(2) ELIGIBLE APPLICANTS.—Each eligible ap-  
24          plicant receiving funds from the Secretary or a State  
25          educational agency shall use such funds to plan and



1 implement a charter school, or to disseminate infor-  
 2 mation about the charter school and successful prac-  
 3 tices in the charter school, in accordance with this  
 4 part.

5 “(3) ALLOWABLE ACTIVITIES.—An eligible ap-  
 6 plicant receiving a grant or subgrant under this part  
 7 may use the grant or subgrant funds only for—

8 “(A) post-award planning and design of  
 9 the educational program, which may include—

10 “(i) refinement of the desired edu-  
 11 cational results and of the methods for  
 12 measuring progress toward achieving those  
 13 results; and

14 “(ii) professional development of  
 15 teachers and other staff who will work in  
 16 the charter school; and

17 “(B) initial implementation of the charter  
 18 school, which may include—

19 “(i) informing the community about  
 20 the school;

21 “(ii) acquiring necessary equipment  
 22 and educational materials and supplies;

23 “(iii) acquiring or developing cur-  
 24 riculum materials; and

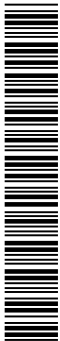


1                   “(iv) other initial operational costs  
2                   that cannot be met from State or local  
3                   sources.

4                   “(4) ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES.—Each State  
5                   educational agency receiving a grant pursuant to  
6                   this part may reserve not more than 5 percent of  
7                   such grant funds for administrative expenses associ-  
8                   ated with the charter school grant program assisted  
9                   under this part. A local educational agency may not  
10                  deduct funds for administrative fees or expenses  
11                  from a subgrant awarded to an eligible applicant.

12                  “(5) REVOLVING LOAN FUNDS.—Each State  
13                  educational agency receiving a grant pursuant to  
14                  this part may reserve not more than 10 percent of  
15                  the grant amount for the establishment of a revolv-  
16                  ing loan fund. Such fund may be used to make loans  
17                  to eligible applicants that have received a subgrant  
18                  under this part, under such terms as may be deter-  
19                  mined by the State educational agency, for the ini-  
20                  tial operation of the charter school grant program of  
21                  such recipient until such time as the recipient begins  
22                  receiving ongoing operational support from State or  
23                  local financing sources.

24                  “(6) DISSEMINATION.—



1           “(A) IN GENERAL.—A charter school may  
2           apply for funds under this part, whether or not  
3           the charter school has applied for or received  
4           funds under this part for planning, program de-  
5           sign, or implementation, to carry out the activi-  
6           ties described in subparagraph (B) if the char-  
7           ter school has been in operation for at least 3  
8           consecutive years and has demonstrated overall  
9           success, including—

10                   “(i) substantial progress in improving  
11                   student academic achievement;

12                   “(ii) high levels of parent satisfaction;  
13                   and

14                   “(iii) the management and leadership  
15                   necessary to overcome initial start-up prob-  
16                   lems and establish a thriving, financially  
17                   viable charter school.

18           “(B) ACTIVITIES.—A charter school de-  
19           scribed in subparagraph (A) may use funds re-  
20           served under paragraph (1) to assist other  
21           schools in adapting the charter school’s pro-  
22           gram (or certain aspects of the charter school’s  
23           program), or to disseminate information about  
24           the charter school, through such activities as—



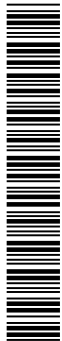


1                   “(i) assisting other individuals with  
2                   the planning and start-up of one or more  
3                   new public schools, including charter  
4                   schools, that are independent of the assist-  
5                   ing charter school and the assisting charter  
6                   school’s developers, and that agree to be  
7                   held to at least as high a level of account-  
8                   ability as the assisting charter school;

9                   “(ii) developing partnerships with  
10                  other public schools, including charter  
11                  schools, designed to improve student aca-  
12                  demic achievement in each of the schools  
13                  participating in the partnership;

14                  “(iii) developing curriculum materials,  
15                  academic assessments, and other materials  
16                  that promote increased student academic  
17                  achievement and are based on successful  
18                  practices within the assisting charter  
19                  school; and

20                  “(iv) conducting evaluations and de-  
21                  veloping materials that document the suc-  
22                  cessful practices of the assisting charter  
23                  school and that are designed to improve  
24                  student academic achievement in other  
25                  schools.



1           “(g) TRIBALLY CONTROLLED SCHOOLS.—Each State  
2 that receives a grant under this part and designates a trib-  
3 ally controlled school as a charter school shall not consider  
4 payments to a school under the Tribally Controlled  
5 Schools Act of 1988 (25 U.S.C. 2507) in determining—

6                   “(1) the eligibility of the school to receive any  
7 other Federal, State, or local aid; or

8                   “(2) the amount of such aid.

9   **“SEC. 4205. NATIONAL ACTIVITIES.**

10           “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall reserve for  
11 each fiscal year the greater of 5 percent or \$5,000,000  
12 of the amount appropriated to carry out this part, except  
13 that in no fiscal year shall the total amount so reserved  
14 exceed \$8,000,000, to carry out the following activities:

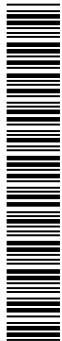
15                   “(1) To provide charter schools, either directly  
16 or through State educational agencies, with—

17                           “(A) information regarding—

18                                   “(i) Federal funds that charter  
19 schools are eligible to receive; and

20                                   “(ii) other Federal programs in which  
21 charter schools may participate; and

22                           “(B) assistance in applying for Federal  
23 education funds that are allocated by formula,  
24 including assistance with filing deadlines and  
25 submission of applications.



1           “(2) To provide for other evaluations or studies  
2 that include the evaluation of the impact of charter  
3 schools on student academic achievement, including  
4 information regarding—

5           “(A) students attending charter schools re-  
6 ported on the basis of race, age, disability, gen-  
7 der, limited English proficiency, and previous  
8 enrollment in public school; and

9           “(B) the professional qualifications of  
10 teachers within a charter school and the turn-  
11 over of the teaching force.

12           “(3) To provide—

13           “(A) information to applicants for assist-  
14 ance under this part;

15           “(B) assistance to applicants for assistance  
16 under this part with the preparation of applica-  
17 tions under section 4203;

18           “(C) assistance in the planning and start-  
19 up of charter schools;

20           “(D) training and technical assistance to  
21 existing charter schools; and

22           “(E) for the dissemination to other public  
23 schools of best or promising practices in charter  
24 schools.



1           “(4) To provide (including through the use of  
2           one or more contracts that use a competitive bidding  
3           process) for the collection of information regarding  
4           the financial resources available to charter schools,  
5           including access to private capital, and to widely dis-  
6           seminate to charter schools any such relevant infor-  
7           mation and model descriptions of successful pro-  
8           grams.

9           “(b) CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this section shall  
10          be construed to require charter schools to collect any data  
11          described in subsection (a).

12          **“SEC. 4206. FEDERAL FORMULA ALLOCATION DURING**  
13                               **FIRST YEAR AND FOR SUCCESSIVE ENROLL-**  
14                               **MENT EXPANSIONS.**

15          “(a) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of the allocation  
16          to schools by the States or their agencies of funds under  
17          part A of title I, and any other Federal funds which the  
18          Secretary allocates to States on a formula basis, the Sec-  
19          retary and each State educational agency shall take such  
20          measures as are necessary to ensure that every charter  
21          school receives the Federal funding for which the charter  
22          school is eligible not later than 5 months after the charter  
23          school first opens, notwithstanding the fact that the iden-  
24          tity and characteristics of the students enrolling in that  
25          charter school are not fully and completely determined



1 until that charter school actually opens. The measures  
2 similarly shall ensure that every charter school expanding  
3 its enrollment in any subsequent year of operation receives  
4 the Federal funding for which the charter school is eligible  
5 not later than 5 months after such expansion.

6 “(b) ADJUSTMENT AND LATE OPENINGS.—

7 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The measures described in  
8 subsection (a) shall include provision for appropriate  
9 adjustments, through recovery of funds or reduction  
10 of payments for the succeeding year, in cases where  
11 payments made to a charter school on the basis of  
12 estimated or projected enrollment data exceed the  
13 amounts that the school is eligible to receive on the  
14 basis of actual or final enrollment data.

15 “(2) RULE.—For charter schools that first  
16 open after November 1 of any academic year, the  
17 State, in accordance with guidance provided by the  
18 Secretary and applicable Federal statutes and regu-  
19 lations, shall ensure that such charter schools that  
20 are eligible for the funds described in subsection (a)  
21 for such academic year have a full and fair oppor-  
22 tunity to receive those funds during the charter  
23 schools’ first year of operation.



1 **“SEC. 4207. SOLICITATION OF INPUT FROM CHARTER**  
2 **SCHOOL OPERATORS.**

3 “To the extent practicable, the Secretary shall ensure  
4 that administrators, teachers, and other individuals di-  
5 rectly involved in the operation of charter schools are con-  
6 sulted in the development of any rules or regulations re-  
7 quired to implement this part, as well as in the develop-  
8 ment of any rules or regulations relevant to charter  
9 schools that are required to implement part A of title I,  
10 the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C.  
11 1400 et seq.), or any other program administered by the  
12 Secretary that provides education funds to charter schools  
13 or regulates the activities of charter schools.

14 **“SEC. 4208. RECORDS TRANSFER.**

15 “State educational agencies and local educational  
16 agencies, to the extent practicable, shall ensure that a stu-  
17 dent’s records and, if applicable, a student’s individualized  
18 education program as defined in section 602(11) of the  
19 Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C.  
20 1401(11)), are transferred to a charter school upon the  
21 transfer of the student to the charter school, to another  
22 public school upon the transfer of the student from a char-  
23 ter school to another public school, and to a private school  
24 upon the transfer of the student from a charter or public  
25 school to the private school (with the written consent of



1 a parent of the student), in accordance with applicable  
2 State law.

3 **“SEC. 4209. PAPERWORK REDUCTION.**

4 “To the extent practicable, the Secretary and each  
5 authorized public chartering agency shall ensure that im-  
6 plementation of this part results in a minimum of paper-  
7 work for any eligible applicant or charter school.

8 **“SEC. 4210. DEFINITIONS.**

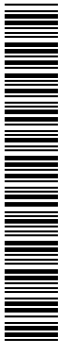
9 “As used in this part:

10 “(1) The term ‘charter school’ means a public  
11 school that—

12 “(A) in accordance with a specific State  
13 statute authorizing the granting of charters to  
14 schools, is exempted from significant State or  
15 local rules that inhibit the flexible operation  
16 and management of public schools, but not  
17 from any rules relating to the other require-  
18 ments of this paragraph;

19 “(B) is created by a developer as a public  
20 school, or is adapted by a developer from an ex-  
21 isting public school, and is operated under pub-  
22 lic supervision and direction;

23 “(C) operates in pursuit of a specific set of  
24 educational objectives determined by the



1 school's developer and agreed to by the author-  
2 ized public chartering agency;

3 "(D) provides a program of elementary or  
4 secondary education, or both;

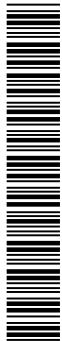
5 "(E) is nonsectarian in its programs, ad-  
6 missions policies, employment practices, and all  
7 other operations, and is not affiliated with a  
8 sectarian school or religious institution;

9 "(F) does not charge tuition;

10 "(G) complies with the Age Discrimination  
11 Act of 1975, title VI of the Civil Rights Act of  
12 1964, title IX of the Education Amendments of  
13 1972, section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of  
14 1973, and part B of the Individuals with Dis-  
15 abilities Education Act;

16 "(H) is a school to which parents choose to  
17 send their children, and that admits students  
18 on the basis of a lottery, or in another non-  
19 discriminatory manner consistent with State  
20 law, if more students apply for admission than  
21 can be accommodated;

22 "(I) agrees to comply with the same Fed-  
23 eral and State audit requirements as do other  
24 elementary and secondary schools in the State,





1 unless such requirements are specifically waived  
2 for the purpose of this program;

3 “(J) meets all applicable Federal, State,  
4 and local health and safety requirements;

5 “(K) operates in accordance with State  
6 law; and

7 “(L) has a written performance contract  
8 with the authorized public chartering agency in  
9 the State that includes a description of how  
10 student academic achievement will be measured  
11 in charter schools pursuant to State academic  
12 assessments that are required of other schools  
13 and pursuant to any other assessments mutu-  
14 ally agreeable to the authorized public char-  
15 tering agency and the charter school.

16 “(2) The term ‘developer’ means an individual  
17 or group of individuals (including a public or private  
18 nonprofit organization), which may include teachers,  
19 administrators and other school staff, parents, or  
20 other members of the local community in which a  
21 charter school project will be carried out.

22 “(3) The term ‘eligible applicant’ means a de-  
23 veloper that has—

24 “(A) applied to an authorized public char-  
25 tering authority; and



1           “(B) provided adequate and timely notice  
2           to that authority under section 4203(d)(3).

3           “(4) The term ‘authorized public chartering  
4           agency’ means a State educational agency, local edu-  
5           cational agency, or other public entity that has the  
6           authority pursuant to State law and approved by the  
7           Secretary to authorize or approve a charter school.

8   **“SEC. 4211. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

9           “For the purpose of carrying out this part, there are  
10          authorized to be appropriated \$225,000,000 for fiscal year  
11          2002 and such sums as may be necessary for each of the  
12          4 succeeding fiscal years.”.

13   **SEC. 412. CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.**

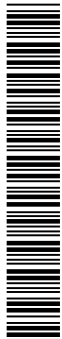
14          Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, any  
15          person or agency that was awarded a grant or subgrant  
16          under subpart 1 of part C of title X (20 U.S.C. 8061 et  
17          seq.) prior to the date of the enactment of this Act shall  
18          continue to receive funds in accordance with the terms of  
19          such award until the date on which the award period ter-  
20          minates under such terms.

21          **PART C—MAGNET SCHOOLS ASSISTANCE;**

22                   **WOMEN’S EDUCATIONAL EQUITY**

23   **SEC. 421. MAGNET SCHOOLS ASSISTANCE.**

24          Part C of title IV is amended to read as follows:



1           **“PART C—MAGNET SCHOOLS ASSISTANCE;**

2                           **WOMEN’S EDUCATIONAL EQUITY**

3                           **“Subpart 1—Magnet Schools Assistance**

4   **“SEC. 4301. FINDINGS.**

5           “The Congress finds as follows:

6                   “(1) Magnet schools are a significant part of  
7           the Nation’s efforts to achieve voluntary desegrega-  
8           tion in our schools.

9                   “(2) The use of magnet schools has increased  
10           dramatically since the inception of the magnet  
11           schools assistance program under this Act, with ap-  
12           proximately 2,000,000 students nationwide attend-  
13           ing such schools, of whom more than 65 percent are  
14           non-white.

15                   “(3) Magnet schools offer a wide range of dis-  
16           tinctive programs that have served as models for  
17           school improvement efforts.

18                   “(4) It is in the best interests of the United  
19           States—

20                           “(A) to continue the Federal Government’s  
21           support of local educational agencies that are  
22           implementing court-ordered desegregation plans  
23           and local educational agencies that are volun-  
24           tarily seeking to foster meaningful interaction  
25           among students of different racial and ethnic



1 backgrounds, beginning at the earliest stage of  
2 such students' education;

3 “(B) to ensure that all students have equi-  
4 table access to a quality education that will pre-  
5 pare them to function well in a highly competi-  
6 tive economy;

7 “(C) to maximize the ability of local edu-  
8 cational agencies to plan, develop, implement,  
9 and continue effective and innovative magnet  
10 schools that contribute to State and local sys-  
11 temic reform; and

12 “(D) to ensure that grant recipients pro-  
13 vide adequate data that demonstrate an ability  
14 to improve student academic achievement.

15 **“SEC. 4302. STATEMENT OF PURPOSE.**

16 “The purpose of this part is to assist in the desegre-  
17 gation of schools served by local educational agencies by  
18 providing financial assistance to eligible local educational  
19 agencies for—

20 “(1) the elimination, reduction, or prevention of  
21 minority group isolation in elementary and sec-  
22 ondary schools with substantial proportions of mi-  
23 nority students;

24 “(2) the development and implementation of  
25 magnet school projects that will assist local edu-



1 cational agencies in achieving systemic reforms and  
2 providing all students the opportunity to meet chal-  
3 lenging State academic content standards and stu-  
4 dent academic achievement standards;

5 “(3) the development and design of innovative  
6 educational methods and practices that promote di-  
7 versity and increase choices in public elementary and  
8 secondary schools and educational programs; and

9 “(4) courses of instruction within magnet  
10 schools that will substantially strengthen the knowl-  
11 edge of academic subjects and the grasp of tangible  
12 and marketable vocational and technical skills of  
13 students attending such schools.

14 **“SEC. 4303. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.**

15 “The Secretary, in accordance with this part, is au-  
16 thorized to make grants to eligible local educational agen-  
17 cies, and consortia of such agencies where appropriate, to  
18 carry out the purpose of this part for magnet schools that  
19 are—

20 “(1) part of an approved desegregation plan;  
21 and

22 “(2) designed to bring students from different  
23 social, economic, ethnic, and racial backgrounds to-  
24 gether.



1 **“SEC. 4304. DEFINITION.**

2 “For the purpose of this part, the term ‘magnet  
3 school’ means a public elementary or secondary school or  
4 public elementary or secondary education center that of-  
5 fers a special curriculum capable of attracting substantial  
6 numbers of students of different racial backgrounds.

7 **“SEC. 4305. ELIGIBILITY.**

8 “A local educational agency, or consortium of such  
9 agencies where appropriate, is eligible to receive assistance  
10 under this part to carry out the purpose of this part if  
11 such agency or consortium—

12 “(1) is implementing a plan undertaken pursu-  
13 ant to a final order issued by a court of the United  
14 States, or a court of any State, or any other State  
15 agency or official of competent jurisdiction, that re-  
16 quires the desegregation of minority-group-seg-  
17 regated children or faculty in the elementary and  
18 secondary schools of such agency; or

19 “(2) without having been required to do so, has  
20 adopted and is implementing, or will, if assistance is  
21 made available to such local educational agency or  
22 consortium of such agencies under this part, adopt  
23 and implement a plan that has been approved by the  
24 Secretary as adequate under title VI of the Civil  
25 Rights Act of 1964 for the desegregation of minor-



1           ity-group-segregated children or faculty in such  
2           schools.

3   **“SEC. 4306. APPLICATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS.**

4           “(a) APPLICATIONS.—An eligible local educational  
5 agency, or consortium of such agencies, desiring to receive  
6 assistance under this part shall submit an application to  
7 the Secretary at such time, in such manner, and con-  
8 taining such information and assurances as the Secretary  
9 may reasonably require.

10          “(b) INFORMATION AND ASSURANCES.—Each such  
11 application shall include—

12                   “(1) a description of—

13                           “(A) how assistance made available under  
14 this part will be used to promote desegregation,  
15 including how the proposed magnet school  
16 project will increase interaction among students  
17 of different social, economic, ethnic, and racial  
18 backgrounds;

19                           “(B) the manner and extent to which the  
20 magnet school project will increase student aca-  
21 demic achievement in the instructional area or  
22 areas offered by the school;

23                           “(C) how an applicant will continue the  
24 magnet school project after assistance under  
25 this part is no longer available, including, if ap-



1 plicable, an explanation of why magnet schools  
2 established or supported by the applicant with  
3 funds under this part cannot be continued with-  
4 out the use of funds under this part;

5 “(D) how funds under this part will be  
6 used to improve student academic performance  
7 for all students attending the magnet schools;  
8 and

9 “(E) the criteria to be used in selecting  
10 students to attend the proposed magnet school  
11 projects; and

12 “(2) assurances that the applicant will—

13 “(A) use funds under this part for the pur-  
14 pose specified in section 4302;

15 “(B) employ fully qualified teachers in the  
16 courses of instruction assisted under this part;

17 “(C) not engage in discrimination based on  
18 race, religion, color, national origin, sex, or dis-  
19 ability in—

20 “(i) the hiring, promotion, or assign-  
21 ment of employees of the agency or other  
22 personnel for whom the agency has any ad-  
23 ministrative responsibility;

24 “(ii) the assignment of students to  
25 schools, or to courses of instruction within





1 the school, of such agency, except to carry  
2 out the approved plan; and

3 “(iii) designing or operating extra-  
4 curricular activities for students;

5 “(D) carry out a high-quality education  
6 program that will encourage greater parental  
7 decisionmaking and involvement; and

8 “(E) give students residing in the local at-  
9 tendance area of the proposed magnet school  
10 projects equitable consideration for placement  
11 in those projects.

12 **“SEC. 4307. PRIORITY.**

13 “In approving applications under this part, the Sec-  
14 retary shall give priority to applicants that—

15 “(1) demonstrate the greatest need for assist-  
16 ance, based on the expense or difficulty of effectively  
17 carrying out an approved desegregation plan and the  
18 projects for which assistance is sought;

19 “(2) propose to carry out new magnet school  
20 projects, or significantly revise existing magnet  
21 school projects; and

22 “(3) propose to select students to attend mag-  
23 net school projects by methods such as lottery, rath-  
24 er than through academic examination.



1 **“SEC. 4308. USE OF FUNDS.**

2 “(a) IN GENERAL.—Grant funds made available  
3 under this part may be used by an eligible local edu-  
4 cational agency or consortium of such agencies—

5 “(1) for planning and promotional activities di-  
6 rectly related to the development, expansion, con-  
7 tinuation, or enhancement of academic programs  
8 and services offered at magnet schools;

9 “(2) for the acquisition of books, materials, and  
10 equipment, including computers and the mainte-  
11 nance and operation thereof, necessary for the con-  
12 duct of programs in magnet schools;

13 “(3) for the payment, or subsidization of the  
14 compensation, of elementary and secondary school  
15 teachers who are fully qualified, and instructional  
16 staff where applicable, who are necessary for the  
17 conduct of programs in magnet schools;

18 “(4) with respect to a magnet school program  
19 offered to less than the entire student population of  
20 a school, for instructional activities that—

21 “(A) are designed to make available the  
22 special curriculum that is offered by the magnet  
23 school project to students who are enrolled in  
24 the school but who are not enrolled in the mag-  
25 net school program; and

26 “(B) further the purpose of this part; and



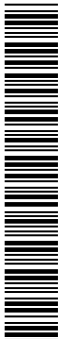
1           “(5) for activities, which may include profes-  
2           sional development, that will build the recipient’s ca-  
3           pacity to operate magnet school programs once the  
4           grant period has ended.

5           “(b) SPECIAL RULE.—Grant funds under this part  
6           may be used in accordance with paragraphs (2) and (3)  
7           of subsection (a) only if the activities described in such  
8           paragraphs are directly related to improving the students’  
9           academic performance based on the State’s challenging  
10          academic content standards and student academic achieve-  
11          ment standards or directly related to improving the stu-  
12          dents’ reading skills or knowledge of mathematics, science,  
13          history, geography, English, foreign languages, art, or  
14          music, or to improving vocational and technical skills.

15          **“SEC. 4309. PROHIBITIONS.**

16          “(a) TRANSPORTATION.—Grants under this part may  
17          not be used for transportation or any activity that does  
18          not augment academic improvement.

19          “(b) PLANNING.—A local educational agency shall  
20          not expend funds under this part after the third year that  
21          such agency receives funds under this part for such  
22          project.



1 **“SEC. 4310. LIMITATIONS.**

2 “(a) DURATION OF AWARDS.—A grant under this  
3 part shall be awarded for a period that shall not exceed  
4 three fiscal years.

5 “(b) LIMITATION ON PLANNING FUNDS.—A local  
6 educational agency may expend for planning not more  
7 than 50 percent of the funds received under this part for  
8 the first year of the project, 15 percent of such funds for  
9 the second such year, and 10 percent of such funds for  
10 the third such year.

11 “(c) AMOUNT.—No local educational agency or con-  
12 sortium awarded a grant under this part shall receive  
13 more than \$4,000,000 under this part in any one fiscal  
14 year.

15 “(d) TIMING.—To the extent practicable, the Sec-  
16 retary shall award grants for any fiscal year under this  
17 part not later than July 1 of the applicable fiscal year.

18 **“SEC. 4311. EVALUATIONS.**

19 “(a) RESERVATION.—The Secretary may reserve not  
20 more than 2 percent of the funds appropriated under sec-  
21 tion 4312(a) for any fiscal year to carry out evaluations,  
22 technical assistance, and dissemination projects with re-  
23 spect to magnet school projects and programs assisted  
24 under this part.

25 “(b) CONTENTS.—Each evaluation described in sub-  
26 section (a), at a minimum, shall address—



1           “(1) how and the extent to which magnet school  
2 programs lead to educational quality and improve-  
3 ment;

4           “(2) the extent to which magnet school pro-  
5 grams enhance student access to quality education;

6           “(3) the extent to which magnet school pro-  
7 grams lead to the elimination, reduction, or preven-  
8 tion of minority group isolation in elementary and  
9 secondary schools with substantial proportions of mi-  
10 nority students; and

11           “(4) the extent to which magnet school pro-  
12 grams differ from other school programs in terms of  
13 the organizational characteristics and resource allo-  
14 cations of such magnet school programs.

15 **“SEC. 4312. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS; RES-**  
16 **ERVATION.**

17           “(a) AUTHORIZATION.—For the purpose of carrying  
18 out this part, there are authorized to be appropriated  
19 \$125,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may  
20 be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

21           “(b) AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS FOR GRANTS TO  
22 AGENCIES NOT PREVIOUSLY ASSISTED.—In any fiscal  
23 year for which the amount appropriated pursuant to sub-  
24 section (a) exceeds \$75,000,000, the Secretary shall give  
25 priority to using such amounts in excess of \$75,000,000



1 to award grants to local educational agencies or consortia  
2 of such agencies that did not receive a grant under this  
3 part in the preceding fiscal year.”.

4 **SEC. 422. WOMEN’S EDUCATIONAL EQUITY.**

5 (a) TRANSFER AND REDESIGNATION.—Part B of  
6 title V (20 U.S.C. 7231 et seq.) is transferred and redesignig-  
7 nated as subpart 2 of part D of title IV. Sections 5201  
8 through 5208 are redesignated as sections 4321 through  
9 4328, respectively.

10 (b) REPORT.—Section 4326 (as so redesignated) is  
11 amended by striking “January 1, 1999,” and inserting  
12 “January 1, 2005,”.

13 (c) EVALUATION AND DISSEMINATION.—Section  
14 4327(a) (as so redesignated) is amended—

15 (1) by striking “14701,” and inserting “8651,”;

16 and

17 (2) by striking “January 1, 1998.” and insert-  
18 ing “January 1, 2004.”.

19 (d) REAUTHORIZATION.—Section 4328 (as so redesi-  
20 gnated) is amended by striking “\$5,000,000 for fiscal  
21 year 1995 and such sums as may be necessary for each  
22 of the four succeeding fiscal years,” and inserting  
23 “\$3,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may  
24 be necessary for each of the four succeeding fiscal years,”.

25 (e) OTHER CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—



1           (1) SHORT TITLE.—Section 4321(a) (as so re-  
2 designated) is amended to read as follows:

3           “(a) SHORT TITLE.—This subpart may be cited as  
4 the ‘Women’s Educational Equity Act of 2001’.”.

5           (2) REFERENCES.—Subpart 2 of part D of title  
6 IV (as so redesignated) is amended—

7           (A) by striking “this part” each place such  
8 term appears and inserting “this subpart”; and

9           (B) by striking “5203(b)” each place such  
10 term appears and inserting “4423(b)”.

11 **SEC. 423. CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.**

12           Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, any  
13 person or agency that was awarded a grant under part  
14 A of title V (20 U.S.C. 7201 et seq.), or a grant, contract,  
15 or cooperative agreement under part B of such title (20  
16 U.S.C. 7231 et seq.), prior to the date of the enactment  
17 of this Act shall continue to receive funds in accordance  
18 with the terms of such award until the date on which the  
19 award period terminates under such terms.

20           **TITLE V—21ST CENTURY**  
21           **SCHOOLS**

22 **SEC. 501. SAFE SCHOOLS.**

23           Title V, except part B (which is transferred and re-  
24 designated as subpart 2 of part D of title IV by section  
25 432 of this Act) is amended to read as follows:



1           **“TITLE V—21ST CENTURY**  
 2                           **SCHOOLS**

3           **“PART A—SUPPORTING VIOLENCE AND DRUG**  
 4                           **PREVENTION AND ACADEMIC ENRICHMENT**

5   **“SEC. 5001. SHORT TITLE.**

6           “‘This part may be cited as the ‘21st Century Schools  
 7 Act of 2001’.

8   **“SEC. 5002. PURPOSE.**

9           “‘The purpose of this part is to support programs that  
 10 prevent the use of illegal drugs, prevent violence, provide  
 11 quality before and after school activities and supervision  
 12 for school age youth, involve parents and communities,  
 13 and are coordinated with related Federal, State, and com-  
 14 munity efforts and resources to foster a safe and drug-  
 15 free learning environment in which students increase their  
 16 academic achievement, through the provision of Federal  
 17 assistance to—

18                   “(1) States for grants to local educational agen-  
 19                   cies and consortia of such agencies to establish, op-  
 20                   erate, and improve local programs of drug and vio-  
 21                   lence prevention in elementary and secondary  
 22                   schools;

23                   “(2) States for grants to local educational agen-  
 24                   cies, community-based organizations, and other pub-





1       lic entities and private organizations, for before and  
2       after school programs for youth; and

3               “(3) States and public and private nonprofit  
4       and for-profit organizations to conduct training,  
5       demonstrations, and evaluations.

6       **“SEC. 5003. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

7       ““There are authorized to be appropriated—

8               “(1) \$475,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and  
9       such sums as may be necessary for each of the 4  
10      succeeding fiscal years, for State grants under sub-  
11      part 1; and

12              “(2) \$900,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and  
13      such sums as may be necessary for each of the four  
14      succeeding fiscal years, for State grants under sub-  
15      part 2.

16              “(3) \$60,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and for  
17      each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years, for national  
18      programs under subpart 3.

19                      **“Subpart 1—Safe Schools**

20       **“SEC. 5111. RESERVATIONS AND ALLOTMENTS.**

21       “(a) RESERVATIONS.—From the amount made avail-  
22      able under section 5003(1) to carry out this subpart for  
23      each fiscal year, the Secretary—

24              “(1) shall reserve 1 percent or \$4,750,000  
25      (whichever is greater) of such amount for grants to



1 Guam, American Samoa, the United States Virgin  
2 Islands, and the Commonwealth of the Northern  
3 Mariana Islands, to be allotted in accordance with  
4 the Secretary's determination of their respective  
5 needs and to carry out programs described in this  
6 subpart;

7 “(2) shall reserve 1 percent or \$4,750,000  
8 (whichever is greater) of such amount for the Sec-  
9 retary of the Interior to carry out programs de-  
10 scribed in this subpart for Indian youth;

11 “(3) shall reserve 0.2 percent of such amount  
12 for Native Hawaiians to be used to carry out pro-  
13 grams described in this subpart;

14 “(4) notwithstanding section 3 of the Leave No  
15 Child Behind Act of 2001, shall reserve an amount  
16 necessary to make continuation grants to grantees  
17 under part I of title X of this Act (under the terms  
18 of those grants), as such part existed on the day be-  
19 fore the effective date of the Leave No Child Behind  
20 Act of 2001; and

21 “(5) notwithstanding section 3 of the Leave No  
22 Child Behind Act of 2001, shall reserve an amount  
23 necessary to make continuation grants to grantees  
24 under the Safe Schools/Healthy Students initiative  
25 (under the terms of those grants), as it existed on



1 the day before the date of the effective date of the  
2 Leave No Child Behind Act of 2001.

3 “(b) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—

4 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in para-  
5 graph (2), the Secretary, for each fiscal year, shall  
6 allocate among the States—

7 “(A) one-half of the remainder not re-  
8 served under subsection (a) according to the  
9 ratio between the school-aged population of  
10 each State and the school-aged population of all  
11 the States; and

12 “(B) one-half of such remainder according  
13 to the ratio between the amount each State re-  
14 ceived under part A of title I for the preceding  
15 year and the sum of such amounts received by  
16 all the States.

17 “(2) MINIMUM.—For any fiscal year, no State  
18 shall be allotted under this subsection an amount  
19 that is less than one-half of 1 percent of the total  
20 amount allotted to all the States under this sub-  
21 section.

22 “(c) REALLOTMENT OF UNUSED FUNDS.—If any  
23 State does not apply for an allotment under this subpart  
24 for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall reallocate the amount



1 of the State’s allotment to the remaining States in accord-  
2 ance with this section.

3 “(d) DEFINITION.—For the purposes of this section,  
4 the term ‘Native Hawaiian’ means any individual any of  
5 whose ancestors were natives, prior to 1778, of the area  
6 which now comprises the State of Hawaii.

7 **“SEC. 5112. RESERVATION OF STATE FUNDS FOR SAFE**  
8 **SCHOOLS.**

9 “(a) STATE RESERVATION.—

10 “(1) Governor’s allocation.—

11 “(A) IN GENERAL.—The chief executive of-  
12 ficer of a State may reserve not more than 20  
13 percent of the total amount allocated to a State  
14 under section 5111(b) for each fiscal year to  
15 award competitive grants and contracts to local  
16 educational agencies, community-based organi-  
17 zations, and other public entities and private  
18 organizations for programs or activities to sup-  
19 port community efforts that complement activi-  
20 ties of local education agencies described in sec-  
21 tion 5115. Such officer shall award grants  
22 based on—

23 “(i) the quality of the activity or pro-  
24 gram proposed; and



1                   “(ii) how the program or activity is  
2                   aligned with the appropriate principles of  
3                   effectiveness described in section 5114(a).

4                   “(B) SPECIAL CONSIDERATION.—In  
5                   awarding funds under subparagraph (A), a  
6                   chief executive officer shall give special consid-  
7                   eration to grantees that pursue a comprehensive  
8                   approach to drug and violence prevention by  
9                   providing and incorporating mental health serv-  
10                  ices in their programs.

11                  “(C) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—The chief  
12                  executive officer of a State may use not more  
13                  than 1 percent of the amount described in sub-  
14                  paragraph (A) for the administrative costs in-  
15                  curred in carrying out the duties of such officer  
16                  under this section.

17                  “(b) STATE FUNDS.—

18                  “(1) ADDITIONAL RESERVATIONS.—Each State  
19                  shall reserve an amount equal to the total amount  
20                  allotted to a State under section 5111(b), less the  
21                  amount reserved under subsection (a) and para-  
22                  graphs (2) and (3) of this subsection, for each fiscal  
23                  year for its local educational agencies.

24                  “(2) STATE ACTIVITIES.—A State may use not  
25                  more than 4 percent of the total amount available



1 under subsection (a) for State activities described in  
2 subsection (c).

3 “(3) STATE ADMINISTRATION.—A State may  
4 use not more than 1 percent of the amount made  
5 available under subsection (a) for the administrative  
6 costs of carrying out its responsibilities under this  
7 subpart.

8 “(c) ACTIVITIES.—

9 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State shall use a portion  
10 of the funds described in subsection (b)(2), either di-  
11 rectly, or through grants and contracts, to plan, de-  
12 velop, and implement capacity building, technical as-  
13 sistance, evaluation, program improvement services,  
14 and coordination activities for local educational  
15 agencies, community-based organizations, other pub-  
16 lic entities, and private organizations that are de-  
17 signed to support the implementation of programs  
18 and activities under this subpart.

19 “(2) DATA COLLECTION.—

20 “(A) STATISTICS.—A State may use a por-  
21 tion of the funds, not to exceed 20 percent, de-  
22 scribed in subsection (b)(2), either directly or  
23 through grants and contracts, to establish and  
24 implement a statewide system of collecting data  
25 regarding statistics on—



1                   “(i) truancy rates; and

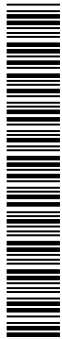
2                   “(ii) the frequency, seriousness, and  
3                   incidence of violence and drug related of-  
4                   fenses resulting in suspensions and expul-  
5                   sion in elementary and secondary schools  
6                   in States.

7                   “(B) COMPILATION OF STATISTICS.—The  
8                   statistics shall be compiled in accordance with  
9                   definitions as determined in the State criminal  
10                  code, but shall not identify victims of crimes or  
11                  persons accused of crimes. The collected data  
12                  shall include, incident reports by school offi-  
13                  cials, anonymous student surveys, and anony-  
14                  mous teacher surveys.

15                  “(C) REPORTING.—Such data and statis-  
16                  tics shall be reported to the public and shall be  
17                  reported on a school-by-school basis.

18                  “(D) LIMITATION.—Nothing in this sub-  
19                  section shall be construed to authorize the Sec-  
20                  retary to require particular policies, procedures,  
21                  or practices with respect to crimes on school  
22                  property or school security.

23                  “(3) SAFE SCHOOLS.—The State shall establish  
24                  and implement a statewide policy requiring that stu-  
25                  dents attending persistently dangerous public ele-



1 elementary and secondary schools, as determined by  
2 the State, or who become a victim of a violent criminal  
3 offense, as defined by State law, while in or on  
4 the grounds of a public elementary school or secondary  
5 school that the student attends, be allowed to  
6 attend a safe public elementary or secondary school,  
7 within the local educational agency, including a public  
8 charter school and allowing payment of reasonable  
9 transportation costs and tuition costs for such  
10 students.

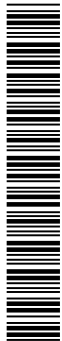
11 **“SEC. 5113. STATE APPLICATION.**

12 “(a) IN GENERAL.—In order to receive an allotment  
13 under section 5111 for any fiscal year, a State shall submit  
14 to the Secretary, at such time as the Secretary may  
15 require, an application that—

16 “(1) describes the activities to be funded under  
17 section 5112(c);

18 “(2) describes how activities funded under this  
19 subpart will support State academic achievement  
20 standards in accordance with section 1111;

21 “(3) describes how funds under this subpart  
22 will be coordinated with programs under this Act,  
23 and other programs, as appropriate, in accordance  
24 with the provisions of section 8306;



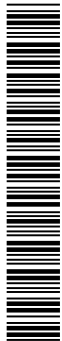


1           “(4) provides an assurance that the application  
2 was developed in consultation and coordination with  
3 appropriate State officials and others, including the  
4 chief executive officer, the chief State school officer,  
5 the head of the State alcohol and drug abuse agency,  
6 the heads of the State health and mental health  
7 agencies, the head of the State criminal justice plan-  
8 ning agency, the head of the State child welfare  
9 agency, the head of the State board of education, or  
10 their designees, and representatives of parents, stu-  
11 dents, and community-based organizations;

12           “(5) provides an assurance that the State will  
13 cooperate with, and assist, the Secretary in con-  
14 ducting data collection as required by section  
15 5116(a);

16           “(6) provides an assurance that the local edu-  
17 cational agencies in the State will comply with the  
18 provisions of section 8503 pertaining to the partici-  
19 pation of private school children and teachers in the  
20 programs and activities under this subpart;

21           “(7) provides an assurance that funds under  
22 this subpart will be used to increase the level of  
23 State, local, and other non-Federal funds that  
24 would, in the absence of funds under this subpart,  
25 be made available for programs and activities au-



1       thorized under this subpart, and in no case supplant  
2       such State, local, and other non-Federal funds;

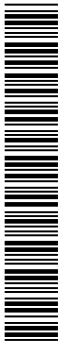
3               “(8) describes the results of the State’s needs  
4       and resources assessment for violence and illegal  
5       drug use prevention which shall be based on the re-  
6       sults of on-going evaluation (which may include data  
7       on the incidence and prevalence, age of onset, per-  
8       ception of health risk and perception of social dis-  
9       approval of violence and illegal drug use by youth in  
10      schools and communities and the prevalence of risk  
11      and protective factors or other scientifically based  
12      research variables in the school and community);

13              “(9)(A) provides a statement of the State’s per-  
14      formance measures for drug and violence prevention  
15      programs and activities to be funded under this part  
16      that shall be developed in consultation between the  
17      State and local officials and that consist of—

18                      “(i) performance indicators for drug and  
19                      violence prevention programs and activities; and

20                      “(ii) levels of performance for each per-  
21                      formance indicator;

22              “(B) a description of the procedures the State  
23      will use for assessing and publicly reporting progress  
24      toward meeting those performance measures; and



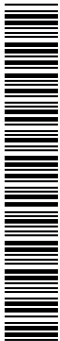
1           “(C) a plan for monitoring the implementation  
2 of, and providing technical assistance regarding, the  
3 activities and programs conducted by local edu-  
4 cational agencies, community-based organizations,  
5 other public entities, and private organizations under  
6 this subpart;

7           “(10) provides an assurance that the State will  
8 consult with a representative sample of local edu-  
9 cational agencies in the development of the definition  
10 of ‘persistently dangerous school’ for the purposes of  
11 section 5112(c)(3);

12           “(11) provides a description of how the State  
13 defines “persistently dangerous school” for the pur-  
14 poses of section 5112(c)(3);

15           “(12) provides an assurance that the State ap-  
16 plication will be available for public review after sub-  
17 mission of the application.

18           “(b) GENERAL APPROVAL.—A State application sub-  
19 mitted pursuant to subsection (a) shall be deemed to be  
20 approved by the Secretary unless the Secretary makes a  
21 written determination, prior to the expiration of the 90-  
22 day period beginning on the date that the Secretary re-  
23 ceives the application, that the application is in violation  
24 of this subpart.



1       “(c) DISAPPROVAL.—The Secretary shall not finally  
2 disapprove a State application, except after giving the  
3 State notice and opportunity for a hearing.

4       **“SEC. 5114. FORMULA GRANT PROGRAM.**

5       “(a) IN GENERAL.—

6               “(1) FUNDS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
7 CIES.—A State shall provide the amount made avail-  
8 able to the State under this subpart, less the  
9 amounts reserved under sections 5111 and 5112 to  
10 local educational agencies for drug and violence pre-  
11 vention and education as follows:

12                       “(A) 60 percent of such amount based on  
13 the relative amount such agencies received  
14 under part A of title I for the preceding fiscal  
15 year.

16                       “(B) 40 percent of such amount to local  
17 educational agencies based on the relative en-  
18 rollments in public and private nonprofit ele-  
19 mentary and secondary schools within the  
20 boundaries of such agencies.

21               “(2) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Of the amount  
22 received under paragraph (1), a local educational  
23 agency may use not more than 1 percent for the ad-  
24 ministrative costs of carrying out its responsibilities  
25 under this subpart.



1           “(3) RETURN OF FUNDS TO STATE; REALLOCA-  
2           TION.—

3           “(A) RETURN.—Except as provided in  
4           subparagraph (B), upon the expiration of the 1-  
5           year period beginning on the date that a local  
6           educational agency receives its allocation—

7                   “(i) such agency shall return to the  
8                   State any funds from such allocation that  
9                   remain unobligated; and

10                   “(ii) the State shall reallocate any  
11                   such amount to local educational agencies  
12                   that have submitted plans for using such  
13                   amount for programs or activities on a  
14                   timely basis.

15           “(B) CARRYOVER.—In any fiscal year, a  
16           local educational agency, may retain for obliga-  
17           tion in the succeeding fiscal year—

18                   “(i) an amount equal to not more  
19                   than 25 percent of the allocation it re-  
20                   ceived under this subpart for such fiscal  
21                   year; or

22                   “(ii) upon a demonstration of good  
23                   cause by such agency and approval by the  
24                   State, an amount that exceeds 25 percent  
25                   of such allocation.



1 “(b) ELIGIBILITY.—

2 “(1) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to receive a  
3 subgrant under this subpart, a local educational  
4 agency desiring a subgrant shall submit an applica-  
5 tion to the State. Such an application shall be  
6 amended, as necessary, to reflect changes in the ac-  
7 tivities and programs of the local educational agen-  
8 cy.

9 “(c) DEVELOPMENT.—

10 “(1) CONSULTATION.—

11 “(A) IN GENERAL.—A local educational  
12 agency shall develop its application through  
13 timely and meaningful consultation with State  
14 and local government representatives, represent-  
15 atives of schools to be served, school personnel,  
16 and community organizations with relevant and  
17 demonstrated expertise in drug and violence  
18 prevention activities, students and parents.

19 “(B) CONTINUED CONSULTATION.—On an  
20 ongoing basis, the local educational agency shall  
21 consult with such representatives and organiza-  
22 tions in order to seek advice regarding how best  
23 to coordinate such agency’s activities under this  
24 subpart with other related strategies, programs,



1 and activities being conducted in the commu-  
2 nity.

3 “(2) DESIGN AND DEVELOPMENT.—To ensure  
4 timely and meaningful consultation, a local edu-  
5 cational agency at the initial stages of design and  
6 development of a program or activity shall consult,  
7 in accordance with this subsection, with appropriate  
8 entities and persons on issues regarding the design  
9 and development of the program or activity, includ-  
10 ing efforts to meet the principles of effectiveness de-  
11 scribed in section 5115(a).

12 “(d) CONTENTS OF APPLICATIONS.—

13 “(1) IN GENERAL.—An application submitted  
14 by a local educational agency under this section shall  
15 contain—

16 “(A) an assurance that the activities or  
17 programs to be funded support State academic  
18 achievement goals in accordance with section  
19 1111;

20 “(B) a detailed explanation of the local  
21 educational agency’s comprehensive plan for  
22 drug and violence prevention, which shall in-  
23 clude a description of—

24 “(i) how the plan will be coordinated  
25 with programs under this Act, other Fed-



1 eral, State, and local programs for drug  
2 and violence prevention, in accordance with  
3 the provisions of section 8306;

4 “(ii) the local educational agency’s  
5 performance measures for drug and vio-  
6 lence prevention programs and activities,  
7 that shall consist of—

8 “(I) performance indicators for  
9 drug and violence prevention pro-  
10 grams and activities; and

11 “(II) levels of performance for  
12 each performance indicator;

13 “(iii) how such agency will assess and  
14 publicly report progress toward attaining  
15 its performance measures;

16 “(iv) the drug and violence prevention  
17 activity or program to be funded, including  
18 how the activity or program will meet the  
19 principles of effectiveness described in sec-  
20 tion 5115(a), and the means of evaluating  
21 such activity or program; and

22 “(v) how the services will be targeted  
23 to schools and students with the greatest  
24 need;





1           “(C) a certification that a meaningful as-  
2           sessment has been conducted to determine com-  
3           munity needs (including consultation with com-  
4           munity leaders, businesses, and school officials),  
5           available resources and capacity in the public  
6           and private sector (which may include an anal-  
7           ysis based on data reasonably available at the  
8           time on the incidence and prevalence, age of  
9           onset, perception of health risk, and perception  
10          of social disapproval of drug use and violence  
11          by youth in schools and communities, preva-  
12          lence of risk and protective factors, buffers or  
13          assets, or other scientifically based research  
14          variables in the school and community), the  
15          findings of such assessments;

16          “(D) an assurance that funds under this  
17          subpart will be used to increase the level of  
18          State, local, and other non-Federal funds that  
19          would, in the absence of funds under this sub-  
20          part, be made available for programs and activi-  
21          ties authorized under this subpart, and in no  
22          case supplant such State, local, and other non-  
23          Federal funds;

24          “(E) a description of the mechanisms used  
25          to provide effective notice to the community of



1 an intention to submit an application under this  
2 title;

3 “(F) an assurance that drug prevention  
4 programs supported under this part convey a  
5 clear and consistent message that the illegal use  
6 of drugs is wrong and harmful;

7 “(G) an assurance that the local edu-  
8 cational agency has established and imple-  
9 mented a student code of conduct policy that  
10 clearly states responsibilities of students, teach-  
11 ers, and administrators in maintaining a class-  
12 room environment that allows a teacher to com-  
13 municate effectively with all students in the  
14 class, that allows all students in the class to  
15 learn, has consequences that are fair and ap-  
16 propriate for violations, and is enforced equi-  
17 tably;

18 “(H) an assurance that the application and  
19 any waiver request will be available for public  
20 review after submission of the application; and

21 “(I) such other information and assurances  
22 as the State may reasonably require.

23 “(2) GENERAL APPROVAL.—A local educational  
24 agency’s application submitted to the State under  
25 this subpart shall be deemed to be approved by the



1 State unless the State makes a written determina-  
2 tion, prior to the expiration of the 90-day period be-  
3 ginning on the date that the State receives the appli-  
4 cation, that the application is in violation of this  
5 subpart.

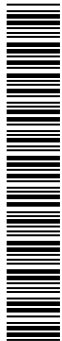
6 “(3) DISAPPROVAL.—The State shall not finally  
7 disapprove a local educational agency application,  
8 except after giving such agency notice and an oppor-  
9 tunity for a hearing.

10 **“SEC. 5115. AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.**

11 “(a) PRINCIPLES OF EFFECTIVENESS.—

12 “(1) IN GENERAL.—For a program or activity  
13 developed pursuant to this subpart to meet the prin-  
14 ciples of effectiveness, such program or activity  
15 shall—

16 “(A) be based upon an assessment of ob-  
17 jective data regarding the incidence of violence  
18 and illegal drug use in the elementary and sec-  
19 ondary schools and communities to be served,  
20 including an objective analysis of the current  
21 conditions and consequences regarding violence  
22 and illegal drug use, including delinquency and  
23 serious discipline problems, among students  
24 who attend such schools (including private  
25 school students who participate in the drug and



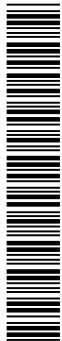
1 violence prevention program) that is based on  
2 ongoing local assessment or evaluation activi-  
3 ties;

4 “(B) be based upon an established set of  
5 performance measures aimed at ensuring that  
6 the elementary and secondary schools and com-  
7 munities to be served by the program have a  
8 drug-free, safe, and orderly learning environ-  
9 ment; and

10 “(C) be based upon scientifically based re-  
11 search that provides evidence that the program  
12 to be used will reduce violence and illegal drug  
13 use.

14 “(2) PERIODIC EVALUATION.—The program or  
15 activity shall undergo a periodic evaluation to assess  
16 its progress toward reducing violence and illegal  
17 drug use in schools to be served based on perform-  
18 ance measures described in section 5114(d)(1)(B)(ii)  
19 The results shall be used to refine, improve, and  
20 strengthen the program, and to refine the perform-  
21 ance measures. The results shall also be made avail-  
22 able to the public upon request, with public notice  
23 of such availability provided.

24 “(3) WAIVER.—A local educational agency may  
25 apply to the State for a waiver of the requirement



1 of paragraph (1)(C) to allow innovative activities or  
2 programs that demonstrate substantial likelihood of  
3 success.

4 “(b) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY ACTIVITIES.—

5 “(1) PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS.—A local edu-  
6 cational agency shall use funds made available under  
7 section 5114 to develop, implement, and evaluate  
8 comprehensive programs and activities, which are co-  
9 ordinated with other school and community-based  
10 services and programs, that shall—

11 “(A) support State academic achievement  
12 goals in accordance with section 1111;

13 “(B) be consistent with the principles of  
14 effectiveness described in subsection (a);

15 “(C) be designed to—

16 “(i) prevent or reduce violence and il-  
17 legal drug use, delinquency, serious dis-  
18 cipline problems, and poor academic  
19 achievement and illegal drug use; and

20 “(ii) create a well disciplined environ-  
21 ment conducive to learning, which includes  
22 consultation between teachers, principals,  
23 and other school personnel to identify early  
24 warning signs of drug use and violence and



1 to provide behavioral interventions as part  
2 of classroom management efforts; and

3 “(D) include activities to promote the in-  
4 volvement of parents in the activity or program,  
5 to promote coordination with community groups  
6 and coalitions, and government agencies, and to  
7 distribute information about the local edu-  
8 cational agency’s needs, goals, and programs  
9 under this subpart.

10 “(2) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—Each local  
11 educational agency or consortium of such agencies,  
12 that receives a subgrant under this subpart may use  
13 such funds to carry out activities, such as—

14 “(A) developmentally appropriate drug and  
15 violence prevention programs in both elemen-  
16 tary and secondary schools that incorporate a  
17 variety of prevention strategies and activities,  
18 which may include—

19 “(i) teaching students that most peo-  
20 ple do not use illegal drugs;

21 “(ii) teaching students to recognize  
22 social and peer pressure to use illegal  
23 drugs and the skills for resisting illegal  
24 drug use;



1                   “(iii) teaching students about the dan-  
2                   gers of emerging drugs;

3                   “(iv) engaging students in the learn-  
4                   ing process;

5                   “(v) incorporating activities in sec-  
6                   ondary schools that reinforce prevention  
7                   activities implemented in elementary  
8                   schools; and

9                   “(vi) involving families and commu-  
10                  nities in setting clear expectations against  
11                  violence and illegal drug use and enforcing  
12                  appropriate consequences for violence and  
13                  illegal drug use;

14                  “(B) training of school personnel and par-  
15                  ents in youth drug and violence prevention, in-  
16                  cluding training in early identification, interven-  
17                  tion, and prevention of threatening behavior;

18                  “(C) community-wide strategies for reduc-  
19                  ing violence and illegal drug use, and illegal  
20                  gang activity;

21                  “(D) to the extent that expenditures do  
22                  not exceed 20 percent of the amount made  
23                  available to a local educational agency under  
24                  this subpart, law enforcement and security ac-  
25                  tivities, including—



1                   “(i) acquisition and installation of  
2 metal detectors;

3                   “(ii) hiring and training of security  
4 personnel, that are related to youth drug  
5 and violence prevention;

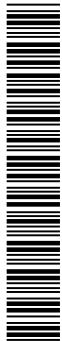
6                   “(iii) reporting of criminal offenses on  
7 school property;

8                   “(iv) development of comprehensive  
9 school security assessments;

10                  “(E) expanding and improving school-  
11 based mental health services, including early  
12 identification of violence and illegal drug use,  
13 assessment, and direct individual or group  
14 counseling services provided to students, par-  
15 ents, and school personnel by qualified school  
16 based mental health services personnel;

17                  “(F) establishing and maintaining peer  
18 mediation programs that include educating and  
19 training peer mediators and a designated fac-  
20 ulty supervisor and purchasing necessary mate-  
21 rials to facilitate training and the mediation  
22 process;

23                  “(G) alternative education programs or  
24 services that reduce the need for suspensions or  
25 expulsions or programs or services for students





1 who have been expelled or suspended from the  
2 regular educational settings, including programs  
3 or services to assist students to reenter the reg-  
4 ular education setting upon return from treat-  
5 ment or alternative education programs;

6 “(H) counseling, mentoring, and referral  
7 services, and other student assistance practices  
8 and programs, including assistance provided by  
9 qualified school based mental health services  
10 personnel and the training of teachers by  
11 school-based mental health service providers in  
12 appropriate identification and intervention tech-  
13 niques for students, at risk of violent behavior  
14 and drug use;

15 “(I) activities that reduce truancy;

16 “(J) age appropriate, developmentally  
17 based violence prevention and education pro-  
18 grams that address the legal, health, personal,  
19 and social consequences of illegal drug use and  
20 violent and disruptive behavior and that include  
21 activities designed to help students develop a  
22 sense of individual responsibility and respect for  
23 the rights of others, and to resolve conflicts  
24 without violence;



1           “(K) providing guidance to students that  
2 encourages students to seek advice for anxiety,  
3 threats of violence, or actual violence and to  
4 confide in a trusted adult regarding an uncom-  
5 fortable or threatening situation;

6           “(L) the development of educational pro-  
7 grams that prevent school based crime, includ-  
8 ing preventing crimes motivated by hate that  
9 result in acts of physical violence at school and  
10 any programs or published materials that ad-  
11 dress school based crime shall not recommend  
12 or require any action that abridges or infringes  
13 upon the constitutionally protected rights of  
14 free speech, religion, and equal protection of  
15 students, their parents, or legal guardians;

16           “(M) testing students for illegal drug use  
17 or conducting student locker searches for illegal  
18 drugs or drug paraphernalia consistent with the  
19 4th amendment to the Constitution;

20           “(N) emergency intervention services fol-  
21 lowing traumatic crisis events, such as a shoot-  
22 ing, major accident, or a drug-related incident,  
23 that has disrupted the learning environment;

24           “(O) establishing and implementing a sys-  
25 tem for transferring suspension and expulsion

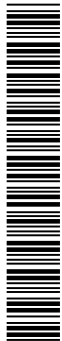


1 records by a local educational agency to any  
2 public or private elementary or secondary  
3 school;

4 “(P) allowing students attending a persist-  
5 ently dangerous public elementary or secondary  
6 school, as determined by the State, or who be-  
7 come a victim of a violent criminal offense, as  
8 defined by State law, while in or on the grounds  
9 of a public elementary school or secondary  
10 school that the student attends, to attend a safe  
11 public elementary or secondary school, within  
12 the local educational agency, including a public  
13 charter school, and allowing payment of reason-  
14 able transportation costs and tuition costs for  
15 such students;

16 “(Q) the development and implementation  
17 of character education and training programs  
18 that reflect values, that take into account the  
19 views of parents or guardians of the student for  
20 whom the program is intended, which may in-  
21 clude honesty, citizenship, courage, justice, re-  
22 spect, personal responsibility, and trust-  
23 worthiness;

24 “(R) establishing and maintaining a school  
25 violence hotline;



1           “(S) activities to ensure students’ safe  
2           travel to and from school, including pedestrian  
3           and bicycle safety education; and

4           “(T) the evaluation of any of the activities  
5           authorized under this subsection and the collec-  
6           tion of any data required by this part.

7   **“SEC. 5116. EVALUATION AND REPORTING.**

8           “(a) DATA COLLECTION.—

9           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The National Center for  
10          Education Statistics shall report, and when appro-  
11          priate, collect data to determine the frequency, seri-  
12          ousness, and incidence of illegal drug use and vio-  
13          lence by youth in schools and communities in the  
14          States, using if appropriate, data submitted by the  
15          States pursuant to subsection (b).

16          “(2) REPORT.—The Secretary shall submit to  
17          the Congress a report on the data collected under  
18          this subsection.

19          “(b) STATE REPORT.—

20          “(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than October 1,  
21          2004, and every third year thereafter, the chief execu-  
22          tive officer of a State, in consultation with the  
23          State educational agency, shall submit to the Sec-  
24          retary a report on the implementation and effective-  
25          ness of State and local programs under this subpart.



1           “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—The report required by  
2 this subsection shall be—

3           “(A) based on the State’s ongoing evalua-  
4 tion activities, and shall include data on the  
5 prevalence of violence and illegal drug use by  
6 youth in schools and communities; and

7           “(B) made available to the public upon re-  
8 quest, with public notice of such availability  
9 provided.

10          “(c) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY REPORT.—Each  
11 local educational agency receiving funds under this sub-  
12 part shall submit to the State such information, and at  
13 such intervals as the State reasonably requires to complete  
14 the State report required by subsection (b), information  
15 on the prevalence of violence and illegal drug use by youth  
16 in the schools and the community and the progress of the  
17 local educational agency toward meeting its performance  
18 measures. The report shall be made available to the public  
19 upon request, with public notice of such availability pro-  
20 vided.

21                           **“Subpart 2—21st Century Schools**

22           **“SEC. 5121. STATE ALLOTMENTS FOR 21ST CENTURY**  
23                           **SCHOOLS.**

24           “(a) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in para-  
2           graph (2), from the amount made available under  
3           section 5003(2) to carry out this subpart for each  
4           fiscal year, the Secretary shall allocate among the  
5           States—

6                   “(A) one-half of such amount according to  
7                   the ratio between the school-aged population of  
8                   each State and the school-aged population of all  
9                   the States; and

10                   “(B) one-half of such amount according to  
11                   the ratio between the amount each State re-  
12                   ceived under part A of title I for the preceding  
13                   year and the sum of such amounts received by  
14                   all the States.

15           “(2) MINIMUM.—For any fiscal year, no State  
16           shall be allotted under this subsection an amount  
17           that is less than one-half of 1 percent of the total  
18           amount allotted to all the States under this sub-  
19           section.

20           “(b) REALLOTMENT OF UNUSED FUNDS.—If any  
21           State does not apply for an allotment under this subpart  
22           for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall reallocate the amount  
23           of the State’s allotment to the remaining States in accord-  
24           ance with this section.

25           “(c) STATE FUNDS.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State that receives a  
2 grant under this subpart shall reserve an amount  
3 equal to the amount allotted to such State under  
4 subsection (a), less the amount reserved under para-  
5 graphs (2) and (3) of this subsection, for each fiscal  
6 year for its local educational agencies.

7           “(2) STATE ADMINISTRATION.—A State may  
8 use not more than 1 percent of the amount made  
9 available under subsection (a) for the administrative  
10 costs of carrying out its responsibilities under this  
11 subpart.

12           “(3) STATE ACTIVITIES.—A State may use not  
13 more than 4 percent of the amount made available  
14 under subsection (a) for the following activities:

15                   “(A) Monitoring and evaluation of pro-  
16 grams and activities assisted under this sub-  
17 part.

18                   “(B) Providing capacity building, training,  
19 and technical assistance under this subpart.

20 **“SEC. 5122. STATE APPLICATION.**

21           “(a) IN GENERAL.—In order to receive an allotment  
22 under section 5121(a) for any fiscal year, a State shall  
23 submit to the Secretary, at such time as the Secretary may  
24 require, an application that—



1           “(1) designates the State educational agency as  
2           the agency responsible for the administration and  
3           supervision of programs assisted under this subpart;

4           “(2) describes the competitive procedures and  
5           criteria the State will use to ensure that grants  
6           under this subpart will support quality extended  
7           learning opportunities;

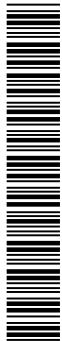
8           “(3) an assurance that the program will pri-  
9           marily target schools eligible for schoolwide pro-  
10          grams under section 1114;

11          “(4) describes the steps the State will take to  
12          ensure that programs implement effective strategies,  
13          including providing ongoing technical assistance and  
14          training, evaluation, and dissemination of promising  
15          practices;

16          “(5) describe how activities funded under this  
17          subpart will support State academic achievement  
18          goals in accordance with section 1111;

19          “(6) describe how funds under this subpart will  
20          be coordinated with programs under this Act, and  
21          other programs; as appropriate, in accordance with  
22          the provisions of section 8306;

23          “(7) provides an assurance that funds under  
24          this subpart will be used to increase the level of  
25          State, local, and other non-Federal funds that





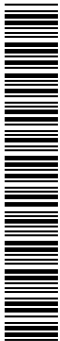
1 would, in the absence of funds under this subpart,  
2 be made available for programs and activities au-  
3 thorized under this subpart; and in no case supplant  
4 such State, local, and other non-Federal funds:

5 “(8) provides an assurance that the application  
6 was developed in consultation and coordination with  
7 appropriate State officials, including the chief State  
8 school officer, the heads of the State health and  
9 mental health agencies or their designees, represent-  
10 atives of teachers, parents, students, the business  
11 community, and community-based organizations, in-  
12 cluding religious organizations;

13 “(9) describes the results of the State’s needs  
14 and resources assessment for before and after school  
15 activities, which shall be based on the results of on-  
16 going State evaluation activities;

17 “(10) describes how the State will evaluate the  
18 effectiveness of programs and activities carried out  
19 under this subpart which shall include at a  
20 minimum—

21 “(A) a description of the performance indi-  
22 cators and performance measures that will be  
23 used to evaluate programs and activities; and



1           “(B) public dissemination of the evalua-  
2           tions of programs and activities carried out  
3           under this subpart; and

4           “(11) provides for timely public notice of intent  
5           to file application and an assurance that the applica-  
6           tion will be available for public review after submis-  
7           sion of the application.

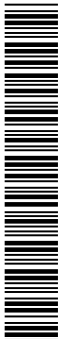
8           “(b) **GENERAL APPROVAL.**—A State application sub-  
9           mitted pursuant to subsection (a) shall be deemed to be  
10          approved by the Secretary unless the Secretary makes a  
11          written determination, prior to the expiration of the 90-  
12          day period beginning on the date that the Secretary re-  
13          ceives the application, that the application is in violation  
14          of this subpart.

15          “(c) **DISAPPROVAL.**—The Secretary shall not finally  
16          disapprove a State application, except after giving the  
17          State notice and opportunity for a hearing.

18          **“SEC. 5123. COMPETITIVE GRANT PROGRAM.**

19          “(a) **IN GENERAL.**—A State that receives funds  
20          under this subpart shall provide the amount made avail-  
21          able under section 5121 to eligible entities for 21st cen-  
22          tury community learning programs in accordance with this  
23          subpart.

24          “(b) **ELIGIBILITY.**—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to receive a  
2           subgrant under this subpart, an eligible entity desir-  
3           ing a subgrant shall submit an application to the  
4           State that contains—

5                   “(A) a description of the before and after  
6                   school activity to be funded including—

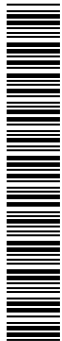
7                           “(i) an assurance that the program  
8                           will take place in a safe and easily acces-  
9                           sible facility;

10                           “(ii) a description of how students  
11                           participating in the center will travel safely  
12                           to and from the community learning center  
13                           and back home; and

14                           “(iii) a description of how the eligible  
15                           applicant will disseminate information  
16                           about the project (including its location) to  
17                           the community in a manner that is under-  
18                           standable and accessible.

19                           “(B) a description of how the activity is  
20                           expected to improve student academic perform-  
21                           ance;

22                           “(C) a description of how the activity will  
23                           meet the principles of effectiveness described in  
24                           section 5124;



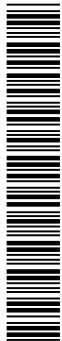
1           “(D) an assurance that the program will  
2 primarily target students who attend schools el-  
3 igible for schoolwide programs under section  
4 1114;

5           “(E) provides an assurance that funds  
6 under this subpart will be used to increase the  
7 level of State, local, and other non-Federal  
8 funds that would, in the absence of funds under  
9 this subpart, be made available for programs  
10 and activities authorized under this subpart;  
11 and in no case supplant such State, local, and  
12 other non-Federal funds;

13           “(F) a description of the partnership with  
14 local educational agency, a community-based or-  
15 ganization, and another public entity or private  
16 organization, if appropriate;

17           “(G) a certification that a meaningful as-  
18 sessment has been conducted to determine com-  
19 munity needs, available resources and capacity  
20 in the findings of such assessments, and a de-  
21 scription of the mechanisms used to provide ef-  
22 fective notice to the community of an intention  
23 to submit an application under this subpart;

24           “(H) a description of the applicants experi-  
25 ence, or promise of success, in providing edu-



1 cational or related activities that will com-  
2 pliment and enhance the student's academic  
3 achievement;

4 “(I) an assurance that the applicant will  
5 develop a plan to continue the activity after  
6 funding under this subpart ends;

7 “(J) an assurance that the application and  
8 any waiver request will be available for public  
9 review after submission of the application; and

10 “(K) such other information and assur-  
11 ances as the State may reasonably require.

12 “(2) ELIGIBLE ENTITY.—An eligible entity  
13 under this subpart is a local educational agency,  
14 community-based organization, and other public en-  
15 tity or private organization or a consortium of two  
16 or more of such groups.

17 “(c) PEER REVIEW.—In reviewing local applications  
18 under this section, a State shall use a peer review process  
19 or other methods of assuring the quality of such applica-  
20 tions.

21 “(d) GEOGRAPHIC DIVERSITY.—To the extent prac-  
22 ticable, a State shall distribute funds equitably among geo-  
23 graphic areas within the State.



1       “(e) DURATION OF AWARDS.—Grants under this  
2 subpart may be awarded for a period of not less than 3  
3 years and not more than 5 years.

4       “(f) AMOUNT OF AWARDS.—A grant awarded under  
5 this subpart may not be made in an amount of less than  
6 \$50,000.

7       “(g) PRIORITY.—In making awards under this sub-  
8 part, the State shall give priority to applications submitted  
9 by applicants proposing to target services to students who  
10 attend schools that have been identified as in need of im-  
11 provement under section 1116.

12       “(h) PERMISSIVE LOCAL MATCH.—

13               “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State may require an eli-  
14 gible entity to match funds awarded under this sub-  
15 part, except that such match may not exceed the  
16 amount of the grant award.

17               “(2) SLIDING SCALE.—The amount of a match  
18 under paragraph (1) shall be established based on a  
19 sliding fee scale that takes into account—

20                       “(A) the relative poverty of the population  
21 to be targeted by the eligible entity; and

22                       “(B) the ability of the eligible entity to ob-  
23 tain such matching funds.

24               “(3) CONSIDERATION.—Notwithstanding this  
25 subsection, a State shall not consider an eligible en-



1           tity’s ability to match funds when determining which  
2           eligible entities will receive subgrants under this sub-  
3           part.

4   **“SEC. 5124. LOCAL ACTIVITIES.**

5           “(a) PRINCIPLES OF EFFECTIVENESS.—

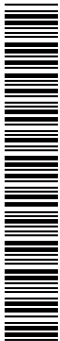
6                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—For a program or activity  
7           developed pursuant to this subpart to meet the prin-  
8           ciples of effectiveness, such program or activity  
9           shall—

10                   “(A) be based upon an assessment of ob-  
11           jective data regarding the need for before and  
12           after school programs and activities in such  
13           schools and communities;

14                   “(B) be based upon an established set of  
15           performance measures aimed at ensuring the  
16           availability of quality extended learning oppor-  
17           tunities; and

18                   “(C) if appropriate, be based upon scientif-  
19           ically based research that provides evidence that  
20           the program will help students meet State and  
21           local performance standards to be used.

22                   “(2) PERIODIC EVALUATION.—The program or  
23           activity shall undergo a periodic evaluation to assess  
24           its progress toward achieving its goal of providing  
25           quality extended learning opportunities. The results



1 shall be used to refine, improve, and strengthen the  
2 program, and to refine the performance measures.  
3 The results shall also be made available to the public  
4 upon request, with public notice of such availability  
5 provided.

6 “(3) WAIVER.—A local educational agency may  
7 apply to the State for a waiver of the requirement  
8 of paragraph (1)(C) to allow innovative activities or  
9 programs that demonstrate substantial likelihood of  
10 success.

11 “(b) SERVICES.—Each eligible entity that receives a  
12 subgrant under this subpart shall use such funds to estab-  
13 lish or expand activities in community learning centers  
14 that—

15 “(1) provide quality extended learning opportu-  
16 nities to help students, particularly students who at-  
17 tend low-performing schools, to meet State and local  
18 student performance standards in the core academic  
19 subjects, such as reading and mathematics; and

20 “(2) provide students with additional activities,  
21 such as drug and violence prevention programs, art  
22 and music programs, technology education pro-  
23 grams, recreational activity, and character education  
24 programs that are linked to, and reinforce, the reg-





1 ular academic program of schools those students at-  
2 tend.

3 “(c) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—Each eligible entity  
4 that receives a subgrant under this subpart may use such  
5 funds to carry out activities, such as—

6 “(1) before and after school activities that ad-  
7 vance student achievement, including—

8 “(A) remedial education activities and aca-  
9 demic enrichment learning programs, including  
10 providing additional assistance to students in  
11 order to allow them to improve their academic  
12 achievement;

13 “(B) math and science education activities;

14 “(C) arts and music education activities;

15 “(D) entrepreneurial education programs;

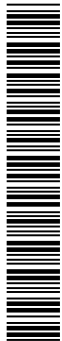
16 “(E) tutoring services (including those pro-  
17 vided by senior citizen volunteers) and men-  
18 toring programs;

19 “(F) recreational activities;

20 “(G) telecommunications and technology  
21 education programs;

22 “(H) expanded library service hours;

23 “(I) programs that promote parental in-  
24 volvement; and



1           “(J) programs that provide assistance to  
2           students who have been truant, suspended, or  
3           expelled to allow them to improve their aca-  
4           demic achievement; and

5           “(2) establishing or enhancing programs or ini-  
6           tiatives that improve academic achievement.

7           “(d) DEFINITION.—For the purpose of this section,  
8           a ‘community learning center’ is an entity that assists stu-  
9           dents to meet State and local content and student per-  
10          formance standards in core academic subjects, such as  
11          reading and mathematics, by providing them with quality  
12          extended learning opportunities and related activities  
13          (such as drug and violence-prevention programs, art and  
14          music programs, recreational programs, technology edu-  
15          cation programs, and character education programs) that  
16          are linked to, and reinforce, the regular academic program  
17          of schools attended by the students served and is operated  
18          by a local educational agency, community-based organiza-  
19          tion, other public entity or private organization or a con-  
20          sortium of two or more such groups. Community learning  
21          centers shall operate outside school hours, such as before  
22          or after school or when school is not in session.

23                           **“Subpart 3—National Programs**

24           **“SEC. 5131. FEDERAL ACTIVITIES.**

25           “(a) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—

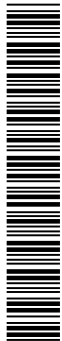


1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—From funds made available  
2           to carry out this part under section 5003(3), the  
3           Secretary, in consultation with the Secretary of  
4           Health and Human Services, the Director of the Of-  
5           fice of National Drug Control Policy, and the Attor-  
6           ney General, shall evaluate the effectiveness of pro-  
7           grams and activities that prevent violence and the il-  
8           legal use of drugs by youth, that promote safety and  
9           discipline for students in elementary and secondary  
10          schools, and that provide before and after school su-  
11          pervision and academic enrichment, based on the  
12          needs reported by States and local educational agen-  
13          cies.

14           “(2) COORDINATION.—The Secretary shall  
15          carry out activities described in paragraph (1) di-  
16          rectly, or through grants, contracts, or cooperative  
17          agreements with public and private nonprofit and  
18          for-profit organizations, and individuals, or through  
19          agreements with other Federal agencies, and shall  
20          coordinate such activities with other appropriate  
21          Federal activities.

22           “(3) PROGRAMS.—Activities described in para-  
23          graph (1) may include—

24                   “(A) demonstrations and rigorous scientif-  
25                   ically based evaluations of innovative ap-



1 proaches to drug and violence prevention and  
2 before and after school activities based on needs  
3 reported by State and local educational agen-  
4 cies;

5 “(B) the provision of information on drug  
6 abuse education and prevention to the Secretary  
7 of Health and Human Services for dissemina-  
8 tion by the clearinghouse for alcohol and drug  
9 abuse information established under section  
10 501(d)(16) of the Public Health Service Act;

11 “(C) the provision of information on vio-  
12 lence prevention and school safety to the Attor-  
13 ney General for dissemination; and

14 “(D) continuing technical assistance to  
15 chief executive officers, State agencies, and  
16 local educational agencies to build capacity to  
17 develop and implement high-quality, effective  
18 programs consistent with the principles of effec-  
19 tiveness.

20 “(b) PEER REVIEW.—The Secretary shall use a peer  
21 review process in reviewing applications for funds under  
22 this section.

23 **“Subpart 4—Gun Possession**

24 **“SEC. 5141. GUN-FREE SCHOOL REQUIREMENTS.**

25 “(a) REQUIREMENTS.—



1           “(1) STATE LAW.—Each State receiving funds  
2 under this Act shall—

3           “(A) have in effect a State law requiring  
4 each local educational agency to expel from  
5 school for a period of not less than one year a  
6 student who is determined to have possessed a  
7 firearm in or at a school or on school grounds  
8 under the jurisdiction of a local educational  
9 agency in that State, except that such State law  
10 shall allow the chief administering officer of  
11 such local educational agency to modify such  
12 expulsion requirement for a student on a case-  
13 by-case basis; and

14           “(B) require each local educational agency  
15 to adopt a policy requiring each elementary and  
16 secondary school to refer to the criminal justice  
17 or juvenile delinquency system any student who  
18 possesses a firearm in school.

19           “(2) CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this part  
20 shall be construed to prevent a State from allowing  
21 a local educational agency that has expelled a stu-  
22 dent from such student’s regular school setting from  
23 providing educational services to such student in an  
24 alternative setting.



1       “(b) REPORT TO STATE.—Each local educational  
2 agency requesting assistance from the State educational  
3 agency that is to be provided from funds made available  
4 to the State under this Act shall provide to the State, in  
5 the application requesting such assistance—

6               “(1) an assurance that such local educational  
7 agency is in compliance with the requirements of  
8 subsection (a); and

9               “(2) a description of the circumstances sur-  
10 rounding incidents of possessions and any expulsions  
11 imposed under the State law required by subsection  
12 (a)(1), including—

13                       “(A) the name of the school concerned;

14                       “(B) the number of students expelled from  
15 such school for firearm possession; and

16                       “(C) the type of firearm concerned.

17       “(c) SPECIAL RULE.—The provisions of this section  
18 shall be construed in a manner consistent with the Individ-  
19 uals with Disabilities Education Act.

20       “(d) DEFINITIONS.—For the purpose of this  
21 subpart—

22               “(1) the term ‘firearm’ has the same meaning  
23 given to such term under section 921(a)(3) of title  
24 18, United States Code; and



1           “(2) the term ‘school’ does not include a home  
2           school, regardless of whether a home school is treat-  
3           ed as a private school under State law.

4                           **“Subpart 5—General Provisions**

5           **“SEC. 5151. DEFINITIONS.**

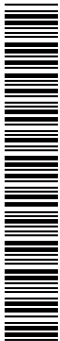
6           “For the purposes of this part, the following terms  
7           have the following meanings:

8                           “(1) BEFORE AND AFTER SCHOOL ACTIVI-  
9           TIES.—The term ‘before and after school activities’  
10           means academic, recreational, and enrichment activi-  
11           ties for school-age youth outside of the regular  
12           school hours or school year.

13                          “(2) CONTROLLED SUBSTANCE.—The term  
14           ‘controlled substance’ means a drug or other sub-  
15           stance identified under Schedule I, II, III, IV, or V  
16           in section 202(c) of the Controlled Substances Act  
17           (21 U.S.C. 812(e)).

18                          “(3) DRUG.—The term ‘drug’ includes con-  
19           trolled substances; the illegal use of alcohol and to-  
20           bacco; and the harmful, abusive, or addictive use of  
21           substances, including inhalants and anabolic  
22           steroids.

23                          “(4) DRUG AND VIOLENCE PREVENTION.—The  
24           term ‘drug and violence prevention’ means—

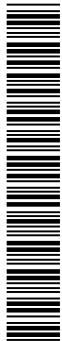


1           “(A) with respect to drugs, prevention,  
2           early intervention, rehabilitation referral, or  
3           education related to the illegal use of drugs;  
4           and

5           “(B) with respect to violence, the pro-  
6           motion of school safety, such that students and  
7           school personnel are free from violent and dis-  
8           ruptive acts, on school premises, going to and  
9           from school, and at school-sponsored activities,  
10          through the creation and maintenance of a  
11          school environment that is free of weapons and  
12          fosters individual responsibility and respect for  
13          the rights of others.

14          “(5) NONPROFIT.—The term ‘nonprofit,’ as ap-  
15          plied to a school, agency, organization, or institution  
16          means a school, agency, organization, or institution  
17          owned and operated by one or more nonprofit cor-  
18          porations or associations, no part of the net earnings  
19          of which inures, or may lawfully inure, to the benefit  
20          of any private shareholder or individual.

21          “(6) SCHOOL-AGED POPULATION.—The term  
22          ‘school-aged population’ means the population aged  
23          5 through 17, as determined by the Secretary on the  
24          basis of the most recent satisfactory data available  
25          from the Department of Commerce.





1           “(7) SCHOOL BASED MENTAL HEALTH SERV-  
2           ICES PROVIDER.—The term ‘school based mental  
3           health services provider’ includes a State licensed or  
4           State certified school counselor, school psychologist,  
5           school social worker, or other State licensed or cer-  
6           tified mental health professional qualified under  
7           State law to provide such services to children and  
8           adolescents.

9           “(8) SCHOOL PERSONNEL.—The term ‘school  
10          personnel’ includes teachers, principals, administra-  
11          tors, guidance counselors, social workers, psycholo-  
12          gists, nurses, librarians, and other support staff who  
13          are employed by a school or who perform services for  
14          the school on a contractual basis.

15          “(9) STATE.—The term ‘State’ means each of  
16          the 50 States, the District of Columbia, and the  
17          Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

18       **“SEC. 5152. MESSAGE AND MATERIALS.**

19          “(a) ‘WRONG AND HARMFUL’ MESSAGE.—Drug pre-  
20          vention programs supported under this title shall convey  
21          a clear and consistent message that the illegal use of drugs  
22          is wrong and harmful.

23          “(b) CURRICULUM.—The Secretary shall not pre-  
24          scribe the use of specific curricula for programs supported  
25          under this part.



1 **“SEC. 5153. PARENTAL CONSENT.**

2 “Upon receipt of written notification from the par-  
3 ents or legal guardians of a student, the local educational  
4 agency shall withdraw such student from any program or  
5 activity funded under this title. The local educational  
6 agency shall make reasonable efforts to inform parents or  
7 legal guardians of the content of such programs or activi-  
8 ties funded under this title, other than classroom instruc-  
9 tion.

10 **“SEC. 5154. PROHIBITED USES OF FUNDS.**

11 “No funds under this part may be used for—

12 “(1) construction (except for minor remodeling  
13 needed to accomplish the purposes of this part); or

14 “(2) medical services, drug treatment or reha-  
15 bilitation, except for pupil services or referral to  
16 treatment for students who are victims of, or wit-  
17 nesses to, use of drugs or crime.

18 **“PART B—ENHANCING EDUCATION THROUGH**  
19 **TECHNOLOGY**

20 **“SEC. 5201. SHORT TITLE.**

21 “This part may be cited as the ‘Enhancing Education  
22 Through Technology Act of 2001’.

23 **“SEC. 5202. PURPOSES.**

24 “The purposes of this part are as follows:

25 “(1) To provide assistance to States and local-  
26 ities for implementing innovative technology initia-



1 tives that lead to increased student academic  
2 achievement and that may be evaluated for effective-  
3 ness and replicated if successful.

4 “(2) To encourage the establishment or expan-  
5 sion of initiatives, including those involving public-  
6 private partnerships, designed to increase access to  
7 technology, particularly in high-need local edu-  
8 cational agencies.

9 “(3) To assist States and localities in the acqui-  
10 sition, development, interconnection, implementation,  
11 improvement, and maintenance of an effective edu-  
12 cational technology infrastructure in a manner that  
13 expands access to technology for students (particu-  
14 larly for disadvantaged students) and teachers.

15 “(4) To promote initiatives that provide school  
16 teachers, principals, and administrators with the ca-  
17 pacity to effectively integrate technology into cur-  
18 riculum that is aligned with challenging State aca-  
19 demic content and student academic achievement  
20 standards, through such means as high quality pro-  
21 fessional development programs.

22 “(5) To enhance the ongoing professional devel-  
23 opment of teachers, principals, and administrators  
24 by providing constant access to updated research in  
25 teaching and learning via electronic means.



1           “(6) To support the development of electronic  
2 networks and other innovative methods, such as dis-  
3 tance learning, of delivering challenging courses and  
4 curricula for students who would otherwise not have  
5 access to such courses and curricula, particularly in  
6 geographically remote regions.

7           “(7) To support the rigorous evaluation of pro-  
8 grams funded under this part, particularly the im-  
9 pact of such initiatives on student academic per-  
10 formance, and ensure that timely information on the  
11 results of such evaluations is widely accessible  
12 through electronic means.

13           “(8) To support local efforts for the use of  
14 technology to promote parent and family involve-  
15 ment in education and communication among stu-  
16 dents, parents, teachers, principals, and administra-  
17 tors.

18 **“SEC. 5203. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS; FUND-**  
19 **ING RULE.**

20           “(a) IN GENERAL.—There are authorized to be  
21 appropriated—

22           “(1) to carry out subparts 1 and 2 of this  
23 part—

24           “(A) \$1,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2002;  
25           and



1           “(B) such sums as may be necessary for  
2           each of fiscal years 2003 through 2006; and

3           “(2) there are authorized to be appropriated to  
4           carry out subpart 3 of this part—

5           “(A) \$24,500,000 for fiscal year 2002; and

6           “(B) such sums as may be necessary for  
7           each of fiscal years 2003 through 2006.

8           “(b) ALLOCATION OF FUNDS BETWEEN NATIONAL  
9           AND STATE AND LOCAL INITIATIVES.—The amount of  
10          funds made available under subsection (a) shall be allo-  
11          cated as follows:

12           “(1) Not less than 95 percent shall be made  
13           available for State and local technology initiatives  
14           under subpart 1.

15           “(2) Not more than 5 percent may be made  
16           available for activities of the Secretary under sub-  
17           part 2, of which not more than \$15,000,000 may be  
18           used for the study required by section 5221(a)(1).

19          **“SEC. 5204. DEFINITIONS.**

20           “‘In this part:

21           “(1) The term ‘distance learning’ means the  
22           transmission of educational or instructional pro-  
23           gramming to geographically dispersed individuals  
24           and groups via telecommunications.

25           “(2) The term ‘eligible local entity’ means—



1           “(A) a high-need local educational agency;

2           or

3           “(B) an eligible local partnership.

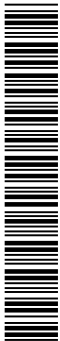
4           “(3) The term ‘eligible local partnership’ means  
5 a partnership that includes at least one high-need  
6 local educational agency and at least one—

7           “(A) local educational agency that can  
8 demonstrate that teachers in schools served by  
9 that agency are effectively integrating tech-  
10 nology and proven teaching practices into in-  
11 struction, based on scientifically based research,  
12 that result in improvement in—

13           “(i) classroom instruction in the core  
14 academic subject areas; and

15           “(ii) the preparation of students to  
16 meet challenging State academic content  
17 and student academic achievement stand-  
18 ards;

19           “(B) institution of higher education that is  
20 in full compliance with the reporting require-  
21 ments of section 207(f) of the Higher Edu-  
22 cation Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1027(f)) and  
23 that has not been identified by its State as low-  
24 performing under section 208 of such Act (20  
25 U.S.C. 1028);



1           “(C) for-profit business or organization  
2 that develops, designs, manufactures, or pro-  
3 duces technology products or services, or has  
4 substantial expertise in the application of tech-  
5 nology; or

6           “(D) public or private nonprofit organiza-  
7 tion with demonstrated experience in the appli-  
8 cation of educational technology.

9           “(4) The term ‘high-need local educational  
10 agency’ means a local educational agency that—

11           “(A) is among the local educational agen-  
12 cies in the State with the highest numbers or  
13 percentages of children from families with in-  
14 comes below the poverty line, as defined by the  
15 Office of Management and Budget and revised  
16 annually in accordance with section 673(2) of  
17 the Community Services Block Grant Act (42  
18 U.S.C. 9902(2));

19           “(B) includes one or more schools identi-  
20 fied under section 1116; and

21           “(C) has a substantial need for assistance  
22 in acquiring and using technology.



1 **“Subpart 1—State and Local Technology for Success**  
2 **Grants**

3 **“SEC. 5211. DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT OF STATE ALLOT-**  
4 **MENT.**

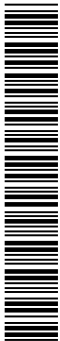
5 “(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise provided in  
6 this subpart, each State shall be eligible to receive a grant  
7 under this subpart for a fiscal year in an allotment deter-  
8 mined as follows:

9 “(1) 50 percent shall bear the same relationship  
10 to the amount made available under section  
11 5203(b)(1) for such year as the amount such State  
12 received under part A for title I for such year bears  
13 to the amount received for such year under such  
14 part by all States.

15 “(2) 50 percent shall be determined on the  
16 basis of the State’s relative population of individuals  
17 age 5 through 17, as determined by the Secretary on  
18 the basis of the most recent satisfactory data.

19 “(b) RESERVATION OF FUNDS FOR BUREAU OF IN-  
20 DIAN AFFAIRS AND OUTLYING AREAS.—Of the amount  
21 made available to carry out this subpart under section  
22 5203(b)(1) for a fiscal year—

23 “(1) the Secretary shall reserve  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent  
24 for the Secretary of the Interior for programs under  
25 this subpart for schools operated or funded by the  
26 Bureau of Indian Affairs; and





1           “(2) the Secretary shall reserve 1/2 of 1 percent  
2           to provide assistance under this subpart to the out-  
3           lying areas.

4           “(c) MINIMUM ALLOTMENT.—The amount of any  
5           State’s allotment under subsection (a) for any fiscal year  
6           may not be less than 1/2 of 1 percent of the amount made  
7           available under section 5203(b)(1) for such year.

8           “(d) REALLOTMENT OF UNUSED FUNDS.—If any  
9           State does not apply for an allotment under this subpart  
10          for a fiscal year, or does not use its entire allotment for  
11          that fiscal year, the Secretary shall reallocate the amount of  
12          the State’s allotment, or the unused portion thereof, to  
13          the remaining States in accordance with this section.

14          **“SEC. 5212. USE OF ALLOTMENT BY STATE.**

15          “(a) IN GENERAL.—Of the amount provided to a  
16          State from its allotment under section 5211—

17                  “(1) the State may use not more than 5 percent  
18                  to carry out activities under section 5215; and

19                  “(2) subject to subsection (b), not less than 95  
20                  percent shall be distributed by the State as follows:

21                          “(A) 60 percent of such amount shall—

22                                  “(i) be awarded to local educational  
23                                  agencies that have submitted applications  
24                                  to the State under section 5214 (which, in  
25                                  the case of a local educational agency that

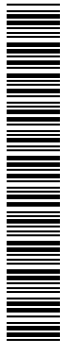


1 is an eligible local entity, may be combined  
2 with an application for funds awarded  
3 under subparagraph (B)), in an amount  
4 that bears the same relationship to the  
5 amount made available under section  
6 5211(a) for such year as the amount such  
7 local educational agency received under  
8 part A of title I for such year bears to the  
9 amount received for such year under such  
10 part by all local educational agencies with-  
11 in the State; and

12 “(ii) be used for the activities de-  
13 scribed in section 5216.

14 “(B) 40 percent of such amount shall be  
15 awarded through a State-determined competi-  
16 tive process to eligible local entities that have  
17 submitted applications to the State under sec-  
18 tion 5214 (which, in the case of an eligible local  
19 entity that is a local educational agency, may be  
20 combined with an application for funds provided  
21 under subparagraph (A)), to be used to carry  
22 out activities consistent with activities described  
23 in section 5216.

24 “(b) CONTINUATION OF AWARDS.—Notwithstanding  
25 section 3 of the No Child Left Behind Act of 2001, a State



1 shall make continuation awards on multiyear grants  
2 awarded by the State under section 3132(a)(2) (as in ef-  
3 fect on the day preceding the date of enactment of such  
4 Act) from the funds described in subsection (a)(2) for the  
5 shorter of—

6           “(1) the duration of the original grant period;

7           or

8           “(2) two years after the date of enactment of  
9           such Act.

10 **“SEC. 5213. STATE APPLICATIONS.**

11           “(a) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to receive a grant  
12 under this subpart, a State shall submit an application  
13 to the Secretary containing a new or updated statewide,  
14 long-range strategic educational technology plan (which  
15 shall consider the educational technology needs of local  
16 educational agencies), and such other information as the  
17 Secretary may reasonably require, at such time and in  
18 such manner as the Secretary may specify.

19           “(b) CONTENTS.—Each State application submitted  
20 under this section shall include the following:

21           “(1) A description of how the State will use  
22 funds provided under this subpart to improve the  
23 academic achievement of all students and to improve  
24 the capacity of all teachers to provide instruction in  
25 the State through the use of education technology.



1           “(2) A description of the State’s goals for using  
2           advanced technology to improve student achievement  
3           aligned to challenging State academic content and  
4           student academic achievement standards.

5           “(3) A description of how the State will take  
6           steps (including through public and private partner-  
7           ships) to ensure that all students and teachers in the  
8           State, particularly those residing or teaching in dis-  
9           tricts served by high-need local educational agencies,  
10          will have increased access to educational technology.

11          “(4) A description of—

12               “(A) how the State will ensure that ongo-  
13               ing integration of technology into instructional  
14               strategies and school curricula in all schools in  
15               the State so that technology will be fully inte-  
16               grated into those schools by December 31,  
17               2006; and

18               “(B) the process and accountability meas-  
19               ures the State will use for the evaluation of  
20               such integration, including whether such  
21               integration—

22                       “(i) has increased the ability of teach-  
23                       ers to teach effectively; and



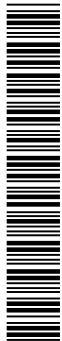
1                   “(ii) has enabled students to meet  
2                   challenging State academic content and  
3                   student academic achievement standards.

4                   “(5) A description of how the State will encour-  
5                   age the development and utilization of innovative  
6                   strategies for the delivery of specialized or rigorous  
7                   academic courses and curricula through the use of  
8                   technology and distance learning, particularly for  
9                   those areas of the State that would not otherwise  
10                  have access to such courses and curricula due to  
11                  geographical isolation or insufficient resources.

12                  “(6) An assurance that financial assistance pro-  
13                  vided under this subpart shall supplement, not sup-  
14                  plant, State and local funds.

15                  “(7) A description of how the State will ensure  
16                  that every teacher and principal within a school  
17                  funded under this subpart will be computer-literate  
18                  and proficient (as determined by the State) by De-  
19                  cember 31, 2006.

20                  “(8) A description of how the State will ensure  
21                  that each grant under section 5212(2)(B) to an eli-  
22                  gible local applicant is of sufficient duration, size,  
23                  scope, and quality to carry out the purposes of this  
24                  part effectively.



1           “(9) A description of how the State educational  
2           agency will provide technical assistance to eligible  
3           local applicants, and its capacity for providing such  
4           assistance, including developing public and private  
5           partnerships under this part.

6           “(c) DEEMED APPROVAL.—A State application sub-  
7           mitted to the Secretary under this section shall be deemed  
8           to be approved by the Secretary unless the Secretary  
9           makes a written determination, prior to the expiration of  
10          the 90-day period that begins on the date the Secretary  
11          receives the complete application, that the application does  
12          not reasonably meet the purposes of this subpart.

13          “(d) DISAPPROVAL.—The Secretary may issue a final  
14          disapproval of a State’s application under this subpart  
15          only after giving the State notice and an opportunity for  
16          a hearing.

17          “(e) DISSEMINATION OF INFORMATION ON STATE  
18          APPLICATIONS.—The Secretary shall make information on  
19          State applications under this subpart widely available to  
20          schools and the general public, including through dissemi-  
21          nation on the Internet, in a timely and user-friendly man-  
22          ner.

23          **“SEC. 5214. LOCAL APPLICATIONS.**

24          “(a) IN GENERAL.—An applicant seeking to receive  
25          funds from a State under this subpart shall submit to the



1 State an application containing a new or updated long-  
2 range local strategic educational technology plan con-  
3 sistent with the objectives of the statewide education tech-  
4 nology plan described in section 5213(a), and such other  
5 information as the State may reasonably require, at such  
6 time, and in such manner as the State may specify.

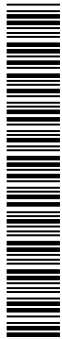
7 “(b) CONTENTS OF LOCAL APPLICATION.—Each  
8 local application described in this section shall include the  
9 following:

10 “(1) A description of how the applicant will use  
11 Federal funds provided under this subpart to im-  
12 prove the academic achievement of all students and  
13 to improve the capacity of all teachers to provide in-  
14 struction through the use of education technology.

15 “(2) A description of the applicant’s specific  
16 goals for using advanced technology to improve stu-  
17 dent achievement aligned to challenging State aca-  
18 demic content and student academic achievement  
19 standards.

20 “(3) A description of—

21 “(A) how the applicant will take steps to  
22 ensure that all students and teachers in schools  
23 served by the local educational agency (particu-  
24 larly those in high-poverty and high-need



1 schools) have increased access to educational  
2 technology; and

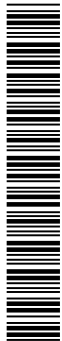
3 “(B) how such technology will be used to  
4 improve the academic achievement for such stu-  
5 dents.

6 “(4) A description of how the applicant will  
7 promote—

8 “(A) the utilization of teaching strategies  
9 and curricula, based on scientifically based re-  
10 search, which effectively integrate technology  
11 into instruction, leading to improvements in  
12 student academic achievement as measured by  
13 challenging State academic content and student  
14 academic achievement standards; and

15 “(B) sustained and intensive, high-quality  
16 professional development consistent with section  
17 2033 (as applicable), based on scientifically  
18 based research, which increases teacher and  
19 principal capacity to create improved learning  
20 environments through the integration of tech-  
21 nology into instruction through proven strate-  
22 gies and improved content as described in sub-  
23 paragraph (A).

24 “(5) A description of how the applicant will in-  
25 tegrate technology across the curriculum and a time





1 line for such integration, including a description of  
2 how the applicant will make effective use of new and  
3 emerging technologies and teaching practices that  
4 are linked to such emerging technologies to provide  
5 challenging content and improved classroom instruc-  
6 tion.

7 “(6) A description of how the applicant will co-  
8 ordinate education technology activities funded  
9 under this subpart, including professional develop-  
10 ment, with any such activities provided under other  
11 Federal, State, and local programs, including those  
12 authorized under title I, title II, title IV, and the In-  
13 dividuals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C.  
14 1400 et seq.) and the Carl D. Perkins Vocational  
15 and Technical Education Act of 1998 (20 U.S.C.  
16 2301 et seq.).

17 “(7) A description of the accountability meas-  
18 ures and process the applicant will use for the eval-  
19 uation of the extent to which funds provided under  
20 this subpart were effective in integrating technology  
21 into school curriculum, increasing the ability of  
22 teachers to teach, and enabling students to meet  
23 challenging State academic content and student aca-  
24 demic achievement standards.



1           “(8) A description of how the applicant will en-  
2           courage the development and utilization of innova-  
3           tive strategies for the delivery of specialized or rig-  
4           orous academic courses and curricula through the  
5           use of technology and distance learning, particularly  
6           for those areas that would not otherwise have access  
7           to such courses and curricula due to geographical  
8           isolation or insufficient resources.

9           “(9) A description of what steps the applicant  
10          has taken, or will take, to comply with section  
11          5205(a)(1).

12          “(10) If requested by the State—

13                 “(A) a description of how the applicant will  
14                 use funds provided under this subpart in a  
15                 manner that is consistent with any statewide  
16                 education technology priorities that may be es-  
17                 tablished by the State consistent with this sub-  
18                 part; and

19                 “(B) an assurance that any technology ob-  
20                 tained with funds provided under this subpart  
21                 will have compatibility and interconnectivity  
22                 with technology obtained with funds provided  
23                 previously under title III (as in effect on the  
24                 day preceding the date of enactment of the No  
25                 Child Left Behind Act of 2001), as appropriate.



1 **“SEC. 5215. STATE ACTIVITIES.**

2 “(a) IN GENERAL.—From funds made available  
3 under section 5212(a)(1), a State shall carry out activities  
4 and assist local efforts to carry out the purposes of this  
5 subpart, which may include the following activities:

6 “(1) Developing, or assisting applicants in the  
7 development and utilization of, innovative strategies  
8 to deliver rigorous academic programs through the  
9 use of technology and distance learning, and pro-  
10 viding other technical assistance to such applicants  
11 throughout the State, with a priority to high-need  
12 local educational agencies.

13 “(2) Establishing or supporting public-private  
14 initiatives, such as interest-free or reduced-cost loans  
15 for the acquisition of educational technology for  
16 high-need local educational agencies and students at-  
17 tending schools served by such agencies.

18 “(3) Assisting applicants in providing sustained  
19 and intensive, high-quality professional development  
20 based on scientifically based research in the integra-  
21 tion of advanced technologies (including emerging  
22 technologies) into curriculum and in using those  
23 technologies to create new learning environments, in-  
24 cluding training in the use of technology to—

25 “(A) access data and resources to develop  
26 curricula and instructional materials;



1 “(B) enable teachers—

2 “(i) to use the Internet to commu-  
3 nicate with parents, other teachers, prin-  
4 cipals, and administrators; and

5 “(ii) to retrieve Internet-based learn-  
6 ing resources; and

7 “(C) lead to improvements in classroom in-  
8 struction in the core academic subject areas,  
9 which effectively prepare students to meet chal-  
10 lenging State academic content and student  
11 academic achievement standards.

12 “(4) Assisting applicants in providing all stu-  
13 dents (including students with disabilities and stu-  
14 dents with limited English proficiency) and teachers  
15 with access to educational technology.

16 “(5) Establishing or expanding access to tech-  
17 nology in areas served by high-need local educational  
18 agencies, with special emphasis on access provided  
19 through technology centers in partnership with li-  
20 braries and with the support of the private sector.

21 “(6) Developing enhanced performance meas-  
22 urement systems to determine the effectiveness of  
23 education technology programs funded under this  
24 subpart, particularly in determining the extent to  
25 which education technology funded under this sub-



1 part has been successfully integrated into teaching  
2 strategies and school curriculum, has increased the  
3 ability of teachers to teach, and has enabled stu-  
4 dents to meet challenging State academic content  
5 and student academic achievement standards.

6 “(7) Collaborating with other States on dis-  
7 tance learning, including making advanced courses  
8 available to students who would otherwise not have  
9 access to such courses.

10 “(b) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Of  
11 the 5 percent of the State’s allotment under section 5211  
12 which may be used to carry out activities under this sec-  
13 tion, not more than 40 percent may be used by the State  
14 for administrative costs.

15 **“SEC. 5216. LOCAL ACTIVITIES.**

16 “(a) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—A recipient of  
17 funds made available under section 5212(a)(2)(A) shall  
18 use not less than 20 percent of such funds to provide sus-  
19 tained and intensive, high-quality professional develop-  
20 ment, consistent with section 2033 (as applicable), based  
21 on scientifically based research in the integration of ad-  
22 vanced technologies (including emerging technologies) into  
23 curriculum and in using those technologies to create new  
24 learning environments, including professional development  
25 in the use of technology to—



1           “(1) access data and resources to develop cur-  
2           ricula and instructional materials;

3           “(2) enable teachers—

4                 “(i) to use the Internet to communicate  
5                 with parents, other teachers, principals, and ad-  
6                 ministrators; and

7                 “(ii) to retrieve Internet-based learning re-  
8                 sources; and

9           “(3) lead to improvements in classroom instruc-  
10           tion in the core academic subject areas, which effec-  
11           tively prepare students to meet challenging State  
12           academic content and student academic achievement  
13           standards.

14           “(b) WAIVER.—Subsection (a) does not apply to a re-  
15           cipient of funds under section 5212(a)(2)(A) that dem-  
16           onstrates, to the satisfaction of the State, that such recipi-  
17           ent already provides sustained and intensive, high-quality  
18           professional development based on scientifically based re-  
19           search in the integration of technology (including emerg-  
20           ing technologies) into the curriculum.

21           “(c) OTHER ACTIVITIES.—In addition to the activi-  
22           ties described in subsection (a), a recipient of funds dis-  
23           tributed by a State under section 5212(a)(2)(A) shall use  
24           such funds to carry out other activities consistent with this  
25           subpart, which may include the following:



1           “(1) Adapting or expanding existing and new  
2 applications of technology to enable teachers to in-  
3 crease student academic achievement through the  
4 use of teaching practices and advanced technologies  
5 that are based on scientifically based research and  
6 are designed to prepare students to meet challenging  
7 State academic content and student academic  
8 achievement standards, and for developing and uti-  
9 lizing innovative strategies to deliver rigorous aca-  
10 demic programs.

11           “(2) Expanding, acquiring, implementing, ap-  
12 plying, and maintaining education technology as a  
13 means to improve the academic achievement of all  
14 students.

15           “(3) The establishment or expansion of initia-  
16 tives, particularly those involving public-private part-  
17 nerships, designed to increase access to technology  
18 for students and teachers, with special emphasis on  
19 the access of high-need local educational agencies to  
20 technology.

21           “(4) Using technology to promote parent and  
22 family involvement, and support communications be-  
23 tween students, parents, and teachers.

24           “(5) Acquiring proven and effective curricula  
25 that include integrated technology and are designed



1 to help students achieve challenging State academic  
2 content and student academic achievement stand-  
3 ards.

4 “(6) Using technology to collect, manage, and  
5 analyze data to inform school improvement efforts.

6 “(7) Implementing enhanced performance  
7 measurement systems to determine the effectiveness  
8 of education technology programs funded under this  
9 subpart, particularly in determining the extent to  
10 which education technology funded under this sub-  
11 part has been successfully integrated into teaching  
12 strategies and school curriculum, has increased the  
13 ability of teachers to teach, and has enabled stu-  
14 dents to meet challenging State academic content  
15 and student academic achievement standards.

16 “(8) Preparing one or more teachers in elemen-  
17 tary and secondary schools as technology leaders  
18 who are provided with the means to serve as experts  
19 and train other teachers in the effective use of tech-  
20 nology.

21 “(9) Establishing or expanding access to tech-  
22 nology in areas served by high-need local educational  
23 agencies, with special emphasis for access provided  
24 through technology centers in partnership with li-  
25 braries and with the support of the private sector.





1           **“Subpart 2—National Technology Activities**

2   **“SEC. 5221. NATIONAL ACTIVITIES.**

3           “(a) IN GENERAL.—Using funds made available  
4 under section 5203(b)(2), the Secretary—

5           “(1) shall—

6                   “(A) conduct an independent, long-term  
7 study, utilizing scientifically based research  
8 methods and control groups, on the effect of  
9 educational technology on improving student  
10 academic achievement;

11                   “(B) include in the study an identification  
12 of uses of educational technology (including how  
13 teachers can integrate technology into the cur-  
14 ricula) that have a measurable positive impact  
15 on student achievement;

16                   “(C) establish an independent review panel  
17 to advise the Secretary on methodological and  
18 other issues that arise in conducting this long-  
19 term study; and

20                   “(D) submit to the Congress interim re-  
21 ports, when appropriate, and a final report, to  
22 be submitted not later than 6 months before  
23 the end of fiscal year 2006, on the findings of  
24 the study;

25           “(2) may fund national technology initiatives  
26 that are supported by scientifically based research



1 and utilize technology in education, through the  
2 competitive award of grants or contracts, pursuant  
3 to a peer review process, to States, local educational  
4 agencies, eligible local entities, institutions of higher  
5 education, public agencies, and private nonprofit or  
6 for-profit agencies; and

7 “(3) may provide technical assistance (directly  
8 or through the competitive award of grants or con-  
9 tracts) to States, local educational agencies, and  
10 other recipients of funds under this part in order to  
11 assist such States, local educational agencies, and  
12 other recipients to achieve the purposes of this part.

13 “(b) NATIONAL TECHNOLOGY INITIATIVES.—

14 “(1) USE OF FUNDS.—In funding national  
15 technology initiatives under subsection (a)(2), the  
16 Secretary—

17 “(A) shall place a priority on projects  
18 that—

19 “(i) develop innovative models using  
20 electronic networks or other forms of dis-  
21 tance learning to provide challenging  
22 courses that are otherwise not readily  
23 available to students in a particular school  
24 district, particularly in rural areas; or



1                   “(ii) increase access to technology to  
2                   students served by high-need local edu-  
3                   cational agencies; and

4                   “(B) shall, in order to identify effective  
5                   uses of educational technology that have a  
6                   measurable positive impact on student achieve-  
7                   ment and as specified in paragraph (3)—

8                   “(i) develop tools and provide re-  
9                   sources and support, including technical  
10                  assistance, for recipients of funds under  
11                  subsection (a)(2) to effectively evaluate  
12                  their activities; and

13                  “(ii) disseminate the evaluations made  
14                  under paragraph (2)(A)(ii).

15                  “(2) REQUIREMENTS FOR RECIPIENTS OF  
16                  FUNDS.—

17                  “(A) APPLICATION.—In order to receive a  
18                  grant or contract under subsection (a)(2), an  
19                  entity shall submit an application to the Sec-  
20                  retary (at such time and in such form as the  
21                  Secretary may require), and shall include in the  
22                  application—

23                  “(i) a description of the project pro-  
24                  posed to be carried out with the grant or



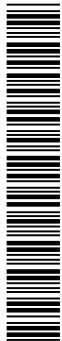
1 contract and how it would carry out the  
2 purposes of subsection (a)(2); and

3 “(ii) a detailed plan for an inde-  
4 pendent evaluation, supported by scientif-  
5 ically based research principles, of the  
6 project to determine the impact on the aca-  
7 demic achievement of students served  
8 under such project, as measured by chal-  
9 lenging State academic content and stu-  
10 dent academic achievement standards.

11 “(B) NON-FEDERAL SHARE.—

12 “(i) IN GENERAL.—Subject to clauses  
13 (ii) and (iii), the Secretary may require  
14 any recipient of a grant or contract under  
15 subsection (a)(2) to share in the cost of  
16 the activities assisted under such grant or  
17 contract, which may be in the form of cash  
18 or in-kind contributions, fairly valued.

19 “(ii) INCREASE.—The Secretary may  
20 increase the non-Federal share required of  
21 a recipient of a grant or contract under  
22 subsection (a)(2) after the first year such  
23 recipient receives funds under such grant  
24 or contract.



1                   “(iii) MAXIMUM.—The non-Federal  
2                   share required under this subsection may  
3                   not exceed 50 percent of the cost of the ac-  
4                   tivities assisted under a grant or contract  
5                   under this subpart.

6                   “(iv) NOTICE.—The Secretary shall  
7                   publish, in the Federal Register, the non-  
8                   Federal share required under this subpara-  
9                   graph.

10                  “(3) EVALUATION AND DISSEMINATION.—The  
11                  Secretary shall make information on each project  
12                  funded with a grant or contract under subsection  
13                  (a)(2) widely available to schools and the general  
14                  public, including through dissemination on the Inter-  
15                  net, in a timely and user-friendly manner. This in-  
16                  formation shall, at a minimum, include—

17                         “(A) upon the awarding of such a grant or  
18                         contract under subsection (a)(2), the identifica-  
19                         tion of the grant or contract recipient, the  
20                         amount of the grant or contract, the stated  
21                         goals of the grant or contract, the methods by  
22                         which the grant or contract will be evaluated in  
23                         meeting such stated goals, and the timeline for  
24                         meeting such goals;



1           “(B) not later than 3 months after the  
2 completion of the first year of the project pe-  
3 riod, information on the progress of the grant  
4 or contract recipient in carrying out the grant  
5 or contract, including a detailed description of  
6 the use of the funds provided, the extent to  
7 which the stated goals have been reached, and  
8 the results (or progress of) the evaluation of the  
9 project; and

10           “(C) not later than 3 months after the  
11 completion of the second year of the project pe-  
12 riod (and updated thereafter as appropriate), a  
13 followup to the information described in sub-  
14 paragraph (B).

15           **“Subpart 3—Ready to Learn, Ready to Teach**

16           **“SEC. 5231. READY TO LEARN TELEVISION.**

17           “(a) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—

18           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall award  
19 grants to or enter into contracts or cooperative  
20 agreements with eligible entities described in para-  
21 graph (3) to—

22           “(A) develop, produce, and distribute edu-  
23 cational and instructional video programming  
24 for preschool and elementary school children



1 and their parents in order to facilitate student  
2 academic achievement;

3 “(B) facilitate the development (directly or  
4 through contracts with producers of children  
5 and family educational television programming)  
6 of educational programming for preschool and  
7 elementary school children and accompanying  
8 support materials and services that directly pro-  
9 mote the effective use of such programming;

10 “(C) facilitate the development of pro-  
11 gramming and digital content especially de-  
12 signed for nationwide distribution over digital  
13 broadcasting channels and the Internet, con-  
14 taining Ready to Learn-based children’s pro-  
15 gramming and resources for parents and care-  
16 givers;

17 “(D) enable such entities to contract with  
18 other entities (such as public telecommuni-  
19 cations entities) so that programs under this  
20 section are disseminated and distributed by the  
21 most appropriate distribution technologies to  
22 the widest possible audience appropriate to be  
23 served by the programming; and

24 “(E) develop and disseminate training and  
25 support materials, including interactive pro-



1           grams and programs adaptable to distance  
2           learning technologies which are designed to—

3                   “(i) promote school readiness; and

4                   “(ii) promote the effective use of program-  
5           ming developed under subparagraphs (B) and  
6           (C) among parents, Head Start providers, Even  
7           Start and providers of family literacy services,  
8           child care providers, early childhood develop-  
9           ment personnel, and elementary school teachers,  
10          public libraries, and after school program per-  
11          sonnel caring for preschool and elementary  
12          school children.

13           “(2) AVAILABILITY.—In making grants, con-  
14          tracts, or cooperative agreements under this sub-  
15          section, the Secretary shall ensure that recipients in-  
16          crease the effective use of the programming under  
17          this section by making it widely available with sup-  
18          port materials, as appropriate, to young children,  
19          their parents, child care workers, Head Start pro-  
20          viders, Even Start and providers of family literacy  
21          services.

22           “(3) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES DESCRIBED.—In this  
23          section, an ‘eligible entity’ means a nonprofit entity  
24          (including a public telecommunications entity) which  
25          is able—





1           “(A) to demonstrate a capacity for the de-  
2           velopment and national distribution of edu-  
3           cational and instructional television program-  
4           ming of high quality which is accessible by a  
5           large majority of disadvantaged preschool and  
6           elementary school children; and

7           “(B) to demonstrate—

8                   “(i) a capacity to contract with the  
9                   producers of children’s television program-  
10                  ming for the purpose of developing edu-  
11                  cational television programming of high  
12                  quality which is accessible by a large ma-  
13                  jority of disadvantaged preschool and ele-  
14                  mentary school children, and

15                   “(ii) consistent with the entity’s mis-  
16                   sion and nonprofit nature, a capacity to  
17                   negotiate such contracts in a manner  
18                   which returns to the entity an appropriate  
19                   share of any ancillary income from sales of  
20                   any program-related products.

21           “(4) CAP ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—An en-  
22           tity receiving a grant, contract, or cooperative agree-  
23           ment from the Secretary under this subsection may  
24           not use more than 5 percent of the amounts received  
25           under the grant, contract, or cooperative agreement



1 for the expenses of administering the grant, con-  
2 tract, or cooperative agreement.

3 “(5) COORDINATION OF ACTIVITIES.—An entity  
4 receiving a grant, contract, or cooperative agreement  
5 from the Secretary under this subsection shall work  
6 with the Secretary and the Secretary of Health and  
7 Human Services to—

8 “(A) maximize the utilization by preschool  
9 and elementary school children of the program-  
10 ming under this section and to make such pro-  
11 gramming widely available to federally funded  
12 programs serving such populations; and

13 “(B) coordinate with Federal programs  
14 that have major training components for early  
15 childhood development (including Head Start,  
16 Even Start, family literacy services, and State  
17 training activities funded under the Child Care  
18 Development Block Grant Act of 1990 (42  
19 U.S.C. 9858 et seq.)) regarding the availability  
20 and utilization of materials developed with  
21 funds provided under this section to enhance  
22 parent and child care provider skills in early  
23 childhood development and education.

24 “(b) APPLICATIONS.—Any entity desiring a grant,  
25 contract, or cooperative agreement under subsection (a)



1 shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time,  
2 in such manner, and accompanied by such information as  
3 the Secretary may reasonably require.

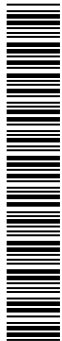
4 “(c) REPORT AND EVALUATION.—

5 “(1) ANNUAL REPORT BY GRANT RECIPIENTS  
6 TO SECRETARY.—Each entity receiving funds under  
7 this section shall prepare and submit to the Sec-  
8 retary an annual report which contains such infor-  
9 mation as the Secretary may require. At a min-  
10 imum, the report shall describe the program activi-  
11 ties undertaken with funds received under this sec-  
12 tion, including information regarding—

13 “(A) the programming that has been devel-  
14 oped directly or indirectly by the entity and the  
15 target population of the programs developed;

16 “(B) the support and training materials  
17 that have been developed to accompany the pro-  
18 gramming and the method by which such mate-  
19 rials are distributed to consumers and users of  
20 the programming;

21 “(C) the means by which the programming  
22 has been distributed, including the distance  
23 learning technologies that have been utilized to  
24 make programming available and the geo-



1 graphic distribution achieved through such  
2 technologies; and

3 “(D) the initiatives undertaken by the enti-  
4 ty to develop public-private partnerships to se-  
5 cure non-Federal support for the development  
6 and distribution and broadcast of educational  
7 and instructional programming.

8 “(2) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—The Secretary  
9 shall prepare and submit to the relevant committees  
10 of Congress a biannual report on the activities fund-  
11 ed and carried out under this section, and shall in-  
12 clude in the report—

13 “(A) a summary of the programming de-  
14 veloped using funds provided under this section;  
15 and

16 “(B) a description of the training mate-  
17 rials developed using funds provided under this  
18 section, the manner in which outreach has been  
19 conducted to inform parents and child care pro-  
20 viders of the availability of such materials, and  
21 the manner in which such materials have been  
22 distributed.

23 “(d) FUNDING RULE.—Not less than 60 percent of  
24 the amounts authorized to be appropriated under section



1 5233 for any fiscal year shall be used to carry out sub-  
2 paragraphs (B) and (C) of subsection (a)(1).

3 **“SEC. 5232. TELECOMMUNICATIONS PROGRAM.**

4 “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may carry out  
5 any of the following activities:

6 “(1) Awarding grants to a nonprofit tele-  
7 communications entity (or a partnership of such en-  
8 tities) for the purpose of carrying out a national  
9 telecommunications-based program to improve the  
10 teaching of core academic subjects and to assist ele-  
11 mentary and secondary school teachers in preparing  
12 all students to achieve State academic content stand-  
13 ards.

14 “(2) Awarding grants to or entering into con-  
15 tracts or cooperative agreements with a local public  
16 telecommunications entity to develop, produce, and  
17 distribute educational and instructional video pro-  
18 gramming which is designed for use by elementary  
19 and secondary school students, created for or adapt-  
20 able to State academic content standards, and capa-  
21 ble of distribution through digital broadcasting and  
22 school digital networks.

23 “(b) APPLICATIONS.—

24 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Any telecommunications  
25 entity or partnership of such entities desiring a



1 grant under this section shall submit an application  
2 to the Secretary.

3 “(2) SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS FOR NATIONAL  
4 TELECOMMUNICATIONS-BASED PROGRAM.—Each ap-  
5 plication for a grant under subsection (a)(1) shall—

6 “(A) demonstrate that the applicant will  
7 use the existing publicly funded telecommuni-  
8 cations infrastructure, the Internet, and school  
9 digital networks (where available) to deliver  
10 video, voice, and data in an integrated service  
11 to train teachers in the use of materials and  
12 learning technologies for achieving State aca-  
13 demic content standards;

14 “(B) assure that the program for which  
15 assistance is sought will be conducted in co-  
16 operation with States as appropriate, local edu-  
17 cational agencies, and State or local nonprofit  
18 public telecommunications entities;

19 “(C) assure that a significant portion of  
20 the benefits available for elementary and sec-  
21 ondary schools from the program for which as-  
22 sistance is sought will be available to schools of  
23 local educational agencies which have a high  
24 percentage of children counted for the purpose  
25 of part A of title I; and



1                   “(D) contain such additional assurances as  
2                   the Secretary may reasonably require.

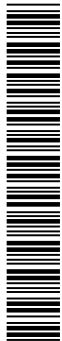
3                   “(c) APPROVAL OF APPLICATIONS; NUMBER OF  
4 DEMONSTRATION SITES.—In approving applications  
5 under this section, the Secretary shall assure that—

6                   “(1) the national telecommunications-based pro-  
7 gram under subsection (a)(1) is conducted at ele-  
8 mentary and secondary school sites in at least 15  
9 States; and

10                   “(2) grants under subsection (a)(2) are award-  
11 ed on a competitive basis and for a period of 3 years  
12 to entities which—

13                   “(A) enter into multiyear collaborative ar-  
14 rangements for content development with State  
15 educational agencies, local educational agencies,  
16 institutions of higher education, businesses, or  
17 other agencies and organizations, and

18                   “(B) contribute non-Federal matching  
19 funds (including funds provided for transitions  
20 to digital broadcasting as well as in-kind con-  
21 tributions) to the activities assisted with the  
22 grant in an amount not less than 100 percent  
23 of the amount of the grant.



1                   **“PART C—CHARACTER EDUCATION**

2   **“SEC. 5301. CHARACTER EDUCATION PROGRAM.**

3           “(a) PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.—

4                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may make  
5           grants to State educational agencies, local edu-  
6           cational agencies, or consortia of such agencies for  
7           the design and implementation of character edu-  
8           cation programs that—

9                   “(A) can be integrated into State academic  
10           content standards for the core academic sub-  
11           jects; and

12                   “(B) can be carried out in conjunction  
13           with other educational reform efforts.

14                   “(2) DURATION.—Each grant under this sec-  
15           tion shall be made for a period not to exceed 5  
16           years, of which the grant recipient may not use more  
17           than 1 year for planning and program design.

18           “(b) CONTRACTS UNDER PROGRAM.—

19                   “(1) EVALUATION.—Each agency or consortium  
20           receiving assistance under this section may contract  
21           with outside sources, including institutions of higher  
22           education and private and nonprofit organizations  
23           (including religious organizations), for the purposes  
24           of—

25                   “(A) evaluating the program for which the  
26           assistance is made available;





1           “(B) measuring the integration of such  
2           program into the curriculum and teaching  
3           methods of schools where the program is car-  
4           ried out; and

5           “(C) measuring the success of such pro-  
6           gram in fostering the elements of character se-  
7           lected by the recipient under subsection (c)(1).

8           “(2) MATERIALS AND PROGRAM DEVELOP-  
9           MENT.—Each agency or consortium receiving assist-  
10          ance under this section may contract with outside  
11          sources, including institutions of higher education  
12          and private and nonprofit organizations (including  
13          religious organizations), for assistance in—

14           “(A) developing secular curricula, mate-  
15           rials, teacher training, and other activities re-  
16           lated to character education; and

17           “(B) integrating secular character edu-  
18           cation into the curriculum and teaching meth-  
19           ods of schools where the program is carried out.

20          “(c) ELEMENTS OF CHARACTER.—

21           “(1) SELECTION.—

22           “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each agency or con-  
23           sortium receiving assistance under this section  
24           may select the elements of character that will



1 be taught under the program for which the as-  
2 sistance is made available.

3 “(B) CONSIDERATION OF VIEWS.—In se-  
4 lecting elements of character under paragraph  
5 (1), the agency or consortium shall consider the  
6 views of the parents or guardians of the stu-  
7 dents to be taught under the program.

8 “(2) EXAMPLE ELEMENTS.—Elements of char-  
9 acter selected under this subsection may include any  
10 of the following:

11 “(A) Trustworthiness.

12 “(B) Respect.

13 “(C) Responsibility.

14 “(D) Fairness.

15 “(E) Caring.

16 “(F) Citizenship.

17 “(G) Giving.

18 “(d) APPLICATION.—

19 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each agency or consortium  
20 seeking assistance under this section shall submit an  
21 application to the Secretary at such time and in  
22 such manner as the Secretary may require.

23 “(2) REQUIRED INFORMATION.—Each applica-  
24 tion for assistance under this section shall include  
25 information that—



1           “(A) demonstrates that the program for  
2           which the assistance is sought has clear goals  
3           and objectives that are based on scientifically  
4           based research;

5           “(B) describes the activities that will be  
6           carried out with the assistance and how such  
7           activities will meet the goals and objectives de-  
8           scribed in paragraph (1); and

9           “(C) describes how the program for which  
10          the assistance is sought will be linked to other  
11          efforts to improve educational achievement,  
12          including—

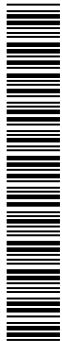
13                 “(i) broader educational reforms that  
14                 are being instituted by the applicant or its  
15                 partners; and

16                 “(ii) applicable State academic con-  
17                 tent standards for student achievement.

18          “(e) SELECTION OF RECIPIENTS.—

19                 “(1) PEER REVIEW.—

20                 “(A) IN GENERAL.—In selecting agencies  
21                 or consortia to receive assistance under this sec-  
22                 tion from among the applicants for such assist-  
23                 ance, the Secretary shall use a peer review  
24                 process that includes the participation of ex-  
25                 perts in the field of character education.



1           “(B) USE OF FUNDS.—The Secretary may  
2           use funds appropriated under this section for  
3           the cost of carrying out peer reviews under this  
4           paragraph.

5           “(2) SELECTION CRITERIA.—Each selection  
6           under paragraph (1) shall be made on the basis of  
7           the quality of the application submitted, taking into  
8           consideration such factors as—

9                   “(A) the extent of parental, student, and  
10                  community involvement in the program; and

11                   “(B) the likelihood that the goals of the  
12                  program will be realistically achieved.

13           “(3) EQUITABLE DISTRIBUTION.—In making  
14           selections under this subsection, the Secretary shall  
15           ensure, to the extent practicable under paragraph  
16           (2), that the programs assisted under this section  
17           are equitably distributed among the geographic re-  
18           gions of the United States, and among urban, subur-  
19           ban, and rural areas.

20           “(f) EVALUATIONS.—

21                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—As a condition of receiving  
22                  assistance under this section, the Secretary shall re-  
23                  quire each agency or consortium receiving such as-  
24                  sistance to transmit to the Secretary, not later than



1 5 years after such receipt, a report containing an  
2 evaluation of each program assisted.

3 “(2) ATTAINMENT OF GOALS AND OBJEC-  
4 TIVES.—In conducting an evaluation referred to in  
5 paragraph (1), each agency or consortium shall  
6 evaluate the degree to which each program for which  
7 assistance was made available attained the goals and  
8 objectives for the program as described in the appli-  
9 cation for assistance submitted under subsection (d).

10 “(3) DISSEMINATION.—The Secretary shall—

11 “(A) make each evaluation received under  
12 this subsection publicly available; and

13 “(B) provide public notice (through such  
14 means as the Internet, the media, and public  
15 agencies) of the availability of each such evalua-  
16 tion after it is received by the Secretary.

17 “(g) MATCHING FUNDS.—As a condition of receiving  
18 assistance under this section, the Secretary may require  
19 that each agency or consortium receiving such assistance  
20 provide matching funds from non-Federal sources.

21 **“SEC. 5302. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

22 “There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out  
23 this part \$25,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums  
24 as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003 through  
25 2006.



1           **“PART D—ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY**  
2                   **SCHOOL COUNSELING PROGRAMS**  
3   **“SEC. 5401. ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOL COUN-**  
4                   **SELING PROGRAMS.**

5           “(a) FINDINGS.—Congress finds as follows:

6                   “(1) The Surgeon General reported in January  
7                   2001 that 1 in 10 children suffer from mental ill-  
8                   nesses severe enough to impair development and  
9                   fewer than 1 in 5 children get treatment for mental  
10                  illnesses.

11                  “(2) The Surgeon General reported that the  
12                  burden of suffering by children with mental health  
13                  needs and their families has created a health crisis  
14                  in this country. Growing numbers of children are  
15                  suffering needlessly because their emotional, behav-  
16                  ioral, and developmental needs are not being met by  
17                  the very institutions and systems that were created  
18                  to take care of them.

19                  “(3) As a result of the concern about the fail-  
20                  ure of the healthcare system to reach children and  
21                  adolescents with mental illnesses, there is currently  
22                  great interest in developing new models for the deliv-  
23                  ery of mental health and counseling services that  
24                  can reach underserved groups efficiently.

25                  “(4) Schools are a sensible point of intervention  
26                  because of their central position in many children’s



1 lives and development, especially when families are  
2 unable to assume a leading role.

3 “(5) School-based mental health and counseling  
4 services allow for the identification of children in  
5 need of treatment much earlier in their development.

6 “(6) Establishing mental health and counseling  
7 services in schools provides access to underserved  
8 youth with or at risk of emotional or behavioral  
9 problems.

10 “(7) The Surgeon General’s 2000 report on  
11 youth violence concludes that effective treatment can  
12 divert a significant proportion of delinquent and vio-  
13 lent youths from future violence and crime.

14 “(8) Mental health and counseling services can  
15 play an important role in violence prevention on all  
16 levels, including preventing problem behaviors from  
17 developing; identifying and serving specific, at-risk  
18 populations; and reducing the deleterious effects of  
19 violence on victims and witnesses.

20 “(9) An evaluation of the model program for  
21 the elementary school counseling demonstration pro-  
22 gram established pursuant to this section prior to  
23 the date of enactment of the Elementary and Sec-  
24 ondary Counseling Improvement Act of 2001 found  
25 that the number of referrals to the principal’s office



1 decreased by nearly half, the use of force, weapons,  
2 and threatening of others also decreased, school sus-  
3 pensions were reduced, and students felt safer.

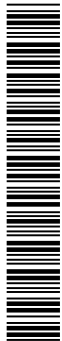
4 “(10) The report produced by the Institute of  
5 Medicine, ‘Schools and Health: Our Nation’s Invest-  
6 ment’, recommended a student-to-school counselor  
7 ratio of 250:1, student-to-school psychologist ratio of  
8 1000:1, and a student-to-school social worker ratio  
9 of 800:1. The United States average student-to-  
10 counselor ratio is 551:1. Ratios for school psycholo-  
11 gists and school social workers also exceed the rec-  
12 ommended levels.

13 “(b) GRANTS AUTHORIZED.—

14 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may use  
15 funds provided under this section to award grants to  
16 local educational agencies to enable such agencies to  
17 establish or expand elementary and secondary school  
18 counseling programs which meet the requirements of  
19 subsection (c).

20 “(2) PRIORITY.—In awarding grants under this  
21 section, the Secretary shall give special consideration  
22 to applications describing programs which—

23 “(A) demonstrate the greatest need for  
24 new or additional counseling services among  
25 children in the schools served by the applicant,





1 in part, by providing information on current ra-  
2 tios of students to school counselors, students  
3 to school social workers, and students to school  
4 psychologists;

5 “(B) propose the most promising and inno-  
6 vative approaches for initiating or expanding  
7 school counseling; and

8 “(C) show the greatest potential for rep-  
9 lication and dissemination.

10 “(3) **EQUITABLE DISTRIBUTION.**—In awarding  
11 grants under this section, the Secretary shall ensure  
12 an equitable geographic distribution among the re-  
13 gions of the United States and among urban, subur-  
14 ban, and rural local educational agencies.

15 “(4) **DURATION.**—A grant under this section  
16 shall be awarded for a period not to exceed 3 years.

17 “(5) **MAXIMUM GRANT.**—A grant awarded  
18 under this program shall not exceed \$400,000 for  
19 any fiscal year.

20 “(6) **SUPPLEMENT.**—Assistance made available  
21 under this section shall be used to supplement, and  
22 may not supplant, other Federal, State, or local  
23 funds used for providing school-based counseling and  
24 mental health services to students.



1           “(c) REQUIREMENTS FOR COUNSELING PRO-  
2 GRAMS.—Each program funded under this section shall—

3                   “(1) be comprehensive in addressing the coun-  
4 seling and educational needs of all students;

5                   “(2) use a developmental, preventive approach  
6 to counseling;

7                   “(3) increase the range, availability, quantity,  
8 and quality of counseling services in the elementary  
9 and secondary schools of the local educational agen-  
10 cy;

11                   “(4) expand counseling services through quali-  
12 fied school counselors, school psychologists, school  
13 social workers, and child and adolescent psychia-  
14 trists;

15                   “(5) use innovative approaches to increase chil-  
16 dren’s understanding of peer and family relation-  
17 ships, work and self, decisionmaking, or academic  
18 and career planning, or to improve peer interaction;

19                   “(6) provide counseling services in settings that  
20 meet the range of needs of students;

21                   “(7) include inservice training, including train-  
22 ing for teachers in appropriate identification and  
23 intervention techniques for disciplining and teaching  
24 students at risk of violent behavior, by school coun-



1 selors, school psychologists, school social workers,  
2 and child and adolescent psychiatrists;

3 “(8) involve parents of participating students in  
4 the design, implementation, and evaluation of a  
5 counseling program;

6 “(9) involve community groups, social service  
7 agencies, or other public or private entities in col-  
8 laborative efforts to enhance the program;

9 “(10) evaluate annually the effectiveness and  
10 outcomes of the counseling services and activities as-  
11 sisted under this section;

12 “(11) ensure a team approach to school coun-  
13 seling in the elementary and secondary schools of  
14 the local educational agency by working toward ra-  
15 tios recommended by the American School Health  
16 Association of one school counselor to 250 students,  
17 one school social worker to 800 students, and one  
18 school psychologist to 1,000 students; and

19 “(12) ensure that school counselors, school psy-  
20 chologists, school social workers, or child and adoles-  
21 cent psychiatrists paid from funds made available  
22 under this section spend a majority of their time at  
23 the school in activities directly related to the coun-  
24 seling process.



1       “(d) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—Not  
2 more than 3 percent of the amounts made available under  
3 this section in any fiscal year may be used for administra-  
4 tive costs to carry out this section.

5       “(e) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

6           “(1) the term ‘school counselor’ means an indi-  
7 vidual who has documented competence in coun-  
8 seling children and adolescents in a school setting  
9 and who—

10           “(A) possesses State licensure or certifi-  
11 cation granted by an independent professional  
12 regulatory authority;

13           “(B) in the absence of such State licensure  
14 or certification, possesses national certification  
15 in school counseling or a specialty of counseling  
16 granted by an independent professional organi-  
17 zation; or

18           “(C) holds a minimum of a master’s de-  
19 gree in school counseling from a program ac-  
20 credited by the Council for Accreditation of  
21 Counseling and Related Educational Programs  
22 or the equivalent;

23           “(2) the term ‘school psychologist’ means an in-  
24 dividual who—



1           “(A) possesses a minimum of 60 graduate  
2 semester hours in school psychology from an in-  
3 stitution of higher education and has completed  
4 1,200 clock hours in a supervised school psy-  
5 chology internship, of which 600 hours shall be  
6 in the school setting;

7           “(B) possesses State licensure or certifi-  
8 cation in the State in which the individual  
9 works; or

10           “(C) in the absence of such State licensure  
11 or certification, possesses national certification  
12 by the National School Psychology Certification  
13 Board;

14           “(3) the term ‘school social worker’ means an  
15 individual who—

16           “(A) holds a master’s degree in social work  
17 from a program accredited by the Council on  
18 Social Work Education; and

19           “(B) is licensed or certified by the State in  
20 which services are provided; or

21           “(C) in the absence of such State licensure  
22 or certification, possesses a national credential  
23 or certification as a ‘school social work spe-  
24 cialist’ granted by an independent professional  
25 organization; and



1           “(4) the term ‘child and adolescent psychiatrist’  
2 means an individual who—

3           “(A) possesses State medical licensure; and

4           “(B) has completed residency training pro-  
5 grams in general and child and adolescent psy-  
6 chiatry.

7           “(f) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after assistance  
8 is made available under this section, the Secretary shall  
9 make publicly available the information from applicants  
10 regarding the ratios of students to school counselors, stu-  
11 dents to school social workers, and students to school psy-  
12 chologists.

13           “(g) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There  
14 are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section  
15 such sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years  
16 2002 through 2006.

17           **“PART E—MENTORING PROGRAMS**

18           **“SEC. 5501. DEFINITIONS.**

19           “‘In this part, the following definitions apply:

20           “(1) CHILD WITH GREATEST NEED.—The term  
21 ‘child with greatest need’ means a child at risk of  
22 educational failure, dropping out of school, or in-  
23 volvement in criminal or delinquent activities, or  
24 that has lack of strong positive adult role models.



1           “(2) MENTOR.—The term ‘mentor’ means an  
2 individual who works with a child to provide a posi-  
3 tive role model for the child, to establish a sup-  
4 portive relationship with the child, and to provide  
5 the child with academic assistance and exposure to  
6 new experiences and examples of opportunity that  
7 enhance the ability of the child to become a respon-  
8 sible adult.

9           “(3) STATE.—The term ‘State’ means each of  
10 the several States, the District of Columbia, the  
11 Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands,  
12 Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of  
13 the Northern Mariana Islands.

14 **“SEC. 5502. PURPOSES.**

15           “The purposes of this part are to make assistance  
16 available to promote mentoring programs for children with  
17 greatest need—

18           “(1) to assist such children in receiving support  
19 and guidance from a caring adult;

20           “(2) to improve the academic performance of  
21 such children;

22           “(3) to improve interpersonal relationships be-  
23 tween such children and their peers, teachers, other  
24 adults, and family members;



1           “(4) to reduce the dropout rate of such chil-  
2           dren; and

3           “(5) to reduce juvenile delinquency and involve-  
4           ment in gangs by such children.

5   **“SEC. 5503. GRANT PROGRAM.**

6           “(a) IN GENERAL.—In accordance with this section,  
7           the Secretary may make grants to eligible entities to assist  
8           such entities in establishing and supporting mentoring  
9           programs and activities that—

10           “(1) are designed to link children with greatest  
11           need (particularly such children living in rural areas,  
12           high crime areas, or troubled home environments, or  
13           such children experiencing educational failure) with  
14           responsible adults, who—

15                   “(A) have received training and support in  
16                   mentoring;

17                   “(B) have been screened using appropriate  
18                   reference checks, child and domestic abuse  
19                   record checks, and criminal background checks;  
20                   and

21                   “(C) are interested in working with youth;  
22                   and

23           “(2) are intended to achieve 1 or more of the  
24           following goals:





1           “(A) Provide general guidance to children  
2 with greatest need.

3           “(B) Promote personal and social responsi-  
4 bility among children with greatest need.

5           “(C) Increase participation by children  
6 with greatest need in, and enhance their ability  
7 to benefit from, elementary and secondary edu-  
8 cation.

9           “(D) Discourage illegal use of drugs and  
10 alcohol, violence, use of dangerous weapons,  
11 promiscuous behavior, and other criminal,  
12 harmful, or potentially harmful activity by chil-  
13 dren with greatest need.

14           “(E) Encourage children with greatest  
15 need to participate in community service and  
16 community activities.

17           “(F) Encourage children with greatest  
18 need to set goals for themselves or to plan for  
19 their futures, including encouraging such chil-  
20 dren to make graduation from secondary school  
21 a goal and to make plans for postsecondary  
22 education or training.

23           “(G) Discourage involvement of children  
24 with greatest need in gangs.



1       “(b) ELIGIBLE ENTITIES.—Each of the following is  
2 an entity eligible to receive a grant under subsection (a):

3           “(1) A local educational agency.

4           “(2) A nonprofit, community-based organiza-  
5 tion.

6           “(3) A partnership between an agency referred  
7 to in paragraph (1) and an organization referred to  
8 in paragraph (2).

9       “(c) USE OF FUNDS.—

10           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each entity receiving a  
11 grant under this section shall use the grant funds  
12 for activities that establish or implement a men-  
13 toring program, including—

14           “(A) hiring of mentoring coordinators and  
15 support staff;

16           “(B) providing for the professional devel-  
17 opment of mentoring coordinators and support  
18 staff;

19           “(C) recruitment, screening, and training  
20 of adult mentors;

21           “(D) reimbursement of schools, if appro-  
22 priate, for the use of school materials or sup-  
23 plies in carrying out the program;

24           “(E) dissemination of outreach materials;



1           “(F) evaluation of the program using sci-  
2           entifically based methods; and

3           “(G) such other activities as the Secretary  
4           may reasonably prescribe by rule.

5           “(2) PROHIBITED USES.—Notwithstanding  
6           paragraph (1), an entity receiving a grant under this  
7           section may not use the grant funds—

8           “(A) to directly compensate mentors;

9           “(B) to obtain educational or other mate-  
10          rials or equipment that would otherwise be used  
11          in the ordinary course of the entity’s oper-  
12          ations;

13          “(C) to support litigation of any kind; or

14          “(D) for any other purpose reasonably pro-  
15          hibited by the Secretary by rule.

16          “(d) TERM OF GRANT.—Each grant made under this  
17          section shall be available for expenditure for a period of  
18          3 years.

19          “(e) APPLICATION.—Each eligible entity seeking a  
20          grant under this section shall submit to the Secretary an  
21          application that includes—

22          “(1) a description of the mentoring plan the ap-  
23          plicant proposes to carry out with such grant;



1           “(2) information on the children expected to be  
2 served by the mentoring program for which such  
3 grant is sought;

4           “(3) a description of the mechanism that appli-  
5 cant will use to match children with mentors based  
6 on the needs of the children;

7           “(4) an assurance that no mentor will be as-  
8 signed to mentor so many children that the assign-  
9 ment would undermine either the mentor’s ability to  
10 be an effective mentor or the mentor’s ability to es-  
11 tablish a close relationship (a one-on-one relation-  
12 ship, where practicable) with each mentored child;

13           “(5) an assurance that mentoring programs will  
14 provide children with a variety of experiences and  
15 support, including—

16                   “(A) emotional support;

17                   “(B) academic assistance; and

18                   “(C) exposure to experiences that children  
19 might not otherwise encounter on their own;

20           “(6) an assurance that mentoring programs will  
21 be monitored to ensure that each child assigned a  
22 mentor benefits from that assignment and that there  
23 will be a provision for the assignment of a new men-  
24 tor if the relationship between the original mentor is  
25 not beneficial to the child;



1           “(7) information on the method by which men-  
2           tors and children will be recruited to the mentor pro-  
3           gram;

4           “(8) information on the method by which pro-  
5           spective mentors will be screened;

6           “(9) information on the training that will be  
7           provided to mentors; and

8           “(10) information on the system that the appli-  
9           cant will use to manage and monitor information re-  
10          lating to the program’s reference checks, child and  
11          domestic abuse record checks, and criminal back-  
12          ground checks and to its procedure for matching  
13          children with mentors.

14          “(f) SELECTION.—

15                 “(1) COMPETITIVE BASIS.—In accordance with  
16                 this subsection, the Secretary shall select grant re-  
17                 cipients from among qualified applicants on a com-  
18                 petitive basis.

19                 “(2) PRIORITY.—In selecting grant recipients  
20                 under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall give pri-  
21                 ority to each applicant that—

22                         “(A) serves children with greatest need liv-  
23                         ing in rural areas, high crime areas, or troubled  
24                         home environments, or who attend schools with  
25                         violence problems;



1           “(B) provides background screening of  
2 mentors, training of mentors, and technical as-  
3 sistance in carrying out mentoring programs;

4           “(C) proposes a mentoring program under  
5 which each mentor will be assigned to not more  
6 children than the mentor can serve effectively;  
7 or

8           “(D) proposes a school-based mentoring  
9 program.

10          “(3) OTHER CONSIDERATIONS.—In selecting  
11 grant recipients under paragraph (1), the Secretary  
12 shall also consider—

13           “(A) the degree to which the location of  
14 the programs proposed by each applicant con-  
15 tributes to a fair distribution of programs with  
16 respect to urban and rural locations;

17           “(B) the quality of the mentoring pro-  
18 grams proposed by each applicant, including—

19           “(i) the resources, if any, the appli-  
20 cant will dedicate to providing children  
21 with opportunities for job training or post-  
22 secondary education;

23           “(ii) the degree to which parents,  
24 teachers, community-based organizations,  
25 and the local community have participated,



1 or will participate, in the design and imple-  
2 mentation of the applicant's mentoring  
3 program;

4 “(iii) the degree to which the appli-  
5 cant can ensure that mentors will develop  
6 longstanding relationships with the chil-  
7 dren they mentor;

8 “(iv) the degree to which the appli-  
9 cant will serve children with greatest need  
10 in the 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, and 8th grades;  
11 and

12 “(v) the degree to which the program  
13 will continue to serve children from the 4th  
14 grade through graduation from secondary  
15 school; and

16 “(C) the capability of each applicant to ef-  
17 fectively implement its mentoring program.

18 “(4) GRANT TO EACH STATE.—Notwithstanding  
19 any other provision of this subsection, in selecting  
20 grant recipients under paragraph (1), the Secretary  
21 shall select not less than 1 grant recipient from each  
22 State for which there is a qualified applicant.

23 “(g) MODEL SCREENING GUIDELINES.—

24 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Based on model screening  
25 guidelines developed by the Office of Juvenile Pro-



1       grams of the Department of Justice, the Secretary  
2       shall develop and distribute to program participants  
3       specific model guidelines for the screening of men-  
4       tors who seek to participate in programs to be as-  
5       sisted under this part.

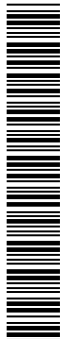
6               “(2) BACKGROUND CHECKS.—The guidelines  
7       developed under this subsection shall include, at a  
8       minimum, a requirement that potential mentors be  
9       subject to reference checks, child and domestic abuse  
10      record checks, and criminal background checks.

11      **“SEC. 5504. STUDY BY GENERAL ACCOUNTING OFFICE.**

12             “(a) IN GENERAL.—The Comptroller General of the  
13      United States shall conduct a study to identify successful  
14      school-based mentoring programs, and the elements, poli-  
15      cies, or procedures of such programs that can be rep-  
16      licated.

17             “(b) REPORT.—Not later than 3 years after the date  
18      of enactment of the Mentoring for Success Act, the Comp-  
19      troller General shall submit a report to the Secretary and  
20      Congress containing the results of the study conducted  
21      under this section.

22             “(c) USE OF INFORMATION.—The Secretary shall use  
23      information contained in the report referred to in sub-  
24      section (b)—





1           “(1) to improve the quality of existing men-  
2           toring programs assisted under this part and other  
3           mentoring programs assisted under this Act; and

4           “(2) to develop models for new programs to be  
5           assisted or carried out under this Act.

6   **“SEC. 5505. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

7           “There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out  
8           section 5503 \$50,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such  
9           sums as may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003  
10          through 2006.

11                           **TITLE VI—IMPACT AID**  
12                                   **PROGRAM**

13   **SEC. 601. PAYMENTS UNDER SECTION 8002 WITH RESPECT**  
14                           **TO FISCAL YEARS IN WHICH INSUFFICIENT**  
15                           **FUNDS ARE APPROPRIATED.**

16          (a) FOUNDATION PAYMENTS FOR PRE-1995 RECIPI-  
17          ENTS.—Section 8002(h)(1) (20 U.S.C. 7702(h)(1)) is  
18          amended—

19               (1) in subparagraph (A), by striking “and was  
20               eligible to receive a payment under section 2 of the  
21               Act of September 30, 1950” and inserting “and that  
22               filed, or has been determined pursuant to statute to  
23               have filed a timely application, and met, or has been  
24               determined pursuant to statute to meet, the eligi-



1 bility requirements of section 2(a)(1)(C) of the Act  
2 of September 30, 1950”; and

3 (2) in subparagraph (B), by striking “(or if the  
4 local educational agency was not eligible to receive a  
5 payment under such section 2 for fiscal year 1994”  
6 and inserting “(or if the local educational agency did  
7 not meet, or has not been determined pursuant to  
8 statute to meet, the eligibility requirements of sec-  
9 tion 2(a)(1)(C) of the Act of September 30, 1950  
10 for fiscal year 1994”.

11 (b) PAYMENTS FOR 1995 RECIPIENTS.—Section  
12 8002(h)(2) (20 U.S.C. 7702(h)(2)) is amended—

13 (1) in subparagraph (A), by adding at the end  
14 before the period “, or whose application for fiscal  
15 year 1995 was determined pursuant to statute to be  
16 timely filed for purposes of payments for subsequent  
17 fiscal years”; and

18 (2) in subparagraph (B)(ii), by striking “for  
19 each local educational agency that received a pay-  
20 ment under this section for fiscal year 1995” and in-  
21 serting “for each local educational agency described  
22 in subparagraph (A)”.

23 (c) REMAINING FUNDS.—Section 8002(h)(4)(B) (20  
24 U.S.C. 7702(h)(4)(B)) is amended—



1 (1) by striking “(in the same manner as per-  
2 centage shares are determined for local educational  
3 agencies under paragraph (2)(B)(ii))” and inserting  
4 “(by dividing the maximum amount that the agency  
5 is eligible to receive under subsection (b) by the total  
6 of the maximum amounts for all such agencies)”;  
7 and

8 (2) by striking “, except that for the purpose of  
9 calculating a local educational agency’s assessed  
10 value of the Federal property” and inserting “, ex-  
11 cept that, for purposes of calculating a local edu-  
12 cational agency’s maximum amount under sub-  
13 section (b)”.

14 (d) APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT.—Notwithstanding  
15 any other provision of law, the Secretary shall treat as  
16 timely filed an application under section 8002 (20 U.S.C.  
17 7702) from Academy School District 20, Colorado, for a  
18 payment for fiscal year 1999, and shall process that appli-  
19 cation from funds appropriated for that section for fiscal  
20 year 2001.

21 **SEC. 602. CALCULATION OF PAYMENT UNDER SECTION 8003**

22 **FOR SMALL LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.**

23 Section 8003(b)(3)(B)(iv) (20 U.S.C.  
24 7703(b)(3)(B)(iv)) is amended by inserting after “of the  
25 State in which the agency is located” the following: “or



1 less than the average per pupil expenditure of all the  
2 States”.

3 **SEC. 603. CONSTRUCTION.**

4 (a) SCHOOL FACILITY EMERGENCY AND MOD-  
5 ERNIZATION GRANTS.—Section 8007(b) (20 U.S.C.  
6 7707(b)) is amended to read as follows:

7 “(b) SCHOOL FACILITY EMERGENCY AND MOD-  
8 ERNIZATION GRANTS AUTHORIZED.—

9 “(1) IN GENERAL.—From 60 percent of the  
10 amount appropriated for each fiscal year under sec-  
11 tion 8014(e), the Secretary—

12 “(A) shall award emergency grants in ac-  
13 cordance with this subsection to eligible local  
14 educational agencies to enable the agencies to  
15 carry out emergency repairs of school facilities;  
16 and

17 “(B) shall award modernization grants in  
18 accordance with this subsection to eligible local  
19 educational agencies to enable the agencies to  
20 carry out the modernization of school facilities.

21 “(2) PRIORITY.—In approving applications  
22 from local educational agencies for emergency grants  
23 and modernization grants under this subsection, the  
24 Secretary shall give priority to applications for emer-  
25 gency grants and, among such applications for emer-



1 agency grants, shall give priority to those applications  
2 of local educational agencies based on the severity of  
3 the emergency.

4 “(3) ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS.—

5 “(A) EMERGENCY GRANTS.—A local edu-  
6 cational agency is eligible to receive an emer-  
7 gency grant under this subsection only if—

8 “(i) the agency (or in the case of a  
9 local educational agency that does not have  
10 the authority to tax or issue bonds, the  
11 agency’s fiscal agent)—

12 “(I) has no practical capacity to  
13 issue bonds;

14 “(II) has minimal capacity to  
15 issue bonds and is at 75 percent of  
16 the agency’s limit of bonded indebted-  
17 ness; or

18 “(III) does not meet the require-  
19 ments of subclauses (I) and (II) but is  
20 eligible to receive funds under section  
21 8003(b)(2) for the fiscal year; and

22 “(ii) the agency is eligible to receive  
23 assistance under subsection (a) for the fis-  
24 cal year and has a school facility emer-  
25 gency, as determined by the Secretary,



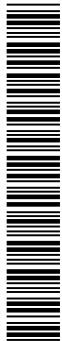
1 that poses a health or safety hazard to the  
2 students and school personnel assigned to  
3 the school facility.

4 “(B) MODERNIZATION GRANTS.—A local  
5 educational agency is eligible to receive a mod-  
6 ernization grant under this subsection only if—

7 “(i) the agency (or in the case of a  
8 local educational agency that does not have  
9 the authority to tax or issue bonds, the  
10 agency’s fiscal agent) meets the require-  
11 ments of subclause (I), (II), or (III) of  
12 subparagraph (A)(i);

13 “(ii) the agency is eligible to receive  
14 assistance under section 8002 for the fiscal  
15 year and has an assessed value of real  
16 property per student that may be taxed for  
17 school purposes that is less than the aver-  
18 age of the assessed value of real property  
19 per student that may be taxed for school  
20 purposes in the State in which the local  
21 educational agency is located; and

22 “(iii) the agency has facility needs re-  
23 sulting from actions of the Federal Gov-  
24 ernment, such as enrollment increases due  
25 to the expansion of Federal activities,



1 housing privatization, or the acquisition of  
2 Federal property.

3 “(C) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—For pur-  
4 poses of subparagraph (A)(i), a local edu-  
5 cational agency—

6 “(i) has no practical capacity to issue  
7 bonds if the total assessed value of real  
8 property that may be taxed for school pur-  
9 poses is less than \$25,000,000; and

10 “(ii) has minimal capacity to issue  
11 bonds if the total assessed value of real  
12 property that may be taxed for school pur-  
13 poses is not less than \$25,000,000 but not  
14 more than \$50,000,000.

15 “(4) AWARD CRITERIA.—In awarding emer-  
16 gency grants and modernization grants under this  
17 subsection, the Secretary shall consider the following  
18 factors:

19 “(A) The ability of the local educational  
20 agency to respond to the emergency, or to pay  
21 for the modernization project, as the case may  
22 be, as measured by—

23 “(i) the agency’s level of bonded in-  
24 debtedness;



1                   “(ii) the assessed value of real prop-  
2                   erty per student that may be taxed for  
3                   school purposes compared to the average of  
4                   the assessed value of real property per stu-  
5                   dent that may be taxed for school purposes  
6                   in the State in which the agency is located;

7                   “(iii) the agency’s total tax rate for  
8                   school purposes (or, if applicable, for cap-  
9                   ital expenditures) compared to the average  
10                  total tax rate for school purposes (or the  
11                  average capital expenditure tax rate, if ap-  
12                  plicable) in the State in which the agency  
13                  is located; and

14                  “(iv) funds that are available to the  
15                  agency, from any other source, including  
16                  section 8007(a), that may be used for cap-  
17                  ital expenditures.

18                  “(B) The percentage of property in the  
19                  agency that is nontaxable due to the presence  
20                  of the Federal Government.

21                  “(C) The number and percentages of chil-  
22                  dren described in subparagraphs (A), (B), (C),  
23                  and (D) of section 8003(a)(1) served in the  
24                  school facility with the emergency or served in





1 the school facility proposed for modernization,  
2 as the case may be.

3 “(D) In the case of an emergency grant,  
4 the severity of the emergency, as measured by  
5 the threat that the condition of the school facil-  
6 ity poses to the health, safety, and well-being of  
7 students.

8 “(E) In the case of a modernization  
9 grant—

10 “(i) the severity of the need for mod-  
11 ernization, as measured by such factors  
12 as—

13 “(I) overcrowding, as evidenced  
14 by the use of portable classrooms; or

15 “(II) the agency’s inability to  
16 maximize the use of technology or  
17 offer a curriculum in accordance with  
18 contemporary State standards due to  
19 the physical limitations of the current  
20 school facility; and

21 “(ii) the age of the school facility pro-  
22 posed for modernization.

23 “(5) OTHER AWARD PROVISIONS.—

24 “(A) GENERAL PROVISIONS.—



1 “(i) LIMITATIONS ON AMOUNT OF  
2 FUNDS.—

3 “(I) IN GENERAL.—The amount  
4 of funds provided under an emergency  
5 grant or a modernization grant  
6 awarded under this subsection to a  
7 local educational agency that meets  
8 the requirements of subclause (II) or  
9 (III) of paragraph (3)(A)(i)—

10 “(aa) shall not exceed 50  
11 percent of the total cost of the  
12 project to be assisted under this  
13 subsection; and

14 “(bb) shall not exceed  
15 \$3,000,000 during any 5-year pe-  
16 riod.

17 “(II) IN-KIND CONTRIBUTIONS.—  
18 A local educational agency may use  
19 in-kind contributions to meet the  
20 matching requirement of subclause  
21 (I)(aa).

22 “(ii) PROHIBITIONS ON USE OF  
23 FUNDS.—A local educational agency may  
24 not use funds provided under an emer-



1 agency grant or modernization grant award-  
2 ed under this subsection for—

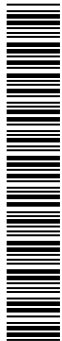
3 “(I) a project for a school facility  
4 for which the agency does not have  
5 full title or other interest; or

6 “(II) stadiums or other facilities  
7 primarily used for athletic contests,  
8 exhibitions, or other events for which  
9 admission is charged to the general  
10 public.

11 “(iii) SUPPLEMENT NOT SUPPLANT.—  
12 A local educational agency shall use funds  
13 provided under an emergency grant or  
14 modernization grant awarded under this  
15 subsection only to supplement the amount  
16 of funds that would, in the absence of the  
17 Federal funds provided under the grant, be  
18 made available from non-Federal sources  
19 to carry out emergency repairs of school  
20 facilities or to carry out the modernization  
21 of school facilities, as the case may be, and  
22 not to supplant such funds.

23 “(B) EMERGENCY GRANTS.—

24 “(i) PROHIBITION ON USE OF  
25 FUNDS.—A local educational agency that is



1 awarded an emergency grant under this  
2 subsection may not use amounts under the  
3 grant for the complete or partial replace-  
4 ment of an existing school facility unless  
5 such replacement is less expensive or more  
6 cost-effective to correct the identified emer-  
7 gency.

8 “(ii) CARRY-OVER OF CERTAIN APPLI-  
9 CATIONS.—In the case of a local edu-  
10 cational agency that applies for an emer-  
11 gency grant under this subsection for a fis-  
12 cal year and does not receive the grant for  
13 the fiscal year, the Secretary—

14 “(I) shall, upon the request of  
15 the agency, treat the application as an  
16 application for an emergency grant  
17 under this subsection for the subse-  
18 quent fiscal year in accordance with  
19 the priority requirements of para-  
20 graph (2); and

21 “(II) shall allow the agency to  
22 amend or otherwise update the appli-  
23 cation, as appropriate.

24 “(6) APPLICATION.—A local educational agency  
25 that desires to receive an emergency grant or a mod-



1       ernization grant under this subsection shall submit  
2       an application to the Secretary at such time, in such  
3       manner, and accompanied by such information as  
4       the Secretary may require. Each application shall  
5       contain the following:

6               “(A) The information described in clauses  
7               (i) through (iv) of paragraph (4)(A) and sub-  
8               paragraphs (B) and (C) of paragraph (4).

9               “(B) In the case of an application for an  
10              emergency grant—

11              “(i) a description of the school facility  
12              deficiency that poses a health or safety  
13              hazard to the occupants of the facility and  
14              a description of how the deficiency will be  
15              repaired; and

16              “(ii) a signed statement from an ap-  
17              propriate local official certifying that a de-  
18              ficiency in the school facility threatens the  
19              health or safety of the occupants of the fa-  
20              cility or that prevents the use of all or a  
21              portion of the building.

22              “(C) In the case of an application for a  
23              modernization grant—

24              “(i) an explanation of the need for the  
25              school facility modernization project; and



1                   “(ii) the date on which original con-  
2                   struction of the facility to be modernized  
3                   was completed.

4                   “(D) A description of the project for which  
5                   a grant under this subsection would be used, in-  
6                   cluding a cost estimate for the project.

7                   “(E) A description of the interest in, or  
8                   authority over, the school facility involved, such  
9                   as an ownership interest or a lease arrange-  
10                  ment.

11                  “(F) Such other information and assur-  
12                  ances as the Secretary may reasonably require.

13                  “(7) REPORT.—

14                  “(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than Janu-  
15                  ary 1 of each year, the Secretary shall prepare  
16                  and submit to the appropriate congressional  
17                  committees a report that contains a justifica-  
18                  tion for each grant awarded under this sub-  
19                  section for the prior fiscal year.

20                  “(B) DEFINITION.—In this paragraph, the  
21                  term ‘appropriate congressional committees’  
22                  means—

23                                 “(i) the Committee on Appropriations  
24                                 and the Committee on Education and the



1 Workforce of the House of Representa-  
2 tives; and

3 “(ii) the Committee on Appropriations  
4 and the Committee on Health, Education,  
5 Labor and Pensions of the Senate.”.

6 (b) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—Section  
7 8014(e) (20 U.S.C. 7714(e)) is amended by striking “for  
8 each of the three succeeding fiscal years” and inserting  
9 “for fiscal year 2001, \$150,000,000 for fiscal year 2002,  
10 and such sums as may be necessary for each of the four  
11 succeeding fiscal years”.

12 **SEC. 604. STATE CONSIDERATION OF PAYMENTS IN PRO-**  
13 **VIDING STATE AID.**

14 Section 8009(b)(1) (20 U.S.C. 7709(b)(1)) is amend-  
15 ed by inserting after “section 8003(a)(2)(B)” the fol-  
16 lowing: “and, with respect to a local educational agency  
17 that receives a payment under section 8003(b)(2), the  
18 amount in excess of the amount that the agency would  
19 receive if the agency were deemed to be an agency eligible  
20 to receive a payment under section 8003(b)(1) and not  
21 section 8003(b)(2)”.

22 **SEC. 605. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

23 Section 8014 (20 U.S.C. 7714) is amended by strik-  
24 ing “three succeeding fiscal years” each place it appears  
25 and inserting “six succeeding fiscal years”.



1 **SEC. 606. REDESIGNATION OF PROGRAM.**

2 (a) REDESIGNATION.—(1) Title VIII (20 U.S.C.  
3 7701 et seq.) is redesignated as title VI.

4 (2) Sections 8001 through 8005 (20 U.S.C. 7701–  
5 7705) are redesignated as sections 6001 through 6005,  
6 respectively.

7 (3) Sections 8007 through 8014 (20 U.S.C. 7707–  
8 7714) are redesignated as sections 6006 through 6013,  
9 respectively.

10 (b) CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—(1) Title VI (as  
11 redesignated by subsection (a)) is amended by striking  
12 “8002”, “8003”, “8004”, “8005”, “8008”, “8009”,  
13 “8011”, “8013”, and “8014” each place such terms ap-  
14 pear and inserting “6002”, “6003”, “6004”, “6005”,  
15 “6007”, “6008”, “6010”, “6012”, and “6013”, respec-  
16 tively.

17 (2) Section 6005 (as redesignated by subsection (a))  
18 is amended in the heading by striking “**8002 AND 8003**”  
19 and inserting “**6002 AND 6003**”.

20 (3) Section 6009(c)(1) (as redesignated by subsection  
21 (a)) is amended in the heading by striking “8003” and in-  
22 serting “6003”.

23 (c) SAVINGS PROVISION.—Funds appropriated for  
24 title VIII of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act  
25 of 1965 (as in effect on the day before the date of the





1 enactment of this Act) shall be available for use under title  
2 VI of such Act, as added by this section.

3 **TITLE VII—ACCOUNTABILITY**

4 **SEC. 701. FLEXIBILITY AND ACCOUNTABILITY.**

5 Title VII is amended to read as follows:

6 **“TITLE VII—FLEXIBILITY AND**  
7 **ACCOUNTABILITY**

8 **“PART A—STATE ACCOUNTABILITY FOR**  
9 **IMPROVING ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT**

10 **“SEC. 7101. STATE FINANCIAL AWARDS.**

11 “(a) IN GENERAL.—Beginning in the 2002–2003  
12 school year, the Secretary shall make in accordance with  
13 this section financial awards, to be known as ‘Achievement  
14 in Education Awards’, to States that have made signifi-  
15 cant progress in improving educational achievement.

16 “(b) CRITERIA OF PROGRESS.—For the purposes of  
17 subsection (a), the Secretary shall judge progress using  
18 each of the following criteria, giving the greatest weight  
19 to the criterion described in paragraph (1):

20 “(1) The progress of the State’s students from  
21 economically disadvantaged families and students  
22 from racial and ethnic minority groups—

23 “(A) on the assessments administered by  
24 the State under section 1111; and



1           “(B) beginning in the 2003–2004 school  
2 year, on assessments of 4th and 8th grade  
3 reading and mathematics under—

4           “(i) the State assessments carried out  
5 as part of the National Assessment of  
6 Educational Progress under section 411 of  
7 the National Education Statistics Act of  
8 1994 (20 U.S.C. 9010); or

9           “(ii) an assessment selected by the  
10 State that—

11           “(I) is administered annually;

12           “(II) yields high quality data  
13 that are valid and reliable;

14           “(III) meets widely recognized  
15 professional and technical standards,  
16 including specific and rigorous test se-  
17 curity procedures;

18           “(IV) is developed by an entity  
19 independent from each State and local  
20 government agency in the State in a  
21 manner that protects against any con-  
22 flict of interest ;

23           “(V) has no test questions that  
24 are identical to the test questions used  
25 by the assessment used to meet the



1 State assessment requirements under  
2 section 1111;

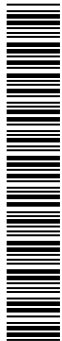
3 “(VI) provides results in such a  
4 form that they may be expressed in  
5 terms of achievement levels that are  
6 consistent with the achievement levels  
7 (basic, proficient, and advanced) set  
8 forth in section 1111;

9 “(VII) provides results in such a  
10 form that they may be disaggregated,  
11 at a minimum, according to income  
12 level and major racial and ethnic  
13 group; and

14 “(VIII) is administered to all stu-  
15 dents or to a representative sample of  
16 students in the 4th and 8th grades  
17 statewide, with a sample size that is  
18 sufficiently large to produce statis-  
19 tically significant estimates of state-  
20 wide student achievement.

21 “(2) The overall improvement in the achieve-  
22 ment of all of the State’s students, as measured  
23 by—

24 “(A) the assessments administered by the  
25 State under section 1111; and



1           “(B) beginning in the 2003–2004 school  
2           year, the assessments described in paragraph  
3           (1)(B).

4           “(3) The progress of the State in improving the  
5           English proficiency of students who enter school  
6           with limited English proficiency.

7           “(c) OTHER CONSIDERATIONS.—In judging a State’s  
8           progress under subsection (a), the Secretary may also  
9           consider—

10           “(1) the progress of the State in increasing the  
11           percentage of students who graduate from secondary  
12           schools; and

13           “(2) the progress of the State in increasing the  
14           percentage of students who take advanced  
15           coursework (such as Advanced Placement or Inter-  
16           national Baccalaureate courses) and who pass the  
17           exams associated with such coursework.

18           “(d) AMOUNT.—The Secretary shall determine the  
19           amount of an award under subsection (a) based on—

20           “(1) the school-age population of the State; and

21           “(2) the degree of progress shown by a State  
22           with respect to the criteria set forth in subsections  
23           (b) and (c).

24           “(e) USE OF FUNDS.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State receiving a finan-  
2           cial award under this section shall use the proceeds  
3           of such award only to make financial awards to pub-  
4           lic elementary and secondary schools in the State  
5           that have made the most significant progress with  
6           respect to the criteria described in subsection (b).

7           “(2) USE BY SCHOOLS.—In consultation with  
8           the school’s teachers, the principal of each elemen-  
9           tary or secondary school that receives a financial  
10          award from a State under this section shall use the  
11          proceeds of such award at the school for any edu-  
12          cational purpose permitted under State law.

13          “(3) RESPONSIBLE STATE AGENCY.—The State  
14          educational agency for each State shall be the agen-  
15          cy responsible for making awards under this sub-  
16          section.

17          “(f) PEER REVIEW.—In selecting States for awards  
18          under subsection (a), the Secretary shall use a peer-review  
19          process.

20          “(g) COSTS OF INDEPENDENT ASSESSMENTS.—

21                 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2),  
22                 the Secretary shall make grants to States to offset  
23                 the costs of administering assessments administered  
24                 by the States to meet the requirements of  
25                 (b)(1)(B)(ii).



1           “(2) LIMITATIONS.—Grants made by the Sec-  
2           retary in any year to a State under paragraph (1)—

3                   “(A) may be awarded only to offset the  
4                   costs of a single administration of an assess-  
5                   ment described in such paragraph in the State  
6                   for that year; and

7                   “(B) may not exceed the costs of admin-  
8                   istering in the State for that year the State as-  
9                   sessments that would be carried out under the  
10                  National Assessment of Educational Progress  
11                  described in subsection (b)(1)(B).

12               “(3) ALLOCATION.—The Secretary may deter-  
13               mine the appropriate methodology of allocating  
14               grants to States under this subsection.

15   **“SEC. 7102. STATE SANCTIONS.**

16               “(a) FAILURE TO MAKE PROGRESS.—

17                   “(1) LOSS OF ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS.—The  
18                   Secretary shall reduce, by 30 percent, the amount of  
19                   funding that a State may reserve for State adminis-  
20                   tration under the State formula grant programs au-  
21                   thorized by this Act if the Secretary determines that,  
22                   for 2 consecutive years—

23                           “(A) the State’s students from economi-  
24                           cally disadvantaged families and students from  
25                           racial and ethnic minority groups failed to



1 make adequate yearly progress on the assess-  
2 ments administered by the State under section  
3 1111; and

4 “(B) the State’s students from economi-  
5 cally disadvantaged families and students from  
6 racial and ethnic minority groups failed to  
7 make measurable progress in reading and  
8 mathematics, as measured by the 4th and 8th  
9 grade assessments described in subsection  
10 (b)(1)(B).

11 “(2) FURTHER REDUCTIONS.—In each of the first 2  
12 years after the years described in paragraph (1), the Sec-  
13 retary may increase the reduction described in such para-  
14 graph by any amount not more than a total of an addi-  
15 tional 45 percent.

16 “(b) OTHER FAILURES.—In addition to any action  
17 taken under subsection (a)(1) or (a)(2), the Secretary  
18 shall reduce, by 20 percent, the amount of funding that  
19 a State may reserve for State administration under the  
20 State formula grant programs authorized by this Act if  
21 the Secretary determines that, for 2 consecutive years, the  
22 State failed to make adequate yearly progress—

23 “(1) with respect to the achievement of children  
24 with limited English proficiency under section  
25 1111(b)(2)(C)(iv)(II)(dd); or







1           “(2) if a State has developed the assessments  
2           and standards referred to in paragraph (1), to ad-  
3           minister such assessments or to carry out other ac-  
4           tivities described in this title and other activities re-  
5           lated to ensuring accountability for results in the  
6           State’s schools and local educational agencies, such  
7           as—

8                   “(A) developing academic content and  
9                   achievement standards and aligned assessments  
10                  in other subjects not required by Section 1111;

11                  “(B) developing assessments of English  
12                  language proficiency necessary to comply with  
13                  section 1111(b)(7);

14                  “(C) assuring the continued validity and  
15                  reliability of State assessments;

16                  “(D) refining State assessments to ensure  
17                  their continued alignment with the State’s aca-  
18                  demic content standards and to improve the  
19                  alignment of curricula and instruction mate-  
20                  rials;

21                  “(E) providing for multiple measures to in-  
22                  crease the reliability and validity of student and  
23                  school classifications;

24                  “(F) strengthening the capacity of local  
25                  educational agencies and schools to provide all



1 students the opportunity to increase educational  
2 achievement;

3 “(G) expanding the range of accommoda-  
4 tions available to students with limited English  
5 proficiency and students with disabilities to im-  
6 prove the rates of inclusion of such students;  
7 and

8 “(H) improving the dissemination of infor-  
9 mation on student achievement and school per-  
10 formance to parents and the community.

11 “(b) BONUSES.—The Secretary shall make a one-  
12 time bonus payment to each State that completes the de-  
13 velopment of the assessments described in subsection (a)  
14 ahead of the deadline set forth in section 1111.

15 **“SEC. 7104. FUNDING.**

16 “(a) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—

17 “(1) AWARDS AND BONUS PAYMENTS.—For the  
18 purposes of making awards under section 7101 and  
19 bonus payments under section 7103(b), there are  
20 authorized to be appropriated \$40,000,000 for fiscal  
21 year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for  
22 each of fiscal years 2003 through 2006.

23 “(2) GRANTS FOR INDEPENDENT ASSESS-  
24 MENTS; ADMINISTRATION OF STATE ASSESSMENTS  
25 UNDER NAEP.—For the purposes of making grants



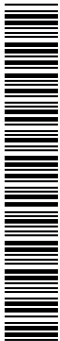
1 to offset the costs of independent assessments under  
2 section 7101(g) and for the purposes of admin-  
3 istering the State assessments carried out under the  
4 National Assessment of Educational Progress re-  
5 ferred to in section 7101(b)(1)(B)(i), there are au-  
6 thorized to be appropriated to the Secretary  
7 \$69,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as  
8 may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003  
9 through 2006.

10 “(3) DEVELOPMENT AND ADMINISTRATION OF  
11 STATE STANDARDS AND ASSESSMENTS.—For the  
12 purposes of carrying out subsection 7103(a), there  
13 are authorized to be appropriated \$400,000,000 for  
14 fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary  
15 for each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2005.

16 “(b) ALLOCATION OF APPROPRIATED FUNDS.—  
17 From each of the amounts appropriated under subsection  
18 (a), the Secretary shall allocate to the States—

19 “(1) 50 percent based on the relative number of  
20 children aged 5 to 17 in each State; and

21 “(2) 50 percent allocated equally among the  
22 States.



1 **“PART B—FUNDING FLEXIBILITY FOR STATE AND**  
2 **LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES**

3 **“SEC. 7201. SHORT TITLE.**

4 “This part may be cited as the ‘State and Local  
5 Transferability Act’.

6 **“SEC. 7202. PURPOSE.**

7 “The purpose of this part is to allow States and local  
8 educational agencies the flexibility—

9 “(1) to target Federal funds to Federal pro-  
10 grams that most effectively address the unique needs  
11 of States and localities; and

12 “(2) to transfer Federal funds allocated to  
13 other activities to allocations for activities authorized  
14 under title I programs.

15 **“SEC. 7203. TRANSFERABILITY OF FUNDS.**

16 “(a) TRANSFERS BY STATES.—

17 “(1) IN GENERAL.—In accordance with this  
18 part, a State may transfer up 50 percent of the non-  
19 administrative State funds allocated to the State for  
20 use for State-level activities under each of the fol-  
21 lowing provisions to 1 or more of the State’s alloca-  
22 tions under any other of such provisions:

23 “(A) Part A of Title II.

24 “(B) Subpart 1 of part A of title IV.

25 “(C) Part A or B of title V.



1           “(2) SUPPLEMENTAL FUNDS FOR TITLE I.—In  
2           accordance with this part, a State may transfer any  
3           funds allocated to the State under a provision listed  
4           in paragraph (1) to its allocation under title I.

5           “(b) TRANSFERS BY LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGEN-  
6           CIES.—

7           “(1) AUTHORITY TO TRANSFER FUNDS.—

8           “(A) IN GENERAL.—In accordance with  
9           this part, a local educational agency (except a  
10           local educational agency identified for improve-  
11           ment under section 1116(c)(2) or subject to  
12           corrective action under section 1116(c)(9)) may  
13           transfer not more than 50 percent of the funds  
14           allocated to it under each of the provisions list-  
15           ed in paragraph (2) for a fiscal year to 1 or  
16           more of its allocations for such fiscal year  
17           under any other provision listed in paragraph  
18           (2).

19           “(B) AGENCIES IDENTIFIED FOR IM-  
20           PROVEMENT.—A local educational agency iden-  
21           tified for improvement under section 1116(c)(2)  
22           may transfer in accordance with this part not  
23           more than 30 percent of the funds allocated to  
24           it under each of the provisions listed in para-  
25           graph (2)—



1                   “(i) to its allocation for school im-  
2                   provement under section 1003;

3                   “(ii) to any other allocation if such  
4                   transferred funds are used only for local  
5                   educational agency improvement activities  
6                   consistent with section 1116(d).

7                   “(C) SUPPLEMENTAL FUNDS FOR TITLE  
8                   I.—In accordance with this part, a local edu-  
9                   cational agency may transfer funds allocated to  
10                  such agency under a provision listed in para-  
11                  graph (2) to its allocation under title I.

12                  “(2) APPLICABLE PROVISIONS.—A local edu-  
13                  cational agency may transfer funds under subpara-  
14                  graph (A) or (B) from allocations made under each  
15                  of the following provisions:

16                         “(A) Title II.

17                         “(B) Subpart 1 of Part A of title IV.

18                         “(C) Part A of title V or section  
19                         5212(2)(A).

20                  “(c) NO TRANSFER OF TITLE I FUNDS.—A State or  
21                  a local educational agency may not transfer under this  
22                  part to any other program any funds allocated to it under  
23                  title I.

24                  “(d) MODIFICATION OF PLANS AND APPLICATIONS;  
25                  NOTIFICATION.—



1           “(1) STATE TRANSFERS.—Each State that  
2 makes a transfer of funds under this section shall—

3           “(A) modify to account for such transfer  
4 each State plan, or application submitted by the  
5 State, to which such funds relate;

6           “(B) not later than 30 days after the date  
7 of such transfer, submit a copy of such modi-  
8 fied plan or application to the Secretary; and

9           “(C) not later than 30 days before the ef-  
10 fective date of such transfer, notify the Sec-  
11 retary of such transfer.

12           “(2) LOCAL TRANSFERS.—Each local edu-  
13 cational agency that makes a transfer under this  
14 section shall—

15           “(A) modify to account for such transfer  
16 each local plan, or application submitted by the  
17 agency, to which such funds relate;

18           “(B) not later than 30 days after the date  
19 of such transfer, submit a copy of such modi-  
20 fied plan or application to the State; and

21           “(C) not later than 30 days before the ef-  
22 fective date of such transfer, notify the State of  
23 such transfer.

24           “(f) APPLICABLE RULES.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise pro-  
2           vided in this part, funds transferred under this sec-  
3           tion are subject to each of the rules and require-  
4           ments applicable to the funds allocated by the Sec-  
5           retary under the provision to which the transferred  
6           funds are transferred.

7           “(2) CONSULTATION.—Each State educational  
8           agency or local educational agency that transfers  
9           funds under this section shall conduct consultations  
10          in accordance with section 8503(e), if such transfer  
11          transfers funds from a program that provides for  
12          the participation of students, teachers, or other edu-  
13          cational personnel, from private schools.”.

14                           **TITLE VIII—GENERAL**  
15                           **PROVISIONS**

16   **SEC. 801. GENERAL PROVISIONS.**

17          The Elementary and Secondary Education Act of  
18   1965, as amended by this Act, is further amended by add-  
19   ing at the end of title VII the following:

20                           **“TITLE VIII—GENERAL**  
21                           **PROVISIONS**

22                           **“PART A—DEFINITIONS**

23   **“SEC. 8101. DEFINITIONS.**

24          “Except as otherwise provided, for the purposes of  
25   this Act, the following terms have the following meanings:





1 “(1) Average daily attendance—

2 “(A) Except as provided otherwise by  
3 State law or this paragraph, the term ‘average  
4 daily attendance’ means—

5 “(i) the aggregate number of days of  
6 attendance of all students during a school  
7 year; divided by

8 “(ii) the number of days school is in  
9 session during such school year.

10 “(B) The Secretary shall permit the con-  
11 version of average daily membership (or other  
12 similar data) to average daily attendance for  
13 local educational agencies in States that provide  
14 State aid to local educational agencies on the  
15 basis of average daily membership or such other  
16 data.

17 “(C) If the local educational agency in  
18 which a child resides makes a tuition or other  
19 payment for the free public education of the  
20 child in a school located in another school dis-  
21 trict, the Secretary shall, for purposes of this  
22 Act—

23 “(i) consider the child to be in attend-  
24 ance at a school of the agency making such  
25 payment; and



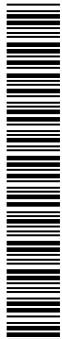
1                   “(ii) not consider the child to be in at-  
2                   tendance at a school of the agency receiv-  
3                   ing such payment.

4                   “(D) If a local educational agency makes a  
5                   tuition payment to a private school or to a pub-  
6                   lic school of another local educational agency  
7                   for a child with disabilities, as defined in para-  
8                   graph (5), the Secretary shall, for the purposes  
9                   of this Act, consider such child to be in attend-  
10                  ance at a school of the agency making such  
11                  payment.

12                  “(2) AVERAGE PER-PUPIL EXPENDITURE.—The  
13                  term ‘average per-pupil expenditure’ means, in the  
14                  case of a State or of the United States—

15                  “(A) without regard to the source of  
16                  funds—

17                  “(i) the aggregate current expendi-  
18                  tures, during the third fiscal year pre-  
19                  ceding the fiscal year for which the deter-  
20                  mination is made (or, if satisfactory data  
21                  for that year are not available, during the  
22                  most recent preceding fiscal year for which  
23                  satisfactory data are available) of all local  
24                  educational agencies in the State or, in the  
25                  case of the United States for all States



1 (which, for the purpose of this paragraph,  
2 means the 50 States and the District of  
3 Columbia); plus

4 “(ii) any direct current expenditures  
5 by the State for the operation of such  
6 agencies; divided by

7 “(B) the aggregate number of children in  
8 average daily attendance to whom such agencies  
9 provided free public education during such pre-  
10 ceeding year.

11 “(3) BEGINNING TEACHER.—The term ‘begin-  
12 ning teacher’ means an educator in a public school  
13 who has been teaching less than a total of 3 com-  
14 plete school years.

15 “(4) CHILD.—The term ‘child’ means any per-  
16 son within the age limits for which the State pro-  
17 vides free public education.

18 “(5) CHILD WITH DISABILITY.—The term ‘child  
19 with a disability’ means a child—

20 “(A) with mental retardation, hearing im-  
21 pairments (including deafness), speech or lan-  
22 guage impairments, visual impairments (includ-  
23 ing blindness), serious emotional disturbance  
24 (hereinafter referred to as ‘emotional disturb-  
25 ance’), orthopedic impairments, autism, trau-



1           matic brain injury, other health impairments, or  
2           specific learning disabilities; and

3                   “(B) who, by reason thereof, needs special  
4           education and related services.

5           “(6) COMMUNITY-BASED ORGANIZATION.—The  
6           term ‘community-based organization’ means a public  
7           or private nonprofit organization of demonstrated ef-  
8           fectiveness that—

9                   “(A) is representative of a community or  
10          significant segments of a community; and

11                   “(B) provides educational or related serv-  
12          ices to individuals in the community.

13          “(7) CONSOLIDATED LOCAL APPLICATION.—  
14          The term ‘consolidated local application’ means an  
15          application submitted by a local educational agency  
16          pursuant to section 14305.

17          “(8) CONSOLIDATED LOCAL PLAN.—The term  
18          ‘consolidated local plan’ means a plan submitted by  
19          a local educational agency pursuant to section  
20          14305.

21          “(9) CONSOLIDATED STATE APPLICATION.—  
22          The term ‘consolidated State application’ means an  
23          application submitted by a State educational agency  
24          pursuant to section 14302.



1           “(10) CONSOLIDATED STATE PLAN.—The term  
2           ‘consolidated State plan’ means a plan submitted by  
3           a State educational agency pursuant to section  
4           14302.

5           “(11) COUNTY.—The term ‘county’ means one  
6           of the divisions of a State used by the Secretary of  
7           Commerce in compiling and reporting data regard-  
8           ing counties.

9           “(12) COVERED PROGRAM.—The term ‘covered  
10          program’ means each of the programs authorized  
11          by—

12                   “(A) part A of title I;

13                   “(B) part B of title I;

14                   “(C) part C of title I;

15                   “(D) part D of title I;

16                   “(E) part F of title I;

17                   “(F) part G of title I;

18                   “(G) part A of title II;

19                   “(H) part A of title III;

20                   “(I) part A of title V;

21                   “(J) part B of title V; and

22                   “(K) part A of title IV:

23           “(13) CURRENT EXPENDITURES.—The term  
24           ‘current expenditures’ means expenditures for free  
25           public education—



1           “(A) including expenditures for adminis-  
2           tration, instruction, attendance, pupil transpor-  
3           tation services, operation and maintenance of  
4           plant, fixed charges, and net expenditures to  
5           cover deficits for food services and student body  
6           activities; but

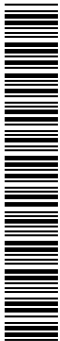
7           “(B) not including expenditures for com-  
8           munity services, capital outlay, and debt serv-  
9           ice, or any expenditures made from funds re-  
10          ceived under title I and part A of title IV.

11          “(14) DEPARTMENT.—The term ‘Department’  
12          means the Department of Education.

13          “(15) EDUCATIONAL SERVICE AGENCY.—The  
14          term ‘educational service agency’ means a regional  
15          public multiservice agency authorized by State stat-  
16          ute to develop, manage, and provide services or pro-  
17          grams to local educational agencies.

18          “(16) EFFECTIVE SCHOOLS PROGRAM.—The  
19          term ‘effective schools program’ means a school-  
20          based program that may encompass preschool  
21          through secondary school levels and that has the ob-  
22          jectives of—

23                 “(A) promoting school-level planning, in-  
24                 structional improvement, and staff development;



1           “(B) increasing the academic achievement  
2 levels of all children and particularly education-  
3 ally disadvantaged children; and

4           “(C) achieving as ongoing conditions in the  
5 school the following factors identified through  
6 scientifically based research as distinguishing  
7 effective from ineffective schools:

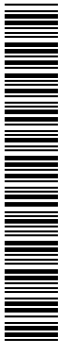
8                   “(i) Strong and effective administra-  
9 tive and instructional leadership that cre-  
10 ates consensus on instructional goals and  
11 organizational capacity for instructional  
12 problem solving.

13                   “(ii) Emphasis on the acquisition of  
14 basic and advanced academic skills.

15                   “(iii) A safe and orderly school envi-  
16 ronment that allows teachers and pupils to  
17 focus their energies on academic achieve-  
18 ment.

19                   “(iv) Continuous review of students  
20 and programs to evaluate the effects of in-  
21 struction.

22           “(17) ELEMENTARY SCHOOL.—The term ‘ele-  
23 mentary school’ means a nonprofit institutional day  
24 or residential school, including a public elementary



1 charter school, that provides elementary education,  
2 as determined under State law.

3 “(18) ESSENTIAL COMPONENTS OF READING  
4 INSTRUCTION.—The term ‘essential components of  
5 reading instruction’ means explicit and systematic  
6 instruction in—

7 “(A) phonemic awareness;

8 “(B) phonics;

9 “(C) vocabulary development;

10 “(D) reading fluency; and

11 “(E) reading comprehension strategies.

12 “(19) FAMILY LITERACY SERVICES.—The term  
13 ‘family literacy services’ means services provided to  
14 participants on a voluntary basis that are of suffi-  
15 cient intensity in terms of hours, and of sufficient  
16 duration, to make sustainable changes in a family,  
17 and that integrate all of the following activities:

18 “(A) Interactive literacy activities between  
19 parents and their children.

20 “(B) Training for parents regarding how  
21 to be the primary teacher for their children and  
22 full partners in the education of their children.

23 “(C) Parent literacy training that leads to  
24 economic self-sufficiency.





1           “(D) An age-appropriate education to pre-  
2           pare children for success in school and life ex-  
3           periences.

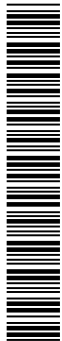
4           “(20) FREE PUBLIC EDUCATION.—The term  
5           ‘free public education’ means education that is  
6           provided—

7           “(A) at public expense, under public super-  
8           vision and direction, and without tuition charge;  
9           and

10           “(B) as elementary or secondary school  
11           education as determined under applicable State  
12           law, except that such term does not include any  
13           education provided beyond grade 12.

14           “(21) FULLY QUALIFIED.—The term ‘fully  
15           qualified’—

16           “(A) when used with respect to a public el-  
17           ementary or secondary school teacher means  
18           that the teacher has obtained State certification  
19           as a teacher (including certification obtained  
20           through alternative routes to certification) or  
21           passed the State teacher licensing exam and  
22           holds a license to teach in such State, except  
23           that when used with respect to any teacher  
24           teaching in a public charter school, means that



1 the teacher meets the requirements set forth in  
2 the State's public charter school law; and

3 “(B) when used with respect to—

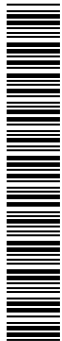
4 “(i) an elementary school teacher,  
5 means that the teacher holds a bachelor's  
6 degree and demonstrates knowledge and  
7 teaching skills in reading, writing, mathe-  
8 matics, science, and other areas of the ele-  
9 mentary school curriculum; and

10 “(ii) a middle or secondary school  
11 teacher, means that the teacher holds a  
12 bachelor's degree and demonstrates a high  
13 level of competency in all subject areas in  
14 which he or she teaches through—

15 “(I) a passing level of perform-  
16 ance on a rigorous State or local aca-  
17 demic subject areas test; or

18 “(II) completion of an academic  
19 major in each of the subject areas in  
20 which he or she provides instruction.

21 “(22) GIFTED AND TALENTED.—The term  
22 ‘gifted and talented’, when used with respect to stu-  
23 dents, children or youth, means students, children or  
24 youth who give evidence of high performance capa-  
25 bility in areas such as intellectual, creative, artistic,



1 or leadership capacity, or in specific academic fields,  
2 and who require services or activities not ordinarily  
3 provided by the school in order to fully develop such  
4 capabilities.

5 “(23) INSTITUTION OF HIGHER EDUCATION.—  
6 The term ‘institution of higher education’ has the  
7 meaning given that term in section 101 of the High-  
8 er Education Act of 1965.

9 “(24) LIMITED ENGLISH PROFICIENT STU-  
10 DENT.—The term ‘limited English proficient stu-  
11 dent’ means an individual aged 5 through 17 en-  
12 rolled in an elementary school or secondary school—

13 “(A) who—

14 “(i) was not born in the United States  
15 or whose native language is a language  
16 other than English;

17 “(ii)(I) is a Native American or Alas-  
18 ka Native, or a native resident of the out-  
19 lying areas; and

20 “(II) comes from an environment  
21 where a language other than English has  
22 had a significant impact on such individ-  
23 ual’s level of English language proficiency;  
24 or



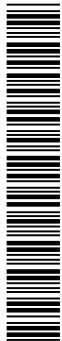
1           “(iii) is migratory, whose native language  
2           is a language other than English, and who  
3           comes from an environment where a language  
4           other than English is dominant; and

5           “(B) who has sufficient difficulty speaking,  
6           reading, writing, or understanding the English  
7           language, and whose difficulties may deny the  
8           individual—

9           “(i) the ability to meet the State’s  
10           proficient level of performance on State as-  
11           sessments described in section 1111(b)(4)  
12           in core academic subjects; or

13           “(ii) the opportunity to participate  
14           fully in society.

15           “(25) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY.—(A) The  
16           term ‘local educational agency’ means a public board  
17           of education or other public authority legally con-  
18           stituted within a State for either administrative con-  
19           trol or direction of, or to perform a service function  
20           for, public elementary or secondary schools in a city,  
21           county, township, school district, or other political  
22           subdivision of a State, or for such combination of  
23           school districts or counties as are recognized in a  
24           State as an administrative agency for its public ele-  
25           mentary or secondary schools.

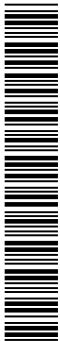


1           “(B) The term includes any other public insti-  
2           tution or agency having administrative control and  
3           direction of a public elementary or secondary school.

4           “(C) The term includes an elementary or sec-  
5           ondary school funded by the Bureau of Indian Af-  
6           fairs but only to the extent that such inclusion  
7           makes such school eligible for programs for which  
8           specific eligibility is not provided to such school in  
9           another provision of law and such school does not  
10          have a student population that is smaller than the  
11          student population of the local educational agency  
12          receiving assistance under this Act with the smallest  
13          student population, except that such school shall not  
14          be subject to the jurisdiction of any State edu-  
15          cational agency other than the Bureau of Indian Af-  
16          fairs.

17          “(D) The term includes educational service  
18          agencies and consortia of such agencies.

19          “(26) MENTORING.—The term ‘mentoring’  
20          means a program in which an adult works with a  
21          child or youth on a 1-to-1 basis, establishing a sup-  
22          portive relationship, providing academic assistance,  
23          and introducing the child or youth to new experi-  
24          ences that enhance the child or youth’s ability to  
25          excel in school and become a responsible citizen.

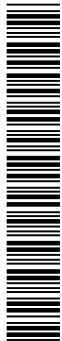


1           “(27) NATIVE AMERICAN AND NATIVE AMER-  
2           ICAN LANGUAGE.—The terms ‘Native American’ and  
3           ‘Native American language’ shall have the same  
4           meaning given such terms in section 103 of the Na-  
5           tive American Languages Act of 1990.

6           “(28) OTHER STAFF.—The term ‘other staff’  
7           means pupil services personnel, librarians, career  
8           guidance and counseling personnel, education aides,  
9           and other instructional and administrative per-  
10          sonnel.

11          “(29) OUTLYING AREA.—The term ‘outlying  
12          area’ means the United States Virgin Islands,  
13          Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of  
14          the Northern Mariana Islands, and through fiscal  
15          year 2003 and for the purpose of any discretionary  
16          grant program, includes the freely associated states  
17          of the Republic of the Marshall Islands, the Fed-  
18          erated States of Micronesia, and the Republic of  
19          Palau.

20          “(30) PARENT.—The term ‘parent’ includes a  
21          legal guardian, or other person standing in loco  
22          parentis (such as a grandparent or stepparent with  
23          whom the child lives, or a person who is legally re-  
24          sponsible for the child’s welfare).



1           “(31) PUPIL SERVICES PERSONNEL; PUPIL  
2 SERVICES.—(A) The term ‘pupil services personnel’  
3 means school counselors, school social workers,  
4 school psychologists, and other qualified professional  
5 personnel involved in providing assessment, diag-  
6 nosis, counseling, educational, therapeutic, and other  
7 necessary services (including related services as such  
8 term is defined in section 602(22) of the Individuals  
9 with Disabilities Education Act) as part of a com-  
10 prehensive program to meet student needs.

11           “(B) The term ‘pupil services’ means the serv-  
12 ices provided by pupil services personnel.

13           “(32) READING.—The term ‘reading’ means a  
14 complex system of deriving meaning from print that  
15 requires all of the following:

16           “(A) Skills and knowledge to understand  
17 how phonemes, or speech sounds are connected  
18 in print.

19           “(B) Ability to decode unfamiliar words.

20           “(C) Ability to read fluently.

21           “(D) Sufficient background information  
22 and vocabulary to foster reading comprehen-  
23 sions.

24           “(E) Development of appropriate active  
25 strategies to construct meaning from print.



1           “(F) Development and maintenance of a  
2           motivation to read.

3           “(33) RIGOROUS DIAGNOSTIC READING AND  
4           SCREENING ASSESSMENT TOOLS.—The term ‘rig-  
5           orous diagnostic reading and screening assessment  
6           tools’ means a diagnostic reading assessment that—

7                   “(A) is valid, reliable, and grounded on sci-  
8                   entifically based reading research;

9                   “(B) measures progress in developing pho-  
10                  nemic awareness and phonics skills, vocabulary,  
11                  reading fluency, and reading comprehension;

12                  “(C) identifies students who may be at risk  
13                  for reading failure or who are having difficulty  
14                  reading; and

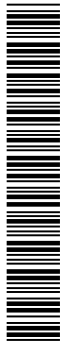
15                  “(D) are used to improve instruction.

16           “(35) SCIENTIFICALLY BASED RESEARCH.—  
17           The term ‘scientifically based research’—

18                   “(A) means the application of rigorous,  
19                   systematic, and objective procedures to obtain  
20                   valid knowledge relevant to education activities  
21                   and programs; and

22                   “(B) shall include research that—

23                           “(i) employs systematic, empirical  
24                           methods that draw on observation or ex-  
25                           periment;





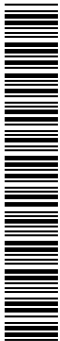
1                   “(ii) involves rigorous data analyses  
2                   that are adequate to test the stated  
3                   hypotheses and justify the general conclu-  
4                   sions drawn;

5                   “(iii) relies on measurements or obser-  
6                   vational methods that provide valid data  
7                   across evaluators and observers and across  
8                   multiple measurements and observations;

9                   “(iv) is evaluated using randomized  
10                  experiments in which individuals, entities,  
11                  programs, or activities are randomly as-  
12                  signed to different variations (including a  
13                  control condition) to compare the relative  
14                  effects of the variations; and

15                  “(v) has been accepted by a peer-re-  
16                  viewed journal or approved by a panel of  
17                  independent experts through a comparably  
18                  rigorous, objective, and scientific review.

19                  “(36) SECONDARY SCHOOL.—The term ‘sec-  
20                  ondary school’ means a nonprofit institutional day or  
21                  residential school, including a public secondary char-  
22                  ter school, that provides secondary education, as de-  
23                  termined under State law, except that such term  
24                  does not include any education beyond grade 12.



1           “(37) SECRETARY.—The term ‘Secretary’  
2 means the Secretary of Education.

3           “(38) STATE.—The term ‘State’ means each of  
4 the 50 States, the District of Columbia, the Com-  
5 monwealth of Puerto Rico, and each of the outlying  
6 areas.

7           “(39) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY.—The  
8 term ‘State educational agency’ means the agency  
9 primarily responsible for the State supervision of  
10 public elementary and secondary schools.

11           “(40) TECHNOLOGY.—The term ‘technology’  
12 means the latest state-of-the-art technology products  
13 and services.

14 **“SEC. 8102. APPLICABILITY OF TITLE.**

15           “Parts B, C, D, and E of this title do not apply to  
16 title VI of this Act.

17 **“SEC. 8103. APPLICABILITY TO BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS  
18 OPERATED SCHOOLS.**

19           “For purposes of any competitive program under this  
20 Act, a consortia of schools operated by the Bureau of In-  
21 dian Affairs, a school operated under a contract or grant  
22 with the Bureau of Indian Affairs in consortia with an-  
23 other contract or grant school or tribal or community or-  
24 ganization, or a Bureau of Indian Affairs school in con-  
25 sortia with an institution of higher education, a contract



1 or grant school and tribal or community organization shall  
2 be given the same consideration as a local educational  
3 agency.

4 **“PART B—FLEXIBILITY IN THE USE OF**  
5 **ADMINISTRATIVE AND OTHER FUNDS**

6 **“SEC. 8201. CONSOLIDATION OF STATE ADMINISTRATIVE**  
7 **FUNDS FOR ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY**  
8 **EDUCATION PROGRAMS.**

9 “(a) CONSOLIDATION OF ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS.—

10 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State educational agency  
11 may consolidate the amounts specifically made avail-  
12 able to such agency for State administration under  
13 one or more of the programs under paragraph (2)  
14 if such State educational agency can demonstrate  
15 that the majority of such agency’s resources are de-  
16 rived from non-Federal sources.

17 “(2) APPLICABILITY.—This section applies to  
18 any program under this Act under which funds are  
19 authorized to be used for administration, and such  
20 other programs as the Secretary may designate.

21 “(b) USE OF FUNDS.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—A State educational agency  
23 shall use the amount available under this section for  
24 the administration of the programs included in the  
25 consolidation under subsection (a).



1           “(2) ADDITIONAL USES.—A State educational  
2 agency may also use funds available under this sec-  
3 tion for administrative activities designed to enhance  
4 the effective and coordinated use of funds under pro-  
5 grams included in the consolidation under subsection  
6 (a), such as—

7           “(A) the coordination of such programs  
8 with other Federal and non-Federal programs;

9           “(B) the establishment and operation of  
10 peer-review mechanisms under this Act;

11           “(C) the administration of this title;

12           “(D) the dissemination of information re-  
13 garding model programs and practices;

14           “(E) technical assistance under any pro-  
15 gram under this Act;

16           “(F) State level activities designed to carry  
17 out this title;

18           “(G) training personnel engaged in audit  
19 and other monitoring activities; and

20           “(H) implementation of the Cooperative  
21 Audit Resolution and Oversight Initiative of the  
22 Department of Education.

23           “(c) RECORDS.—A State educational agency that  
24 consolidates administrative funds under this section shall  
25 not be required to keep separate records, by individual



1 program, to account for costs relating to the administra-  
2 tion of programs included in the consolidation under sub-  
3 section (a).

4 “(d) REVIEW.—To determine the effectiveness of  
5 State administration under this section, the Secretary may  
6 periodically review the performance of State educational  
7 agencies in using consolidated administrative funds under  
8 this section and take such steps as the Secretary finds  
9 appropriate to ensure the effectiveness of such administra-  
10 tion.

11 “(e) UNUSED ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS.—If a State  
12 educational agency does not use all of the funds available  
13 to such agency under this section for administration, such  
14 agency may use such funds during the applicable period  
15 of availability as funds available under one or more pro-  
16 grams included in the consolidation under subsection (a).

17 **“SEC. 8202. SINGLE LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY STATES.**

18 “A State educational agency that also serves as a  
19 local educational agency, in such agency’s applications or  
20 plans under this Act, shall describe how such agency will  
21 eliminate duplication in the conduct of administrative  
22 functions.



1 **“SEC. 8203. CONSOLIDATION OF FUNDS FOR LOCAL ADMIN-**  
2 **ISTRATION.**

3 “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—In accordance with  
4 regulations of the Secretary and for any fiscal year, a local  
5 educational agency, with the approval of its State edu-  
6 cational agency, may consolidate and use for the adminis-  
7 tration of one or more programs under this Act (or such  
8 other programs as the Secretary shall designate) not more  
9 than the percentage, established in each such program, of  
10 the total available for the local educational agency under  
11 such programs.

12 “(b) STATE PROCEDURES.—Within one-year from  
13 the date of enactment of the No Child Left Behind Act  
14 of 2001, a State educational agency shall, in collaboration  
15 with local educational agencies in the State, establish pro-  
16 cedures for responding to requests from local educational  
17 agencies to consolidate administrative funds under sub-  
18 section (a) and for establishing limitations on the amount  
19 of funds under such programs that may be used for ad-  
20 ministration on a consolidated basis.

21 “(c) CONDITIONS.—A local educational agency that  
22 consolidates administrative funds under this section for  
23 any fiscal year shall not use any other funds under the  
24 programs included in the consolidation for administration  
25 for that fiscal year.



1       “(d) USES OF ADMINISTRATIVE FUNDS.—A local  
2 educational agency that consolidates administrative funds  
3 under this section may use such consolidated funds for  
4 the administration of such programs and for uses, at the  
5 school district and school levels, comparable to those de-  
6 scribed in section 8201(b)(2).

7       “(e) RECORDS.—A local educational agency that con-  
8 solidates administrative funds under this section shall not  
9 be required to keep separate records, by individual pro-  
10 gram, to account for costs relating to the administration  
11 of such programs included in the consolidation.

12       **“SEC. 8204. CONSOLIDATED SET-ASIDE FOR DEPARTMENT**  
13                               **OF THE INTERIOR FUNDS.**

14       “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—

15               “(1) TRANSFER.—The Secretary shall transfer  
16 to the Department of the Interior, as a consolidated  
17 amount for covered programs, the Indian education  
18 programs under subpart 1 of part B of title III, and  
19 the education for homeless children and youth pro-  
20 gram under subtitle B of title VII of the Stewart B.  
21 McKinney Homeless Assistance Act, the amounts al-  
22 lotted to the Department of the Interior under those  
23 programs.

24               “(2) AGREEMENT.—(A) The Secretary and the  
25 Secretary of the Interior shall enter into an agree-



1       ment, consistent with the requirements of the pro-  
2       grams specified in paragraph (1), for the distribu-  
3       tion and use of those program funds under terms  
4       that the Secretary determines best meet the pur-  
5       poses of those programs.

6               “(B) The agreement shall—

7                       “(i) set forth the plans of the Secretary of  
8                       the Interior for the use of the amount trans-  
9                       ferred and the performance measures to assess  
10                      program effectiveness, including measurable  
11                      goals and objectives; and

12                     “(ii) be developed in consultation with In-  
13                     dian tribes.

14       “(b) ADMINISTRATION.—The Department of the In-  
15       terior may use not more than 1.5 percent of the funds  
16       consolidated under this section for such department’s  
17       costs related to the administration of the funds trans-  
18       ferred under this section.

19       **“PART C—COORDINATION OF PROGRAMS; CON-**  
20       **SOLIDATED STATE AND LOCAL PLANS AND**  
21       **APPLICATIONS**

22       **“SEC. 8301. PURPOSE.**

23               “The purposes of this part are to improve teaching  
24       and learning through greater coordination between pro-  
25       grams and to provide greater flexibility to State and local





1 authorities by allowing the consolidation of State and local  
2 plans, applications, and reporting.

3 **“SEC. 8302. OPTIONAL CONSOLIDATED STATE PLANS OR**  
4 **APPLICATIONS.**

5 “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—

6 “(1) SIMPLIFICATION.—In order to simplify ap-  
7 plication requirements and reduce the burden for  
8 States under this Act, the Secretary, in accordance  
9 with subsection (b), shall establish procedures and  
10 criteria under which a State educational agency, in  
11 consultation with the State’s Governor, may submit  
12 a consolidated State plan or a consolidated State ap-  
13 plication meeting the requirements of this section  
14 for—

15 “(A) any programs under this Act in which  
16 the State participates; and

17 “(B) such other programs as the Secretary  
18 may designate.

19 “(2) CONSOLIDATED APPLICATIONS AND  
20 PLANS.—A State educational agency, in consultation  
21 with the State’s Governor, that submits a consoli-  
22 dated State plan or a consolidated State application  
23 under this section shall not be required to submit a  
24 separate State plan or application for a program in-  
25 cluded in the consolidated State plan or application.



1 “(b) COLLABORATION.—

2 “(1) IN GENERAL.—In establishing criteria and  
3 procedures under this section, the Secretary shall  
4 collaborate with Governors, State educational agen-  
5 cies and, as appropriate, with other State agencies,  
6 local educational agencies, public and private non-  
7 profit agencies, organizations, and institutions, pri-  
8 vate schools, and representatives of parents, stu-  
9 dents, and teachers.

10 “(2) CONTENTS.—Through the collaborative  
11 process described in paragraph (1), the Secretary  
12 shall establish, for each program under the Act to  
13 which this section applies, the descriptions, informa-  
14 tion, assurances, and other material required to be  
15 included in a consolidated State plan or consolidated  
16 State application.

17 “(3) NECESSARY MATERIALS.—The Secretary  
18 shall require only descriptions, information, assur-  
19 ances, and other materials that are absolutely nec-  
20 essary for the consideration of the consolidated State  
21 plan or consolidated State application.

22 **“SEC. 8303. CONSOLIDATED REPORTING.**

23 “In order to simplify reporting requirements and re-  
24 duce reporting burdens, the Secretary shall establish pro-  
25 cedures and criteria under which a State educational agen-



1 cy, in consultation with the State's Governor, may submit  
2 a consolidated State annual report. Such report shall con-  
3 tain information about the programs included in the re-  
4 port, including the State's performance under those pro-  
5 grams, and other matters as the Secretary determines,  
6 such as monitoring activities. Such a report shall take the  
7 place of separate individual annual reports for the pro-  
8 grams subject to it.

9 **“SEC. 8304. GENERAL APPLICABILITY OF STATE EDU-**  
10 **CATIONAL AGENCY ASSURANCES.**

11 “(a) ASSURANCES.—A State educational agency, in  
12 consultation with the State's Governor, that submits a  
13 consolidated State plan or consolidated State application  
14 under this Act, whether separately or under section 8302,  
15 shall have on file with the Secretary a single set of assur-  
16 ances, applicable to each program for which such plan or  
17 application is submitted, that provides that—

18 “(1) each such program will be administered in  
19 accordance with all applicable statutes, regulations,  
20 program plans, and applications;

21 “(2)(A) the control of funds provided under  
22 each such program and title to property acquired  
23 with program funds will be in a public agency, in a  
24 nonprofit private agency, institution, or organiza-



1           tion, or in an Indian tribe if the law authorizing the  
2           program provides for assistance to such entities; and

3           “(B) the public agency, nonprofit private agen-  
4           cy, institution, or organization, or Indian tribe will  
5           administer such funds and property to the extent re-  
6           quired by the authorizing law;

7           “(3) the State will adopt and use proper meth-  
8           ods of administering each such program, including—

9           “(A) the enforcement of any obligations  
10          imposed by law on agencies, institutions, orga-  
11          nizations, and other recipients responsible for  
12          carrying out each program;

13          “(B) the correction of deficiencies in pro-  
14          gram operations that are identified through au-  
15          dits, monitoring, or evaluation; and

16          “(C) the adoption of written procedures for  
17          the receipt and resolution of complaints alleging  
18          violations of law in the administration of such  
19          programs;

20          “(4) the State will cooperate in carrying out  
21          any evaluation of each such program conducted by  
22          or for the Secretary or other Federal officials;

23          “(5) the State will use such fiscal control and  
24          fund accounting procedures as will ensure proper



1 disbursement of, and accounting for, Federal funds  
2 paid to the State under each such program;

3 “(6) the State will—

4 “(A) make reports to the Secretary as may  
5 be necessary to enable the Secretary to perform  
6 the Secretary’s duties under each such pro-  
7 gram; and

8 “(B) maintain such records, provide such  
9 information to the Secretary, and afford access  
10 to the records as the Secretary may find nec-  
11 essary to carry out the Secretary’s duties; and

12 “(7) before the plan or application was sub-  
13 mitted to the Secretary, the State has afforded a  
14 reasonable opportunity for public comment on the  
15 plan or application and has considered such com-  
16 ment.

17 “(b) GEPA PROVISION.—Section 441 of the General  
18 Education Provisions Act shall not apply to programs  
19 under this Act.

20 **“SEC. 8305. CONSOLIDATED LOCAL PLANS OR APPLICA-**  
21 **TIONS.**

22 “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—A local educational  
23 agency receiving funds under more than one program  
24 under this Act may submit plans or applications to the



1 Governor and State educational agency under such pro-  
2 grams on a consolidated basis.

3       “(b) REQUIRED CONSOLIDATED PLANS OR APPLICA-  
4 TIONS.—A State that has an approved consolidated State  
5 plan or application under section 8302 may require local  
6 educational agencies in the State receiving funds under  
7 more than one program included in the consolidated State  
8 plan or consolidated State application to submit consoli-  
9 dated local plans or applications under such programs, but  
10 may not require such agencies to submit separate plans.

11       “(c) COLLABORATION.—A Governor and State edu-  
12 cational agency shall collaborate with local educational  
13 agencies in the State in establishing procedures for the  
14 submission of the consolidated State plans or consolidated  
15 State applications under this section.

16       “(d) NECESSARY MATERIALS.—The State shall re-  
17 quire only descriptions, information, assurances, and other  
18 material that are absolutely necessary for the consider-  
19 ation of the local educational agency plan or application.

20 **“SEC. 8306. OTHER GENERAL ASSURANCES.**

21       “(a) ASSURANCES.—Any applicant other than a  
22 State that submits a plan or application under this Act,  
23 shall have on file with the State a single set of assurances,  
24 applicable to each program for which a plan or application  
25 is submitted, that provides that—



1           “(1) each such program will be administered in  
2 accordance with all applicable statutes, regulations,  
3 program plans, and applications;

4           “(2)(A) the control of funds provided under  
5 each such program and title to property acquired  
6 with program funds will be in a public agency or in  
7 a nonprofit private agency, institution, organization,  
8 or Indian tribe, if the law authorizing the program  
9 provides for assistance to such entities; and

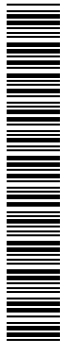
10           “(B) the public agency, nonprofit private  
11 agency, institution, or organization, or Indian  
12 tribe will administer such funds and property to  
13 the extent required by the authorizing statutes;

14           “(3) the applicant will adopt and use proper  
15 methods of administering each such program,  
16 including—

17           “(A) the enforcement of any obligations  
18 imposed by law on agencies, institutions, orga-  
19 nizations, and other recipients responsible for  
20 carrying out each program; and

21           “(B) the correction of deficiencies in pro-  
22 gram operations that are identified through au-  
23 dits, monitoring, or evaluation;

24           “(4) the applicant will cooperate in carrying out  
25 any evaluation of each such program conducted by



1 or for the State educational agency, the Secretary or  
2 other Federal officials;

3 “(5) the applicant will use such fiscal control  
4 and fund accounting procedures as will ensure prop-  
5 er disbursement of, and accounting for, Federal  
6 funds paid to such applicant under each such pro-  
7 gram;

8 “(6) the applicant will—

9 “(A) make reports to the Governor and  
10 State educational agency and the Secretary as  
11 may be necessary to enable such agency and the  
12 Secretary to perform their duties under each  
13 such program; and

14 “(B) maintain such records, provide such  
15 information, and afford access to the records as  
16 the Governor and State educational agency or  
17 the Secretary may find necessary to carry out  
18 the State’s or the Secretary’s duties; and

19 “(7) before the application was submitted, the  
20 applicant afforded a reasonable opportunity for pub-  
21 lic comment on the application and has considered  
22 such comment.

23 “(b) GEPA PROVISION.—Section 442 of the General  
24 Education Provisions Act shall not apply to programs  
25 under this Act.







1 educational agency, Indian tribe, or school that  
2 would be affected by the waiver; and

3 “(D) explains why the waiver will assist  
4 the State educational agency and each affected  
5 local educational agency, Indian tribe, or school  
6 in reaching such goals.

7 “(2) ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—Such  
8 requests—

9 “(A) may provide for waivers of require-  
10 ments applicable to State educational agencies,  
11 local educational agencies, Indian tribes, and  
12 schools; and

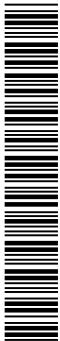
13 “(B) shall be developed and submitted—

14 “(i)(I) by local educational agencies  
15 (on behalf of such agencies and schools) to  
16 State educational agencies; and

17 “(II) by State educational agencies  
18 (on behalf of, and based upon the requests  
19 of, local educational agencies) to the Sec-  
20 retary; or

21 “(ii) by Indian tribes (on behalf of  
22 schools operated by such tribes) to the Sec-  
23 retary.

24 “(3) GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.—



1           “(A) In the case of a waiver request sub-  
2           mitted by a State educational agency acting in  
3           its own behalf, the State educational agency  
4           shall—

5                   “(i) provide all interested local edu-  
6                   cational agencies in the State with notice  
7                   and a reasonable opportunity to comment  
8                   on the request;

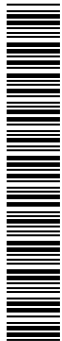
9                   “(ii) submit the comments to the Sec-  
10                  retary; and

11                  “(iii) provide notice and information  
12                  to the public regarding the waiver request  
13                  in the manner that the applying agency  
14                  customarily provides similar notices and  
15                  information to the public.

16           “(B) In the case of a waiver request sub-  
17           mitted by a local educational agency that re-  
18           ceives funds under this Act—

19                   “(i) such request shall be reviewed by  
20                   the State educational agency and be ac-  
21                   companied by the comments, if any, of  
22                   such State educational agency; and

23                   “(ii) notice and information regarding  
24                   the waiver request shall be provided to the  
25                   public by the agency requesting the waiver



1 in the manner that such agency custom-  
2 arily provides similar notices and informa-  
3 tion to the public.

4 “(c) RESTRICTIONS.—The Secretary shall not waive  
5 under this section any statutory or regulatory require-  
6 ments relating to—

7 “(1) the allocation or distribution of funds to  
8 States, local educational agencies, or other recipients  
9 of funds under this Act;

10 “(2) maintenance of effort;

11 “(3) comparability of services;

12 “(4) use of Federal funds to supplement, not  
13 supplant, non-Federal funds;

14 “(5) equitable participation of private school  
15 students and teachers;

16 “(6) parental participation and involvement;

17 “(7) applicable civil rights requirements;

18 “(8) the requirement for a charter school under  
19 part B of title IV; or

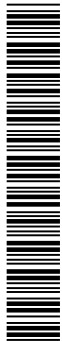
20 “(9) the prohibitions regarding—

21 “(A) State aid in section 8502;

22 “(B) use of funds for religious worship or  
23 instruction in section 8507; and

24 “(C) activities in section 8513.

25 “(d) DURATION AND EXTENSION OF WAIVER.—



1           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in para-  
2           graph (2), the duration of a waiver approved by the  
3           Secretary under this section may be for a period not  
4           to exceed 5 years.

5           “(2) EXTENSION.—The Secretary may extend  
6           the period described in paragraph (1) if the Sec-  
7           retary determines that—

8                   “(A) the waiver has been effective in ena-  
9                   bling the State or affected recipients to carry  
10                  out the activities for which the waiver was re-  
11                  quested and the waiver has contributed to im-  
12                  proved student performance; and

13                   “(B) such extension is in the public inter-  
14                  est.

15           “(e) REPORTS.—

16                   “(1) LOCAL WAIVER.—A local educational agen-  
17                  cy that receives a waiver under this section shall at  
18                  the end of the second year for which a waiver is re-  
19                  ceived under this section, and each subsequent year,  
20                  submit a report to the State educational agency  
21                  that—

22                   “(A) describes the uses of such waiver by  
23                  such agency or by schools;

24                   “(B) describes how schools continued to  
25                  provide assistance to the same populations



1 served by the programs for which waivers are  
2 requested; and

3 “(C) evaluates the progress of such agency  
4 and of schools in improving the quality of in-  
5 struction or the academic performance of stu-  
6 dents.

7 “(2) STATE WAIVER.—A State educational  
8 agency that receives reports required under para-  
9 graph (1) shall annually submit a report to the Sec-  
10 retary that is based on such reports and contains  
11 such information as the Secretary may require.

12 “(3) INDIAN TRIBE WAIVER.—An Indian tribe  
13 that receives a waiver under this section shall annu-  
14 ally submit a report to the Secretary that—

15 “(A) describes the uses of such waiver by  
16 schools operated by such tribe; and

17 “(B) evaluates the progress of such schools  
18 in improving the quality of instruction or the  
19 academic performance of students.

20 “(4) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—Beginning in fis-  
21 cal year 2002 and each subsequent year, the Sec-  
22 retary shall submit to the Committee on Education  
23 and the Workforce of the House of Representatives  
24 and the Committee on Health, Education, Labor  
25 and Pensions of the Senate a report—



1           “(A) summarizing the uses of waivers by  
2           State educational agencies, local educational  
3           agencies, Indian tribes, and schools; and

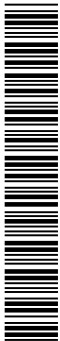
4           “(B) describing whether such waivers—

5                   “(i) increased the quality of instruc-  
6                   tion to students; or

7                   “(ii) improved the academic perform-  
8                   ance of students.

9           “(f) TERMINATION OF WAIVERS.—The Secretary  
10          shall terminate a waiver under this section if the Secretary  
11          determines, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing,  
12          that the performance of the State or other recipient af-  
13          fected by the waiver has been inadequate to justify a con-  
14          tinuation of the waiver or if the waiver is no longer nec-  
15          essary to achieve its original purposes.

16          “(g) PUBLICATION.—A notice of the Secretary’s deci-  
17          sion to grant each waiver under subsection (a) shall be  
18          published in the Federal Register and the Secretary shall  
19          provide for the dissemination of such notice to State edu-  
20          cational agencies, interested parties, including educators,  
21          parents, students, advocacy and civil rights organizations,  
22          and the public.



1                   **“PART E—UNIFORM PROVISIONS**

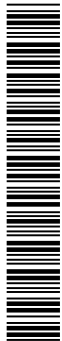
2   **“SEC. 8501. MAINTENANCE OF EFFORT.**

3           “(a) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency may  
4 receive funds under a covered program for any fiscal year  
5 only if the State educational agency finds that either the  
6 combined fiscal effort per student or the aggregate ex-  
7 penditures of such agency and the State with respect to  
8 the provision of free public education by such agency for  
9 the preceding fiscal year was not less than 90 percent of  
10 such combined fiscal effort or aggregate expenditures for  
11 the second preceding fiscal year.

12           “(b) REDUCTION IN CASE OF FAILURE TO MEET.—

13                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—The State educational  
14 agency shall reduce the amount of the allocation of  
15 funds under a covered program in any fiscal year in  
16 the exact proportion to which a local educational  
17 agency fails to meet the requirement of subsection  
18 (a) of this section by falling below 90 percent of  
19 both the combined fiscal effort per student and ag-  
20 gregate expenditures (using the measure most favor-  
21 able to such local agency).

22                   “(2) SPECIAL RULE.—No such lesser amount  
23 shall be used for computing the effort required  
24 under subsection (a) of this section for subsequent  
25 years.





1 “(c) WAIVER.—The Secretary may waive the require-  
2 ments of this section if the Secretary determines that such  
3 a waiver would be equitable due to—

4 “(1) exceptional or uncontrollable circumstances  
5 such as a natural disaster; or

6 “(2) a precipitous decline in the financial re-  
7 sources of the local educational agency.

8 **“SEC. 8502. PROHIBITION REGARDING STATE AID.**

9 “A State shall not take into consideration payments  
10 under this Act (other than under title VI) in determining  
11 the eligibility of any local educational agency in such State  
12 for State aid, or the amount of State aid, with respect  
13 to free public education of children.

14 **“SEC. 8503. PARTICIPATION BY PRIVATE SCHOOL CHIL-  
15 DREN AND TEACHERS.**

16 “(a) PRIVATE SCHOOL PARTICIPATION.—

17 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise pro-  
18 vided in this Act, to the extent consistent with the  
19 number of eligible children in areas served by a  
20 State educational agency, local educational agency,  
21 educational service agency, consortium of such agen-  
22 cies, or another entity receiving financial assistance  
23 under a program specified in subsection (b), who are  
24 enrolled in private elementary and secondary schools  
25 in areas served by such agency, consortium or entity,

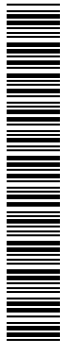


1 such agency, consortium or entity shall, after timely  
2 and meaningful consultation with appropriate pri-  
3 vate school officials, provide such children and their  
4 teachers or other educational personnel, on an equi-  
5 table basis, special educational services or other ben-  
6 efits that address their needs under such program.

7 “(2) SECULAR, NEUTRAL, AND NONIDEOLOG-  
8 ICAL SERVICES OR BENEFITS.—Educational services  
9 or other benefits, including materials and equipment,  
10 provided under this section, shall be secular, neutral,  
11 and nonideological.

12 “(3) SPECIAL RULE.—Educational services and  
13 other benefits provided under this section for such  
14 private school children, teachers, and other edu-  
15 cational personnel shall be equitable in comparison  
16 to services and other benefits for public school chil-  
17 dren, teachers, and other educational personnel par-  
18 ticipating in such program and shall be provided in  
19 a timely manner.

20 “(4) EXPENDITURES.—Expenditures for edu-  
21 cational services and other benefits provided under  
22 this section to eligible private school children, their  
23 teachers, and other educational personnel serving  
24 such children shall be equal, taking into account the  
25 number and educational needs of the children to be



1 served, to the expenditures for participating public  
2 school children.

3 “(5) PROVISION OF SERVICES.—Such agency,  
4 consortium or entity described in subsection (a)(1)  
5 of this section may provide such services directly or  
6 through contracts with public and private agencies,  
7 organizations, and institutions.

8 “(b) APPLICABILITY.—

9 “(1) IN GENERAL.—This section applies to pro-  
10 grams under—

11 “(A) part B, subpart 1 of title I;

12 “(B) part C of title I;

13 “(C) part A of title II;

14 “(D) part A of title III.

15 “(E) part A of title V; and

16 “(F) part B of title V;

17 “(2) DEFINITION.—For the purposes of this  
18 section, the term ‘eligible children’ means children  
19 eligible for services under a program described in  
20 paragraph (1).

21 “(c) CONSULTATION.—

22 “(1) IN GENERAL.—To ensure timely and  
23 meaningful consultation, a State educational agency,  
24 local educational agency, educational service agency,  
25 consortium of such agencies or entity shall consult



1 with appropriate private school officials during the  
2 design and development of the programs under this  
3 Act, on issues such as—

4 “(A) how the children’s needs will be iden-  
5 tified;

6 “(B) what services will be offered;

7 “(C) how, where, and by whom the services  
8 will be provided;

9 “(D) how the services will be assessed and  
10 how the results of the assessment will be used  
11 to improve such services;

12 “(E) the size and scope of the equitable  
13 services to be provided to the eligible private  
14 school children, teachers, and other educational  
15 personnel and the amount of funds available for  
16 such services; and

17 “(F) how and when the agency, consor-  
18 tium, or entity will make decisions about the  
19 delivery of services, including a thorough con-  
20 sideration and analysis of the views of the pri-  
21 vate school officials on the provision of contract  
22 services through potential third party providers.

23 “(2) DISAGREEMENT.—If the agency, consor-  
24 tium or entity disagrees with the views of the private  
25 school officials on the provision of services through



1 a contract, the agency, consortium, or entity shall  
2 provide in writing to such private school officials an  
3 analysis of the reasons why the local educational  
4 agency has chosen not to use a contractor.

5 “(3) TIMING.—Such consultation shall occur  
6 before the agency, consortium, or entity makes any  
7 decision that affects the opportunities of eligible pri-  
8 vate school children, teachers, and other educational  
9 personnel to participate in programs under this Act,  
10 and shall continue throughout the implementation  
11 and assessment of activities under this section.

12 “(4) DISCUSSION REQUIRED.—Such consulta-  
13 tion shall include a discussion of service delivery  
14 mechanisms that the agency, consortium, or entity  
15 could use to provide equitable services to eligible pri-  
16 vate school children, teachers, administrators, and  
17 other staff.

18 “(d) PUBLIC CONTROL OF FUNDS.—

19 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The control of funds used  
20 to provide services under this section, and title to  
21 materials, equipment, and property purchased with  
22 such funds, shall be in a public agency for the uses  
23 and purposes provided in this Act, and a public  
24 agency shall administer such funds and property.

25 “(2) PROVISION OF SERVICES.—



1           “(A) The provision of services under this  
2 section shall be provided—

3                   “(i) by employees of a public agency;  
4 or

5                   “(ii) through contract by such public  
6 agency with an individual, association,  
7 agency, organization, or other entity.

8           “(B) In the provision of such services, such  
9 employee, person, association, agency, organiza-  
10 tion or other entity shall be independent of such  
11 private school and of any religious organization,  
12 and such employment or contract shall be under  
13 the control and supervision of such public agen-  
14 cy.

15           “(C) Funds used to provide services under  
16 this section shall not be commingled with non-  
17 Federal funds.

18 **“SEC. 8504. STANDARDS FOR BY-PASS.**

19           “If, by reason of any provision of law, a State edu-  
20 cational agency, local educational agency, educational  
21 service agency, consortium, or other entity of such agen-  
22 cies, is prohibited from providing for the participation in  
23 programs of children enrolled in, or teachers or other edu-  
24 cational personnel from, private elementary and secondary  
25 schools, on an equitable basis, or if the Secretary deter-



1 mines that such agency consortium or entity has substan-  
2 tially failed or is unwilling to provide for such partici-  
3 tion, as required by section 8503, the Secretary shall—

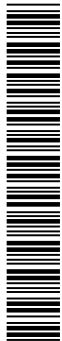
4 “(1) waive the requirements of that section for  
5 such agency, consortium, or entity;

6 “(2) arrange for the provision of equitable serv-  
7 ices to such children, teachers, or other educational  
8 personnel through arrangements that shall be sub-  
9 ject to the requirements of this section and of sec-  
10 tions 8503, 8505, and 8506; and

11 “(3) in making the determination, consider one  
12 or more factors, including the quality, size, scope, lo-  
13 cation of the program and the opportunity of private  
14 school children, teachers, and other educational per-  
15 sonnel to participate.

16 **“SEC. 8505. COMPLAINT PROCESS FOR PARTICIPATION OF**  
17 **PRIVATE SCHOOL CHILDREN.**

18 “(a) PROCEDURES FOR COMPLAINTS.—The Sec-  
19 retary shall develop and implement written procedures for  
20 receiving, investigating, and resolving complaints from  
21 parents, teachers, or other individuals and organizations  
22 concerning violations of section 8503 by a State edu-  
23 cational agency, local educational agency, educational  
24 service agency, consortium of such agencies or entity.  
25 Such individual or organization shall submit such com-



1    plaint to the State educational agency for a written resolu-  
2    tion by the State educational agency within a reasonable  
3    period of time.

4           “(b) APPEALS TO SECRETARY.—Such resolution may  
5    be appealed by an interested party to the Secretary not  
6    later than 30 days after the State educational agency re-  
7    solves the complaint or fails to resolve the complaint with-  
8    in a reasonable period of time. Such appeal shall be ac-  
9    companied by a copy of the State educational agency’s res-  
10   olution, and a complete statement of the reasons sup-  
11   porting the appeal. The Secretary shall investigate and re-  
12   solve each such appeal not later than 120 days after re-  
13   ceipt of the appeal.

14    **“SEC. 8506. BY-PASS DETERMINATION PROCESS.**

15           “(a) REVIEW.—

16                   “(1) IN GENERAL.—

17                           “(A) The Secretary shall not take any final  
18                           action under section 8504 until the State edu-  
19                           cational agency, local educational agency, edu-  
20                           cational service agency, consortium of such  
21                           agencies or entity affected by such action has  
22                           had an opportunity, for not less than 45 days  
23                           after receiving written notice thereof, to submit  
24                           written objections and to appear before the Sec-





1           retary to show cause why that action should not  
2           be taken.

3           “(B) Pending final resolution of any inves-  
4           tigation or complaint that could result in a de-  
5           termination under this section, the Secretary  
6           may withhold from the allocation of the affected  
7           State or local educational agency the amount  
8           estimated by the Secretary to be necessary to  
9           pay the cost of those services.

10          “(2) PETITION FOR REVIEW.—

11           “(A) If such affected agency consortium or  
12           entity is dissatisfied with the Secretary’s final  
13           action after a proceeding under paragraph (1),  
14           such agency consortium or entity may, within  
15           60 days after notice of such action, file with the  
16           United States court of appeals for the circuit in  
17           which such State is located a petition for review  
18           of that action.

19           “(B) A copy of the petition shall be forth-  
20           with transmitted by the clerk of the court to the  
21           Secretary.

22           “(C) The Secretary upon receipt of the  
23           copy of the petition shall file in the court the  
24           record of the proceedings on which the Sec-



1           retary based this action, as provided in section  
2           2112 of title 28, United States Code.

3           “(3) FINDINGS OF FACT.—

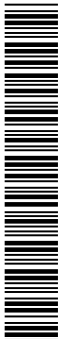
4                   “(A) The findings of fact by the Secretary,  
5           if supported by substantial evidence, shall be  
6           conclusive, but the court, for good cause shown,  
7           may remand the case to the Secretary to take  
8           further evidence and the Secretary may then  
9           make new or modified findings of fact and may  
10          modify the Secretary’s previous action, and  
11          shall file in the court the record of the further  
12          proceedings.

13                   “(B) Such new or modified findings of fact  
14          shall likewise be conclusive if supported by sub-  
15          stantial evidence.

16          “(4) JURISDICTION.—

17                   “(A) Upon the filing of such petition, the  
18          court shall have jurisdiction to affirm the action  
19          of the Secretary or to set such action aside, in  
20          whole or in part.

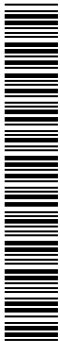
21                   “(B) The judgment of the court shall be  
22          subject to review by the Supreme Court of the  
23          United States upon certiorari or certification as  
24          provided in section 1254 of title 28, United  
25          States Code.



1           “(b) DETERMINATION.—Any determination by the  
2 Secretary under this section shall continue in effect until  
3 the Secretary determines, in consultation with such agen-  
4 cy, consortium or entity and representatives of the af-  
5 fected private school children, teachers, or other edu-  
6 cational personnel that there will no longer be any failure  
7 or inability on the part of such agency or consortium to  
8 meet the applicable requirements of section 8503 or any  
9 other provision of this Act.

10           “(c) PAYMENT FROM STATE ALLOTMENT.—When  
11 the Secretary arranges for services pursuant to this sec-  
12 tion, the Secretary shall, after consultation with the ap-  
13 propriate public and private school officials, pay the cost  
14 of such services, including the administrative costs of ar-  
15 ranging for those services, from the appropriate allocation  
16 or allocations under this Act.

17           “(d) PRIOR DETERMINATION.—Any by-pass deter-  
18 mination by the Secretary under this Act as in effect on  
19 the day preceding the date of enactment of the No Child  
20 Left Behind Act of 2001 shall remain in effect to the ex-  
21 tent the Secretary determines that such determination is  
22 consistent with the purpose of this section.



1 **“SEC. 8507. PROHIBITION AGAINST FUNDS FOR RELIGIOUS**  
2 **WORSHIP OR INSTRUCTION.**

3 “Nothing contained in this Act shall be construed to  
4 authorize the making of any payment under this Act for  
5 religious worship or instruction.

6 **“SEC. 8508. APPLICABILITY.**

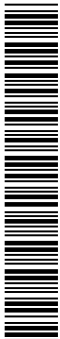
7 “Nothing in this Act shall be construed to affect  
8 home schools, whether or not a home school is treated as  
9 a home school or a private school under State law (con-  
10 sistent with section 8509), nor shall any home schooled  
11 student be required to participate in any assessment ref-  
12 erenced in this Act.

13 **“SEC. 8509. PRIVATE SCHOOLS.**

14 “Nothing in this Act shall be construed to affect any  
15 private school that does not receive funds or services under  
16 this Act nor shall any student who attends a private school  
17 that does not receive funds or services under this Act be  
18 required to participate in any assessment referenced in  
19 this Act.

20 **“SEC. 8510. PRIVACY OF ASSESSMENT RESULTS.**

21 “Any results from individual assessments referenced  
22 in this Act which become part of the education records  
23 of the student shall have the protections as provided in  
24 section 444 of the General Education Provisions Act.



1 **“SEC. 8511. GENERAL PROVISION REGARDING NON-**  
2 **RECIPIENT NONPUBLIC SCHOOLS.**

3 “Nothing in this Act, or any other Act administered  
4 by the Department, shall be construed to permit, allow,  
5 encourage, or authorize any Federal control over any as-  
6 pect of any private, religious, or home school, whether or  
7 not a home school is treated as a private school or home  
8 school under State law. This section shall not be construed  
9 to bar private, religious, or home schools from participa-  
10 tion in programs or services under this Act.

11 **“SEC. 8512. SCHOOL PRAYER.**

12 “As a condition for receipt of funds under this Act,  
13 a local educational agency shall certify in writing to the  
14 Secretary that no policy of the agency prevents or other-  
15 wise denies participation in constitutionally protected  
16 prayer in public schools.

17 **“SEC. 8513. GENERAL PROHIBITIONS.**

18 “(a) PROHIBITION.—None of the funds authorized  
19 under this Act shall be used—

20 “(1) to develop or distribute materials, or oper-  
21 ate programs or courses of instruction directed at  
22 youth that are designed to promote or encourage,  
23 sexual activity, whether homosexual or heterosexual;

24 “(2) to distribute or to aid in the distribution  
25 by any organization of legally obscene materials to  
26 minors on school grounds;



1           “(3) to provide sex education or HIV preven-  
2           tion education in schools unless such instruction is  
3           age appropriate and emphasizes the health benefits  
4           of abstinence; or

5           “(4) to operate a program of contraceptive dis-  
6           tribution in schools.

7           “(b) LOCAL CONTROL.—Nothing in this section shall  
8           be construed to—

9           “(1) authorize an officer or employee of the  
10          Federal Government to direct, review, or control a  
11          State, local educational agency, or schools’ instruc-  
12          tional content, curriculum, and related activities;

13          “(2) limit the application of the General Edu-  
14          cation Provisions Act (20 U.S.C.A. 1221 et seq.);

15          “(3) require the distribution of scientifically or  
16          medically false or inaccurate materials or to prohibit  
17          the distribution of scientifically or medically true or  
18          accurate materials; or

19          “(4) create any legally enforceable right.

20       **“SEC. 8514. PROHIBITION ON FEDERAL MANDATES, DIREC-**  
21       **TION, AND CONTROL.**

22          “(a) GENERAL PROHIBITION.—Officers and employ-  
23          ees of the Federal Government are prohibited from man-  
24          dating, directing, or controlling a State, local educational  
25          agency, or school’s curriculum, program of instruction, or



1 allocation of State or local resources, or mandating a State  
2 or any subdivision thereof to spend any funds or incur  
3 any costs not paid for under this Act.

4 “(b) PROHIBITION OF FEDERAL MANDATES, DIREC-  
5 TION, OR CONTROL.—Nothing in this Act shall be con-  
6 strued to authorize an officer or employee of the Federal  
7 Government to mandate, direct, or control a State, local  
8 educational agency, or school’s specific instructional con-  
9 tent or academic achievement standards and assessments,  
10 curriculum, or program of instruction as a condition of  
11 eligibility to receive funds under this Act.

12 “(c) EQUALIZED SPENDING.—Nothing in this Act  
13 shall be construed to mandate equalized spending per  
14 pupil for a State, local educational agency, or school.

15 “(d) BUILDING STANDARDS.—Nothing in this Act  
16 shall be construed to mandate national school building  
17 standards for a State, local agency, or school.

18 **“SEC. 8515. RULEMAKING.**

19 “The Secretary shall issue regulations under this Act  
20 only to the extent that such regulations are necessary to  
21 ensure that there is compliance with the specific require-  
22 ments and assurances required by this Act.

23 **“SEC. 8516. REPORT.**

24 “The Secretary shall report to the Congress not later  
25 than 180 days after the date of enactment of the No Child



1 Left Behind Act of 2001 regarding how the Secretary  
2 shall ensure that audits conducted by Department employ-  
3 ees of activities assisted under this Act comply with  
4 changes to this Act made by the No Child Left Behind  
5 Act of 2001, particularly with respect to permitting chil-  
6 dren with similar educational needs to be served in the  
7 same educational settings, where appropriate.

8 **“SEC. 8517. REQUIRED APPROVAL OR CERTIFICATION PRO-**  
9 **HIBITED.**

10 “(a) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other pro-  
11 vision of Federal law, no State shall be required to have  
12 academic content standards or student academic achieve-  
13 ment standards approved or certified by the Federal Gov-  
14 ernment, in order to receive assistance under this Act.

15 “(b) CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this section shall  
16 be construed to affect requirements under title I of this  
17 Act.

18 **“SEC. 8518. PROHIBITION ON ENDORSEMENT OF CUR-**  
19 **RICULUM.**

20 “Notwithstanding any other prohibition of Federal  
21 law, no funds provided to the Department of Education  
22 or to any applicable program may be used by the Depart-  
23 ment to endorse, approve, or sanction any curriculum de-  
24 signed to be used in an elementary or secondary school.





1 **“SEC. 8519. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION ON PERSONALLY**  
2 **IDENTIFIABLE INFORMATION.**

3 “Nothing in this Act shall be construed to permit the  
4 development of a national database of personally identifi-  
5 able information on individuals involved in studies or in  
6 data collection efforts under this Act.

7 **“SEC. 8520. SEVERABILITY.**

8 “If any provision of this Act is held invalid, the re-  
9 mainder of this Act shall be unaffected thereby.

10 **“PART F—SENSE OF CONGRESS**

11 **“SEC. 8601. PAPERWORK REDUCTION.**

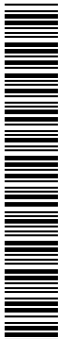
12 “(a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

13 “(1) instruction and other classroom activities  
14 provide the greatest opportunity for students, espe-  
15 cially at-risk and disadvantaged students, to attain  
16 high standards and achieve academic success;

17 “(2) one of the greatest obstacles to estab-  
18 lishing an effective, classroom-centered education  
19 system is the cost of paperwork compliance;

20 “(3) paperwork places a burden on teachers  
21 and administrators who must complete Federal and  
22 State forms to apply for Federal funds and absorbs  
23 time and money which otherwise would be spent on  
24 students;

25 “(4) the Education at a Crossroads Report re-  
26 leased in 1998 by the Education Subcommittee on



1 Oversight and Investigations states that require-  
2 ments by the Department of Education result in  
3 more than 48,600,000 hours of paperwork per year;  
4 and

5 “(5) paperwork distracts from the mission of  
6 schools, encumbers teachers, and administrators  
7 with nonacademic responsibilities, and competes with  
8 teaching and classroom activities which promote  
9 learning and achievement.

10 “(b) SENSE OF CONGRESS.—It is the sense of Con-  
11 gress that Federal and State educational agencies should  
12 reduce the paperwork requirements placed on schools,  
13 teachers, principles, and other administrators.

14 **“SEC. 8602. PROHIBITION ON MANDATORY NATIONAL CER-**  
15 **TIFICATION OF TEACHERS AND PARA-**  
16 **PROFESSIONALS.**

17 “(a) PROHIBITION ON MANDATORY TESTING OR  
18 CERTIFICATION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of  
19 law, the Secretary is prohibited from using Federal funds  
20 to plan, develop, implement, or administer any mandatory  
21 national teacher or paraprofessional test or certification.

22 “(b) PROHIBITION ON WITHHOLDING FUNDS.—The  
23 Secretary is prohibited from withholding funds from any  
24 State or local educational agency if such State or local



1 educational agency fails to adopt a specific method of  
2 teacher or paraprofessional certification.

3 **“SEC. 8603. PROHIBITION ON FEDERALLY SPONSORED**  
4 **TESTING.**

5 “Notwithstanding any other provision of Federal law,  
6 no funds provided under this Act to the Secretary or to  
7 the recipient of any award may be used to develop, pilot  
8 test, field test, implement, administer, or distribute any  
9 federally sponsored national test in reading, mathematics,  
10 or any other subject, unless specifically and explicitly au-  
11 thorized by law.

12 **“SEC. 8604. SENSE OF CONGRESS REGARDING MEMORIALS.**

13 “It is the sense of Congress that—

14 “(1) the saying of a prayer, the reading of a  
15 scripture, or the performance of religious music, as  
16 part of a memorial service that is held on the cam-  
17 pus of a public elementary or secondary school in  
18 order to honor the memory of any person slain on  
19 that campus is not objectionable under this Act; and

20 “(2) the design and construction of any memo-  
21 rial which includes religious symbols, motifs, or  
22 sayings that is placed on the campus of a public ele-  
23 mentary or secondary school in order to honor the  
24 memory of any person slain on that campus is not  
25 objectionable under this Act.





1       “(b) TITLE I EXCLUDED.—The Secretary may not  
2 reserve under subsection (a) funds appropriated to carry  
3 out any program authorized under title I.

4       “(c) EVALUATION ACTIVITIES AUTHORIZED ELSE-  
5 WHERE.—

6           “(1) IN GENERAL.—If, under any other provi-  
7 sion of this Act (other than title I), funds are au-  
8 thorized to be reserved or used for evaluation activi-  
9 ties with respect to a program or project, the Sec-  
10 retary may not reserve additional funds under this  
11 section for the evaluation of such program or  
12 project.”.

13 **SEC. 802. COMPREHENSIVE REGIONAL ASSISTANCE CEN-**  
14 **TERS.**

15       (a) IN GENERAL.—Part A of title XIII (20 U.S.C.  
16 8621 et seq.)—

17           (1) is transferred to the end of title VIII, as  
18 amended by section 801; and

19           (2) is redesignated as part H.

20       (b) REDESIGNATION OF SECTIONS.—Sections 13101  
21 through 13105 are redesignated as sections 8701 through  
22 8705, respectively.

23       (c) CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—

24           (1) REQUIREMENTS.—Section 8702 (as redesign-  
25 nated by subsection (b)) is amended—



1 (A) by striking “section 13101(a)” and in-  
2 serting “section 8701(a)”; and

3 (B) in paragraph (7), by striking “section  
4 13201” and inserting “section 8751”.

5 (2) MAINTENANCE OF SERVICE.—Section  
6 8703(b) (as redesignated by subsection (b)) is  
7 amended—

8 (A) in paragraph (1), by striking “section  
9 13102” and inserting “section 8702”; and

10 (B) in paragraph (2)—

11 (i) by striking “section 13201” and  
12 inserting “section 8751”; and

13 (ii) by striking “section 13401” and  
14 inserting “section 8851”.

15 (3) TRANSITION.—Section 8704(b)(1) (as re-  
16 redesignated by subsection (b)) is amended by striking  
17 “section 13105” and inserting “section 8705”.

18 **SEC. 803. NATIONAL DIFFUSION NETWORK.**

19 (a) IN GENERAL.—Part B of title XIII (20 U.S.C.  
20 8651 et seq.)—

21 (1) is transferred to the end of title VIII, as  
22 amended by section 802; and

23 (2) is redesignated as part I.



1 (b) REDESIGNATION OF SECTIONS.—Sections 13201  
2 and 13202 are redesignated as sections 8751 and 8752,  
3 respectively.

4 (c) CONFORMING AMENDMENT.—Section 8751(f)(4)  
5 (as redesignated by subsection (b)) is amended—

6 (1) in subsection (e)(3), by striking “under part  
7 C” through the end thereof and inserting “under  
8 part F, and”; and

9 (2) in subsection (f)(4), by striking “section  
10 13401” and inserting “section 8851”.

11 **SEC. 804. EISENHOWER REGIONAL MATHEMATICS AND**  
12 **SCIENCE EDUCATION CONSORTIA.**

13 (a) IN GENERAL.—Part C of title XIII (20 U.S.C.  
14 8671 et seq.)—

15 (1) is transferred to the end of title VIII, as  
16 amended by section 803; and

17 (2) is redesignated as part J.

18 (b) REDESIGNATION OF SECTIONS.—Sections 13301  
19 through 13308 are redesignated as sections 8801 through  
20 8808, respectively.

21 (c) CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.—

22 (1) GRANT AUTHORIZATION.—Section  
23 8801(a)(3) (as redesignated by subsection (b)) is  
24 amended by striking “section 13308” and inserting  
25 “section 8808”.



1           (2) USE OF FUNDS.—Section 8802 (as redesignig-  
2 nated by subsection (b)) is amended—

3           (A) by striking “section 13304” and in-  
4 serting “section 8804”;

5           (B) in paragraph (2), by striking  
6 “13301(a)(1)” and inserting “8801(a)(1)”; and

7           (C) in paragraph (3), by striking  
8 “13301(a)(1)” and inserting “8801(a)(1)”.

9           (3) PAYMENTS.—Section 8805 (as redesignated  
10 by subsection (b)) is amended in each of subsections  
11 (a) and (b) by striking “section 13303” and insert-  
12 ing “section 8803”.

13           (4) EVALUATION.—Section 8806(a) (as redesignig-  
14 nated by subsection (b)) is amended by striking  
15 “section 14701” and inserting “section 8651”.

16           (5) DEFINITIONS.—Section 8807(4) (as redesi-  
17 gnated by subsection (b)) is amended by striking  
18 “section 13301” and inserting “section 8801”.

19 **SEC. 805. TECHNOLOGY-BASED TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.**

20           (a) IN GENERAL.—Part D of title XIII (20 U.S.C.  
21 8701)—

22           (1) is transferred to the end of title VIII, as  
23 amended by section 804; and

24           (2) is redesignated as part K.





1 (b) REDESIGNATION OF SECTION.—Section 13401 is  
2 redesignated as section 8851.

3 **SEC. 806. REGIONAL TECHNICAL SUPPORT AND PROFES-**  
4 **SIONAL DEVELOPMENT.**

5 (a) IN GENERAL.—Subpart 3 of part A of title III  
6 (20 U.S.C. 6861 et seq.)—

7 (1) is transferred to the end of title VIII, as  
8 amended by section 805; and

9 (2) is redesignated as part L.

10 (b) REDESIGNATION OF SECTION.—Section 3141 is  
11 redesignated as section 8901.

12 (c) CONFORMING AMENDMENT.—Section 8901 (as  
13 redesignated by subsection (b)) is amended by striking  
14 “part C of title XIII” and inserting “part J”.

15 **TITLE IX—MISCELLANEOUS**  
16 **PROVISIONS**

17 **PART A—AMENDMENTS TO OTHER ACTS**

18 **Subpart 1—National Education Statistics Act**

19 **SEC. 901. AMENDMENT TO NESA.**

20 Section 411 of the National Education Statistics Act  
21 of 1994 (20 U.S.C. 9010) is amended—

22 (1) by amending subsection (b)(2) to read as  
23 follows:

24 “(2) STATE ASSESSMENTS.—(A) The Commis-  
25 sioner, in carrying out the National Assessment—



1           “(i) may conduct State assessments of stu-  
2           dent achievement in grades 4, 8, and 12; and

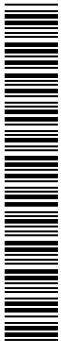
3           “(ii) shall conduct annual State assess-  
4           ments of student achievement in reading and  
5           mathematics in grades 4 and 8 in order for  
6           States to carry out section 1111(c)(2) of the  
7           Elementary and Secondary Education Act of  
8           1965.

9           “(B)(i) Except as provided in clause (ii), a par-  
10          ticipating State shall review and give permission for  
11          the release of results from any test of its students  
12          administered as a part of a State assessment prior  
13          to the release of the data. Refusal by a State to re-  
14          lease its data shall not restrict the release of data  
15          from other States that have approved the release of  
16          that data.

17          “(ii) A State participating in the annual State  
18          assessments of its students in reading and mathe-  
19          matics in grades 4 and 8 shall be deemed to have  
20          given its permission to release its data if it has an  
21          approved plan under section 1111 of the Elementary  
22          and Secondary Education Act of 1965.”; and

23          (2) by amending subsection (d) to read as fol-  
24          lows:

25          “(d) PARTICIPATION.—



1           “(1) NATIONAL AND REGIONAL PARTICIPA-  
2           TION.—Participation in the national and regional as-  
3           sessments by State and local educational agencies  
4           shall be voluntary.

5           “(2) STATE PARTICIPATION.—Participation in  
6           assessments made on a State basis shall be vol-  
7           untary.”.

8                           **Subpart 2—Homeless Education**

9           **SEC. 911. SHORT TITLE.**

10           This subpart may be cited as the “McKinney-Vento  
11 Homeless Education Assistance Improvements Act of  
12 2001”.

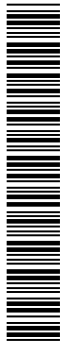
13           **SEC. 912. FINDINGS.**

14           Congress makes the following findings:

15                   (1) An estimated 1,000,000 children in the  
16           United States will experience homelessness in 2001.

17                   (2) Homelessness has a devastating impact on  
18           the educational opportunities of children and youth.  
19           Homeless children go hungry at more than twice the  
20           rate of other children, have four times the rate of  
21           delayed development, and are twice as likely to re-  
22           peat a grade.

23                   (3) Despite steady progress in school enroll-  
24           ment and attendance resulting from the passage in  
25           1987 of the Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assist-



1       ance Act (42 U.S.C. 11301 et seq.), homeless stu-  
2       dents still face numerous barriers to education, in-  
3       cluding residency, guardianship and registration re-  
4       quirements, delays in the transfer of school records,  
5       and inadequate transportation service.

6           (4) School is one of the few secure factors in  
7       the lives of homeless children and youth, providing  
8       stability, structure, and accomplishment during a  
9       time of great upheaval.

10          (5) Homeless children and youth require edu-  
11       cational stability and the opportunity to maintain  
12       regular and consistent attendance in school, so that  
13       they acquire the skills necessary to escape poverty  
14       and lead productive, healthy lives as adults.

15          (6) In the 14 years since the passage of the  
16       Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assistance Act (42  
17       U.S.C. 11301 et seq.), educators and service pro-  
18       viders have learned much about policies and prac-  
19       tices which help remove the barriers described.

20       **SEC. 913. PURPOSE.**

21       The purpose of this subpart is to strengthen subtitle  
22       B of title VII of Public Law 100-77 (42 U.S.C. 11431  
23       et seq.) by amending it—



1 (1) to include innovative practices, proven to be  
2 effective in helping homeless children and youth en-  
3 roll, attend, and succeed in school; and

4 (2) to help ensure that all children and youth  
5 impacted by the loss of fixed, regular, and adequate  
6 housing receive a quality education and secure their  
7 chance for a brighter future.

8 **SEC. 914. EDUCATION FOR HOMELESS CHILDREN AND**  
9 **YOUTH.**

10 Subtitle B of title VII of Public Law 100–77 (42  
11 U.S.C. 11431 et seq.) is amended to read as follows:

12 **“Subtitle B—Education for**  
13 **Homeless Children and Youth**

14 **“SEC. 721. STATEMENT OF POLICY.**

15 “It is the policy of the Congress that—

16 “(1) each State educational agency ensure that  
17 each child of a homeless individual and each home-  
18 less youth has equal access to the same free, public  
19 education, including a public preschool education, as  
20 provided to other children and youth;

21 “(2) in any State that has a compulsory resi-  
22 dency requirement as a component of the State’s  
23 compulsory school attendance laws or other laws,  
24 regulations, practices, or policies that may act as a  
25 barrier to the enrollment, attendance, or success in



1 school of homeless children and youth, the State re-  
2 view and undertake steps to revise such laws, regula-  
3 tions, practices, or policies to ensure that homeless  
4 children and youth are afforded the same free, pub-  
5 lic education as provided to other children and  
6 youth;

7 “(3) homelessness alone is not sufficient reason  
8 to separate students from the mainstream school en-  
9 vironment; and

10 “(4) homeless children and youth must have ac-  
11 cess to the education and other services that such  
12 children and youth need to ensure that such children  
13 and youth have an opportunity to meet the same  
14 challenging State student academic achievement  
15 standards to which all students are held.

16 **“SEC. 722. GRANTS FOR STATE AND LOCAL ACTIVITIES FOR**  
17 **THE EDUCATION OF HOMELESS CHILDREN**  
18 **AND YOUTH.**

19 “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—The Secretary is au-  
20 thorized to make grants to States in accordance with the  
21 provisions of this section to enable such States to carry  
22 out the activities described in subsections (d), (e), (f), and  
23 (g).

24 “(b) APPLICATION.—No State may receive a grant  
25 under this section unless the State educational agency

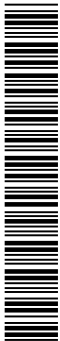


1 submits an application to the Secretary at such time, in  
2 such manner, and containing or accompanied by such in-  
3 formation as the Secretary may reasonably require.

4 “(c) ALLOCATION AND RESERVATIONS.—

5 “(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2)  
6 and section 724(d), from the amounts appropriated  
7 for each fiscal year under section 726, the Secretary  
8 is authorized to allot to each State an amount that  
9 bears the same ratio to the amount appropriated for  
10 such year under section 726 as the amount allocated  
11 under section 1122 of the Elementary and Sec-  
12 ondary Education Act of 1965 to the State for that  
13 year bears to the total amount allocated under sec-  
14 tion 1122 of such Act to all States for that year, ex-  
15 cept that no State shall receive less than \$125,000  
16 or  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 percent of the amount appropriated under  
17 section 726, whichever is greater.

18 “(2) RESERVATION.—(A) The Secretary is au-  
19 thorized to reserve 0.1 percent of the amount appro-  
20 priated for each fiscal year under section 726 to be  
21 allocated by the Secretary among the United States  
22 Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the  
23 Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, ac-  
24 cording to their respective need for assistance under  
25 this subtitle, as determined by the Secretary.

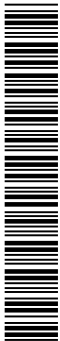


1           “(B)(i) The Secretary shall transfer one percent  
2 of the amount appropriated for each fiscal year  
3 under section 726 to the Department of the Interior  
4 for programs for Indian students served by schools  
5 funded by the Secretary of the Interior, as deter-  
6 mined under the Indian Self-Determination and  
7 Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450 et seq.),  
8 that are consistent with the purposes of this Act.

9           “(ii) The Secretary and the Secretary of the In-  
10 terior shall enter into an agreement, consistent with  
11 the requirements of this part, for the distribution  
12 and use of the funds described in clause (i) under  
13 terms that the Secretary determines best meet the  
14 purposes of the programs described in such clause.  
15 Such agreement shall set forth the plans of the Sec-  
16 retary of the Interior for the use of the amounts  
17 transferred, including appropriate goals, objectives,  
18 and milestones.

19           “(3) STATE DEFINED.—As used in this sub-  
20 section, the term ‘State’ shall not include the United  
21 States Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and  
22 the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Is-  
23 lands.

24           “(d) ACTIVITIES.—Grants under this section shall be  
25 used—





1           “(1) to carry out the policies set forth in sec-  
2           tion 721 in the State;

3           “(2) to provide activities for, and services to,  
4           homeless children, including preschool-aged homeless  
5           children, and youth that enable such children and  
6           youth to enroll in, attend, and succeed in school, or,  
7           if appropriate, in preschool programs;

8           “(3) to establish or designate an Office of Coor-  
9           dinator of Education of Homeless Children and  
10          Youth in the State educational agency in accordance  
11          with subsection (f);

12          “(4) to prepare and carry out the State plan  
13          described in subsection (g); and

14          “(5) to develop and implement professional de-  
15          velopment programs for school personnel to heighten  
16          their awareness of, and capacity to respond to, spe-  
17          cific problems in the education of homeless children  
18          and youth.

19          “(e) STATE AND LOCAL GRANTS.—

20          “(1) MINIMUM DISBURSEMENTS BY STATES.—

21          From the sums made available each year to carry  
22          out this subtitle, the State education agency shall  
23          distribute not less than 75 percent in grants to local  
24          educational agencies for the purposes of carrying out  
25          section 723, except that States funded at the min-



1       imum level set forth in subsection (c)(1) shall dis-  
2       tribute not less than 50 percent in grants to local  
3       educational agencies for the purposes of carrying out  
4       section 723.

5           “(2) USE BY STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY.—  
6       A State educational agency may use funds made  
7       available for State use under this subtitle to conduct  
8       activities under subsection (f) directly or through  
9       grants.

10          “(3) PROHIBITION ON SEGREGATING HOMELESS  
11       STUDENTS.—

12           “(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in  
13       subparagraph (B) and section 723(a)(2)(B)(ii),  
14       in providing a free public education to a home-  
15       less child or youth, no State receiving funds  
16       under this subtitle shall segregate such child or  
17       youth, either in a separate school or in a sepa-  
18       rate program within a school, based solely on  
19       such child’s or youth’s status as homeless.

20           “(B) EXCEPTION.—A State that operates  
21       a separate school for homeless children as of  
22       the day preceding the date of enactment of the  
23       McKinney-Vento Homeless Education Assist-  
24       ance Improvements Act of 2001—

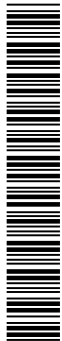


1                   “(i) shall remain eligible to receive,  
2                   and to distribute to local educational agen-  
3                   cies, funds under this subtitle for such  
4                   school; and

5                   “(ii) shall not distribute to local edu-  
6                   cational agencies in the State any funds  
7                   received under this subtitle for use by any  
8                   such schools not in operation as of such  
9                   date of enactment.

10                  “(f) FUNCTIONS OF THE OFFICE OF COORDI-  
11                  NATOR.—The Coordinator of Education of Homeless Chil-  
12                  dren and Youth established in each State shall—

13                   “(1) gather, to the extent possible, reliable,  
14                   valid, and comprehensive information on the nature  
15                   and extent of the problems homeless children and  
16                   youth have in gaining access to public preschool pro-  
17                   grams and to public elementary and secondary  
18                   schools, the difficulties in identifying the special  
19                   needs of such children and youth, any progress made  
20                   by the State educational agency and local edu-  
21                   cational agencies in the State in addressing such  
22                   problems and difficulties, and the success of the pro-  
23                   gram under this subtitle in assisting homeless chil-  
24                   dren and youth to enroll in, attend, and succeed in,  
25                   school;



1           “(2) develop and carry out the State plan de-  
2           scribed in subsection (g);

3           “(3) collect and transmit to the Secretary infor-  
4           mation gathered pursuant to paragraphs (1) and (2)  
5           at such time and in such manner as the Secretary  
6           may require;

7           “(4) facilitate coordination between the State  
8           educational agency, the State social services agency,  
9           and other agencies providing services to homeless  
10          children and youth, including homeless children, in-  
11          cluding preschool-aged homeless children, and youth,  
12          and families of such children and youth;

13          “(5) in order to improve the provision of com-  
14          prehensive education and related services to home-  
15          less children and youth and their families, coordinate  
16          and collaborate with—

17                 “(A) educators, including child develop-  
18                 ment and preschool program personnel;

19                 “(B) State and local providers of services  
20                 to homeless and runaway children and youth  
21                 and homeless families (including domestic vio-  
22                 lence agencies, shelter operators, transitional  
23                 housing facilities, runaway and homeless youth  
24                 centers, and transitional living programs for  
25                 homeless youth);



1           “(C) local educational agency liaisons for  
2           homeless children and youth; and

3           “(D) State and local community organiza-  
4           tions and groups representing homeless children  
5           and youth and their families; and

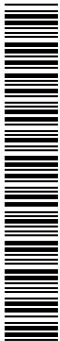
6           “(6) provide technical assistance to local edu-  
7           cational agencies, in coordination with local liaisons  
8           designated under subsection (g)(1)(J)(ii), to ensure  
9           that local educational agencies comply with the re-  
10          quirements of paragraphs (3) through (7) of sub-  
11          section (g).

12          “(g) STATE PLAN.—

13           “(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State shall submit to  
14           the Secretary a plan to provide for the education of  
15           homeless children and youth within the State, which  
16           plan shall—

17           “(A) describe how such children and youth  
18           are or will be given the opportunity to meet the  
19           same challenging State student academic  
20           achievement standards all students are expected  
21           to meet;

22           “(B) describe the procedures the State  
23           educational agency will use to identify such chil-  
24           dren and youth in the State and to assess their  
25           special needs;



1           “(C) describe procedures for the prompt  
2 resolution of disputes regarding the educational  
3 placement of homeless children and youth;

4           “(D) describe programs for school per-  
5 sonnel (including principals, attendance officers,  
6 teachers, enrollment personnel, and pupil serv-  
7 ices personnel) to heighten the awareness of  
8 such personnel of the specific needs of runaway  
9 and homeless youth;

10          “(E) describe procedures that ensure that  
11 homeless children and youth who meet the rel-  
12 evant eligibility criteria are able to participate  
13 in Federal, State, or local food programs;

14          “(F) describe procedures that ensure  
15 that—

16               “(i) homeless children have equal ac-  
17 cess to the same public preschool pro-  
18 grams, administered by the State agency,  
19 as provided to other children;

20               “(ii) homeless youth and youth sepa-  
21 rated from the public schools are identified  
22 and accorded equal access to appropriate  
23 secondary education and support services;  
24 and



1           “(iii) homeless children and youth  
2           who meet the relevant eligibility criteria  
3           are able to participate in Federal, State, or  
4           local before- and after-school care pro-  
5           grams;

6           “(G) address problems set forth in the re-  
7           port provided to the Secretary under subsection  
8           (f)(3);

9           “(H) address other problems with respect  
10          to the education of homeless children and  
11          youth, including problems caused by enrollment  
12          delays that are caused by—

13               “(i) immunization and medical records  
14               requirements;

15               “(ii) residency requirements;

16               “(iii) lack of birth certificates, school  
17               records, or other documentation;

18               “(iv) guardianship issues; or

19               “(v) uniform or dress code require-  
20               ments;

21          “(I) demonstrate that the State edu-  
22          cational agency and local educational agencies  
23          in the State have developed, and shall review  
24          and revise, policies to remove barriers to the en-



1 rollment and retention of homeless children and  
2 youth in schools in the State; and

3 “(J) contain assurances that—

4 “(i) except as provided in subsection  
5 (e)(3)(B), State and local educational  
6 agencies will adopt policies and practices to  
7 ensure that homeless children and youth  
8 are not segregated solely on the basis of  
9 their status as homeless;

10 “(ii) local educational agencies will  
11 designate an appropriate staff person, who  
12 may also be a coordinator for other Fed-  
13 eral programs, as a liaison for homeless  
14 children and youth, to carry out the duties  
15 described in paragraph (6)(A); and

16 “(iii) the State and its local edu-  
17 cational agencies will adopt policies and  
18 practices to ensure that transportation is  
19 provided, at the request of the parent or  
20 guardian (or in the case of an unaccom-  
21 panied youth, the liaison) to and from the  
22 school of origin, as determined in para-  
23 graph (3)(A), in accordance with the fol-  
24 lowing, as applicable:





1                   “(I) If the homeless child or  
2 youth continues to live in the area  
3 served by the local educational agency  
4 in which the school of origin is lo-  
5 cated, the child’s or youth’s transpor-  
6 tation to and from the school of origin  
7 shall be provided or arranged by the  
8 local educational agency in which the  
9 school of origin is located.

10                   “(II) If the homeless child’s or  
11 youth’s living arrangements in the  
12 area served by the local educational  
13 agency of origin terminate and the  
14 child or youth, though continuing his  
15 or her education in the school of ori-  
16 gin, begins living in the area served  
17 by another local educational agency,  
18 the local educational agency of origin  
19 and the local educational agency in  
20 which the homeless child or youth is  
21 living shall agree upon a method to  
22 apportion the responsibility and costs  
23 for providing the child with transpor-  
24 tation to and from the school or ori-  
25 gin. If the local educational agencies



1                   are unable to agree upon such meth-  
2                   od, the responsibility and costs for  
3                   transportation shall be shared equally.

4                   “(2) COMPLIANCE.—

5                   “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each plan adopted  
6                   under this subsection shall also describe how  
7                   the State will ensure that local educational  
8                   agencies in the State will comply with the re-  
9                   quirements of paragraphs (3) through (7).

10                  “(B) COORDINATION.—Such plan shall in-  
11                  dicate what technical assistance the State will  
12                  furnish to local educational agencies and how  
13                  compliance efforts will be coordinated with the  
14                  local liaisons established under this subchapter.

15                  “(3) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY REQUIRE-  
16                  MENTS.—

17                  “(A) IN GENERAL.—The local educational  
18                  agency serving each child or youth to be as-  
19                  sisted under this subtitle shall, according to the  
20                  child’s or youth’s best interest, either—

21                         “(i) continue the child’s or youth’s  
22                         education in the school of origin for the  
23                         duration of homelessness—

24                                 “(I) in any case in which a fam-  
25                                 ily becomes homeless between aca-



1                   demic years or during the academic  
2                   year; or

3                   “(II) for the remainder of the  
4                   academic year, if the child becomes  
5                   permanently housed during the aca-  
6                   demic year; or

7                   “(ii) enroll the child or youth in any  
8                   public school that nonhomeless students  
9                   who live in the attendance area in which  
10                  the child or youth is actually living are eli-  
11                  gible to attend.

12                  “(B) BEST INTEREST.—In determining the  
13                  best interest of the child or youth under sub-  
14                  paragraph (A), the local educational agency  
15                  shall—

16                  “(i) to the extent feasible, keep a  
17                  homeless child or youth in the school of or-  
18                  igin, except when doing so is contrary to  
19                  the wishes of the child’s or youth’s parent  
20                  or guardian;

21                  “(ii) provide a written explanation, in-  
22                  cluding a statement regarding the right to  
23                  appeal under subparagraph (E), to the  
24                  homeless child’s or youth’s parent or  
25                  guardian if the local educational agency



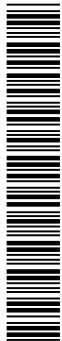
1 sends such child or youth to a school other  
2 than the school of origin or a school re-  
3 quested by the parent or guardian; and

4 “(iii) in the case of an unaccompanied  
5 youth, ensure that the homeless liaison  
6 designated under paragraph (1)(J)(2) as-  
7 sists in placement or enrollment decisions  
8 under this subparagraph and provides no-  
9 tice to such youth of the right to appeal  
10 under subparagraph (E).

11 “(C) ENROLLMENT.—(i) The school se-  
12 lected in accordance with this paragraph shall  
13 immediately enroll pursuant to section 725(3)  
14 the homeless child or youth, even if the child or  
15 youth is unable to produce records normally re-  
16 quired for enrollment, such as previous aca-  
17 demic records, medical records, proof of resi-  
18 dency, or other documentation.

19 “(ii) The enrolling school shall immediately  
20 contact the school last attended by the child or  
21 youth to obtain relevant academic and other  
22 records.

23 “(iii) If the child or youth needs to obtain  
24 immunizations or immunization or medical  
25 records, the enrolling school shall immediately



1 refer the parent or guardian of the child or  
 2 youth to the liaison who shall assist in obtain-  
 3 ing necessary immunizations or immunization  
 4 or medical records in accordance with subpara-  
 5 graph (E).

6 “(D) RECORDS.—Any record ordinarily  
 7 kept by the school, including immunization or  
 8 medical records, academic records, birth certifi-  
 9 cates, guardianship records, and evaluations for  
 10 special services or programs, of each homeless  
 11 child or youth shall be maintained—

12 “(i) so that the records are available,  
 13 in a timely fashion, when a child or youth  
 14 enters a new school or school district; and

15 “(ii) in a manner consistent with sec-  
 16 tion 444 of the General Education Provi-  
 17 sions Act (20 U.S.C. 1232g).

18 “(E) ENROLLMENT DISPUTES.—If a dis-  
 19 pute arises over school selection or enrollment  
 20 in a school—

21 “(i) the child or youth shall be imme-  
 22 diately admitted to the school in which en-  
 23 rollment is sought, pending resolution of  
 24 the dispute;



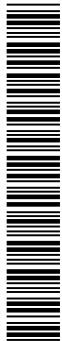
1           “(ii) the parent or guardian of the  
2 child or youth shall be provided with a  
3 written explanation of the school’s decision  
4 regarding school selection or enrollment,  
5 including the rights of the parent, guard-  
6 ian, or youth to appeal the decision;

7           “(iii) the child, youth, parent, or  
8 guardian shall be referred to the local liai-  
9 son designated under paragraph (1)(J)(ii),  
10 who shall carry out the dispute resolution  
11 process as described in paragraph (1)(A)  
12 as expeditiously as possible after receiving  
13 notice of the dispute; and

14           “(iv) in the case of an unaccompanied  
15 youth, the homeless liaison shall ensure  
16 that the youth is immediately enrolled in  
17 school pending resolution of the dispute.

18           “(F) PLACEMENT CHOICE.—The choice re-  
19 garding placement shall be made regardless of  
20 whether the child or youth lives with the home-  
21 less parents or has been temporarily placed  
22 elsewhere.

23           “(G) SCHOOL OF ORIGIN DEFINED.—In  
24 this paragraph, the term ‘school of origin’  
25 means the school that the child or youth at-



1 tended when permanently housed or the school  
2 in which the child or youth was last enrolled.

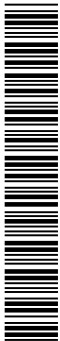
3 “(H) CONTACT INFORMATION.—Nothing  
4 in this subtitle shall prohibit a local educational  
5 agency from requiring a parent or guardian of  
6 a homeless child to submit contact information  
7 required by the local educational agency of a  
8 parent or guardian of a nonhomeless child.

9 “(4) COMPARABLE SERVICES.—Each homeless  
10 child or youth to be assisted under this subtitle shall  
11 be provided services comparable to services offered  
12 to other students in the school selected under para-  
13 graph (3), including—

14 “(A) transportation services;

15 “(B) educational services for which the  
16 child or youth meets the eligibility criteria, such  
17 as services provided under title I of the Elemen-  
18 tary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 or  
19 similar State or local programs, educational  
20 programs for children with disabilities, and edu-  
21 cational programs for students with limited-  
22 English proficiency;

23 “(C) programs in vocational and technical  
24 education;



1           “(D) programs for gifted and talented stu-  
2 dents; and

3           “(E) school nutrition programs.

4           “(5) COORDINATION.—

5           “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational  
6 agency serving homeless children and youth  
7 that receives assistance under this subtitle shall  
8 coordinate—

9           “(i) the provision of services under  
10 this subtitle with local social services agen-  
11 cies and other agencies or programs pro-  
12 viding services to homeless children and  
13 youth and their families, including services  
14 and programs funded under the Runaway  
15 and Homeless Youth Act (42 U.S.C. 5701  
16 et seq.); and

17           “(ii) with other local educational  
18 agencies on interdistrict issues, such as  
19 transportation or transfer of school  
20 records.

21           “(B) HOUSING ASSISTANCE.—If applica-  
22 ble, each State and local educational agency  
23 that receives assistance under this subtitle shall  
24 coordinate with State and local housing agen-  
25 cies responsible for developing the comprehen-





1           sive housing affordability strategy described in  
 2           section 105 of the Cranston-Gonzales National  
 3           Affordable Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 12705) to  
 4           minimize educational disruption for children  
 5           and youth who become homeless.

6           “(C) COORDINATION PURPOSE.—The co-  
 7           ordination required under subparagraphs (A)  
 8           and (B) shall be designed to—

9                   “(i) ensure that homeless children and  
 10                   youth have access and reasonable prox-  
 11                   imity to available education and related  
 12                   support services; and

13                   “(ii) raise the awareness of school  
 14                   personnel and service providers of the ef-  
 15                   fects of short-term stays in a shelter and  
 16                   other challenges associated with homeless-  
 17                   ness.

18           “(6) LIAISON.—

19                   “(A) DUTIES.—Each local liaison for  
 20                   homeless children and youth, designated under  
 21                   paragraph (1)(J)(ii), shall ensure that—

22                   “(i) homeless children and youth are  
 23                   identified by school personnel and through  
 24                   coordination activities with other entities  
 25                   and agencies;

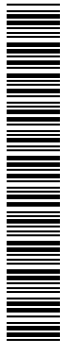


1           “(ii) homeless children and youth en-  
2 roll in, and have an equal opportunity to  
3 succeed in, schools of that agency;

4           “(iii) homeless families, children, and  
5 youth receive educational services for  
6 which such families, children, and youth  
7 are eligible, including Head Start and  
8 Even Start programs and preschool pro-  
9 grams administered by the local edu-  
10 cational agency, and referrals to health  
11 care services, dental services, mental health  
12 services, and other appropriate services;

13           “(iv) the parents or guardians of  
14 homeless children and youth are informed  
15 of the education and related opportunities  
16 available to their children and are provided  
17 with meaningful opportunities to partici-  
18 pate in the education of their children;

19           “(v) public notice of the educational  
20 rights of homeless children and youth is  
21 disseminated where such children and  
22 youth receive services under this Act, such  
23 as schools, family shelters, and soup kitch-  
24 ens;

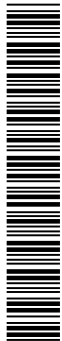


1           “(vi) enrollment disputes are mediated  
2           in accordance with subsection (g)(3)(E);  
3           and

4           “(vii) the parent or guardian of a  
5           homeless child or youth, and any unaccom-  
6           panied youth, is fully informed of all trans-  
7           portation services, including transportation  
8           to the school of origin, as described in  
9           paragraph (1)(J)(ii), and is assisted in ac-  
10          cessing transportation to the school se-  
11          lected in accordance with paragraph  
12          (3)(A).

13          “(B) NOTICE.—State coordinators whose  
14          duties are described under subsection (d) and  
15          local educational agencies shall inform school  
16          personnel, service providers, and advocates  
17          working with homeless families of the duties of  
18          the liaisons.

19          “(C) LOCAL AND STATE COORDINATION.—  
20          Local educational agency liaisons for homeless  
21          children and youth shall, as a part of their du-  
22          ties, coordinate and collaborate with State coor-  
23          dinators and community and school personnel  
24          responsible for the provision of education and  
25          related services to homeless children and youth.



1 “(7) REVIEW AND REVISIONS.—

2 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Each State edu-  
3 cational agency and local educational agency  
4 that receives assistance under this subtitle,  
5 shall review and revise any policies that may act  
6 as barriers to the enrollment of homeless chil-  
7 dren and youth in schools selected in accord-  
8 ance with paragraph (3).

9 “(B) CONSIDERATION.—In reviewing and  
10 revising such policies, consideration shall be  
11 given to issues concerning transportation, im-  
12 munization, residency, birth certificates, school  
13 records and other documentation, and guard-  
14 ianship.

15 “(C) SPECIAL ATTENTION.—Special atten-  
16 tion shall be given to ensuring the enrollment  
17 and attendance of homeless children and youth  
18 who are not currently attending school.

19 **“SEC. 723. LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY GRANTS FOR THE**  
20 **EDUCATION OF HOMELESS CHILDREN AND**  
21 **YOUTH.**

22 “(a) GENERAL AUTHORITY.—

23 “(1) IN GENERAL.—The State educational  
24 agency shall, in accordance with section 722(e) and  
25 from amounts made available to such agency under



1 section 726, make grants to local educational agen-  
2 cies for the purpose of facilitating the enrollment,  
3 attendance, and success in school of homeless chil-  
4 dren and youth.

5 “(2) SERVICES.—

6 “(A) IN GENERAL.—Services under para-  
7 graph (1)—

8 “(i) may be provided through pro-  
9 grams on school grounds or at other facili-  
10 ties;

11 “(ii) shall, to the maximum extent  
12 practicable, be provided through existing  
13 programs and mechanisms that integrate  
14 homeless children and youth with non-  
15 homeless children and youth; and

16 “(iii) shall be designed to expand or  
17 improve services provided as part of a  
18 school’s regular academic program, but not  
19 to replace such services provided under  
20 such program.

21 “(B) SERVICES ON SCHOOL GROUNDS.—If  
22 services under paragraph (1) are provided on  
23 school grounds, schools—

24 “(i) may use funds under this subtitle  
25 to provide the same services to other chil-



1           dren and youth who are determined by the  
2           local educational agency to be at risk of  
3           failing in, or dropping out of, schools, sub-  
4           ject to the requirements of clause (ii); and

5                   “(ii) except as otherwise provided in  
6           section 722(e)(3)(B), shall not provide  
7           services in settings within a school that  
8           segregates homeless children and youth  
9           from other children and youth, except as is  
10          necessary for short periods of time—

11                   “(I) for health and safety emer-  
12          gencies; or

13                   “(II) to provide temporary, spe-  
14          cial, and supplementary services to  
15          meet the unique needs of homeless  
16          children and youth.

17                   “(3) REQUIREMENT.—Services provided under  
18          this section shall not replace the regular academic  
19          program and shall be designed to expand upon or  
20          improve services provided as part of the school’s reg-  
21          ular academic program.

22                   “(b) APPLICATION.—A local educational agency that  
23          desires to receive a grant under this section shall submit  
24          an application to the State educational agency at such  
25          time, in such manner, and containing or accompanied by



1 such information as the State educational agency may rea-  
2 sonably require. Each such application shall include—

3 “(1) an assessment of the educational and re-  
4 lated needs of homeless children and youth, as de-  
5 fined in section 725(1) and (2), in the area served  
6 by such agency (which may be undertaken as part  
7 of needs assessments for other disadvantaged  
8 groups);

9 “(2) a description of the services and programs  
10 for which assistance is sought to address the needs  
11 identified in paragraph (1);

12 “(3) an assurance that the local educational  
13 agency’s combined fiscal effort per student, or the  
14 aggregate expenditures of that agency and the State  
15 with respect to the provision of free public education  
16 by such agency for the fiscal year preceding the fis-  
17 cal year for which the determination is made, was  
18 not less than 90 percent of such combined fiscal ef-  
19 fort or aggregate expenditures for the second fiscal  
20 year preceding the fiscal year for which the deter-  
21 mination is made;

22 “(4) an assurance that the applicant complies  
23 with, or will use requested funds to comply with,  
24 paragraphs (3) through (7) of section 722(g); and



1           “(5) a description of policies and procedures,  
2 consistent with section 722(e)(3)(B), that the agency  
3 will implement to ensure that activities carried out  
4 by the agency will not isolate or stigmatize homeless  
5 children and youth.

6           “(c) AWARDS.—

7           “(1) IN GENERAL.—The State educational  
8 agency shall, in accordance with the requirements of  
9 this subtitle and from amounts made available to it  
10 under section 726, make competitive subgrants to  
11 local educational agencies that submit applications  
12 under subsection (b). Such subgrants shall be  
13 awarded on the basis of the need of such agencies  
14 for assistance under this subtitle and the quality of  
15 the applications submitted.

16           “(2) NEED.—In determining need under para-  
17 graph (1), the State educational agency may con-  
18 sider the number of homeless children and youth en-  
19 rolled in preschool, elementary, and secondary  
20 schools within the area served by the agency, and  
21 shall consider the needs of such children and youth  
22 and the ability of the agency to meet such needs.  
23 Such agency may also consider—

24           “(A) the extent to which the proposed use  
25 of funds would facilitate the enrollment, reten-





1           tion, and educational success of homeless chil-  
2           dren and youth;

3           “(B) the extent to which the application—

4               “(i) reflects coordination with other  
5           local and State agencies that serve home-  
6           less children and youth; and

7               “(ii) meets the requirements of sec-  
8           tion 722(g)(3);

9           “(C) the extent to which the applicant ex-  
10          hibits in the application and in current practice  
11          a commitment to education for all homeless  
12          children and youth; and

13          “(D) such other criteria as the State agen-  
14          cy determines appropriate.

15          “(3) QUALITY.—In determining the quality of  
16          applications under paragraph (1), the State edu-  
17          cational agency shall consider—

18              “(A) the applicant’s needs assessment  
19              under subsection (b)(1) and the likelihood that  
20              the program presented in the application will  
21              meet such needs;

22              “(B) the types, intensity, and coordination  
23              of the services to be provided under the pro-  
24              gram;



1           “(C) the involvement of parents or guard-  
2           ians;

3           “(D) the extent to which homeless children  
4           and youth will be integrated within the regular  
5           education program;

6           “(E) the quality of the applicant’s evalua-  
7           tion plan for the program;

8           “(F) the extent to which services provided  
9           under this subtitle will be coordinated with  
10          other available services; and

11          “(G) such other measures as the State  
12          educational agency considers indicative of a  
13          high-quality program.

14          “(4) DURATION OF GRANTS.—Grants awarded  
15          under this section shall be for terms not to exceed  
16          3 years.

17          “(d) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—A local educational  
18          agency may use funds awarded under this section for ac-  
19          tivities to carry out the purpose of this subtitle,  
20          including—

21                 “(1) the provision of tutoring, supplemental in-  
22                 struction, and enriched educational services that are  
23                 linked to the achievement of the same challenging  
24                 State academic content standards and challenging



1 State student academic achievement standards the  
2 State establishes for other children and youth;

3 “(2) the provision of expedited evaluations of  
4 the strengths and needs of homeless children and  
5 youth, including needs and eligibility for programs  
6 and services (such as educational programs for gift-  
7 ed and talented students, children with disabilities,  
8 and students with limited-English proficiency, serv-  
9 ices provided under title I of the Elementary and  
10 Secondary Education Act of 1965 or similar State  
11 or local programs, programs in vocational and tech-  
12 nical education, and school nutrition programs);

13 “(3) professional development and other activi-  
14 ties for educators and pupil services personnel that  
15 are designed to heighten the understanding and sen-  
16 sitivity of such personnel to the needs of homeless  
17 children and youth, the rights of such children and  
18 youth under this Act, and the specific educational  
19 needs of runaway and homeless youth;

20 “(4) the provision of referral services to home-  
21 less children and youth for medical, dental, mental,  
22 and other health services;

23 “(5) the provision of assistance to defray the  
24 excess cost of transportation for students pursuant  
25 to section 722(g)(4)(A), not otherwise provided



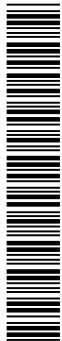
1 through Federal, State, or local funding, where nec-  
2 essary to enable students to attend the school se-  
3 lected under section 722(g)(3);

4 “(6) the provision of developmentally appro-  
5 priate early childhood education programs, not oth-  
6 erwise provided through Federal, State, or local  
7 funding, for preschool-aged children;

8 “(7) the provision of services and assistance to  
9 attract, engage, and retain homeless youth (as de-  
10 scribed in paragraphs (1) and (2) of section 725) in  
11 public school programs and services provided to non-  
12 homeless youth;

13 “(8) the provision for homeless children and  
14 youth of before- and after-school, mentoring, and  
15 summer programs in which a teacher or other quali-  
16 fied individual provides tutoring, homework assist-  
17 ance, and supervision of educational activities;

18 “(9) if necessary, the payment of fees and other  
19 costs associated with tracking, obtaining, and trans-  
20 ferring records necessary to enroll homeless children  
21 and youth in school, including birth certificates, im-  
22 munization or medical records, academic records,  
23 guardianship records, and evaluations for special  
24 programs or services;



1           “(10) the provision of education and training to  
2           the parents of homeless children and youth about  
3           the rights of, and resources available to, such chil-  
4           dren and youth;

5           “(11) the development of coordination between  
6           schools and agencies providing services to homeless  
7           children and youth, as described in section  
8           722(g)(5);

9           “(12) the provision of pupil services (including  
10          violence prevention counseling) and referrals for  
11          such services;

12          “(13) activities to address the particular needs  
13          of homeless children and youth that may arise from  
14          domestic violence;

15          “(14) the adaptation of space and purchase of  
16          supplies for nonschool facilities made available under  
17          subsection (a)(2) to provide services under this sub-  
18          section;

19          “(15) the provision of school supplies, including  
20          those supplies to be distributed at shelters or tem-  
21          porary housing facilities, or other appropriate loca-  
22          tions; and

23          “(16) the provision of other extraordinary or  
24          emergency assistance needed to enable homeless chil-  
25          dren and youth to attend school.



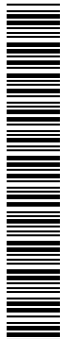
1 **“SEC. 724. SECRETARIAL RESPONSIBILITIES.**

2 “(a) REVIEW OF PLANS.—In reviewing the State  
3 plan submitted by a State educational agency under sec-  
4 tion 722(g), the Secretary shall use a peer review process  
5 and shall evaluate whether State laws, policies, and prac-  
6 tices described in such plans adequately address the prob-  
7 lems of homeless children and youth relating to access to  
8 education and placement as described in such plans.

9 “(b) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary shall  
10 provide support and technical assistance to the State edu-  
11 cational agencies to assist such agencies to carry out their  
12 responsibilities under this subtitle, if requested by the  
13 State educational agency.

14 “(c) NOTICE.—The Secretary shall, before the next  
15 school year that begins after the date of the enactment  
16 of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Education Assistance  
17 Improvements Act of 2001, create and disseminate nation-  
18 wide a public notice of the educational rights of homeless  
19 children and youth and disseminate such notice to other  
20 Federal agencies, programs, and grantees, including Head  
21 Start grantees, Health Care for the Homeless grantees,  
22 Emergency Food and Shelter grantees, and homeless as-  
23 sistance programs administered by the Department of  
24 Housing and Urban Development.

25 “(d) EVALUATION AND DISSEMINATION.—The Sec-  
26 retary shall conduct evaluation and dissemination activi-



1 ties of programs designed to meet the educational needs  
2 of homeless elementary and secondary school students,  
3 and may use funds appropriated under section 726 to con-  
4 duct such activities.

5 “(e) SUBMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION.—The Sec-  
6 retary shall require applications for grants under this sub-  
7 title to be submitted to the Secretary not later than the  
8 expiration of the 60-day period beginning on the date that  
9 funds are available for purposes of making such grants  
10 and shall make such grants not later than the expiration  
11 of the 120-day period beginning on such date.

12 “(f) DETERMINATION BY SECRETARY.—The Sec-  
13 retary, based on the information received from the States  
14 and information gathered by the Secretary under sub-  
15 section (e), shall determine the extent to which State edu-  
16 cational agencies are ensuring that each homeless child  
17 and homeless youth has access to a free appropriate public  
18 education as described in section 721(1).

19 “(g) INFORMATION.—

20 “(1) IN GENERAL.—From funds appropriated  
21 under section 726, the Secretary shall, either di-  
22 rectly or through grants, contracts, or cooperative  
23 agreements, periodically collect and disseminate data  
24 and information regarding—



1           “(A) the number and location of homeless  
2 children and youth;

3           “(B) the education and related services  
4 such children and youth receive;

5           “(C) the extent to which such needs are  
6 being met; and

7           “(D) such other data and information as  
8 the Secretary deems necessary and relevant to  
9 carry out this subtitle.

10          “(2) COORDINATION.—The Secretary shall co-  
11 ordinate such collection and dissemination with  
12 other agencies and entities that receive assistance  
13 and administer programs under this subtitle.

14          “(h) REPORT.—Not later than 4 years after the date  
15 of the enactment of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Edu-  
16 cation Assistance Improvements Act of 2001, the Sec-  
17 retary shall prepare and submit to the President and the  
18 Committee on Education and the Workforce of the House  
19 of Representatives and the Committee on Health, Edu-  
20 cation, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate a report on the  
21 status of education of homeless children and youth, which  
22 shall include information on—

23           “(1) the education of homeless children and  
24 youth; and





1           “(2) the actions of the Department and the ef-  
2           fectiveness of the programs supported under this  
3           subtitle.

4   **“SEC. 725. DEFINITIONS.**

5           “In this subtitle:

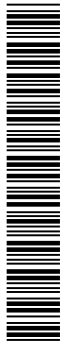
6           “(1) The term ‘homeless children and youth’—

7                   “(A) means individuals who lack a fixed,  
8                   regular, and adequate nighttime residence  
9                   (within the meaning of section 103(a)(1));

10                   “(B) includes—

11                           “(i) children and youth who are living  
12                           in doubled-up accommodations sharing the  
13                           housing of another due to loss of housing,  
14                           economic hardship or a similar reason, are  
15                           living in motels, hotels, trailer parks, or  
16                           camping grounds due to the lack of alter-  
17                           native adequate accommodations, are living  
18                           in emergency or transitional shelters, are  
19                           abandoned in hospitals, or are awaiting  
20                           foster care placement;

21                           “(ii) individuals who have a primary  
22                           nighttime residence that is a public or pri-  
23                           vate place not designed for or ordinarily  
24                           used as a regular sleeping accommodation



1 for human beings (within the meaning of  
2 section 103(a)(2)(C)); and

3 “(iii) children and youth who are liv-  
4 ing in cars, parks, public spaces, aban-  
5 doned buildings or substandard housing,  
6 bus or train stations, or similar settings;  
7 and

8 “(B) does not include migratory children  
9 (as such term is defined in section 1309(2) of  
10 the Elementary and Secondary Education Act  
11 of 1965), unless such children are staying in ac-  
12 commodated not fit for habitation.

13 “(2) The term ‘unaccompanied youth’ includes  
14 youth not in the physical custody of a parent or  
15 guardian.

16 “(3) The terms ‘enroll’ and ‘enrollment’ include  
17 within their meaning the right to attend classes and  
18 to participate fully in school activities.

19 “(4) The terms ‘local educational agency’ and  
20 ‘State educational agency’ have the meanings given  
21 such terms in section 8101 of the Elementary and  
22 Secondary Education Act of 1965.

23 “(5) The term ‘Secretary’ means the Secretary  
24 of Education.



1           “(6) The term ‘State’ means each of the 50  
2           States, the District of Columbia, and the Common-  
3           wealth of Puerto Rico.

4   **“SEC. 726. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.**

5           “For the purpose of carrying out this subtitle, there  
6           are authorized to be appropriated \$60,000,000 for fiscal  
7           year 2002 and such sums as may be necessary for each  
8           of the fiscal years 2003 through 2006.”.

9   **SEC. 915. TECHNICAL AMENDMENT.**

10          (a) IN GENERAL.—Section 1 of Public Law 106–400  
11          (42 U.S.C. 11301) is amended by striking “Section 1 of”  
12          and inserting “Section 101 of”.

13          (b) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The amendment made by  
14          subsection (a) shall be deemed to be effective on the date  
15          of enactment of Public Law 106–400.

16   **PART B—REPEALS**

17   **SEC. 921. REPEALS.**

18          The following provisions are repealed:

19                  (1) GOALS.—Parts A and C of title II and title  
20                  VI of Goals 2000: Educate America Act.

21                  (2) TROOPS-TO-TEACHERS PROGRAM ACT OF  
22                  1999.—The Troops-to-Teachers Program Act of  
23                  1999 (title XVII of Public Law 106–65; 20 U.S.C.  
24                  9301 et seq.).

25                  (3) ESEA.—



1 (A) Title IX, relating to Indian, Native  
2 Hawaiian, and Alaska Native education.

3 (B) Parts A, B, C, D, F, G, I, J, L, of  
4 title X, relating to programs of national signifi-  
5 cance.

6 (C) Title XI, relating to coordinated serv-  
7 ices.

8 (D) Title XII, relating to education infra-  
9 structure.

10 (E) The title heading of title XIII and sec-  
11 tions 13001 and 13002.

12 (F) Title XIV, relating to general provi-  
13 sions.

